Michael Swan • Catherine Walter

# Oxford English Grammar Course

مجعزبان ايرانيان

Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM

with answers

irlanguage

# Oxford English Grammar Course Basic

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English Michael Swan & Catherine Walter

# Oxford English Grammar Course

# Basic



A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

With answers

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجـع زبـان ایـرانیـان به صـورت نشـر بـر خـط و حـامـل به ثبـت رسیـده اسـت. کپی بر داری از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پیگیرد خواهد شد.

### OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

### contents

introduction	vi
words for talking about grammar	viii
list of units	×
units	1
appendices	299
answer key	309
index	355

### authors' acknowledgements

We owe a continuing debt to the many people whose advice and comments helped us with earlier versions of this material. The present book has benefited enormously from the hard work and professionalism of our editorial and design team at Oxford University Press. In particular, we would like to acknowledge the contributions of our remarkable editor, Sarah Parsons, and our equally remarkable designer, Phil Hargraves, who have made it possible for us to write the book that we wanted to, and whose input is evident on every page.

### introduction

### Who is this book for?

The Oxford English Grammar Course (Basic Level) is for all elementary and pre-intermediate learners who want to improve their knowledge of English grammar.

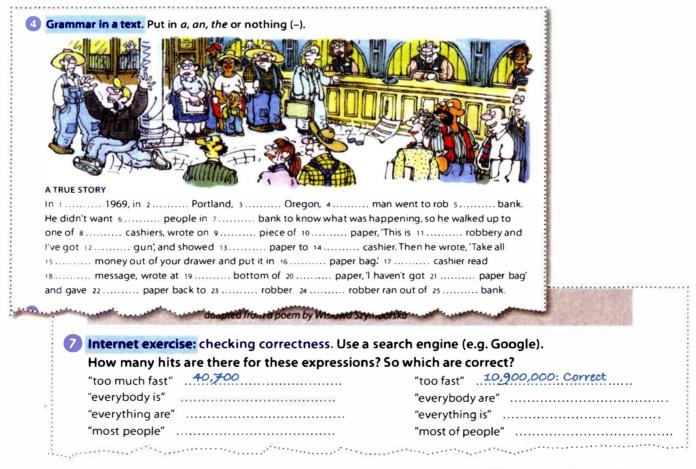
### What kind of English does the book teach?

This book teaches the grammar of spoken and written British English. But it can also be used by students of American, Australian or other kinds of English – the grammatical differences are very small and unimportant.

### How is the book organised?

There are 22 sections. A section covers one part of English grammar (for example: making questions and negatives; present tense verbs; problems with nouns). Each section contains:

- a presentation page which introduces the point of grammar
- several short units with explanations and exercises
- two 'More Practice' pages: these include 'Grammar in a text' exercises and internet exercises
- a short revision test.



#### **Two levels**

More basic units are marked 'Level 1'; more advanced units are marked 'Level 2'.



### One way of using the book: to study particular points

If you want to know more about a particular point (for example present tenses, the difference between *should* and *must*, or the position of adverbs), look in the index (pages 355–362) to find the right unit(s). Read the explanations and do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).

### Another way of using the book: for systematic study

If you are working without a teacher, we suggest:

- 1 DON'T go right through the book from beginning to end some parts will be unnecessary for you.
- 2 Decide which sections you most need to study. Section 1, 'be and have', for example? Section 8, 'questions and negatives'? Section 19, 'relative pronouns'? Or other sections?
- 3 Go to the pages that you need. Read the grammar explanations, do the exercises, and check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).
- 4 In some units there are 'Grammar and vocabulary' exercises for students who would like to learn more words. Try these as well if you want to.
- 5 Do some or all of the exercises in the 'More Practice' pages.
- 6 Go to the revision test at the end of the section, and try some or all of the questions.
- 7 Check your answers. If you still have problems, look at the explanations again.

### Website

On the website there are tests which will help you to decide what you need to study, or to find out how well you have learnt the different points of grammar. There are also extra exercises and games to give you more practice on some of the points.

### Pronunciation

The 'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM will help you to pronounce structures fluently, with good rhythm and stress.



#### **Examinations**

This book teaches all of the grammar (and more!) that is needed for Common European Framework Levels A1 and A2, and is suitable for learners studying for Cambridge KET and PET.

### If you know everything in the book, will you speak perfect English?

No, sorry!

- 1 Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly. (And not many people need to.) But this book will help you to speak and write much more correctly.
- 2 Books like this give short practical explanations. They cannot tell you the whole truth about English grammar, and they cannot give you enough practice to get all the difficult points right. If you follow the rules in this book, you will not make many mistakes. But you will probably need to practise using the structures in different situations. (The website material will help with this.) You will find more complete information about difficult points in the Intermediate Level of the Oxford English Grammar Course.
- 3 Grammar is not the only important thing in a language. You also need a wide vocabulary, and very important you need a lot of practice in listening and speaking, reading and writing. Remember: this is a grammar practice book, not a complete English course.

We hope that you will enjoy using our book.

With our best wishes for your progress in English.

1) ich al Snun Catherine Walter

# words for talking about grammar

active and passive: I see, she heard are active verbs; I am seen, she was heard are passive verbs.
adjectives: for example big, old, yellow, unhappy.
adverbs: for example quickly, completely, now, there.
affirmative sentences or statements are not questions or negatives – for example <i>l arrived</i> .
articles: a/an ('indefinite article'); the ('definite article').
auxiliary verbs are used before other verbs to make questions, tenses etc – for example <b>do</b> you think; I <b>have</b> finished,
she is working. See also modal auxiliary verbs.
clause: see sentence.
comparatives: for example older, better, more beautiful, more slowly.
conditional: a structure using the conjunction if.
conjunctions: for example and, but, because, while.
consonants: see vowels.
contractions: short forms like I'm, you're, he'll, don't.
conversational: see formal
countable nouns: the names of things we can count – for example one chair, three cars; uncountable (or 'mass')
nouns: the names of things we can't count, like <i>oil, rice.</i>
determiners: words like the, some, many, my, which go before (adjective +) noun.
double letters: pp, tt, ee etc.
formal, informal, conversational: We use formal language with strangers, in business letters etc: for example
'Good afternoon, Mr Parker. May I help you?' We use informal or conversational language with family and
friends: for example 'Hi, John. Want some help?'
future verbs: for example I will go; Ann is going to write to us.
imperatives: forms like Go home, Come and sit down, Don't worry, which we use when we tell or ask people (not)
to do things.
indirect speech: the grammar that we use to say what people say or think: for example John said that he was tired.
infinitives: (to) go, (to) sleep etc.
informal: see formal.
-ing forms: going, sleeping etc.
irregular: see regular.
leave out: If we say Seen John?, we are leaving out Have you.
modal verbs or modal auxiliary verbs: must, can, could, may, might, shall, should, ought to, will and would.
negative sentences are made with not: for example I have not seen her.
nouns: for example <i>chair, oil, idea, sentence.</i>
object: see subject.
opposite: hot is the opposite of cold; up is the opposite of down.
passive: see active.
past perfect tense: see perfect tenses.
past progressive tense: see past tenses.
past tenses: for example went, saw, stopped (simple past); was going, were eating (past progressive).
past participles: for example gone, seen, stopped.
perfect tenses: forms with have/has/had + past participle: for example I have forgotten (present perfect); It has
been raining (present perfect progressive); They had stopped (past perfect).
personal pronouns: for example I, you, us, them.
plural: see singular.
possessives: for example my, your, mine, yours; John's, my brothers'.
prepositions: for example <i>at, in, on, between</i> .
present participles: for example going, sleeping etc (also called -ing forms).
present perfect tenses: see perfect tenses.

present tenses: for example *He goes* (simple present); *She is walking* (present progressive). progressive (or 'continuous'): for example *I am thinking* (present progressive); *They were talking* (past progressive).

pronouns: for example *I*, you, anybody, themselves. question tags: for example *isn't it?*, doesn't she? reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc.

regular: plurals like cats, buses; past tenses like started, stopped; irregular: plurals like teeth, men, children; past tenses like broke, went, saw.

relative clauses: clauses that begin with relative pronouns: for example the man who bought my car. relative pronouns: who, which and that when they join clauses to nouns: for example the man who bought my car. sentence, clause: A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B etc) and ends with a full stop (.), like this one. A

sentence may have more than one clause, often joined by a conjunction. For example: I'll come and see you when I'm in London.

simple past tense: see past tenses.

simple present tense: see present tenses.

singular: for example chair, cat, man; plural: for example chairs, cats, men.

spelling: writing words correctly: for example, we spell necessary with one c and double s.

subject and object: In She took the money – everybody saw her, the subjects are she and everybody; the objects are the money and her.

superlatives: for example oldest, best, most beautiful, most easily.

tense: She goes, she is going, she went, she was going, she has gone are different tenses.

third person: words for other people, not I or you: for example she, them, himself, John, has, goes.

uncountable nouns: see countable nouns.

verbs: for example sit, give, hold, think, write.

vowels: a, e, i, o, u and their usual sounds; consonants: b, c, d, f, g etc and their usual sounds.

### other useful words

Here are some other words that are used in this book. Find them in your dictionary and write the translations here.

action ..... choose ..... common ..... complete (verb) ..... correct ..... description ..... difference ..... event ..... exclamation ..... explain ..... expression ..... form (*noun*) ..... go on, happen ..... in general introduction ..... join ..... mean (*verb*) ..... meaning ..... necessary ..... news ..... normal ..... normally ..... particular ..... plan .....

polite
politely
possibility
possible
practise
predict
prefer
probable
pronounce
pronunciation
repeat
report
revision
rule
section
similar
situation
stressed (pronunciation)
structure
unnecessary
unusual
use ( <i>noun</i> )
use ( <i>verb</i> )
(word) order

### list of units

### SECTION 1 be and have pages 1-14

grammar summary	1
be I am happy today. Are we late?	2-3
be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.	4
be: future The bus will be full.	5
there is/was There's a dog in the garden.	6
there is: future Will there be cars?	7
have I have do you have? I don't have	8
have: past and future	9
have: actions He's having a shower.	10
have without do: have got	
Have you got a cat?	11
be and have: more practice	12-13
be and have: revision test	14

### SECTION 2 present tenses pages 15–34

grammar summary	15
simple present affirmative	
l work; you work; she works	16
simple present: use I work in a bank.	17
simple present negatives	
I don't know. She doesn't ski.	18–19
simple present questions	
Do you remember me?	20-21
simple present: more practice	22
present progressive: forms	
l'm reading. I'm not working.	23
present progressive: use	
I'm working just now.	24
present progressive negatives	
He's not listening to me.	25
present progressive questions Is it raining?	26
present progressive: more practice	27
the two present tenses: the difference	28–29
non-progressive verbs I don't understand.	30-31
present tenses: more practice	32-33
present tenses: revision test	34

# SECTION 3 talking about the future pages 35–44

grammar summary	35
going to Look – it's going to rain.	36-37
present progressive	
What are you doing this evening?	38

will: predicting I think it will rain tomorro	ow. 39
will: deciding, refusing, promising I'll an	iswer it. 40
simple present for future	
Our train leaves at 8.10.	41
future: more practice	42-43
future: revision test	44
SECTION 4 past tenses pages 45-5	56

grammar summary 4	45
simple past: forms I worked. I went.	46
simple past: use I left school in 1990.	47
simple past: negatives I did not work.	
I did not go.	48
simple past questions Did you pay?	
What did she say?	49
simple past: more practice	50
past progressive What were you doing at 8.00?	51
simple past or past progressive?	
I walked / I was walking 52–5	53
past tenses: more practice 54–5	55
past tenses: revision test	56

### SECTION 5 perfect tenses pages 57–72

grammar summary	57
present perfect: forms	
I have paid. Has she forgotten?	58-59
finished actions: present perfect	
or simple past?	60-61
time words: present perfect	
or simple past?	62-63
already, yet and just	64
since and for since Tuesday; for ten years	65
present perfect progressive	
It's been raining since Sunday.	66-67
past perfect	
It had already begun when we arrived.	68–69
perfect tenses: more practice	70-71
perfect tenses: revision test	72

### SECTION 6 modal verbs pages 73-92

grammar summary	73
modal verbs: introduction	can, must, should etc74
must You must be home by	eleven. Must you go? 75
have to Do you have to tea	ch small children? 76

#### mustn't and don't have to We mustn't wake the baby. 77 had to, will have to I didn't have to pay. 78 should What should I tell John? 79 can He can play the piano. 80 could; be able to She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive soon. 81 may and might It may snow. I might have a cold. 82-83 can, could and may: permission Can I use the phone? 84-85 can/could you?: requests Can you lend me a stamp? 86 shall in questions What shall we do? 87 would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be taller. 88 89 used to lused to play the piano. modal verbs: more practice 90-91 modal verbs: revision test 92

### SECTION 7 passives pages 93–102

grammar summary	93
passives: introduction	
English is spoken in Australia.	94
simple present passive	
We are woken by the birds.	95
future passive	
Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.	96
simple past passive	
l was stopped by a policeman.	97
present progressive passive It's being cleaned.	98
present perfect passive	
The house has been sold.	99
passives: more practice 100-	101
passives: revision test	102

# SECTION 8 questions and negatives pages 103–118

grammar summary	103
yes/no questions	
Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa?	104–105
question words When will you see her?	106-107
question-word subjects	
Who phoned? What happened?	108-109
questions with long subjects	
Are Ann and her mother coming?	110
prepositions in questions	
Who did you go with?	111

negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know wh	<i>y</i> .112–113
not and no	114
negatives with nobody, never etc	
Nobody loves me.	115
questions and negatives: more practice	116-117
questions and negatives: revision test	118

# SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms pages 119–138

puges	
grammar summary	119
infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go	? 120
infinitive of purpose	
She went to Paris to study music.	121
verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.1	22-123
verb + object + infinitive	
He wants me to cook. 12	4–125
it with infinitive subjects	
It's nice to be here with you. 12	6–127
adjective + infinitive	
glad to find you at home	128
adjectives with enough/to + infinitive	
too tired to sing	129
noun/pronoun + infinitive	
some letters to write	130
-ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you	. 131
preposition +ing Thank you for coming.13	2–133
verb +ing I can'thelp feeling unhappy. 13	4–135
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: more practice 13	6-137
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test	138

# SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150

grammar summary	139
structures with get	
get up get your coat it's getting cold	140
verbs with prepositions Wait for me.	141
phrasal verbs	
Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142	-143
verbs with two objects	
Take the boss these letters.	144
have something done	
I have my hair cut every week.	145
imperatives Come in. Don't worry.	146
let's (suggestions) Let's go.	147
special structures with verbs: more practice148	8–149
special structures with verbs: revision test	150

### SECTION 11 articles: *a/an* and *the*

pages 151–166	
grammar summary	151
a/an; pronunciation of the	152
countable and uncountable a car, cars; p	etrol 153
the and a/an	
Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.	154–155
a/an She's a doctor.	156
a/an: describing people She's got a nice s	mile. 157
talking in general without the	
People are funny.	158–159
names Mary, Africa, the USA	160-161
special cases	
in bed; after lunch; a hundred;	162–163
articles: more practice	164–165
articles: revision test	166

#### SECTION 12 determiners pages 167–184

grammar summary	167
this, that, these and those	168–169
some and any	
I need some sugar. Have you got any?	170–171
somebody, anything, nowhere	172
much and many	
How much milk? How many languages?	173
a lot of and lots of	174
a little and a few a little English; a few word	ds 175
enough money; fast enough	176
too, too much/many and not enough	177
all all my friends are here; my friends are	
all here	178
all and every; each	179
both, either and neither	180
determiners and of most people; most of a	us 181
determiners: more practice	182–183
determiners: revision test	184

# SECTION 13 personal pronouns; possessives pages 185–194

grammar summary	185
personal pronouns: I and me etc	186–187
possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.	188-189
possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine.	190
reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc	191
personal pronouns and possessives:	
more practice	192–193
personal pronouns and possessives:	
revision test	194

### SECTION 14 nouns pages 195–208

grammar summary

195
-----

singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box,	boxes	196
singular/plural team, family; jeans, scisso	ors	197
countable and uncountable nouns	198-	-199
one and ones a big one; the ones on the cl	hair	200
'sand s' possessive: forms son's, sons', me	en's	201
's and s' possessive: use		
lan's car; the boss's car	202-	-203
noun + noun		
Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate.	204-	-205
nouns: more practice	206	-207
nouns: revision test		208

### SECTION 15 adjectives and adverbs

#### pages 209-220 grammar summary 209 adjectives a beautiful little girl who was not stupid 210-211 adverbs of manner He ate quickly. 212 other adverbs I like sport very much. 213 adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc 214-215 interested and interesting etc 216 fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly, ... 217 adjectives and adverbs: more practice 218-219 adjectives and adverbs: revision test 220

#### SECTION 16 comparison pages 221–232

grammar summary	221
comparative and superlative adjectives: forms	222
comparative or superlative?	223
comparatives: use	
brighter than the moon 224	-225
superlatives	
the highest mountain in the world	226
comparison of adverbs More slowly, please.	227
(not) as as Your hands are as cold as ice. 228	-229
comparison: more practice 230	-231
comparison: revision test	232

### SECTION 17 conjunctions pages 233–242

grammar summary	233
conjunctions: introduction	
and, but, because	234
position of conjunctions	
lf you need help, ask me.	235
tenses with time conjunctions	
l'Il see you before you go.	236

because and so; although and but	237
and I speak Russian, English and Swahili	238
double conjunctions	
both and; (n)either (n)or	239
conjunctions: more practice	240-241
conjunctions: revision test	242

### SECTION 18 if pages 243-252

grammar summary	243
if: position; unless	244
<i>if</i> : future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.	245
not real / not probable If dogs could talk,	246
If I were you,	247
lf I go, I will; If I went, I would	248
unreal past	
If A had happened, B would have happened.	249
<i>if</i> : more practice 25	0-251
<i>if</i> : revision test	252

### SECTION 19 relative pronouns pages 253-262

grammar summary	253
relative who and which	
the keys which I lost	254–255
relative that a bird that can't fly	256
leaving out relative pronouns	
the car (that) you bought	257
prepositions the man that she works for	258
relative what It was just what I wanted.	259
relative pronouns: more practice	260-261
relative pronouns: revision test	262

### SECTION 20 indirect speech pages 263-272

grammar summary	263
tenses and pronouns	
Bill said he was really happy.	264-265
indirect questions	
She asked him what his name was.	266
present reporting verbs	
She says she comes from London.	267
here and now > there and then	268
infinitives She told me to get out.	269
indirect speech: more practice	270-271
indirect speech: revision test	272

SECTION 21 prepositions	pages 273-286
grammar summary	273
<i>at, in</i> and <i>on</i> (time)	274–275
from to, until and by	276
for, during and while	277
in and on (place)	278
at (place)	279
other prepositions of place	280-281
prepositions of movement	282-283
prepositions: more practice	284–285
prepositions: revision test	286

### SECTION 22 spoken grammar pages 287–298

grammar summary	287
question tags	
This music isn't very good, is it?	288-289
short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.	290
reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really?	291
revision of spoken question and	
answer structures	292
leaving out words Don't know if she has.	293
so am I; nor do I etc	294-295
spoken grammar: more practice	296-297
spoken grammar: revision test	298

### **SECTION 1** be and have

### grammar summary

### be (am/are/is/was/were)

- We can use adjectives, nouns or expressions of place after be.
   She is late. I'm hungry. Are you a doctor? Is everybody here?
- We use a special structure with be there is to introduce things: to say that they exist.
   There's a strange woman at the door.
   There are some letters for you.
- Be can be an auxiliary verb in progressive tenses (see page 23) and passives (see page 94).
   She is working. It was made in Hong Kong.

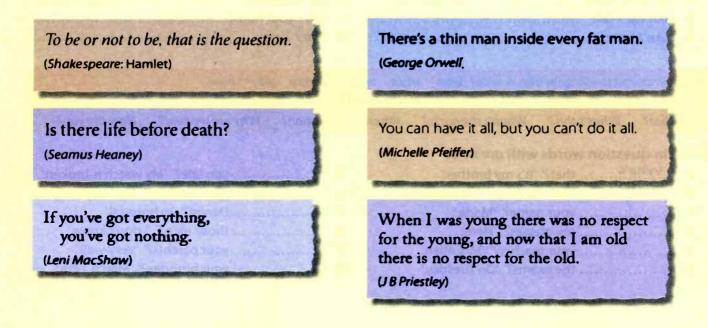
### have (have/has/had)

- We can use *have* or *have got* to talk about possession, relationships and some other ideas.
   Do you have a car? I don't have any brothers or sisters. Ann has got a headache.
- And we can use have to talk about some kinds of actions.
   I'm going to have a shower.
   What time do you have breakfast?
- Have can also be an auxiliary verb in perfect tenses (see Section 5).
   I haven't seen her all day.
   We knew that he had taken the money.





'And were you good while I was out?'



# be I am happy today. Are we late?

	lam	you are	he/she/it is	we are	they are	
	<b>am</b> !?	are you?	is he/she/it?	are we?	are they?	
	lam not	you are not	he/she/it is not	we are not	they are not	
m	a doctor.	Are you Ame	rican? We are no	ot ready.	100	5
P	Put in <i>am, a</i>	are or is				
	You are			4 1	happy to	dav
		very well.			hink you	•
		a doc	tor.		ur house	
3		Ann i			nearly rea	
~	onversation	and informal w	vriting, we use <b>cont</b>	ractions <sup>,</sup>		
1	you're	he's she			we're they	ire
10	a doctor.	You're late.	John's in London.	The shop's o	ppen. We' <mark>re</mark> rea	dy.
			ith contractions.			
	Claire is ill	Claire's i	LL.	4 M	y name is Peter.	
1	We are all	tired		5 Yo	ou are early	
2	They are h	nere		6 Th	ne shop is closed.	
3	I am sorry			7 Sł	ne is at home	
			, we put the <b>verb b</b>			are in the car
AT	TEMENT +: STION ?:	I am late.	e, we put the <b>verb b</b> The taxi is here. Is the taxi here?	We are lat	e. Your keys	are in the car. ays in the car?
AT JE		I am late. Am I late?	The taxi is here.	We are lat	e. Your keys	
AT JE:	EMENT +: STION ?: Nake quest	I am late. Am I late? tions.	The taxi is here.	We are lat Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke	
AT JE:	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott	I am late. Am I late? tions.	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here?	We are lat Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready	ys in the car?
AT JE: N	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early	ys in the car?
AT JE: N	EMENT : STION ? : Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish <u>Is Bill</u> som Paris late	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yo	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy	ys in the car?
AT JE: 1 2 3 4	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss /	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish Is Bill a om Paris late bed here	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yo 11 Jo	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married	ys in the car?
AT JE: 1 2 3 4 5	Aake quest Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car /	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish bom Paris late here	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jc 12 th	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy e / married is / your house	ys in the car?
	Aake quest Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car /	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish bom Paris late here	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jc 12 th	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy e / married is / your house	ys in the car?
AT JE: 1 2 3 4 5 6	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jc 12 th 13 th	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane	ys in the car?
AT JE: 1 2 3 4 5 6	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh what's when's wh	We are lat           Are we lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy ou / happy ou / happy be / married is / your house is / Jane here why how how's	ys in the car?
	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat           Are we lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy ou / happy ou / happy be / married is / your house is / Jane here why how how's	ys in the car?
1 2 3 4 5 6	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her You know all tractions with Sthat?	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish Is Bill a om Paris late bed here fast these question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh what's when's wh When's the party?	We are lat         Are we lat         Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early early ey / at home ou / happy ou / happy be / married ou / happy ou / happy ou / happy be / married here why how how's ation? Why are v	ys in the car?
1 2 3 4 5 6	EMENT : STION : STION : Make quest Marie / fro We / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her You know all tractions with Sthat?	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh what's when's wh When's the party? ith are or 's. 's my brother.'	We are lat         Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early be / at home ou / happy be / married is / your house is / your house is / Jane here why how how's ation? Why are v	ve here? How are you: late?' 'My watch is brok
	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her You know all tractions with the south of the south the boss / your car / Luke / her You know all tractions with the south of the south the south of the south south of the south the south of the south the south of the south the south of the south the south of the south of the south the south of the south of the south of the south the south of the sou	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish Is Bill a om Paris late bed fast these question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi that?' 'It' Are Leo and	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh what's when's wh When's the party? ith are or 's. 's my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.'	We are lat         Are we lat	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early early ey / at home ou / happy ou / bappy ou / bappy	ve here? How are you late?' 'My watch is broke r mother?' 'Not very wel
	EMENT : STION : STION : Make quest Marie / fro We / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her You know all tractions with Sthat? Who's Where	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishs Bill om Paris late bed fast fast these question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi 	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh what's when's wh When's the party? ith are or 's. 's my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.' ne?' 'Maria.'	We are lat Are we lat Are we lat 	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early early ey / at home ou / happy ou / happy be / married ou / happy ou / you / how	ve here? How are you: late?' 'My watch is broke r mother?' 'Not very wel iel?' 'In hospital.'
AT I 1 2 3 4 5 6 1 2 3 4 5 6 P P P P 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 1 1 1 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	EMENT : STION ?: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / her You know all tractions with s that?	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish Is Bill . om Paris late bed fast fast these question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi that?' 'It' Are. Leo and your nan my glass	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh what's when's wh When's the party? ith are or 's. 's my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.' ne?' 'Maria.'	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jc 12 th 13 th mat when w here's why's Where's the sta 5 ' 6 ' 7 ' 8 '	e. Your keys e? Are my ke e all / ready early by / at home ou / happy ou / bape ou / Jane you  ou you  Dan  those	ve here? How are you late?' 'My watch is broke r mother?' 'Not very wel

and we use <b>be</b> with <b>ages</b> . Have you got anything to eat? I' <mark>m hungry. I'm cold. It's</mark> very <b>hot</b> here in summer. It's late.' 'You' <b>re right.</b> Let's go.' <b>Are</b> you <b>afraid</b> of flying? I' <mark>m interested</mark> in politics.		of Scottish.		I'm not tired.		NAMES OF TAXABLE PARTY AND ADDRESS OF TAXABLE PARTY.
<ul> <li>I'm Greek, but ( from Athens)</li></ul>	Ve ca	an also make co	ntractions with n	t: you aren't, she isn	etc (BUT NOT / am	<del>A't</del> ).
<ul> <li>I'm Greek, but ( from Athens)</li></ul>	w	rite negative	(=) ends for the	sentences		
<ul> <li>It's winter, but ( cold) it's wot cold. OR it isw't cold.</li> <li>She's tired, but ( ill)</li> <li>They are in England, but ( in London)</li> <li>You're tall, but ( too tall)</li> <li>We are late, but ( very late)</li></ul>					thens.	
<ul> <li>She's tired, but (<b></b>]<i>il</i>)</li> <li>They are in England, but (<b></b>]<i>in London</i>)</li> <li>You're tall, but (<b></b>]<i>too tall</i>)</li> <li>We are late, but (<b></b>]<i>very late</i>)</li> <li>It's summer, but (<b></b>]<i>hot</i>)</li> <li>I'm a student, but (<b></b>]<i>at university</i>)</li> <li>John's good-looking, but (<b></b>]<i>very nice</i>)</li> <li>Anne is at work, but (<b></b>]<i>in her office</i>)</li> <li>This is a nice coat, but (<b></b>]<i>mine</i>)</li> <li>It's a big car, but (<b></b>]<i>very fast</i>)</li> </ul> We often use <i>be</i> with: <i>hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</i> And we use <i>be</i> with <b>ages</b> . <i>Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry</i> . <i>I'm cold</i> . <i>It's very hot here in summer</i> . It's late'. 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'		It's winter, but	(= cold) it's v	lot cold.	OR <sup>L</sup>	t ísn't cold.
<ul> <li>2 They are in England, but ( in London)</li> <li>3 You're tall, but ( too tall)</li> <li>4 We are late, but ( very late)</li> <li>5 It's summer, but ( hot)</li> <li>6 I'm a student, but ( at university)</li> <li>7 John's good-looking, but ( very nice)</li> <li>8 Anne is at work, but ( in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but ( mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( very fast)</li> </ul> Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size? And we use be with ages. Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'						
<ul> <li>3 You're tall, but ( to tall)</li> <li>4 We are late, but ( very late)</li> <li>5 It's summer, but ( hot)</li> <li>6 I'm a student, but ( at university)</li> <li>7 John's good-looking, but ( very nice)</li> <li>8 Anne is at work, but ( in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but ( mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( very fast)</li> </ul> We often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size? And we use be with ages. Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late: 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	2					
<ul> <li>4 We are late, but ( wery late)</li> <li>5 It's summer, but ( hot)</li> <li>6 I'm a student, but ( at university)</li> <li>7 John's good-looking, but ( wery nice)</li> <li>8 Anne is at work, but ( in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but ( mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( wery fast)</li> </ul> We often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size? And we use be with ages. Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	3					
<ul> <li>6 I'm a student, but (a tuniversity)</li> <li>7 John's good-looking, but (very nice)</li> <li>8 Anne is at work, but (in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but (in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>11 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>12 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>13 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>14 It's a big car, but (in her office)</li> <li>15 It's very hot here in summer.</li> <li>16 It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics.</li> <li>17 Vent colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'</li> </ul>						
<ul> <li>7 John's good-looking, but ( very nice)</li> <li>8 Anne is at work, but ( in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but ( in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but ( in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>11 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>12 It's a big car, but ( in her office)</li> <li>13 It's very fast)</li> <li>14 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</li> <li>14 And we use be with ages.</li> <li>15 It's very hot here in summer.</li> <li>16 It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics.</li> <li>17 Vent colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 1'm 17.'</li> </ul>	5	lt's summer, bu	ut ( <b>—</b> hot)			
<ul> <li>8 Anne is at work, but (in her office)</li> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but (in mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (in very fast)</li> </ul> We often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size? And we use be with ages. Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	6					
<ul> <li>9 This is a nice coat, but (mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (mine)</li> <li>10 It's a big car, but (mine)</li> <li>11 It's a big car, but (mine)</li> <li>12 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</li> <li>13 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</li> <li>14 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</li> <li>15 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</li> <li>16 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>17 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>18 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>19 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>10 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>10 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>10 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>11 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>12 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>13 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid of flying?</li> <li>14 Ve often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, hot, ris the set to thot, wrong, wrong, wrong, wrong, a</li></ul>	7	John's good-lo	oking, but ( <b>–</b> ver)	ı nice)		
10 It's a big car, but ( very fast) We often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size? And we use be with ages. Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	8	Anne is at worl	k, but ( <mark>—</mark> in her off	ice)		
Ve often use <b>be</b> with: <b>hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?</b> And we use <b>be</b> with <b>ages</b> . Have you got anything to eat? I' <b>m hungry. I'm cold. It's</b> very <b>hot</b> here in summer. It's late.' 'You' <b>re right.</b> Let's go.' <b>Are</b> you <b>afraid</b> of flying? I' <b>m interested</b> in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	9	This is a nice co	oat, but ( <b>—</b> <i>mine</i> )			
And we use <b>be</b> with <b>ages</b> . Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You' <b>re right.</b> Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'			it ( very fast)			
And we use <b>be</b> with <b>ages</b> . Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You' <b>re right.</b> Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	10	lt's a big car, bu				
and we use be with ages. Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	10	lt's a big car, bu				
t's late.' 'You' <b>re right</b> . Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I' <mark>m interested</mark> in politics. Vhat colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'		-				
lt's late.' 'You' <b>re right</b> . Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I' <mark>m interested</mark> in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	Ve of	ften use <b>be</b> with	: hungry, thirsty, d			
	Ve of and v	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a	: hungry, thirsty, o iges.	cold, hot, right, wror	ng, afraid, intereste	d, what colour?, what size?
Complete the sentences under the pictures.	Ve of and v	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a you got anything	: hungry, thirsty, o nges. g to eat? I'm hung	cold, hot, right, wror ry. l'm cold.	ng, afraid, interested It's very hot here in	d, what colour?, what size? summer.
Complete the sentences under the pictures.	Ve of And v Have It's la	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a you got anything te.' 'You're right	: hungry, thirsty, o nges. g to eat? I'm hung t. Let's go.' Are	cold, hot, right, wron ry. I'm cold. you <mark>afraid</mark> of flying?	ng, afraid, interested It's very hot here in I'm interested	<mark>d, what colour?, what size?</mark> summer. in politics.
	Ve of And v Have It's la What	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a you got anything te.' 'You're right colour is her ha	<mark>: hungry, thirsty, o iges.</mark> g to eat? l'm hung t. Let's go.' Are ir? What size o	cold, hot, right, wror ry. I'm cold. you afraid of flying? are your shoes?	ng, afraid, interested It's very hot here in I'm interested	d, what colour?, what size? summer. in politics.
	Ve of And v Have It's la What	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a you got anything te.' 'You're right colour is her ha	<mark>: hungry, thirsty, o iges.</mark> g to eat? l'm hung t. Let's go.' Are ir? What size o	cold, hot, right, wror ry. I'm cold. you afraid of flying? are your shoes?	ng, afraid, interested It's very hot here in I'm interested	<mark>d, what colour?, what size?</mark> summer. in politics.
	Ve of And v Have It's la What	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a you got anything te.' 'You're right colour is her ha	<mark>: hungry, thirsty, o iges.</mark> g to eat? l'm hung t. Let's go.' Are ir? What size o	cold, hot, right, wror ry. I'm cold. you afraid of flying? are your shoes?	ng, afraid, interested It's very hot here in I'm interested	<mark>d, what colour?, what size?</mark> summer. in politics.
	Ve of and v lave t's la <b>Vhat</b>	ften use <b>be</b> with we use <b>be</b> with a you got anything te.' 'You're right colour is her ha	<mark>: hungry, thirsty, o iges.</mark> g to eat? l'm hung t. Let's go.' Are ir? What size o	cold, hot, right, wror ry. I'm cold. you afraid of flying? are your shoes?	ng, afraid, interested It's very hot here in I'm interested	<mark>d, what colour?, what size?</mark> summer. in politics.

Put in words from the box.

afraid 🗸	cold	colour	hot	hungry	interested	old	right	size	thirsty	wrong	

- He is a big man, but he is ...afraid... of her.
- 1 You think I'm wrong, but I know I'm .....
- 2 'What ..... is that T-shirt?' 'Extra large.'
- 3 What ..... is your car?
- 4 Sorry, I'm not ..... in her problems.
- 5 'It's the 18th today.' 'You're ..... it's the 19th.'
- 6 'Something to drink?' 'No, thanks. I'm not ......'
- 7 'It's ..... in here.' 'Open a window.'
- 8 ls it ..... here in winter?
- 9 'How ..... is your girlfriend?' 'She's 19.'
- 10 'I'm ......' 'Would you like a sandwich?'

### be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.

+	Iwas	you were	he/she/it was	we were	they were	
?	was I?	were you?	was he/she/it?	were we?	were they?	\$7.10
-	I was not	you were not	he/she/it was not	we were not	they were not	avel :
45	Contractio	ns: wasn't, weren	t 199 (1.1 1.1 1.1 1.1 1.1		the second second	
	Where were	you yesterday?	My mother was a si	nger. I <mark>wasn't</mark>	well last week.	
	Put in <i>was</i> o	or were.				
	In summe	r 1990 Iwas	. in Brazil.			
1	'We	very happy 1	o see you yesterday.	And I h	happy to see you.	
2	2 Lunch	OK, but th	e vegetables	not very good.		
3	B I can't find	my keys. They	here this mo	ning.		
4			and we tire	-		
5	5 My grandr	mother	a doctor, and her two	brothers	both doctors to	00.
6			esterday?' 'No, I			
			n?' 'lt yester	-		
		•	The train lat	•		
	<ul> <li>good part</li> <li>people weight</li> <li>teacher fait</li> <li>everybody</li> <li>your was of</li> <li>Tuesday yeight</li> <li>open wince</li> <li>John's brock</li> </ul>	y was the ere the interesting ther your was a y was late driving test when ou where on wer dows why the all ther school was	sas Ann at h			······
			d words from the b	ox. Make sure y	you understand o	actually.
	uctio	nary if necessa	ну. 			
ſ	a teacher	good in En	gland in their hote	l interesting 🗸	late warm	well with An
1	You	wasn't inte		y, it was very bor arrived 10 minute	ing. es early.	

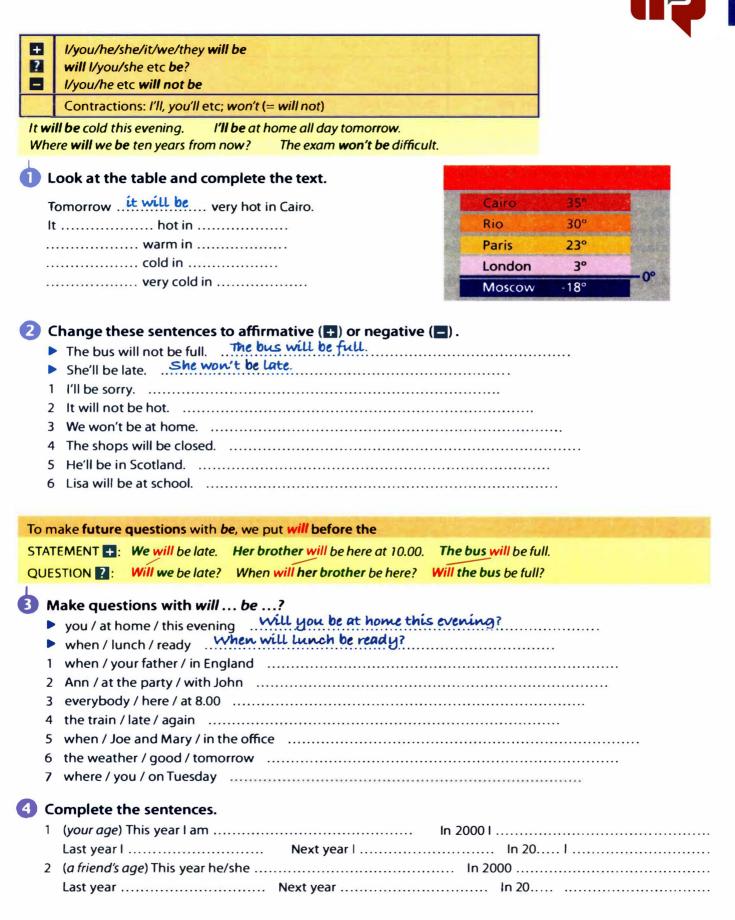
- 3 I ..... yesterday. Actually, I was with Susan.
- 4 The children ...... yesterday. The doctor came to see them.
- 5 We ...... last week. We went to Scotland for a few days.
- 6 The snow ...... at Christmas. We couldn't ski.
- 7 Ann and Peter ..... when I phoned.
- 8 It ..... last night. Actually, it was quite cold.

→ For the present perfect of be (I have been etc), see page 61.

مرجعزبان ايرانيان

www.irLanguage.com

### be: future The bus will be full.



# there is/was There's a dog in the garden.

+	PRESENT			AST		10	
	there is	there are		here was	there were		2.
	is there? there is not	are there? there are not		as there? herewas not	were there? there were no	ht	
+						<i>л</i>	
	Contraction	s: there's; isn't, are	n t, wasn	t, weren t			
lei	ise there is th	ere are etc to say	that sor	nething or so	mehody exists		
		e is, there are etc.		-			
	-	e garden. (NOT A e	-	-			rs f <mark>or you.</mark>
		the fridge? (NOT	-		ere isn't much o		m last night
vere	e there any ph	one calls? (NOT W	ere any p	mone cans?)	There was a	good mi	n last night.
N	lake some s	entences with v	words f	rom the thre	ee boxes, usir	ng there	e is etc.
	There is/are a	lot of	Î D	wator air	grass dogs		in Africa in the USA
	There isn't mu		1 1	water air <u>g</u> elephants tr			in Antarctica in London
	There aren't n		1 1	people com		>	on the moon in 1600
	There isn't/ar			(you think of s			(you think of some more place
	There wasn't/			things)			or times)
1 2 3	There were	a lot of animal en't any cars i					
_	There wer		n 1600	2.			
- 3 4 5 6	There wer	en't any cars i	n 1600	2.			
3 4 5 6	There were	en't any cars i	, we put	2. 			
3 4 5 6	There wern	en't any cars i s with <i>there is</i> etc,	, we put	2. is etc before There were so	there.	Willia	
3 4 5 6 0 m	There were ake question EMENT 1: 7 STION 2: /s	s with there is etc, here is a letter for there a letter for	, we put you. me?	is etc before There were so Were there a	there. ome problems. ny problems?	Willia	m says there are six eggs.
3 4 5 6 0 m	There were ake question EMENT +: 7 STION 2: /s	s with there is etc, here is a letter for t or past questi	, we put you. me? ons wit	is etc before There were so Were there a h there is etc	there. ome problems. ny problems? C.	Willia How I	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there?
3 4 5 6 0 m	There wern ake question EMENT +: 7 STION ?: /s lake present any fruit juic	s with there is etc. here is a letter for there a letter for t or past question to the fridge (plane)	, we put you. me? ons wit resent)	is etc before There were so Were there a h there is etc Is there av	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. y. fruit juice	Willia How I	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge?
3 4 5 6 0 m	There wern ake question EMENT +: 7 STION ?: /s lake present any fruit juic	s with there is etc. here is a letter for there a letter for t or past question to the fridge (plane)	, we put you. me? ons wit resent)	is etc before There were so Were there a h there is etc Is there av	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. y. fruit juice	Willia How I	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge?
3 4 5 6 0 m	There were ake question EMENT : 7 STION : /s lake present any fruit juic any letters fo how many p	s with there is etc, here is a letter for there a letter for t or past question to r me (past)	, we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro	is etc before There were so Were there a h there is etc Is there any re any lette esent)How	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. vy fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How i in the	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?
3 4 5 6 0 m	There wern ake question EMENT 1: 7 STION 2: /s TION 2: /s TIO	s with there is etc, here is a letter for there a letter for t or past questi te in the fridge (pro- pr me (past)	, we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro	is etc before There were so Were there a th there is etc Is there any re any lette esent)How	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. vy fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How I in the	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?
3 4 5 6 0 m 1	ake question EMENT +: 7 STION ?: /s Take present any fruit juic any letters for how many p a doctor her any trains to	s with there is etc. here is a letter for t or past question t	, we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro-	is etc before There were so Were there a th there is etc Is there any re any lette esent)	there. ome problems. ny problems? C. ry fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How I in the Le are th	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?
3 4 5 6 <b>M</b> <b>IAT</b> <b>UES</b> <b>M</b> <b>I</b> 1 2	ake question EMENT : 7 STION : 7 STION : 7 Make present any fruit juic any letters for how many p a doctor her any trains to a special prior	s with there is etc, here is a letter for there a letter for tor past questi tor me (past) heople / in your fa e (present) London from thi ce for students (p	, we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro- is station bast)	is etc before There were so Were there a th there is etc is there any re any lette esent)How	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. vy fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How I in the	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?
3 4 5 6 <b>m</b> <b>rat</b> <b>UES</b> <b>M</b> <b>•</b> • • • • • • • • •	ake question EMENT +: 7 STION 2: /s TION 2: /s TIO	s with there is etc. here is a letter for there a letter for there a letter for tor past questi tor me (past) tor me (past) be ople / in your fa e (present) London from thi ce for students (pass)	, we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro- is station bast) st)	is etc before There were so Were there a th there is etc Is there any re any lette esent)	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. vy fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How I in the	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?
3 4 5 6 <b>M</b> <b>I</b> 1 2 3 4	ake question EMENT +: 7 STION ?: /s Take present any fruit juic any letters for how many p a doctor her any trains to a special prid any mistake much mone	s with there is etc. here is a letter for t or past questing t	, we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro- is station bast) st) count (p	<i>is</i> etc before <i>There were so</i> <i>Were there a</i> <i>Were there a</i> <i>is there any lette</i> <i>is eany lette</i> <i>esent)</i> <i>in (present)</i>	there. ome problems. ny problems? C. ry fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How I in the c are th	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?
3 4 5 6 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	There were ake question EMENT 1: 7 STION 2: 7 Make present any fruit juic any letters for how many p a doctor her any trains to a special prio any mistake much mone how many s	s with there is etc, here is a letter for there a letter for there a letter for tor past questi tor me (past) tor me (past) be ople / in your fa e (present) London from thi ce for students (past) y in your bank accurate tudents / in your bank accurate tu	w 1600 , we put you. me? ons wit resent) vere the amily (pro- is station bast) count (p class (pro-	is etc before There were so Were there a th there is etc is there any lette esent)	there. ome problems. ny problems? c. vy fruit juice rs for me? v many peopl	Willia How I in the	m says there are six eggs. many eggs are there? fridge? here in your family?

### there is: future Will there be cars?

Level 2

there will be	
there will be will there be?	
there will not be	
Contraction: won't (= will not)	The second s
	e a meeting tomorrow?
	n't be any of my friends at the party.
Complete the sentences with <i>there will be</i> and w	ords from the box.
fish flowers food hospital rain 🗸 sun	ten people trouble two new students
I think	
But I think on Tuesday	<i>v</i> .
2 in the class tomorrow.	
3 in our house at the we	eekend.
4 One day, perhaps end	
5 for supper tonight.	
5a new	in our town next year.
7 'Mum, I've broken a window.' '	when your father comes home.
3a lot of	in the garden this summer.
<ul> <li>meeting / tomorrow</li> <li>any trains / Sunday</li> <li>any buses / 4 o'clock in the morning</li> <li>If you get up late tomorrow, / any breakfast</li> <li>anybody / home tomorrow evening</li> <li>any children / the party</li> <li>a French lesson / Monday evening</li> <li>time / have lunch today</li> </ul>	
Write questions about life in the year 2100, with	Will there be?
(cars)	4 (different countries)
(trains)	5 (governments)
2 (computers)	6 (a lot of problems)
3 (good food)	7 (your question)
Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3	3.
	4
inere will be cars. OR inere won't be cars.	
There will be cars. OR. There won't be cars.	5 6

### have I have do you have? I don't have

I/you/we/they have he/she/it has

We can use <i>have</i> to t	talk about <b>possessions</b>	, family (and other) relations	hips and illnesses.
I have a new car.	Nina <b>has</b> two sisters.	Pete has a nice girlfriend.	We all <b>have</b> colds.
We also say that peo	ple have hair, eyes etc;	and that things have parts.	
You have beautiful ey	es. My new car only	y <b>has</b> two doors.	
<ol> <li>Circle the corre</li> <li>John / have to</li> <li>Grace has / ha</li> <li>My father / My</li> <li>We all / Sally ha</li> <li>I have / has a have</li> </ol>	ect form. wo brothers. ave a cold. parents has two cars. ave blue eyes. headache.	4 I see tha 5 <i>You / Par</i> 6 These ho 7 I can't re 8 <i>Susie / Su</i>	t your brother <i>have / has</i> a new girlfriend J/ has very long hair. Duses <i>have / has</i> big rooms. ad this book – it <i>has / have</i> 800 pages. <i>Usie and Mick</i> have a really nice flat. <b>one of your friends or relations has.</b>
1 I have		4	
2 1		5	
3			
(For questions and no statement +	egatives without do, se QUESTION ?	ee page 11.)	
I have the keys.	Do I have the keys?		I do not / don't have the keys.
Joe has a car.	Does Joe have a car?	(NOT Dess los has )	
1			Joe does not / doesn't have a car.
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many friend</li> <li>we / a gardend</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough monit</li> <li>Laura / a boyfriend</li> <li>Why / you / two</li> </ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eric doese We don't dren ? g = prothers or sisters ? ney = iend ? to cars ?	with have. t? r't have many friends.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many friend</li> <li>we / a gardend</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough mond</li> <li>Laura / a boyfriend</li> <li>Why / you / two</li> </ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eric doese We don't	with have. t? r't have many friends.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many frie</li> <li>we / a garden</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough mon</li> <li>Laura / a boyfri</li> <li>Why / you / tw</li> <li>Write about thr</li> <li>relations doesn</li> </ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eric doese We don't We don't dren ? g = prothers or sisters ? ney = iend ? to cars ? ree things that you do 't have.	with have. t? of have many friends. Ion't have, and three thing	gs that one of your friends or
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many frie</li> <li>we / a garden</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough mon</li> <li>Laura / a boyfri</li> <li>Why / you / tw</li> <li>Write about thr</li> <li>relations doesn</li> <li>I / don't have</li> </ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eric doese We don't	with have. t? n't have many friends. Ion't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many frie</li> <li>we / a garden</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough mon</li> <li>Laura / a boyfri</li> <li>Why / you / tw</li> <li>Write about thr</li> <li>relations doesn</li> <li>I don't have</li> <li>2</li> </ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eríc doese We don't dren ? g = prothers or sisters ? ney = iend ? to cars ? ree things that you do 't have.	with have. t? n't have many friends. Ion't have, and three thing	gs that one of your friends or
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many frie</li> <li>we / a garden</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough mon</li> <li>Laura / a boyfri</li> <li>Why / you / tw</li> <li>Write about three</li> <li>relations doesn</li> <li>I don't have</li> <li></li></ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eric doese We don't	with have. t? n't have many friends. Ion't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or
<ul> <li>you / a cat ?</li> <li>Eric / many frie</li> <li>we / a garden</li> <li>they / any child</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>Peter / a cold</li> <li>my aunt / a do</li> <li>Monica / any b</li> <li>I / enough mon</li> <li>Laura / a boyfri</li> <li>Why / you / tw</li> <li>Write about thr</li> <li>relations doesn</li> <li>I don't have</li> <li></li></ul>	s (2) or negatives ( Do you have a ca ends Eric doese We don't dren ? g = prothers or sisters ? ney = iend ? ree things that you do 't have.	with have. t? v't have many friends. Ion't have, and three thing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

مرجعزبان ايرانيان

www.irLanguage.com

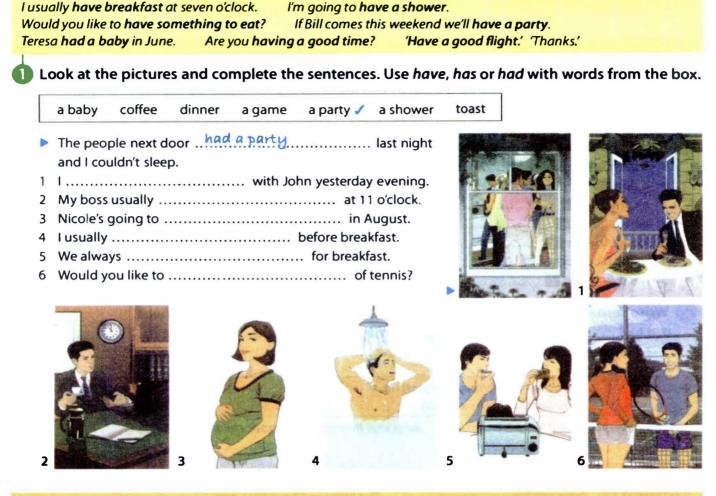
### have: past and future

When I was a student I had an old Volkswagen. Ann had a cold last week.   We make past questions and negatives with did + infinitive (without to).   STATEMENT QUESTION   QUESTION NEGATIVE   Clara had a cold.   Did Clara have a cold? Clara did not / didn't have a cold.   (NOT Did Clara have a cold? Clara did not / didn't have a cold.   (NOT Did Clara have a cold? Clara did not / didn't have a cold.   (NOT Did Clara have a cold? Clara did not / didn't have a cold.   (NOT Did Clara have a bicycle? Did she have a bicycle?   a dog She didw't have a dog.   1 a computer		we/they had	the second s	
We make past questions and negatives with did + infinitive (without to).   TATEMENT   QUESTION   Idra had a cold.   Did Clara have a cold?   Clara did not / didn't have a cold.   (NOT Did Glara when she was six.   a bicycle   Did She have a hougele?   a dog  she didw't have a dog.   a computer   2 very fair hair   3 lots of friends   4 many nice clothes   5 her own room   Wite sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have. 1 I had 3 didn't have (will not) Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have. 1 I had 3 didn't have 3 didn't have (will not) Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have. 1 I had 3 didn't have 3 didn't have 4 didn't have (will not) Index sentences about yourself will not) have ontractions: I'll you'lhe/she/it/we/they will (not) have ontractions: I'll you'lhe/she/it/we/they will have bloe eyes. UESTION : Will John have a car soon? The baby will have blue eyes. UESTION : Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes? Nead the text and complete the sentences about John's future. This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a gilfriend, a suit or acr. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: • more more : Het will have excert wooky: • a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But			Ann had a cold last week.	
TATEMENT       QUESTION       NEGATIVE         Clara had a cold.       Did Clara have a cold? (NOT Did Clara when she was six.       Clara did not / didn't have a cold. (NOT Did Clara when she was six.         > a bicycle       Did She have a bicycle?       Clara did not / didn't have a cold. (NOT Did Clara when she was six.         > a bicycle       Did She have a bicycle?				
TATEMENT       QUESTION       NEGATIVE         Clara had a cold.       Did Clara have a cold? (NOT Did Clara when she was six.       Clara did not / didn't have a cold. (NOT Did Clara when she was six.         > a bicycle       Did She have a bicycle?       Clara did not / didn't have a cold. (NOT Did Clara when she was six.         > a bicycle       Did She have a bicycle?	Ve make past <b>quest</b> i	ons and negatives with did	d + infinitive (without to).	
Clara had a cold.       Did Clara have a cold? (NOT Did Glara have a cold? (NOT Did Glara have a bicycle?       Clara did not / didn't have a cold.         Make sentences about Clara when she was six.       a bicycle Did she have a bicycle?       a dog Did she have a dog.         1 a computer Did she have a dog.       a computer Did she have a dog.       a computer Did she have a dog.         1 a computer Did she have a dog.       a computer Did she have a dog.       a computer Did she have a dog.         2 very fair hair Did she have a dog.       a computer Did she have a dog.       a computer Did she have a dog.         3 lots of friends Did she have a dog.       a many nice clothes Did she have a dog.       a many nice clothes Did she have a dog.         4 many nice clothes Did she have a dog.       3 dog Did she and Did Did She and Did She and Did Did She and Did Did She an				
Image: State of the state				
Make sentences about Clara when she was six.         a bicycle       Did she have a bicycle?         a dog       She didw't have a dog.         1 a computer				
<ul> <li>2 very fair hair .</li> <li>3 lots of friends .</li> <li>4 many nice clothes .</li> <li>5 her own room .</li> <li>Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have.</li> <li>1   had</li></ul>	🕨 a dog 🗖 🔜	ne dídn't have a dog.		
<ul> <li>3 lots of friends</li> <li>4 many nice clothes</li> <li>5 her own room</li> <li>Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have.</li> <li>1 I had</li> <li>2 I didn't have</li> <li>4</li> </ul> UTURE: I/you/he/she/it/we/they will (not) have Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not) One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children. On make future questions with have, we put will before the subject. TATEMENT I John will have a car soon. The baby will have blue eyes. NUESTION Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes? Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future. This year, John doesn't have morey, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: more money Ht will have more wowe(!). a small room a cat in the wow't have a swall room. a diffriend is down't have a swall room. a car is a sinfiriend is down't have a swall room. a suit is a swall is a swall in the intervention. A suit is a swall intervention.	1 a computer 🗖			
<ul> <li>4 many nice clothes</li> <li>5 her own room</li> <li>Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have.</li> <li>1 had</li></ul>	. –			
5 her own room   Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have.   1 1 had   2 I didn't have   2 I didn't have   4    UTURE: I/you/he/she/it/we/they will (not) have contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not) One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children. One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children. One day, everybody will have a car soon. The baby will have blue eyes. CUESTION : Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes? Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future. This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a giftfriend, a suit or a car. He will have more money? He will have more money! a small room in the wow't have a swall room. a a cat in the wow't have a swall room. a cat in the have a cat? a a cat in the have a cat? a sint in the have a cat? a suit in the				
Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have.         1   had       3         2   didn't have       4         UTURE:       I/you/he/she/it/we/they will (not) have         Contractions:       I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)         One day, everybody will have enough food.       Julia says that she won't have children.         O make future questions with have, we put will before the subject.         TATEMENT       : John will have a car soon.         The baby will have blue eyes.         QUESTION       : Will John have a car soon?         Will the baby have blue eyes?         Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future.         This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.         He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year:         more money				
1 1 had 3   2 1 didn't have 4   UTURE: I/you/he/she/it/we/they will (not) have Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not) One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children. On make future questions with have, we put will before the subject. TATEMENT I: John will have a car soon. The baby will have blue eyes. CUESTION I: Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes? Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future. This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: more money I: He will have more wowedy. a small room I: He wow't have a cat? a a cat I: Will be have a cat? a job I: a cat I: Will he have a cat? a a girlfriend I: a job I: a cat I: A swall room. a cat I: A shouse I: a girlfriend I: a swall room. a a girlfriend I: a job I: a cat I: A swall room. a a girlfriend I: a job I: a louge I: A swall room. a a girlfriend I: a job I: a louge I: A swall room. a a girlfriend I: a job I: a louge I: A swall room. a a girlfriend I: A swall room. a a girlfriend I: A swall room. a a girlfriend I: A swall room. a a swall room I: A swall room. A a house I: A swall room. A a pour I: A swall I: A swall room. A a pour I: A swall I: A swall room. A a pour I: A swall I: A swall room. A a pour I: A swall I: A swall room. A a pour I: A swall room. A a swall room I: A swall room. <td>5 her own room</td> <td>· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·</td> <td></td> <td></td>	5 her own room	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)   One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children.   To make future questions with have, we put will before the subject. TATEMENT : John will have a car soon. The baby will have blue eyes. CUESTION : Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes? Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future. This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: more money : He wow't have a small room. a small room : He wow't have a small room. a cat : Mill he have a cat? 1 a job :				
One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children.   O make future questions with have, we put will before the subject.   TATEMENT : John will have a car soon. The baby will have blue eyes.   QUESTION : Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes?   Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future.   This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.   He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year:   more money : He will have more money.   a small room : Hte won't have a small room.   a cat : Will he have a cat?   1 a job :   2 a bicycle :   3 a car :   4 a house :   5 a girlfriend :   6 old clothes :   7 a suit :		he/she/it/we/they will (not)	have	
o make future questions with have, we put will before the subject.   TATEMENT   TATEMENT   Tatement   Total   John will have a car soon?   Will the baby will have blue eyes? <b>Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future.</b> This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: more money He won't have a small room. a a small room He won't have a small room. a cat Mill he have a cat? 1 a job 3 a car 4 a house 5 a girlfriend 6 old clothes 7 a suit			have	
TATEMENT Image: Second system   SUESTION Image: Second system   Image: Second system Second system   Second system Second system   Second system Second system   Image: Seco	Contractions: I'll, you	ı'll etc; won't (= will not)	and provide the states of the	
TATEMENT Image: Second system   SUESTION Image: Second system   Image: Second system Second system   Second system Second system   Second system Second system   Image: Seco	Contractions: I'll, you	ı'll etc; won't (= will not)	and provide the states of the	
Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future.         This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.         He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year:         more money         He will have more money.         a small room         He wow't have a small room.         a cat         Will he have a cat?         1 a job         2 a bicycle         3 a car         4 a house         2 a girlfriend         2 a suit	Contractions: I'll, you One day, everybody w	r'll etc; won't (= will not) il <mark>l have</mark> enough food. Julia	a says that she <b>won't have</b> children.	
Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future.         This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.         He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year:         more money         He will have more money.         a small room         He wow't have a small room.         a cat         Will he have a cat?         1 a job         2 a bicycle         3 a car         4 a house         2 a girlfriend         2 a suit	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody w To make <b>future quest</b>	r'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will	a says that she <b>won't have</b> children. I before the subject.	
This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: more money He will have more money. A small room He won't have a small room. A cat a cat b cold clothes a cat b cold clothes b cold clothes	Contractions: I'll, you One day, everybody w To make future quest	r'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon.	a says that she <b>won't have</b> children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes.	
He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year: more money  He will have more money. a small room  He won't have a small room. a cat  Mill he have a cat? a bicycle  a bicycle  a bicycle  a bicycle  bic	Contractions: I'll, you One day, everybody we To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J	r'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon?	a says that she <b>won't have</b> children. <b>I before the subject.</b> The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes?	
<ul> <li>more money H He will have more money.</li> <li>a small room He won't have a small room.</li> <li>a cat I will he have a cat?</li> <li>a job H</li> <li>a bicycle A</li> <li>a car H</li> <li>a house I</li> <li>a girlfriend I</li> <li>cold clothes I</li> <li>7 a suit H</li> </ul>	Contractions: I'll, you One day, everybody we To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an	r'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentence	a says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future.	
<ul> <li>a small room</li></ul>	Contractions: I'll, you One day, everybody we To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h	a says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.	
<ul> <li>a cat ?</li> <li>a job +</li> <li>a bicycle =</li> <li>a car +</li> <li>a house ?</li> <li>a girlfriend ?</li> <li>old clothes =</li> <li>7 a suit +</li> </ul>	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody wi To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? I complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a g	a says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year:	
1 a job +         2 a bicycle -         3 a car +         4 a house ?         5 a girlfriend ?         6 old clothes -         7 a suit +	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody we To make future quest STATEMENT 1: John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room More money	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? I d complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a g He will have more w	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? The baby have blue eyes?	
<ul> <li>2 a bicycle =</li> <li>3 a car +</li> <li>4 a house ?</li> <li>5 a girlfriend ?</li> <li>6 old clothes =</li> <li>7 a suit +</li> </ul>	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody we To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room More money : a small room	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? I complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a c He will have more He won't have a sm	<b>I before the subject.</b> <b>The baby will have blue eyes.</b> <b>Will the baby have blue eyes?</b> <b>Ces about John's future.</b> House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	
<ul> <li>3 a car</li></ul>	Contractions: 1'll, you Difference of the second s	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? I d complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a c He will have more He won't have a sm II he have a cat?	<b>I before the subject.</b> The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? <b>Ces about John's future.</b> House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: MONEY. All room.	
<ul> <li>4 a house ?</li> <li>5 a girlfriend ?</li> <li>6 old clothes =</li> <li>7 a suit +</li> </ul>	Contractions: 1'll, you Die day, everybody wi To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room More money : a small room a cat ?	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a g He will have more will have more will have more will He wow't have a small the have a cat?	A says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	
5 a girlfriend ? 6 old clothes – 7 a suit +	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody wi To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room b more money b a small room b a cat ? 1 a job : 2 a bicycle	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? I d complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a g He will have more will he won't have a sm II he have a cat?	<b>I before the subject.</b> <b>I before the subject.</b> <b>The baby will have blue eyes.</b> <b>Will the baby have blue eyes?</b> <b>Ces about John's future.</b> House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	
6 old clothes =	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody we To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room More money : a small room a cat ? 1 a job : 2 a bicycle 3 a car :	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? A complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a c He will have more w He wow't have a sm II he have a cat?	A says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	
7 a suit +	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody with To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text and This year, John doe He has a small room More money : a small room a cat ? 1 a job : 2 a bicycle 3 a car : 4 a house ?	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a g He will have more will the won't have a sm I he have a cat?	A says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	
	Contractions: 1'll, you One day, everybody wi To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text an This year, John doe He has a small room b a small room b a cat ? 1 a job : 2 a bicycle : 3 a car : 4 a house ? 5 a girlfriend ?	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? I complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a c He will have more He won't have a sm II he have a cat?	A says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	
	Contractions: 1'll, you Dive day, everybody with To make future quest STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will J Read the text and This year, John doe He has a small room More money : a small room a cat ? 1 a job : 2 a bicycle : 3 a car : 4 a house ? 5 a girlfriend ? 6 old clothes :	I'll etc; won't (= will not) ill have enough food. Julia tions with have, we put will will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentence esn't have money, a job, a h m, a bicycle, old clothes, a g He will have more will He wow't have a small the have a cat?	A says that she won't have children. I before the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? Ces about John's future. House, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: Money. All room.	

# irlanguage

### have: actions He's having a shower.

We use *have* in a lot of common expressions to talk about actions.



#### We make simple present and past questions and negatives with do/does and did.

We don't have parties very often. Did you have a good journey?

**Does** Kurt **have** eggs for breakfast? We did**n't have** a holiday.

#### Make questions (🔁) and negatives (🚍).

- (good time ?) 'We went to Paris at the weekend'...'Did you have a good time?'
- (breakfast =) I got up late this morning, so I. dídn't have breakfast.
- 1 (lunch 👔) What time ...... on Sundays?
- 2 (good trip -) Ann was in America last week.
- 3 (shower -) The hotel bathroom was very dirty, so 1
- 4 (good flight 🚺) Welcome to England, Mr García.
- 5 (good game 2) 'Mark and I played tennis this morning.'
- 6 (coffee -) ..... before I go to bed.

#### LEARN THESE COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH HAVE (USE A DICTIONARY IF NECESSARY)

have breakfast, lunch, dinner, (a cup of) tea/coffee, a drink, something to eat/drink have eggs/toast for breakfast, have fish for lunch etc have a wash, a shower, a bath have a good time, a bad day, a nice evening, a party, a holiday, a game have a good flight/trip/journey etc have a conversation have a baby have without do: have got Have you got a cat?



I/you/we/they have gothe/she/ithave l/you etc got?has he/sh	t <mark>has got</mark> he/it got?	
	has not got	
Contractions: I've, he's etc; haven't, he	asn't	
We often use <i>got</i> with <i>have</i> , especially in s This does not change the meaning: we us • <i>I have got</i> is the same as <i>I have</i> . • <i>Have you got</i> ? is the same as <i>Do you ha</i> • <i>She hasn't got</i> is the same as <i>She doesn</i>	e have/has got like have/has we? (We don't use do/does wi	to talk about <b>possession</b> etc.
I've got a cat. Has she got a dog? (NOT I haven't got a car. She's got a sister.	Does she have got) You' <b>ve got</b> beautiful eyes.	Have you got a cold?
<ul> <li>Write about John's possessions etc.</li> <li>a bicycle: </li> <li>suits: 2</li></ul>	possessions etc, and thre 4 5	·····
To make questions (?) with have got, we p	out have/has before the subj	ect
STATEMENT + : / have got a cold.	Harry 's got a fast car.	Amy and Juan have got tickets.
QUESTION ?: Have you got a cold?	Has Harry got a fast car?	Have Amy and Juan got tickets?
<ul> <li>Beth and Tom have got a lot of mo</li> <li>they / big house Have they and</li> <li>they / big garden</li> <li>Beth / good job</li> <li>Tom / big car</li> <li>they / plane</li> <li>they / any horses</li> </ul>	t a big house?	

 Past forms with got (I had got etc) are unusual. We don't use got in the future.

 She had a fast car. (MORE NATURAL THAN She had got a fast car.)
 I will have. (NOT I will have got.)

# be and have: more practice

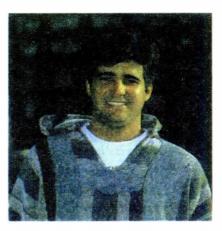
1 Contractions. Rewrite these sentences with con	tractions.
John is tired. John's tired.	5 She will not be late.
1 They were not ready.	6 You have got my keys.
2 We are all here.	7 I have not got much time.
3 I am not a student.	8 Franz does not live here.
4 Where is your house?	
<b>2</b> Contractions. Rewrite these sentences without o	
I wasn't ready. I was not ready.	5 She's got two sisters.
1 Tom's late.	6 She's right.
2 I won't have time.	7 Emma's got beautiful eyes.
3 Anna's hungry.	8 There's a letter for you.
4 He doesn't have a car.	
<b>Be.</b> Make questions and negatives. Use negative	e contractions.
It's summer. (hot) Is it hot? No, it's not hot.	
-	
4 Have: questions and negatives. Complete the se	entences with <i>do</i> or <i>does</i> .
Ido not have much free time.	4 you have my new address?
Does Carol have a boyfriend?	5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.
1 Dogs not have wings.	6 Marian't speak English.
2 England have any high mountains?	7 In't have a headache any more.
3 Annn't have a job just now.	8 your street have any shops?
C There is Dut in comparisons from the here	
5 <i>There is</i> . Put in expressions from the box.	
there's 🖌 there are there was there weren't	there will be there won't be
	will there be
There's somebody at the door	
1 I think an election ne	ext year.
2 I'm hungry anything	to eat?
3a fascinating program	nme on TV last night.
4 How many people in	your family?
5 I wanted to buy shoes, but	any nice ones in the shops.
6 many people at the m	neeting yesterday?
7 two policemen at the	door. They want to talk to you.
8 I'm not going to the party	any interesting people there.
9a phone call for me wl	bilo Lwas oùt?

10 ..... anybody in the office tomorrow?

### 6 Grammar in a text. Read the text, and then write about yourself.

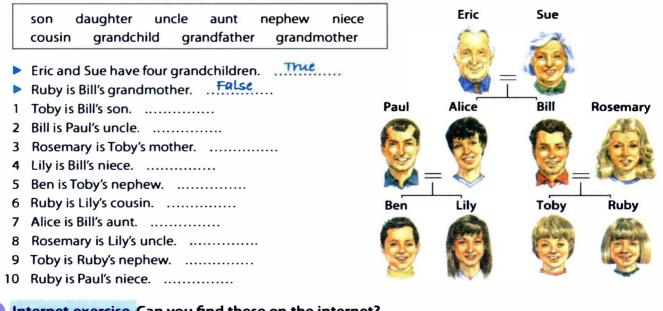
His name's Noureddin. He's from Rabat, in Morocco. He's a student. He's 21. He isn't married. He's got four brothers and two sisters. He's interested in music and politics. He isn't interested in sport.

My name's .....



### **7** Grammar in a text. Put in affirmative (**H**) or negative (**H**) forms of be or have.

**(B)** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: relations. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the family tree and write 'true' or 'false' against the sentences.



#### **9** Internet exercise. Can you find these on the internet?

The name of a song with the words "there is a house"
 The name of a song with the words "once I had"
 The name of a song with the words "have a party"

### be and have: revision test

### **(**) Circle the correct form.

- Is / Are your brother at home?
- 1 Where / Who / How is the station?
- 2 *I/We* was in London yesterday.
- 3 Are / Have you thirsty?
- 4 Alice is / has three brothers.
- 5 My sister is / has 25 today.
- 6 'I am / have cold.' 'Put on a sweater.'
- 7 I want / won't be here next week.
- 8 I am / are tired.
- 9 Emma is / has very happy today.
- 10 There is / are a new secretary in the company.

### Correct (✓) or not (✗)?

- I don't had breakfast today. .....
- 1 l'm not ..... l'amn't .....
- he's not ..... he isn't .....
- 2 Do you got a bicycle? .....
- 3 Had you a good journey? .....
- 4 Jane is having a shower. .....

- 11 Did you have / had a good journey?
- 12 Do / Does your father have a car?
- 13 Do / Have you got a cold?
- 14 Will be you / Will you be at the party tonight?
- 15 I amn't / I'm not ready.
- 16 'Why / Who / How are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
- 17 Did you have / has a good holiday?
- 18 It's my birthday next week. I will be / will have 18.
- 19 Does John have / has a brother?
- 20 How many people is / are there in your family?
- 5 My friends was late. .....
- 6 Is there any eggs in the fridge? .....
- 7 I don't have many friends. .....
- 8 I do have two brothers. .....
- 9 There won't be a lesson tomorrow. .....
- 10 I not had breakfast today. .....

#### Change the sentences to questions or negatives.

	It's Tuesday It isn't Tuesday OR It's not Tuesday.
1	There's a taxi outside. 👔
2	Chris has got a headache. 👔
3	Joe has a car. 🗖
4	Ann had a meeting yesterday. 👔
5	I had coffee for breakfast. 🗖
6	There will be an English lesson tomorrow. 👔
7	l'm hungry. 🗖
8	Petra's got a new car. 🗖
9	She had a nice time at the party. 👔
10	The house has got a big garden. 👔

### 4 Make present (PR), past (PA) or future (F) questions.

	Peter / Irish (PR) Is Peter Irish?
	Jane / have breakfast this morning (PA) Did Jane have breakfast this morning?
1	Rosemary / from London (PR)
2	we / early (F)
3	Sarah / at home (PA)
4	Karim / have a cold (PR)
5	your car / fast (PR)
6	the manager / in America (F)
7	Tim and Anna / students (PA)
8	What time / you have lunch today (F)
9	you / here tomorrow (F)
10	those people / American (PA)

### **SECTION 2** present tenses

### grammar summary

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work, she works, he doesn't work etc PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I am working, she is working, he isn't working etc

#### English has two 'present' tenses.

• We use the simple present mostly to talk about things that are always true, and things that happen repeatedly.

Dogs eat meat. My grandmother lives in Brighton. I work every Saturday.

• We use the **present progressive** (or 'present continuous') to talk about things that are happening just **around the time when we speak**.

Look! The dog's eating your shoe. I'm working hard these days.

We can also use the present progressive to talk about the future (see page 38).
 I'm seeing Lucy tomorrow.



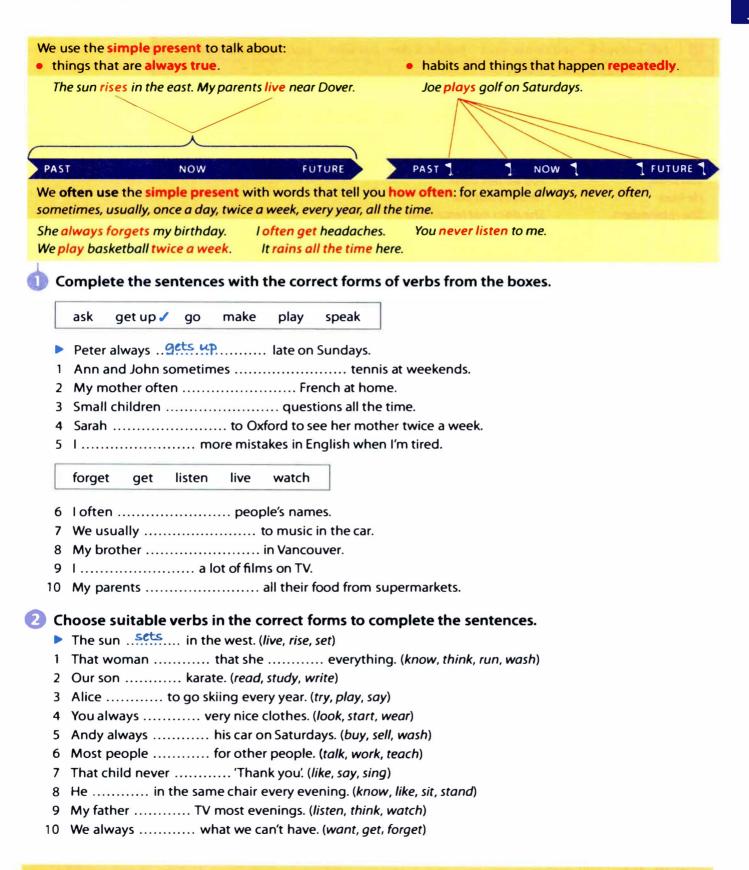
# simple present\* affirmative I work; you work; she works

	l work I live	you wor you live		e/she/it woi e/she/it live		e work e live	they w they l					
	l stop	you stop		e/she/it stop		e stop	they s					
ou l le <b>s</b>	rk in a ban live near n <b>top</b> the les	ny brother. isons at 5.0	She Ю. Т	n a restaurai e <b>lives</b> in Liv The train <b>sto</b>	erpool.	ς.						
m -s, ex	iost verbs , -sh, -ch, - kceptions	+ -s x: + -es	work - pass - go	→ works → passes goes do	wash —	washes	teach	$n \rightarrow t$		mix -	→ mi	xes
	Catch 🗸			drink	fetch	fix	live	miss	DU	ısh		
	read		moke	stand	start	touch	wat		wish	writ	e	
		omes Itches	•		••••							
vc	BS ENDING	IN -Y -ay,	-еу, -оу	;-uy: +-		say —						
	BS ENDING wel + y ponsonant Vrite the	IN -Y -ay, + <b>y</b> -dy, he/she/it	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms.	-ry, etc: -y								1
	BS ENDING wel + y ponsonant Vrite the	IN -Y -ay, + <b>y</b> -dy,	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms.	-ry, etc: -y				stay	stu	ıdy	try	]
vc co W	BS ENDING wel + y ponsonant Vrite the	IN -Y -ay, + <b>y</b> -dy, he/she/it	- <i>ey</i> , - <i>oy</i> - <i>ly, -py,</i> forms. copy	-ry, etc: -y	→ -ies	fly →	flies	stay	stu	ıdy	try	]
VC CO W -Y	BS ENDING	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / c buys carries	- <i>ey</i> , - <i>oy</i> - <i>ly</i> , - <i>py</i> , forms. copy	-ry, etc: -y enjoy	→ -ies	fly →	flies play 					]
vc co W - + - P	SSENDING	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / o buys carries ords in th	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy	enjoy	→ -ies	fly →	play  Circle	the co	  orrect a	answe	ers.	] 
vc co W - + - P	SSENDING Some + y Sonsonant Vrite the buy ✓ -S: Y → -IES: Put the we eats dog Your o	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / o buys carries	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much	enjoy	→ -ies	fly →	flies play Circle We You	the co )/ My fr	orrect i <i>iend</i> alw	<b>answe</b> ways we	ers. ear old	lothes.
vc co W + -γ P	BS ENDING Dwel + y Donsonant Vrite the buy ✓ -S: Y → -IES: Put the we eats dog Your Ø live I tha	IN -Y -ay, +y -dy, he/she/it carry / buys carries ords in the too your log cats to t house in	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much	enjoy	fry fry	fly> marry 	flies play Circle We You 1 We	e the co )/ My fr John all / Th	orrect a iend alw ) always e boss t	<b>answe</b> ways we s wears hinks y	ers. ear old nice c vou're v	
vc co W + -γ P	BS ENDING wel + y onsonant Vrite the buy ✓ -S: Y → -IES: Y → -IES: Y → LES: Put the we eats dog live I tha	IN -Y -ay, +y -dy, he/she/it carry / buys carries ords in the too your log cats to t house in	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much	enjoy ect order.	fry fry	fly> marry 	play Play Circle We You 1 We 2 1/C	the co )/ My fr ( John all / Th Catherin	orrect i <i>iend</i> alw	answe ways we s wears hinks y a new	ers. ear old nice c vou're v job.	lothes.
vc co W  P P ] 1 2	SSENDING	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / o buys carries ords in th too your log cats t t house in n in a worl	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much co much	enjoy ect order.	→ -ies	fly	flies play Circle We You 1 We 2 I/C 3 Bre 4 And	e <b>the c</b> o )/ My fr all / Th all / Th Catherin ad / Bo dy / And	orrect a iend alw ) always e boss t ne want oks cost dy and F	answe ways we s wears hinks y a new ts a lot. Pete sing	ers. ear old nice c vou're v job. gs very	lothes. wonderful. y well.
vc co W -γ P P 1	SENDING wel + y ponsonant Vrite the buy ✓ S: Y> -IES: Y> -IES: Y> IES: Y> IES: Y> Dur O live I tha bank Kir badly vio	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / buys carries ords in th too your log eats t t house in n in a worl	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much co much co much	enjoy ect order.	fry i	fly	flies play Circle We You 1 We 2 I/C 3 Bre 4 And 5 Sop	e <b>the c</b> o )/ My fr (John all / Th Catherin ad / Bo dy / And ohy / So	orrect a iend alw ) always e boss ti be want oks cost dy and F ophy and	answe ways we s wears hinks y a new ts a lot. Pete sing d lan lik	ers. ear old nice c vou're v job. gs very	lothes. wonderful. y well.
vc co W  P P ] 1 2	SENDING wel + y ponsonant Vrite the buy ✓ S: Y> -IES: Y> -IES: Y> IUT the we eats dog Your G live I tha bank Kir badly vio	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / buys carries ords in th too your log eats t t house in n in a worl	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much oo mu ss he very	enjoy ect order. ch.	fry i	fly	flies play Circle We You 1 We 2 I/C 3 Bre 4 And 5 Sop 6 You	e the co )/ My fr all / Th Catherin ad / Bo dy / And ohy / So u / She c	orrect a iend alw ) always e boss the want oks cost dy and F ophy and drive to	answe ways we s wears hinks y a new ts a lot. Pete sing d lan lik o fast.	ear old nice c ou're v job. gs very ce parti	lothes. wonderful. y well. ies.
vc co W + -γ P P 1 2 3 4	SSENDING Some + y Sonsonant Vrite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ → -IES: ✓ → -IES: ✓ → IES: ✓ → IES: ✓ → IES: ✓ → Source live I tha badly vie Scotlance	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / buys carrie ords in the too your log eats t t house in n in a worl olin plays t I those fro	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much co much co muc	enjoy ect order. ch.	> -ies	fly> marry 	flies play Circle We You We You 1 We 2 I/C 3 Bre 4 And 5 Sop 6 You 7 Out	e <b>the c</b> o )/ My fr all / Th Catherin ad / Bo dy / Ano dy / Ano dy / So o / She c r cat / C	orrect a liend alw always e boss to be want oks cost dy and F ophy and drive to Dur cats	answe ways we s wears hinks y a new ts a lot. Pete sine d lan lik o fast. never o	ers. ear old nice c you're v job. gs very ke parti	lothes. wonderful. y well. ies.
vc co W + -γ P P 1 2 3 4	SENDING	IN -Y -ay, + y -dy, he/she/it carry / buys carrie ords in the too your log eats t t house in n in a worl olin plays t I those fro	-ey, -oy -ly, -py, forms. copy  e corre much co much co muc	enjoy enjoy ect order. ch.	> -ies	fly> marry 	flies play Circle We You 1 We 2 I/C 3 Bre 4 And 5 Sop 6 You 7 Out 8 Tha	e the co )/ My fi all / Th Catherin ad / Bo dy / And dy / And dy / So dy / So o hy / So o t cat / C at child	orrect a iend alw ) always e boss th be want oks cost dy and F dy and F ophy and drive to Our cats / Childre	answe ways we s wears hinks y a new ts a lot. Pete sing d lan lik o fast. never c en mak	ers. ear old nice c ou're v job. gs very ce parti catche: catche:	lothes. wonderful. y well. ies. s mice.

Level

\* Also called 'present simple'

### simple present: use I work in a bank.



We do not use a present tense to talk about **how long** something has lasted (see page 65). I have known her since 1990. (NOT I know her since 1990.)

### simple present negatives I don't know. She doesn't ski.

-I do not work vou do not work he/she/it does not work we/they do not work Contractions: don't, doesn't We make simple present negatives (=) with do/does not + infinitive (without to). NEGATIVE STATEMENT + I know I do not know (NOT + know not) You think You do not think He likes He does not like She remembers She does not remember It helps It does not help We want We do not want They understand They do not understand

### Make negative sentences. Use do not or does not.

	I play chess. (cards) do not play cards.
1	You speak very good Arabic. (Chinese)
2	Bill plays the piano very well. ( <i>guitar</i> )
3	We agree about most things. ( <i>holidays</i> )
4	Alan and John live near me. (George and Andrew)
5	My father writes novels. (poetry)
6	Barbara works in London. ( <i>live</i> )
7	Henry likes old books. ( <i>parties</i> )

### 2 Make negative sentences. Use don't or doesn't.

- 1 The train stops at Bristol. (Cardiff) It .....
- 2 I like jazz. (pop music) .....
- 3 Peter remembers names very well. (faces)
- 4 We know our Member of Parliament. (his wife)
- 5 Alice teaches engineering. (*mathematics*) .....
- 6 The children play football on Mondays. (*hockey*) .....
- 7 The shops open on Sunday mornings. (afternoons)

### Complete the negative sentences, using words from the box. You can use do not / does not or don't / doesn't, as you like.

fish in Britain much petrol ✓ much tennis on Sundays Russian your phone number

- My car / use My car doesn't use much petrol.
- 1 Our cat / like
- 2 Melinda / speak .....
- 3 I/remember .....
- 4 Oranges / grow .....
- 5 The postman / come .....
- 6 We / play .....

### Choose one verb to make each sentence negative.

- It ...doesn't snow ..... very often in San Francisco. (snow, sing, play)
- 1 I like football, but I ..... cricket at all. (think, like, remember)
- 2 She lives in Japan, but she ..... a word of Japanese. (sing, work, speak)
- 3 I'm sorry I ...... your name. (eat, remember, work)
- 4 He works in New York, but I ..... what he does. (know, use, come)
- 5 Mary's really tired, but she ..... to go to bed. (help, want, walk)
- 6 We ..... a big flat just one bedroom. (work, play, want)
- 7 Phil ..... very hard, but he makes a lot of money. (work, stand, stop)
- 8 Gemma's parents ...... I'm the right man for their daughter. (write, read, think)

### 5 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: games

### Look at the table, and write five or more sentences like this:

### Ann plays tennis, but she doesn't play cards.

.....

			Ø		6				
	tennis	football	rugby	basketball	baseball	chess	cards	hockey	badminton
Ann	1	×	×	1	×	×	×	×	1
Pete	×	1	×	×	× x	1	1	×	×
Joe	1	×	1	1	×	×	1	1	1
Sarah	×	1	×	×	1	1	×	×	×

#### 6 What games do you play? And what games do you not play?

NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115). Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't understand me.) She never phones me. (NOT She doesn't never phone me.) 2 do I work? do you work? does he/she/it work? do we work? do they work?

STATEMENT +	QUESTION ?
Iknow	Do I know?
You think	Do you think? (NOT <del>Think you?</del> )
He like <mark>s</mark>	Does he like? (NOT <del>Does he likes?</del> )
She remembers	Does she remember?
It helps	Does it help?
We want	Do we want?
They understand	Do they understand?

#### Put in do or does.

Þo	you know my friend Andy?	3	
	this bus go to Cambridge?	4	

- 1 ..... Ann want to come with us?
- 2 ..... your parents live near here?
- ..... you speak Chinese?
- 4 ..... Sarah go to school on Saturdays?
- 5 ..... this shop sell stamps?
- 6 ..... Bill and Harry play golf?

#### Make questions.

They smoke. Do they smoke?
Ashley teaches French. Does Ashley teach French?
The Oxford bus stops here.
The teachers know her.
You play the piano.
John works in a restaurant.
This train stops at York.
We need more eggs.
Fatima likes parties.
Peter speaks Spanish well.

#### Do you know all these question words?

what when where who why how how much how many what time What do you think? (NOT What think you?) Where does Lucy live? (NOT Where lives Lucy?) How much does this cost? (NOT How much this costs?) What time does the train leave? (NOT What time the train leaves?)

### 3 Choose the correct subject.

- How much does ...the ticket ...... cost? (the ticket / the tickets)
- 1 Where do ..... live? (your daughter / your children)
- 2 What time does ...... start? (the lesson / the lessons)
- 3 What do ..... want? (you / the girl)
- 4 When does ..... finish? (the holidays / the holiday)
- 5 Why do ..... talk so fast? (that woman / those women)
- 6 What do ..... think of the new boss? (you / she)

→ For questions without do, like Who lives here?, see pages 108–109.

### 4 Choose the correct question word and put in *do* or *does*.

	re why	
How much does the ticket cost?		
your children live?		
2 she want?		
3 the holidays start?		
4 the teacher talk so fast?		
5 he speak?		
6 you pronounce this word?		
Make questions.		
Where / she live? Where does she live?		
1 What / you want?		
2 What / this word mean?		
3 What time / the film start?		
4 How much / those shoes cost?		
5 Why / she need money?		
6 How / this camera work?		
7 Where / you buy your meat?		
3 Who / you want to see?		
v do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi		
question into each conversation.w do you pronounce this word?How do you spell that?WIw much does it cost / do they cost?Do you know Anna?WIwat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?')How do you do? (= 'I'm provide the second sec	<i>here do you</i> bleased to m	live/work? leet you.')
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W hat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p	<i>here do you</i> bleased to m	live/work?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W pat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? leet you:) h <mark>cert/class start?</mark>
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W hat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p hat time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? leet you:) h <mark>cert/class start?</mark>
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W at do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p at time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does 1 ' 'With one c and double s.' 2 '	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? leet you:) hcert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W hat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p hat time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does 1 ' 'With one c and double s.' 2 ' 'I'm a taxi driver.'	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wh w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W hat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p hat time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does 1 ' 'With one c and double s.' 2 ' 'I'm a taxi driver.' 3 '	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W hat do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p hat time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does 1 ' 'With one c and double s.' 2 ' 'I'm a taxi driver.' 3 ' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.'	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Why w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W at do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p at time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does '	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
<ul> <li>w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Why much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? What do you do? (= 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm protect time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does</li> <li>1 '</li></ul>	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W at do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p at time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does '	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? When wouch does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? We hat do you do? (= 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm privat time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does ' 'With one c and double s.' 'With one c and double s.' ''' a taxi driver.' '''' a taxi driver.' '''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W at do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p at time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does ' ' 'With one c and double s.' 2 ' 'I'm a taxi driver.' 3 ' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 4 ' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the morning.' 5 ' '€500.'	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? Wi w much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? W hat do you do? (= 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm p hat time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does ''With one c and double s.' ' 'With one c and double s.' ' 'I'm a taxi driver.' ' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' ' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' ' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the morning.' ' '€500.' ' 'No, but I know her sister.'	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?
w do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? When would be does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? We had do you do? (= 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm predict time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? '''' time train/bus/plane leave/arrive?''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''	here do you pleased to m the film/cor	live/work? neet you.') ncert/class start?

### simple present: more practice

+ I/you/we/they work he/she/it works ? do l/you/we/they work? does he/she/it work? -I/you/we/they do not work he/she/it does not work Contractions: don't, doesn't Circle the correct answers. 1 Where do / does your sister live? 6 The post office doesn't open / opens on Sundays. 2 My cat / My cats don't like fish. 7 When does your holiday start / start your holiday? 8 My parents both play / plays golf. 3 This car don't / doesn't go very fast. 4 This train stop / stops at every station. 9 That café / Those cafés stays open all night. 5 Why do English people / English people do 10 Her letters don't say / to say very much. drink so much tea? 2 Make sentences. Anu (live) in Birmingham + Anu lives in Birmingham. > you (speak) Chinese ? ... Do you speak Chinese? ..... Sarah (like) classical music Sarah doesn't like classical music. 1 + (*like*) getting up early **\_\_**..... 2 you (*want*) something to drink **?** 3 Dan (*play*) football on Saturdays + ..... 4 you (*remember*) her phone number **?** 5 that clock (work) = ..... 6 she often (*fly*) to Paris on business 🕂 ..... 7 it (*rain*) much here in summer 8 elephants (eat) meat 👔 ..... 9 he (think) he can sing ? 10 we (need) a new car 🛨 ..... 3 Make sentences like the ones in Exercise 2. Write about yourself. 1 | like ..... 2 I don't like ..... 3 | want ..... 4 I don't want 5 I need ...... 6 I don't need ..... 7 loften ..... 8 | never ..... 9 Lalways



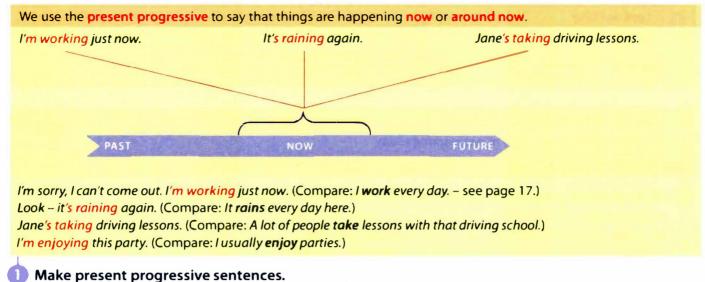
CBarsott.

# present progressive\*: forms *I'm reading; I'm not working.*

U		
	_	
	1	
	~	
	•••	
	_	

-	I am not working	you <b>are</b> working you <b>are not</b> working	he/she/it <b>is</b> working he/she/it <b>is not</b> working e	we/they <b>are</b> working tc
			you aren't, he isn't etcing ing?, When's iting? etc	Server The la
			you are etc - see page 2) +	ing.
	is studying Russian.	I'm not working today		
us us	se contractions (I'm,	, John's, isn't etc) in conve	ersation and informal writing	9.
			and negative (🗖) senten	ices.
	The lesson is sta	irting	now. (start 🛨)	
		king tod		
1		to		
2				
3				
		a goo		
		to		
8	1	very ł	nappy today. (feel 🔸)	
9	Peter	t	o school this week. ( <i>go</i> 🗖)	
0	We	a b	it of English. ( <i>learn</i> 🕂)	
W	TO MAKE - <i>ING</i> FORM! ost verbs: + -ing	work> wor	rk <b>ing</b> sleep —> sleeping	Lookatione provines and i
w mo		work> wor	the second s	Long of the provines and i ballets fright drink
W ver ie W bre go	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eakbreaking live	+ -ing work → work make → ma lie → lying s of these verbs. clean	nking hope — hoping ne die play	enjoy
W ver ie bre go sta	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eakbreaking live	work → work make → mo lie → lying of these verbs. clean con make vash write	nking hope — hoping ne die play	enjoy
W ver ie bre go sta	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak <u>breaking</u> int investing art w	work $\rightarrow$ work $\rightarrow$ work make $\rightarrow$ modeline $ie \rightarrow lying$ s of these verbs. clean	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopping (NOT <del>stoping</del> ) steeping wait → wa	run → running iting (NOT <del>waitting</del> ) help → helping
	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak breaking of LING (stopping, runn) e vowel + one conso double consonants to vowels: don't double p consonants: don't ly double in STRESS	work> wor make -> ma lie -> lying s of these verbs. clean con e make vash write ing etc) onant t + -ing stop> ble sleep double want iED syllables beGIN	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopping (NOT <del>stoping</del> ) sleeping wait → wa wanting (NOT <del>wantting</del> )	run → running iting (NOT <del>waitting</del> ) help → helping
	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak breaking ( art	work> wor make -> ma lie -> lying s of these verbs. clean	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopping (NOT <del>stoping</del> ) sleeping wait → wa wanting (NOT <del>wantting</del> ) → beginning BUT HAPpen –	<pre> enjoy sing sing iting (NOT waitting) help → helping happening</pre>
	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak breaking of art	work> wor make -> ma lie -> lying s of these verbs. clean con e make vash write ing etc) onant t + -ing stop> ble sleep double want iED syllables beGIN s of these verbs. feel	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopping (NOT stoping) sleeping wait → wa wanting (NOT <del>wantting</del> ) → beginning BUT HAPpen – . put h	enjoy sing run → running iting (NOT <del>waitting</del> ) help → helping → happening
	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak breaking live art	work> wor make> mac lie> lying s of these verbs. clean con make vash write ing etc) onant t + -ing stop> ble sleep double want iED syllables beGIN s of these verbs. feel	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopping (NOT <del>stoping</del> ) sleeping wait → wa wanting (NOT <del>wantting</del> ) → beginning BUT HAPpen –	<pre>enjoy sing run → running iting (NOT waitting) help → helping happening</pre>
W ver ie bre go sta UB bre go sta UB bre go sta UB bre go sta	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak breaking b ive art	work> wor make -> ma lie -> lying s of these verbs. clean	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopp ing (NOT stoping) sleep ing wait → wa wanting (NOT wantting) beginn ing BUT HAPpen → put h 	<pre>enjoy sing run → running iting (NOT waitting) help → helping happening</pre>
W ver je bro go sta UB ono sta	ost verbs: + -ing bs ending in -e: (k) changes to y + -ing rite the -ing forms eak breaking forms eak breaking forms LING (stopping, runn) e vowel + one conse double consonants to vowels: don't double p consonants: don't ly double in STRESS rite the -ing forms t	work> wor make> mac lie> lying s of these verbs. clean con e make vash write ing etc) onant t + -ing stop> ble sleep double want iED syllables beGIN s of these verbs. feel sit talk	aking hope → hoping ne die play stopping (NOT stoping) sleeping wait → wa wanting (NOT wantting) beginning BUT HAPpen - put h 	<pre>enjoy sing run → running iting (NOT waitting) help → helping happening</pre>

### present progressive: use I'm working just now.



	Emma / read / the newspaper. Emma's reading the newspaper.
1	The baby / cry / again.
2	It / snow / hard.
3	You / look / very beautiful today.
4	Your coffee / get / cold
5	I / play / a lot of football this year.
6	We / wait / for a phone call.
7	Chris and Helen / spend / a week in France.

2 Look at the pictures and use the verbs in the box to say what Helen is doing.

	brush	brush	drink	get up 🗸	go	listen	open	read	read	wash	]	
	She's getting up.							5 the newspaper. 6				
2							7 letters. 8 the door.					
-				coffee.			-				to work.	



مرجـعزبـان|يرانيان www.irLanguage.com

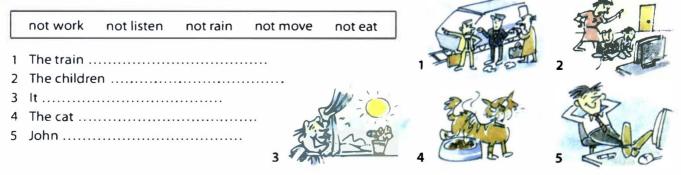
24 PRESENT TENSES

### present progressive negatives He's not listening to me.



	lam not working you are not working he/she/it is not working we/they are not working
	Contractions: I'm not, you're not; he's/she's/it's not, we're not, they're not
	Or: you/we/they aren't, he/she/it isn't
/e m	nake present progressive negatives with <i>am/are/is not +ing</i> .
m n	ot working this week.
_	
C	noose the right verbs and make negative ( ) present progressive sentences.
	I (write, play, ask) you for a lot of money. I'm not asking you for a lot of money.
1	He (listen, stand, start) to me.
	l (rain, work, get) today.
	It (wear, rain, speak) now.
4	She ( <i>wear, look, wait</i> ) a coat.
5	John's students ( <i>wait, like, learn</i> ) very much.
6	We (enjoy, fly, read) this film.
7	You (live, wait, eat) much these days.
8	I (sleep, stand, expect) to pass the exam.
9	My computer (pay, work, write).
10	I ( <i>stop, play, give</i> ) much tennis these days.
w	rite negative ends for the sentences.
	It's cold, but (snow) it's not snowing.
	I'm a teacher, but (work just now) I'm not working just now.
	He's a good footballer, but ( play well today)
2	They are in England now, but ( <i>live in London</i> )
3	It's a new car, but ( <b>-</b> <i>run well</i> )
	Everybody says this is a good book, but (/ enjoy it)
	It's summer, but (the sun - shine)
	I'm a student, but (study at university)
	She sings when she's happy, but ( sing just now)
	I don't have any problems, but ( sleep well these days)
	We're on holiday, but ( have a good time)
	I'm crying, but ( cry because of you)

#### Complete the sentences, using the verbs in the box.



**NOTE: We do not** use a present tense to say how long something has lasted (see page 65). *I've been waiting since 9.00.* (NOT *I'm waiting since 9.00.*)

# present progressive questions Is it raining?

am I working? are you working? is he/she/it working? are we/they working?

UEST		It is raining.	You are working.	The children are making something.
		Is it raining?	Are you working?	What are the children making?
	ake ques		te even hodu licteri	
				ng to me?
	-			
10	somebod	y/cooklunch?.		
Ca	mplete t	he questions.		
			ng English' 'What languag	are they speaking?
1	'Bill's writi	ing something on t	'he wall' 'l can't see – what	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
			at	
				······
			-	
				······································
		5 7.		
Pu	t in ques	tion words and r	nake present progressi	ve questions. (More than one answer may
	possible			
	you / do	What are you	doing?	
1	you / go r	10W		
2	Anne / cry	/		
3	he / write			
4	you / tele	phone		
6	your brotl	her / study English		
8	those pec	ple / look at me .		
9	the dog /	eat		

### present progressive: more practice

+ 2	I am workingyou are workinghe/she/it/is workingwe/they are workingam I working?are you working?is/he/she/it working?are we/they working?					
	I am not working         you are not working         he/she/it/is not working etc					
	Contractions: I'm, you're, he's etc (not) ing; you aren't, he isn't etc ing					
D P	ut the words in the correct order. Use contractions (e.g. <i>it's</i> ) where possible.					
	me you talking are to? Are you talking to me?					
1	getting are you up ?					
2	raining is again it .					
3	not you are listening					
4	going where you are ?					
5	talking fast too I am ?					
6	I film enjoying not this am .					
7	laughing those people at are me why?					
8	am for you I cooking this not .					
9	you what drinking are ?					
10	the baby eating the is newspaper .					
<b>2</b> M	ake present progressive sentences.					
	I/look for / the station 🛨					
	you/work/tonight? Are you working tonight?					
	it/rain =					
1	Peter / try / to save money 🛨					
	why / those children / cry 👔					
3	your friends / play football / this afternoon 👔					
4	she / look / very well today 🗖					
5	I think she / make / a big mistake 🛨 🛛					
6	you / wear / your usual glasses 🗖 🛛					
7	I / start / to learn Spanish 🛨					
8	the 10.15 train / run / today 👔 🛛					
9	David / live with his parents / any more 🗧					
10	what / you / do / in my room 👔 🛛					
<b>B</b> C	3 Complete the text with verbs from the boxes.					
1						

1~5: come ✓ look not wear snow walk wear

6-11: kiss look return say stop try

Now Mrs Alexander and her husband 6	. at the crowd and smiling. The photographers
7 to get nearer, but the police 8	them. What a day! At last, after
twenty years, this wonderful woman 9	to her own country. Now the President
10 her hand. What 11	he to her, do you think?

# the two present tenses: the difference

t evel 2

APLE PRESENT: I work etc	10000000000	PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I'm w	vorking etc
things that are <b>always true</b> things that happen <b>all the</b> <b>repeatedly, often, sometir</b>	time,	<ul> <li>things that are happenin</li> <li>things that are happenin</li> </ul>	-
The sun <b>rises</b> in the east.		The sun is not shining too	lay.
She often <mark>wears</mark> red.		She's wearing a blue dres.	
l <mark>play</mark> tennis.		I' <b>m playing</b> a lot of tennis	these days.
Put the expressions in t	the correct places.		
every day 🧹 just now this afternoon today		ow 🖌 on Fridays these da n I'm tired	ys
SIMPLE PRESENT: I work etc	:	PRESENT PROGRESS	IVE: I'm working etc
every day		now	
			****
Use the verbs in the bo	y to complete the s	antences	
		intences.	
chase 🗸 chase driv	ve eat fly play	play rain sell spe	ak work write
Cats chase mice.	Cows g	rass. Planes	It often
	1	2	3
EST.			
But this cat is	But this cow	But this	But
not chasing mice.			nov
Luke hard.	Ann ten	nis. John Eng	lish. Billa b
4	5	6	7
Mar Al	Å	(TXX)	
But	But	But	But
today.	n	ow	
This shop	Carol	Simon	Dogs
books.	the piano.	poetry.	cats.
8	9	10	11
	Contraction of the second		23
ACCKSHUP		A CONTRACT	
But	But she	But	But this

#### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct verb forms.

Do you smoke?' ...... 'No, never.' (you / smoke) 1 'Where ...... these days?' 'In a garage.' (she / work) 2 '..... here in summer?' 'Not very often.' (it / rain) 3 'Bonjour.' 'Sorry, I ..... French.' (not speak) 4 'Your English ..... better.' 'Oh, thank you.' (get) 5 '..... golf?' 'Yes, but not very well' (you / play) 6 'Who ...... to?' 'My boyfriend' (you / write) 7 'Where's Suzanne?' '..... now.' (she / come) 8 Well, aoodnight..... to bed. (1 / go) 9 Water ...... at 100°C. (boil) 10 '.....?' 'Not yet.' (that water / boil) 11 '....?' 'I can't see it.' (the bus / come) 12 'That man ..... all the time.' 'Yes, and he .....' (talk; never listen) 13 'What's Peter's job?' '..... film scripts.' (he / write) 14 'Summer's coming.' 'Yes, ..... warmer.' (it / get) 15 'How often .....?' 'Every weekend.' (you / see your parents) 16 'Where's your brother?' '..... from Scotland today.' (he / come back) 17 '..... fast?' 'Yes, always. Too fast.' (John / drive) 18 'Come and have a drink.' 'Not now. I ......a phone call.' (wait for) 19 'What ..... at?' 'A very strange bird.' (you / look) 20 'What kind of music ......' 'All kinds.' (you / like)

#### Make true sentences about yourself.

	loften play tennis	, but	I am not playing tennis	now. ( <i>play</i> )
1	l often	, but l		now. (play)
2	I sometimes		, but I	now. ( <i>wear</i> )
3	l often	, but l		now. (speak)
4	l often	, but l		. now. ( <i>listen</i> )
5	I sometimes		, but I	now. ( <i>read</i> )
6	l often	, but !		now. (watci.)
7	l sometimes		, but I	now. ( <i>buy</i> )
8	l often	, but i		now. (eat)
9	l often	, but l		now. ( <i>drink</i> )
10	l never	, and	۱	. now. (?)

I never vote for anybody. I always vote against. (W C Fields)

I never travel without my diary. One should always have something sensational to read in the train. (Oscar Wilde)

I never think of the future. It comes soon enough. (Albert Einstein) When a dog bites a man, that is not news, because it happens so often. But if a man bites a dog, that is news.

(John B Bogart, American newspaper editor)

When a woman isn't beautiful, people always say, 'You have lovely eyes, you have lovely hair'.

(Anton Chekhov)

# non-progressive verbs I don't understand.

evel 2

ome verbs are						
l <mark>ike</mark> this weathe	er. (NOT <del>l'm liki</del>	ing this weather	.) What does h	e want? (I	NOT <del>What is he wan</del>	ting?)
HE MOST IMPO	RTANT NON-P	ROGRESSIVE VE	RBS			
elieve, hate, ho	pe, know, like,	love, mean, nee	ed, prefer, remember	r, seem,		Cathy B
nink (= 'have ar	n opinion'), un	nderstand, want				
<mark>hate</mark> this music	. 'We're la	ite.' 'I <mark>know</mark> .'	I love that colour.	Do yo	ou <b>understand</b> ?	
/hat does this r	m <b>ean</b> ? I <b>n</b>	eed some help.	'Tea?' 'I <b>prefer</b> j	uice.'	Ayesha seems unho	арру.
ote also the ex	pressions It d	loesn't matter (=	='lt's not important	() and I se	e (= 'l understand')	el neve te pit k
<mark>m sorry l'm la</mark> te	e.' 'It doesn't n	natter.' '	There's a problem.' '	l see.'		
Make sente	ancos					
		ny today +	Ayesha seems i	inhappi	y today.	
			help?			
			ow her name.			
		_				
3 she / love	/me!+					
4 Peter/se	em / tired +					
5 we/need	d / a new car					
6 you/kno	w / that man	?				
	iii / that man					
	his cold weat	her +				
8 you/like	this cold weat / this music	her +				
8 you/like 9 l/remem	his cold weat / this music ber / her add	her 🕂 ? ress 드				
8 you/like 9 l/remem	his cold weat / this music ber / her add	her 🕂 ? ress 드				
8 you/like 9 l/remem 10 you/unc	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this	her + ? ress ; letter ?				
8 you/like 9 l/remem 10 you/unc	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this	her + ? ress ; letter ?				
8 you / like 9 I / remem 10 you / unc Complete t	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this	her + ? ress ; letter ?				want 🗸
8 you / like 9 I / remem 10 you / unc Complete t	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this t <b>he sentence</b> ike need	ther + Perss s letter ? es with verbs not matter	from the boxes.			
8 you / like 9 I / remem 10 you / unc Complete t hope I	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need	iher + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want for his	from the boxes. not understand birthday?			
8 you / like 9 I / remem 10 you / unc Complete t hope I • Whatd 1 'Przeprasz	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want for his	from the boxes. not understand birthday?	prefer	not remember	want 🗸
8 you / like 9 I / remem 10 you / und Complete t hope I Whatd 1 'Przeprasz 2 'Would you	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need ????	ther + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want for his coffee?' 'No, that	from the boxes. not understand birthday?	prefer	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unc</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li></ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need ????	ther  tess  tess  tess  tess  tess with verbs not matter tess  tes	from the boxes. not understand birthday?	prefer	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unce</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>Whatd.</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What doo</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want for his coffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I w	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I	prefer	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / und</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>Whatd</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broke</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther +	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unce</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broka</li> <li>6 I</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need ccs Paul zam!' 'Sorry, I bu like some c you think of t to the shops. en a cup.' 'It	ther +	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I e anyt sn't rain tomorrow.	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unce</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broka</li> <li>6 I</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need ccs Paul zam!' 'Sorry, I bu like some c you think of t to the shops. en a cup.' 'It	ther  ther  tess  tess  tess  tess with verbs not matter want for his coffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I w	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I e anyt sn't rain tomorrow.	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unce</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broka</li> <li>6 I</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther  ther  tess  tess  tess  tess with verbs not matter want for his coffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I w	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I e anyt sn't rain tomorrow. your name.	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / und</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broke</li> <li>6 I</li> <li>7 Sorry, I</li> <li>believe</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need cs. Paul zam!' 'Sorry, I pu like some c you think of t to the shops en a cup.' 'It hate not	ther  ther  tess  tess  tess  tess with verbs not matter want for his toffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I know love	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unce</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>What</li> <li>What do</li> <li>1 'Przepras:</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broke</li> <li>6 I</li> <li>7 Sorry, I</li> <li>believe</li> <li>8</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want for his coffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I w it does know love what she	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I re anyt sn't rain tomorrow. your name. mean see told you?	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / und</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>Przeprasz</li> <li>'Would you</li> <li>'What do</li> <li>1'm going</li> <li>'I've broke</li> <li>1</li> <li>believe</li> <li>8</li> <li>9 I</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther +	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🗸
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / unce</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>What</li> <li>What do</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broke</li> <li>6 1</li> <li>7 Sorry, I</li> <li>believe</li> <li>8</li> <li>9 I</li> <li>10</li> </ul>	this cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want. for his coffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I w it does know love 	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. I	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🖌
<ul> <li>8 you / like</li> <li>9 I / remem</li> <li>10 you / und</li> <li>Complete t</li> <li>hope I</li> <li>What</li> <li>1 'Przeprasz</li> <li>2 'Would you</li> <li>3 'What do</li> <li>4 I'm going</li> <li>5 'I've broke</li> <li>6 I</li> <li>7 Sorry, I</li> <li>believe</li> <li>8</li> <li>9 I</li> <li>10</li> <li>11 'We've go</li> </ul>	his cold weat / this music ber / her add derstand / this the sentence ike need 	ther + ress s letter ? es with verbs not matter want. for his coffee?' 'No, that this music?' 'I w it does know love 	from the boxes. not understand birthday? ank you. 1 re anyt sn't rain tomorrow. your name. mean see told you? me or address. g to rain?	prefer hing?	not remember tea, if t	want 🖌

14 My father likes most music, but he ..... rock.

#### SOME USEFUL EXPRESSIONS WITH NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS:

I hope so. I hope not. I think so. I don't think so. It depends. I don't mind. (='It doesn't matter to me.')

'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' (Is it going to rain?' 'I hope not.' 'Is that Maria over there?' 'Yes, I think so.' 'Are you free on Sunday?' 'I don't think so.' 'Can you help me?' 'It depends. What do you want me to do?' 'What would you like to drink?' 'I don't mind.'

what would you like to arink? I don't mind.

#### Choose the best expressions to complete the conversations.

- 'Is Ingrid enjoying her holiday?' (I hope so.') / I don't mind.'
- 1 'Agresti, min ruggide flochsch?' 'I don't think so.' /'I don't understand.'
- 2 'We're not happy with your work.' 'I hope so.' / 'I see.'
- 3 'Is Jeremy coming to dinner?' 'I see.' / 'I hope not.'
- 4 'Do you like this music?' 'I think so.' / 'I don't remember.'
- 5 'Is that Olivia getting into the taxi?' 'I know.' / 'I don't think so.'
- 6 'Who wrote 'War and Peace'?' 'It depends.' / 'I don't know.'
- 7 'It's Tuesday'. 'I think so.' / 'I know.'
- 8 'Can you lend me some money?' 'It depends.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
- 9 'We're too early.' 'I don't know.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
- 10 'What's Phil's address?' 'I don't remember.' / 'It depends.'
- 11 'Sorry, this coffee isn't very good.' 'I don't mind.' / 'I hope so.'
- 12 'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' / 'I don't remember.'
- 13 'Is Pete in his office?' 'I don't think so.' / 'I see.'
- 14 'Is it going to rain?' 'It depends.'/'I hope not.'
- 15 'Can you help me?' 'I think so.' / 'I don't remember.'

#### Write personal answers.

- Will everybody in the world speak English one day? I think so. / I don't think so. / I hope so. / I hope not. / I don't mind. / I don't know.
- 1 Is your English getting better?
- 2 Will you be rich and famous one day? .....
- 3 What were you doing at 8.00 in the morning on February 16th last year?

.....

- 4 How many stars are there in the sky? .....
- 5 Will it rain tomorrow? .....
- 6 Have you got a good government? .....
- 7 Will you live to be 100 years old?
- 8 Are there people on other planets? .....
- 9 Are you a nice person?
- 10 Will you fall in love next week? .....

WHAT YOU SAY	WHAT THEY SAY	WHAT THEY MEAN
'Do you mind if I sit here?'	'No, please do'	'Go away.'
'I'm sorry I spilt coffee on you.'	'It doesn't matter at all.'	'You clumsy fool.'
'Can you do something for me?'	'It depends.What is it?'	'Certainly not.'
'What shall I sing?'	'I don't mind. Anything.'	'Don't sing.'
'Do you see what I mean?'	'Yes.'	'No.'
Shall I wear the blue dress or the green one? Which do you prefer?'	'I don't mind. They're both beautiful.'	'A dress is a dress. What's the difference?'
'You don't seem to like the food'	'Oh, I do. It's delicious.'	'I hate it.'
'I need to be alone.'	'l see.'	'I don't see.'

### present tenses: more practice

 Question words. Choose words from the box to complete the questions. how how many how much what what time when where why 1 ..... do you want for Christmas? 5 ..... do you usually get up? 2 ..... does the holiday start? 6 ..... rice do you want? 3 ..... does your sister live? 7 ..... do you need to learn English? 4 ..... tickets do you need? 8 ..... do you make scrambled eggs? 2 Simple present. Choose the correct verbs to make simple present sentences. I / hamburgers (+) (like, drink, play) I like hamburgers. Henry / French (?) (make, speak, work) Does Henry speak French? the buses / on Sundays (-) (speak, play, run) The buses don't run on Sundays. 1 what language / Brazilians (?) (run, work, speak) 2 Felix / fast cars (+) (sing, catch, drive) 3 Annemarie / newspapers (-) (make, read, clean) 4 my two brothers both / in London (+) (*play, speak, work*) 5 dogs / vegetables ( ) (*walk, eat, pass*) 6 Maria / the piano (=) (play, make, cool) 7 Peter / at weekends (?) (work, wear, break) 8 my husband / very well (+) (want, cook, stop) 9 Roger / to work with animals (+) (want, play, read) 10 this bus / to Belfast (?) (work, speak, go) Present progressive. Write true sentences to say what is (not) happening now. 1 I / wear red socks I'm ..... 2 it/rain 3 1/listen to music 4 I / sit on the beach 5 l/sing ..... 6 1/ think about something beautiful 7 I/wait for a phone call ..... 8 the sun / shine ..... 9 the government / make everybody happy ..... 10 my English / get better Progressive and non-progressive verbs. Correct (1) or not (x)? Are you liking this weather? ...... 5 I'm thinking you're wrong. ..... I'm working today. ..... 6 That man is looking like your brother. ..... 1 You're driving too fast. ..... 7 Sorry, I'm not understanding. ..... 2 What is this word meaning? ..... 8 I'm seeing the doctor this morning. ..... 3 I'm not wanting a drink just now. ..... 9 'I can't pay you today.' 'I see.' ..... 4 Where are you living now? ..... 10 What are you thinking about? .....

#### **5** Grammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

get up go have like like live look after not like not want work work 🗸

cry do love not know not want not work read sit you think want

This morning Anna 11 ...... She 12 ..... in her tent. She 13 ..... a letter and she 14 ..... In the letter, James says '1 15 ..... you to leave the circus and come to Scotland to be with me. I 16 ..... to move to England to be with you, because I'm doing well in my job.' Anna 17 ..... what to do. She 18 ...... James, but she 19 ....... well in her job too. What 20 ...... she should do?

6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: clothes. Use the words in the box to say what the people are (not) wearing. Use a dictionary if necessary.

belt blouse boots cardigan dress coat glasses hat jacket raincoat shoes shirt skirt socks suit sweater trousers







John

Cathy

David

Sandra

John is wearing a white shirt, a blue sweater, a blue jacket, grey trousers with a blue belt, blue socks and black shoes. He is not wearing glasses.
Cathy is wearing
Sandra
David

# Internet exercise. Use the internet to get information about a well-known person. Write some of the information (simple present sentences). Some of these words might be useful.

hate like live work play travel often always never

### present tenses: revision test

<ol> <li>Write the s</li> </ol>	imple present <i>he/</i>	/she/it forms.					
go 9005	catch	cost c	lo	enjoy	/ f	ly	
have	hope	know	live	n	nix xir	pass	
play	stand	teach	think		try	wash	
wear	wish	work					
2 Write the -						0	
call	2 begin	cry	die .		enjoy	fly	
5	get				-		
	make	-	play	S	end	sit	
sieep	stop	таке					
But the wo	rds in order to ma	ake simple prese	ent sente	nces.			
Phil / dog	s / like (+) Phil	likes dogs.					
know / yc	ou / Anna (?) 🔤	you know An	na?				
open on S	Sundays / the post o	office (=) The P	ost offic	e doesn'	t open on S	undays.	
	u / London ( <b>?</b> )						
2 pop musi	c/ like / l (🗕) 🛛						
3 where / li	ve / James ( <b>?</b> )						
4 coffee / se	ome / want / you (📘	)					
5 rain / here	e / it / a lot (🕂) 🛛						
6 l/my/ev	ery week / wash / ca	ar (🕂)					
7 Spanish /	Luke / speak (-)						
8 friends / f	ootball / play / all yo	our ( <b>?</b>					
	ear / to the office / I						
10 make / sp	aghetti carbonara /	how / you ( 🎴 ) 🛛 .					
A Put the wo	rds in order to ma	ake present prod	ressive	sentence	25.		
	/ / in Spain / travel (						
	lice / look / very (						
	/ why / cry ( <b>?</b> )						
	s / wait / you ( <b>?</b> )						
	nis / I / these days /						
	/wear/a/very/ra						
	/ you / about / ( <b>?</b> )						
	wly / you / too (+)						
10 this/1/e	njoy / concert (🗖)						
5 Correct (✓)							
	Aelissa?' 'She's comi	-			5	this morning	
	moking?' 'No, neve			-	ay you today.'		
	(s dinner just now				re you living r		
	e most Tuesdays				you think abo		
	e looking at me?				ou're wrong		
	skiing every winter.		14	That mar	n is looking lik	e your brother.	
	ving too fast		15	Your Eng	glish gets bett	er.' 'Oh, thank y	ou.'
8 What is th	is word meaning? .						

# **SECTION 3** talking about the future

#### grammar summary

There are three common ways to talk about the future in English:

- with the *going to* structure. I'm really going to stop smoking.
- with the present progressive. I'm seeing John this evening.
- with will. Anna will be in the office from 10.00 till 2.00.

We use *going to* or the **present progressive** especially when the future has some **present** reality: for example to talk about plans that we have already made.

We can sometimes use the simple present to talk about the future. Her train arrives at 15.37. I'll phone you when I get home. I'll see you tomorrow if I have time.

### Your horoscope for next week



AQUARIUS (Jan 21 – Feb 18)

Wednesday will bring money, but the money will bring problems.



K (Feb 19 - March 20)

It will be a difficult week. Don't travel by train.



**ARIES** (Mar 21 - Apr 20)

Some very strange things will happen on Tuesday. Try to laugh about them.



# **TAURUS** (Apr 21 – May 21)

The week will be full of danger. Stay away from children and animals.



**GEMINI** (May 22 - June 21)

Your family will cause problems on Monday. And on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, ...



CANCER (June 22 - July 22)

The week will bring love, excitement and adventure. But not to you.



(July 23 - Aug 23)

Stay in bed on Thursday. Don't open the door. Don't answer the phone.



VIRGO (Aug 24 - Sept 23)

You will meet an exciting stranger. Don't believe anything that he says.

LIBRA (Sept 24 - Oct 23)

You will spend most of the week in hospital. Good luck.

Cure SCORPIO (Oct 24 - Nov 22)

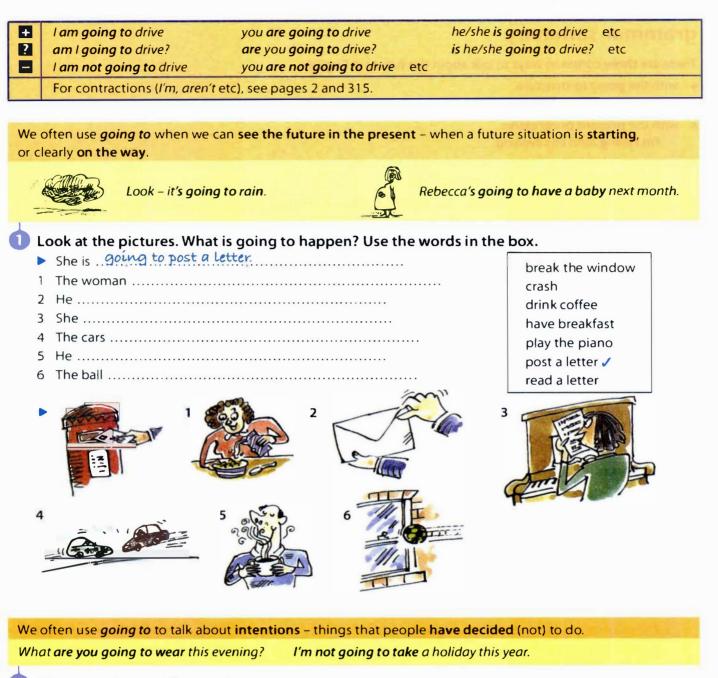
The week will be bad in many ways. But not as bad as the following week.



You will make an unexpected journey. It will end badly.

CAPRICORN (Dec 22 - Jan 20) Trouble will come from a horse and a washing machine.

### going to Look – it's going to rain.



#### Make questions with going to.

- > you / cook supper Are you going to cook supper?
- 1 Jane / change her school
- 2 where / you / put that picture
- 3 what / you / buy for Felix's birthday
- 4 Ethan / play football / tomorrow
- 5 when / you / stop smoking .....
- 6 Alice / go to university
- 7 you / phone the police .....
- 8 your mother / come and stay with us
- 9 she / buy that coat
- 10 what / you / tell the boss .....

# Level

# 3 Lindsay is talking about her holiday next week. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

Г

do any work drive to Italy 🗸 fly 🖌 learn som stay in a nice hotel swim a lot take photos	<b>3</b>
<ul> <li>No, I'm not going to fly.</li> <li>I'm going to drive to Italy.</li> </ul>	4
1	6
2	7
3	8



		ake sentences with <i>going to</i> .
		Andy / start school / next week + Andy is going to start school next week.
		you / see the dentist ? Are you going to see the dentist?
		I/work this evening - I'm not going to work this evening.
	1	how / you / get to London 👔
	2	when / Monica / come and see us ?
	3	it / snow 🗧
	4	I / cook fish / for lunch 🛨
	5	when / you / see the doctor 👔
	6	Angela / marry / her secretary 🛨
	7	John / call / this evening <b>?</b>
	8	I / stop / playing poker 🛨
	9	everybody / watch the football match 🛨
1	0	Sally / get the job 🚍 🛛
5	W	rite some sentences about your intentions. Use I'm (not) going to
	1	I'm this evening.
	2	tomorrow.
		next year.
	4	when I'm old.
	5	one day.

NOTE: In informal speech (and songs), we often say gonna for going to.

# present progressive What are you doing this evening?

	l am working you are working		he/she/it is work		we/they are working
_	am I working? are you workin	-	is he/she/it work		are we/they working?
	am not working you are not wo	orking	he/she/it is not	working	The second second second
	For contractions ( <i>I'm, aren't</i> etc), se	e pages :	2 and 315.	10.00	THE REPORT FOR STATES
	n use the <b>present progressive</b> wit d time and/or place.	th a <b>futu</b> r	r <b>e meaning</b> , espec	cially wher	n we talk about <b>plans for</b>
/hat	are you doing this evening?' 'I'm s	taying in.	.' Where are yo	ou <b>going</b> oi	n holiday?
e's c	oming to the theatre with us tomor	row.	I'm starting a new	v job next v	veek.
AA-	ake sentences with the presen	t progra	occivo		
	when / you / come back ?	hen are	you coming be	ack?	
	I/ go / there again	going	there again.		
	1/ play / baseball tomorrow 🗖				
	I/ go / to Canada next year				
	we / stay / with Paul and Lucy nex				
	you / work / this evening				
	what time / your friends / arrive				
	my company / move / to Scotland				
	how / your mother / travel to Fran				
	I/ see / the dentist on Thursday				
	Gary / marry Cathy / after all				
10	Gary / marry Cathy / after all 🗖				
10 <b>Lo</b>	Gary / marry Cathy / after all	t the ser			Sunday
10 <b>Lo</b>	Gary / marry Cathy / after all 🗖	<b>t the ser</b> ght.	ntences.		Sunday John Parker morning
10 Lo	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to En	<b>t the ser</b> ght. gland o	ntences. In Friday nigh		Sunday John Parker morning Monday
10 Lo	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig	<b>t the ser</b> ght. gland o	ntences. In Friday nigh		Sunday John Parker morning
10 Lo	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to En He's seeing John Parker on Sunda	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno	ntences. In Friday nightion.		Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday
10 Lo 1 2	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sunday He's going to the Birmingham offi	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno	ntences. In Friday night Ioon.	<del>t</del> .	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00
10 Lo 1 2	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sundar He's going to the Birmingham offi	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno	ntences. In Friday night Ioon.	<del>t</del> .	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday
10 Lo 1 2	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sunday He's going to the Birmingham offi	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car n Tuesda	ntences. In Friday night Ioon.	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00
10 Lo 1 2 3	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sundar He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda	ntences. In Friday night Ioon.	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday
10 Lo 1 2 3	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda sday ever	ntences. In Friday night Ioon. r. Iy.	t	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday Lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe
10 Lo 1 2 3 4	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda	ntences. In Friday nigh Ioon. Iy.	t	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday Lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday
10 Lo 1 2 3 4	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sunday He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr	t the ser gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday.	ntences. In Friday night foon.	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00;
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday.	ntences. In Friday night bon.	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00; back LH135 16.40
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sundar He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his v	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o	ntences. m. Friday night pon. r. ny. ning. on Saturday.	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o	ntences. m. Friday night pon. r. ny. ning. on Saturday.	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00; back LH135 16.40
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to End He's seeing John Parker on Sunday He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his w	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday. vedding o	ntences. In Friday night foon. r. ny. ning.	t	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6 Af	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunday He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his v	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o iday soc	ntences. m. Friday night fon. n. ning. on Saturday. on. Write question	t.	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LHO14 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday Phil and Monica's wedding
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6 Af	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his v	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o leaving	ntences. m. Friday night bon. r. ny. ning. on Saturday. on. Write question S sta	t.   ons. ny / with fri	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday Phil and Monica's wedding
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6 Af	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his v riend of yours is going on holi when / leave	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o iday soc leaving	ntences. n Friday night fon. r. ny. ning. on Saturday. on. Write question for. 5 state sister? 6 ho	t.   ons. w / with fri w / travel	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LHO14 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday Phil and Monica's wedding
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6 Af	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sundar He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his v Friend of yours is going on holi when / leave	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o leaving	ntences. m. Friday night fon. y. hing. on Saturday. on. Write questic sister? 6 ho 7 tak	t.   ons. ny / with fri w / travel ce / the do	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LH014 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday Phil and Monica's wedding ends
10 Lo 1 2 3 4 5 6 Af 1 2	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ok at Harry's diary and correct He's staying in Berlin on Friday nig No, he's coming back to Em He's seeing John Parker on Sunda He's going to the Birmingham offi He's having dinner with Stewart o He's going to the theatre on Thurs His new secretary is starting on Fr Phil and Monica are going to his v riend of yours is going on holi when / leave	t the ser ght. gland o y afterno ice by car in Tuesda iday ever iday. vedding o leaving	ntences. m. Friday.night bon. r. ny. ning. on Saturday. on. Write question on. Vrite question on. 5 sta sister? 6 ho 7 tak 	t. ons. w / with fri w / travel ke / the do	Sunday John Parker morning Monday to Birmingham (1.15 train) Tuesday lunch Stewart 1.00 Wednesday theatre with Ann and Joe Thursday new secretary starting Friday to Berlin LHO14 8.00; back LH135 16.40 Saturday Phil and Monica's wedding

evel.

# irlanguage

+ I/you/he/she/it/we/they will work

will I/you/he etc work?

?

I/you/he etc will not work

Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)

We u	se will + infinitive to predict - to say things that we think, guess or know about the future.
Ithin	k it <b>will snow</b> tomorrow. Be quick, or you'll <b>miss</b> your train.
Bella	won't be here this evening. When will you know your exam results?
	ut the words in the correct order to make affirmative (王) sentences.
	here George be will George will be here tomorrow.
	speak everybody English perhaps will Perhaps everybody will speak English in the year 2100.
1	begin class will theat 9.30.
2	be they'll home soon.
3	examination will the difficult be
4	walk we'll party the to
5	she not speak will me to
6	your John answer questions will
7	Sunday ten years old will Emily be on
2 N	lake questions with <i>will</i> .
-	what time / tomorrow evening's concert / start ?
	when / you and the family / get back / from Paris ?
	you / be / here tomorrow ?
	you and your mother / be / here tomorrow ?
5	where / you / be / this evening ?
6	the children / have enough money / for the journey ?
	how soon / you know / the answer ?
3 M	ake negatives with <i>won't</i> and questions.
	'Iwon't finish this work today.' 'Whenwill you finish it?' (finish)
	'Johnwon't be
1	'Annie here at ten.' 'When here?' ( <i>be</i> )
2	'I time for lunch.' ' time for a sandwich?' ( <i>have</i> )
3	'You one?' (find)
4	'The children
5	'Dylan much money if he sells that car.' 'How much' (get)
6	'Your car ready?' (be)
7	'I it?' (know) it?' (know)

**NOTE**: After *I* and *we*, some people say *shall* instead of *will*. The meaning is the same; *will* is more common in modern English.

# will: deciding, refusing, promising 1'll answer it.

We can use will when we decide or agree to do things, and when we talk about refusing (saying 'no') and promising. We don't use the simple present in these cases. OK, I really will stop smoking. She won't speak to me. I'll phone you. (NOT I phone you.) Things can 'refuse'. The car won't start. This pen won't write. We often use will at the moment when we decide something. 'There's someone at the door.' 'I'll go.' (NOT I-go.) 'That's the phone.' 'I'll answer it.' Put in words from the box with 'll or won't. tell 🗸 tell do go shopping go to bed 🗸 help open start stop wash I'm tired. I think I.'ll go to bed. 4 I ..... Jack that we're going to be late. I don't know what he wants. He ... won't tell. us. 5 The baby ..... crying. Can you sing to her? 1 I ..... the cups; can you dry them? 6 'There's no food in the house.' 'I ......' 7 'I can't move this table.' 'I ...... you.' 2 'Can somebody post my letters?' 'I ..... it.' 3 'My motorbike .....' 'No petrol?' 8 'This door .....' 'It's locked.' It's time to change your life. Look at the ideas in the box and write six promises with will or won't - the most important first. be nice to everybody always think before I speak drive too fast fall in love every week go for a walk every day go to bed early learn another language / a musical instrument read more relax smile at everybody smoke study English every day talk more slowly talk to strangers think about myself too much work harder (your own promise) I'll talk more slowly. 3 ..... I won't drive too fast. 4 ..... 5 ..... 2 ..... 6 Look at the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then circle the best answers. I'll think about it. I'll see. ( = 'I'll think about it.') (I'll) see you tomorrow/later. I'll give you a ring/call. ( = 'I'll phone you.') I'll tell you tomorrow/later. (I'll) see you. 1 'Mum, can I have an ice cream?' A 'I'll see.' B 'I'll see you.' A 'I'll see you tomorrow.' B 'I'll tell you tomorrow.' 2 'When do you want to play tennis?' 3 'I've got to go now.' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll think about it.' 4 'Would you like to come dancing with me?' A 'I'll think about it.' B 'I'll see you later.' 5 'Can we talk about it some more?' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll give you a ring.' A 'See you tomorrow.' B'l'll see.' 6 'Goodbye now.' 7 'What do you want for your birthday?' A 'See you.' B 'I'll tell you later.' 8 'Would you like to go to Scotland with me?' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll see.'

# We can use the simple present to talk about timetables, cinema/theatre programmes and dates.Our train leaves at 8.10.What time does your flight arrive?The film starts at 7.30.

#### Put the words in order to make sentences.

	leave / the flight / at 9.30 + The flight leaves at 9.30.
	the film / what time / start ?
	at Mill Road / this bus / stop = This bus doesn't stop at Mill Road.
1	start / the next lesson / at 2.00 🛨
2	this term / on March 12th / end 🛨
	when / finish / the concert ?
	we / a lesson / next Thursday / have 🗖
	this bus / at the post office / stop ?
	at 8.00 / start / the play +
	what time / arrive / you / in Rome 👔
	the banks / at 3.00 tomorrow / close +
	at every station / stop / the next train +
	when / start / the school holidays ? ?

We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when, as soon as and if.We'll see you before we go. (NOT ... before we will go.)We'll have a drink after I finish work.You can use my bike while I'm away.He'll phone you when he arrives. (NOT ... when he will arrive.)We'll wait until Justin gets here.I'll tell you if I need money.I'll write as soon as I get home.

#### Put in the correct verb forms: simple present or *will*-future.

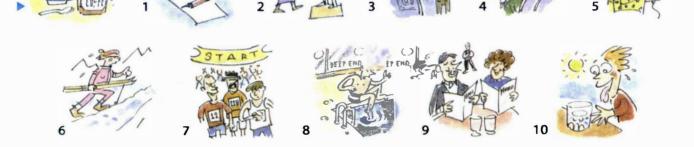
	If it rains , we 'll have the party inside. (rain; have)
1	I my exam. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>pass</i> )
2	If you the train. ( <i>leave</i> ; <i>catch</i> )
3	John says he money. ( <i>work; need</i> )
4	I free tomorrow evening, but I you on Friday. (not be; see)
5	Mary Work. (study; stop)
6	I you to the station as soon as I my car keys. (drive; find)
7	When he a lot. (marry; change)
8	smoking if the doctor you
	that you must? ( <i>stop</i> ; <i>tell</i> )
9	If we to the boss very politely, he
	to us? (talk; listen)
10	1 back from work. (phone: get)

For more practice on this point, see pages 236 and 245.

### irlanguage

### future: more practice

**1** Going to. Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use going to with the verbs in the box. drink a glass of water qo skiing have dinner crash get on a bus go swimming make coffee 🖌 play the violin start running sing write a letter ► He's going to make coffee. 6 ..... He's ..... 7 ..... 1 2 She's ..... 8 ..... 3 They ..... 9 ..... 4 The car ..... 10 ..... 5 .....



Present progressive. A problem. (Use a dictionary if necessary.) Jane is seeing five people next week, one each day: her bank manager, her solicitor, her accountant, her dentist and her doctor. Who is she seeing when? Read the text in the box, fill in the table and complete the sentences.

She's seeing her bank manager before her doctor. She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday. She's seeing her dentist two days after her bank manager. She's seeing her accountant two days after her doctor.

1	She's seeing on Monday.
2	on Tuesday.
3	on Wednesday.
4	on Thursday.
5	on Friday.

Monday	
Tuesday	doctor
Wednesday	
Thursday	
Friday	

Will. These are sentences from real conversations. Put in forms of will with expressions from the box. (C: the speaker used a contraction: 'll or won't.)

change not snow start tell go to sleep soon

1 You make me so unhappy: I ..... crying in a moment. (C)

- 2 Do you think that all this money ...... your life?
- 3 It ..... tonight, will it, John? (C)

4 And they said, 'Benjamin's tired, he .....'(C)

5 She ..... you how to do it.

4) P	ut the words in order, and make statements (🖬), questions 😰) or negative sentences (🚍)
V	ith <i>going to</i> (G), the present progressive (PP), <i>will</i> (W) or the simple present (SP).
	(G) start work / Robert / tomorrow + Robert is going to start work tomorrow.
	(PP) again / invite / her / I 🗖 I'm not inviting her again.
	(W) be / in the office tomorrow / Anna ?
	(SP) leave / our train / at midday 🛨Our train leaves at midday.
1	(G) stop / I / smoking 🛨
2	(PP) 1/ Andrew / tonight / see 🛨
3	(G) rain / it 🗖
4	(G) marry / Peter / his boss 🛨
5	(W) exams / his / pass / Oliver 🗖
6	(W) like/ this / you / film 🛨
7	(SP) arrive / the bus from London / what time 👔
8	(PP) 1 / tomorrow / the car / use 🗖
9	(G) steak / I / cook / this evening 🛨
10	
11	(W, SP) 1/ phone you / when / get home / I 🛨
12	(PP) you / on Saturday / work 👔
13	(W) need / you / for the night / room / a 👔
14	(G) write / you / to your father 👔
15	(W) we / enough / for a good holiday / money / have 🗖
16	(W) key / find / the / I / where 🛿
17	(W, SP) you / to university / after / leave school / you / go 👔
18	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
19	
20	(G) get up / soon / you 👔

# **S** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: giving directions with *will*. Complete the letter. Put *'ll* with the verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

apple trees bridge door house key old house the road 🗸 great time

Dear Pamela and Simon

To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take <b>b</b> the road for
Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass)
that, you (come to) 2a bridge. Turn left after the 3, and very soon you (come
to) 4a crossroads. Go left again, and you (see) 5our 6
on the right in about 300m. You ( <i>recognise</i> ) 7 it because it's got a green 8 and
four 9 You (find) 10 the 11 under a mat outside the back door.
Enjoy your holiday. I'm sure you ( <i>have</i> ) 12a 13a 13
Love
Susan

#### **6** Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences that begin:

1	The government will
	The government will not
3	The Prime Minister will
4	The Prime Minister will not
5	The President will
	The weather will



### future: revision test

#### Write the contracted forms. 5 They will ..... 1 I will ..... 6 They will not 7 She is not going to ..... 2 She will ..... 3 It will not OR ..... 4 They are going to ..... 8 I am not going to ..... Correct (1) or not (1)? 5 The car won't start. ..... I'm taking a Spanish exam on Thursday. 6 I'm working in London next week. ..... 7 The concert starts at 8.00 this evening. ..... 1 'There's somebody at the door.' 'I go.' ..... 2 Will Anna and John be here tomorrow? ..... 8 Emma's going to have a baby. ..... 9 Do you play tennis with Peter this weekend? ..... 3 I promise I write again soon. ..... 4 I'll telling you everything soon. ..... 10 Where will be the party? ..... Correct the mistakes. When you and Karen coming to see us? When are you ... 1 The concert will tonight. 2 I will need a visa to go to China? 3 Our business will moves out of London next year. 4 Alan and Carol not are getting married after all. 5 I really going to stop smoking. 6 I wo'nt be here tomorrow. 7 | phone you after | will get home. 8 The secretary will giving you all the information. 9 What you're doing at the weekend? 10 When will be the meeting? ..... 4 Make questions and negative sentences. Tim will play the trumpet on Tuesday. Fred / flute / Friday 2 Serena / saxophone / Saturday Will Fred play the flute on Friday? Serena won't play the saxophone on Saturday. 1 Susan's seeing Simon on Sunday. Melanie / Martin / Monday 😰 Tessa / Tom / Tuesday 🗖 ..... 2 Mr Smith is going to study Spanish in Seville. Mr Andrews / Arabic / Algiers 👔 Mrs Roberts / Russian / Rome -..... 3 Charles will cook chicken for Charlotte. Derek / duck / Dorothy 👔 Sally / spaghetti / Sam 🗖 4 William is going to work in West Africa. Harry / take a holiday / Hungary 👔 Steve / study / Siberia 🗖 ..... 5 Angela is travelling to Amsterdam in August. Oliver / Oslo / October ? Monica / Madagascar / May

### **SECTION 4** past tenses

#### grammar summary

SIMPLE PAST: I worked, she worked, he didn't work etc PAST PROGRESSIVE (OR 'PAST CONTINUOUS'): I was working, she was working, he wasn't working etc

#### English has two 'past' tenses.

- We use the simple past for complete finished actions. We often use it in stories.
   I wrote ten letters yesterday.
   A man walked into a police station and asked ...
- We use the **past progressive** to talk about actions which were **unfinished** at a past time. 'What were you doing at 10.00 last night?' 'I was writing letters.'



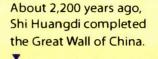


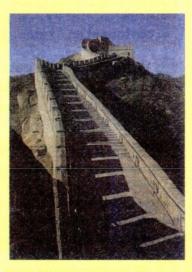
 About 6,000 years ago, somebody painted this picture on a cave wall in Namibia, south-west Africa.



Stonehenge, in southern England, is about 4,800 years old. Who built it? Nobody knows.

 About 1,200 years ago, Vikings from Scandinavia made this beautiful ship.





### THE CAVE OF CHAUVET-PONT-D'ARC

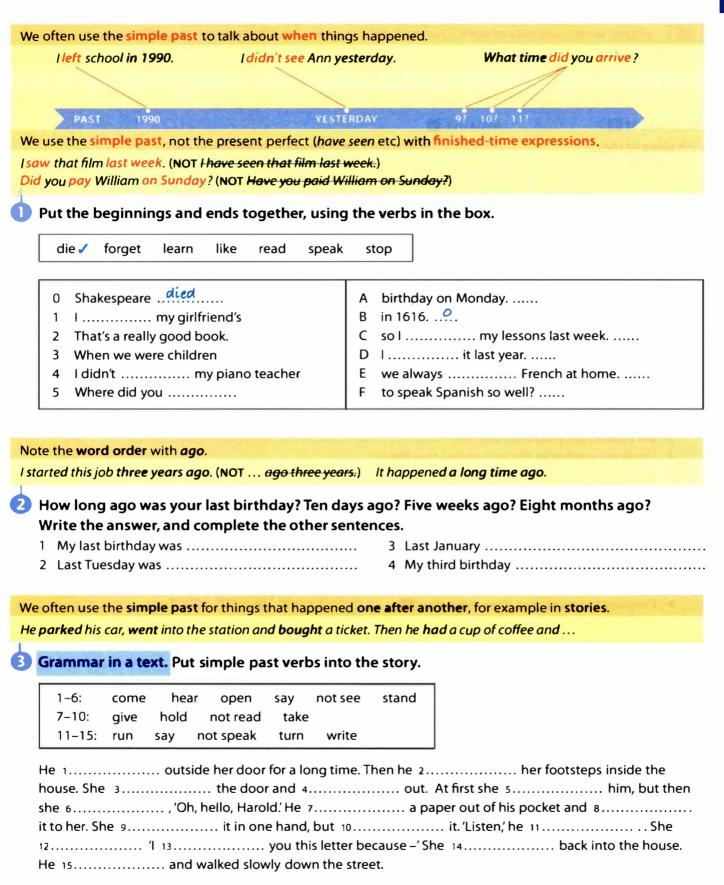
A bout 33,000 years ago, in the Stone Age, a man or a woman drew this owl on the wall of a cave in southern France. We don't know anything about the artist, and we never will. We only know that somebody saw an owl, saw that it was beautiful, and recorded its beauty. (When Picasso first saw prehistoric cave art, he said 'We have learnt nothing.') Before the Bronze Age or the Iron Age, before the glaciers covered Europe and went away again, before all of recorded history, an unknown person left a message for us: 'I saw this creature, and I thought it was beautiful'. Thank you, Stone Age artist.



# simple past: forms I worked. I went.

get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS
I Vyou/he/she/it/we/they did not work       Vyou/he/she/it/we/they did not go         Contraction: didn't         CONTraction: didn't         COUNTO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS         most verbs: + ed       work $\rightarrow$ worked       help $\rightarrow$ helped       rain $\rightarrow$ rained         after e: + d       hope $\rightarrow$ hoped       like $\rightarrow$ liked         Write the simple past.       walk       walk       watch         hate       live       pass       shave       watch         ive       pass       shave       watch       watch         teles EnDING IN -Y       vowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ yed       play $\rightarrow$ played       enjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyed       cook         consonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ ied       try $\rightarrow$ tried       reply $\rightarrow$ replied       watch       hurry         write the simple past.       stap       study       crry       annoy       carry       hurry         soonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ ied       stop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)       plan $\rightarrow$ planed       two wait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT weittee)         voowels consonants: don't double       seem $\rightarrow$ seemed       wait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT weittee)       help $\rightarrow$ helped         only double in STRESSED syllables       preFER $\rightarrow$ preferred       BuT WONder $\rightarrow$ wondered         Write the simple past.       slip       f	I/you/he/she/it/we/they worked	I/you/he/she/it/we/they went
Contraction: didn't         IOW TO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS         most verbs: + ed       work + worked       help + helped       rain + rained         after e: + d       hope + hoped       like + liked         Write the simple past.       walk.cd.       arrive         walk walked.       arrive       change       cook         hate       live       pass       shave       watch         ERBS ENDING IN -Y       vowel (a, e, o) + y - y-yed       play + played       ergiy + ergiped         Vowel (a, e, o) + y - y-yed       play + played       ergiy + ergiled         Write the simple past.       stay       carry       carry         hurry       pray       pray       play + tried       reply - y replied         Write the simple past.       stap       stap       carry       carry         hurry       pray       most vant + waited (NOT stoped)       plan + planned       wait + waited (NOT waitted)         Woulbe in STRESSED syllables       preFER + preferred       BUT WONder + wondered         Write the simple past.       stat       rob       slim       help + helped         shop       rain       stat       rob       slim       file + wordeed         Write the simple past.	did I/you/he/she/it/we/they work?	did l/you/he/she/it/we/they go?
OW TO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS         most verbs: +-ed       work $\rightarrow$ worked       help $\rightarrow$ helped       rain $\rightarrow$ rained         after -e: +-d       hope $\rightarrow$ hoped       like $\rightarrow$ liked         Write the simple past.       walk .walk2ed       arrive	I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not work	l/you/he/she/it/we/they <b>did not go</b>
most verbs:+-edwork $\rightarrow$ workedhelp $\rightarrow$ helpedrain $\rightarrow$ rainedafter -e:+-dhope $\rightarrow$ hope $\rightarrow$ like $\rightarrow$ likerain $\rightarrow$ rainedWrite the simple past.arrivechangecookrookhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchERBS ENDING IN -Yvowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ -yedplay $\rightarrow$ playedenjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoy $\rightarrow$ Vowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ -yedplay $\rightarrow$ play $\rightarrow$ enjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoy $\rightarrow$ Consonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ -iedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.staystudycryannoycarryhurryhurryprayprayannoycarryhurryhurryprayprayannoycarryhurryhurrypraypraystop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels:don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waiteedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.sipfitturnshoprainstartrobslimjumpshoutslipfitturnVisitreGRETdeVElopGALlopOPenANswerreFERpaidWrite as many of the simple past forms one by one (see page 299). $o \rightarrow$ wento $\rightarrow$	Contraction: <i>didn't</i>	A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACT
most verbs: + edwork $\rightarrow$ workedhelp $\rightarrow$ helpedrain $\rightarrow$ rainedafter -e:+ dhope $\rightarrow$ hopedlike $\rightarrow$ likedWrite the simple past. walkwalk.ed.arrivechangecookhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchERBS ENDING IN -Yvowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ -yedplay $\rightarrow$ playedenjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyedconsonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ -iedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.staycryannoystaystudycryannoycarryhurryprayprayannoycarryhurrypraystop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waiteewo ousels: don't doublewant $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wanteed)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.slipfitturnshoprainstartrobslimo $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).o $\rightarrow$ went see $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughto $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.becomebegin<		
most verbs: + edwork $\rightarrow$ workedhelp $\rightarrow$ helpedrain $\rightarrow$ rainedafter -e:+ dhope $\rightarrow$ hopedlike $\rightarrow$ likedWrite the simple past. walkwalk.ed.arrivechangecookhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchERBS ENDING IN -Yvowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ -yedplay $\rightarrow$ playedenjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyedconsonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ -iedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.staycryannoystaystudycryannoycarryhurryprayprayannoycarryhurrypraystop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waiteewo ousels: don't doublewant $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wanteed)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.slipfitturnshoprainstartrobslimo $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).o $\rightarrow$ went see $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughto $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.becomebegin<		a matte sale second of the first of all of the sale bases when the base base
after -e:+.dhopehopedlikelikeWrite the simple past. walkarrivechangecookhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchconsonant (d, l, retc) + y -> riedtry -> triedreply -> repliedWrite the simple past.stapcarryannoyhurrypraycarryannoycarryhurrypraystop -> stopped (NOT stoped)plan -> plannedtwo vowels:don't doubleseem -> seemedwait -> waited (NOT waittee)help -> helpedbut WONder -> wonderedhelp -> helpedwhite the simple past.stipfitturnshoprainstartrobslimjumpshoutslipfitturnVisitreGRETdeVElopGALlopOPenANswerreFERpaidWrite as many of the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).o -> wento -> wentsee -> sawbuy -> boughtpay -> paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learnthe ones that you don't know. <td< td=""><td>Line a line</td><td></td></td<>	Line a line	
Write the simple past. walkwalk.ed.walkwalk.ed.arrivechangecookhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchhatelivepassshavewatchconsonant (a, l, retc) + y-iedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.staystudycryannoystaystudycryannoycarrypraypraypassannoycarryNOUBLING (stopped, planed etc)one vowel + one consonantseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waitted wait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waitted wait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waitted)one vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedBut WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.startrobslimshoprainstartrobslimjumpshoutslipfitturVisitreGRETdeVElopGALlopOPenANswerreFERgatWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.becomebeginbreakbringbecomedeginbreakbringcomedrinkeatfallfearhearholdkeepknoweatfallcomedrinkeatgetgivehearholdkeepknowreadsayshutsit		
walk	alter -e. +-a hope hope	
walk	Write the simple past.	
hatelivepassshavewatchERBS ENDING IN -Yvowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ yedplay $\rightarrow$ playedenjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyedconsonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ iedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.staystudycryhurryprayannoycarryhurrypraygrayOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)stop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels: don't doublesem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waitedtwo consonants:don't doublesem $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.shopfitturnshoprainstartrobslimjumpshoutslipfitturnVisitreGRETdeVElopGALlopOPenANswerreFERpaidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learnthe ones that you don't know.becomebeginbecomebeginbreakbringcomedirinkeatfallcomedirinkeatfallcomedirinkeatfallcomesayshutsitcomesayshutsitcomesayshutsitcomegerhelapaycomedirinkeatcomegive<		change cook
ERBS ENDING IN -Y         vowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ -yed       play $\rightarrow$ played       enjoyed         consonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ -ied       try $\rightarrow$ tried       replied         Write the simple past.         study		5
vowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ ·jedplay $\rightarrow$ playedenjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyedconsonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ ·jedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.stay		
vowel (a, e, o) + y $\rightarrow$ ·jedplay $\rightarrow$ playedenjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyedconsonant (d, l, retc) + y $\rightarrow$ ·jedtry $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past.stay	ERBS ENDING IN -Y	
consonant (d, l, retc) + $y \rightarrow -ied$ try $\rightarrow$ triedreply $\rightarrow$ repliedWrite the simple past. stay		play played enjoy enjoyed
Write the simple past.studycryannoycarryhurrypraypray		
staystudycryannoycarryhurryprayprayannoycarryOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)one vowel + one consonantstop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waited)two consonants: don't doublewant $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wanted)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.shoutslipfitshoprainstartrobslimjumpshoutslipfitturnVisitreGRETdeVElopGALlopOPenANswerreFERfit/ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).oo $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learnthe ones that you don't know.becomebeginbreakbringcatchcomedrinkeatfallfeelforgetgetgivehearholdkeepknowlearnleaveletmakepayput<		ing a med reply a replied
hurryprayOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)one vowel + one consonant $\rightarrow$ double consonant + edstop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waittee)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.shopshoprainshoutslipjumpshoutshoutreGRETdeVElopOPenAnswerreFERvisitor $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learnthe ones that you don't know.becomebecomebeginbreakcomedrinkeatfallfeelforgetgetgivehearholdkeepknowlearnlearesaysayshutsitspeakstand	Write the simple past.	
hurryprayOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)one vowel + one consonant $\rightarrow$ double consonant + edstop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)two vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waittee)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.shopshoprainshoutshoutreGRETdeVElopOPenAnswerreFERverbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299). $o \rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learnthe ones that you don't know.becomebecomebegincomedrinkeatfallfeelfreqgivehearholdkeepknowlearnleavelearsayshutsitsaysayshutsitspeakstand	stay study	cry annoy carry
OUBLING (stopped, planned etc)         one vowel + one consonant $\rightarrow$ double consonant + ed       stop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)       plan $\rightarrow$ planned         two vowels: don't double       seem $\rightarrow$ seemed       wait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waited)         two consonants: don't double       want $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wanted)       help $\rightarrow$ helped         only double in STRESSED syllables       preFER $\rightarrow$ preferred       BUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wondered         Write the simple past.       shop       rain       start       rob       slim       slim         jump       shout       slip       fit       turn       turn       turn         Visit       reGRET       deVElop       GALlop       OPen       Answer       reFER         or $\rightarrow$ went       see $\rightarrow$ saw       buy $\rightarrow$ bought       pay $\rightarrow$ paid       write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.       become       begin       break       bring       catch	hurry pray	,
one vowel + one consonant $\rightarrow$ double consonant + -edstop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT stoped)plan $\rightarrow$ plannedtwo vowels: don't doubleseem $\rightarrow$ seemedwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waittee)two consonants: don't doublewant $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wanttee)help $\rightarrow$ helpedonly double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.shop	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
two vowels: don't double two consonants: don't double only double in STRESSED syllablesseem $\rightarrow$ seemed want $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wantted) preFER $\rightarrow$ preferredwait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waitted help $\rightarrow$ helped BUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past. shop	one vowel + one consonant	
two consonants: don't double only double in STRESSED syllableswant $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wanted) preFER $\rightarrow$ preferredhelp $\rightarrow$ helped BUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past. shop		
only double in STRESSED syllablespreFER $\rightarrow$ preferredBUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wonderedWrite the simple past.shopjumpshoutjumpshoutvisitreGRETdeVElopOPenANswerreFERvith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).o $\rightarrow$ wentsee $\rightarrow$ sawbuy $\rightarrow$ boughtpay $\rightarrow$ paidWrite as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.becomebecomecomedrinkeatfallfeelgetgivehearholdkeepknowlearnlearnlearnsayshutsitspeakstand		
shop       rain       start       rob       slim         jump       shout       slip       fit       turn         Visit       reGRET       deVElop       GALlop         OPen       ANswer       reFER       GALlop         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         //ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.       become       catch         //ith come       begin       break       bring       catch         //ith come       begin       break       bring       catch         //ith come       begin       hear       hold       keep       know <th></th> <th></th>		
shop       rain       start       rob       slim         jump       shout       slip       fit       turn         Visit       reGRET       deVElop       GALlop         OPen       ANswer       reFER       GALlop         Vith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o       went         see       saw       buy       bought       pay       paid         Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn       the ones that you don't know.       become         become       begin       break       bring       catch       catch         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know       put         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand       stand		
jump       shout       slip       fit       turn       turn         Visit       reGRET       deVElop       GALlop       GALlop         OPen       ANswer       reFER       GALlop       GALlop         /ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).       o → went       see → saw       buy → bought       pay → paid         // Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.       become       catch       catch         become       begin       break       bring       catch       catch         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	Write the simple past.	
VIsit       reGRET       deVElop       GALlop         OPen       ANswer       reFER       GALlop         /ith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).           /o → went       see → saw       buy → bought       pay → paid         Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.       bring       catch         become       begin       break       bring       catch         come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know       put         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put       put		
OPen       ANswer       reFER         Answer       repage 299)         Answer       repage 299, and learn         Answer       break       bring         Come       begin       break         Come       drink       eat         Answer       fall       feel         Answer       fall	jump shout	
Vith irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).         o → went       see → saw       buy → bought       pay → paid         Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.         become       begin       break       bring       catch       catch         get       give       hear       fall       feel       forget       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know       put         learn       leave       let       make       pay       pay       pay	Vlsit reGRET	
0 → went       see → saw       buy → bought       pay → paid         Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.       become         become       begin       break       bring       catch         come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know       put         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put       put	OPen ANswer	reFER
o → went       see → saw       buy → bought       pay → paid         Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.         become       begin       break         come       drink       eat       fall         get       give       hear       hold       keep         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand		
0 → went       see → saw       buy → bought       pay → paid         Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.       become         become       begin       break       bring       catch         come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know       put         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put       put	/ith <b>irregular</b> verbs, you have to learn the s	simple past forms one by one (see page 299).
Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.         become       begin       break       bring       catch         come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	o> went see> saw buv>	bouaht pay -> paid
the ones that you don't know.         become       begin       break       bring       catch         come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	,	
become       begin       break       bring       catch         come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	Write as many of the simple past fo	rms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn
come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	the ones that you don't know.	
come       drink       eat       fall       feel       forget         get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand		break bring catch
get       give       hear       hold       keep       know         learn       leave       let       make       pay       put         read       say       shut       sit       speak       stand	-	
learn         leave         let         make         pay         put         make           read         say         shut         sit         speak         stand         stand	get give hea	5
read say shut sit speak stand		
		let make pay put
	learn leave	.,
	learn leave read say shut	

### simple past: use 1 left school in 1990.



# simple past: negatives I did not work. I did not go.

I did not work you did not work he/she/it did not	work we did not work they did not work
Contraction: didn't	internation of the second s
e make simple past negatives ( ) with <i>did not /didn't</i> +	· Infinitive (without to).
e <b>cleaned</b> the car. He <b>did not clean</b> the car. (Not started early. He <b>did not start</b> early. (Not start)	NOT He <del>did not cleaned the car.</del> ) T He <del>did not starts early</del> )
ne <b>saw</b> you. She didn't see you. (NOT SH	
hn <b>went</b> to Rome. John <b>didn't go</b> to Rome.	
Circle the correct form.	
I break / broke) a cup yesterday.	4 Alina come / came to see us at the weekend.
Ann did not(play) played tennis this morning.	5 I didn't see / saw Bill at the party.
1 Harry work / worked last Sunday.	6 Peter didn't write / wrote to me for a long tim
2   didn't know / knew where I was.	7 The train did not <i>arrive / arrives</i> on time.
3 I didn't feel / felt well last night.	8 Julita didn't like / likes / liked her teacher.
Make simple past negative sentences.	t plan football
I played hockey last weekend. (football) I didw	
1 We spoke Spanish together. ( <i>Arabic</i> )	
2 My uncle taught mathematics. ( <i>science</i> )	
3 Bill cooked the potatoes. (the fish)	
4 I took my mother to the mountains. ( <i>my father</i> )	
5 We told our parents everything. ( <i>the police</i> )	
6 I wrote to my sister. ( <i>my brother</i> )	
7 I liked the party. (the music)	
8 We knew her address. (phone number)	
Complete the sentences with affirmative (+) or	r negative (🗖) verbs.
	I broke the other one.
I worked last week, but (the week before ) di	dn't work the week before.
1 He didn't change his trousers, but (his shirt +)	
2 She answered the first question, but (the others =)	
3 He phoned her, but (go to her house -)	
4 I didn't bring any flowers, but (some chocolates +)	
5 She didn't buy a coat, but ( <i>a very nice dress</i> +)	
6 Late the vegetables, but ( <i>the meat</i> =)	
7 We kept the photos, but ( <i>the letters</i> )	
8 They didn't speak English, but ( <i>German</i> +)	
<ul> <li>9 My grandfather shaved on weekdays, but (at weeke</li> </ul>	
Write five things that you didn't do yesterday.	
1 I didn't	
2	
3	
4	
5	

**id** I work? did you work? did he/she/it work? did we work? did they work?

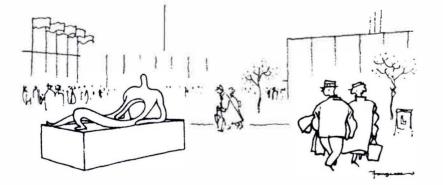
	QUESTION ?		
He cleaned the car.	Did he clean the car? (NOT Did he cleaned the car?)		
The class went to Rome.	Where did the class	s go? (NOT <del>Where did the class went?</del> )	
Circle the correct form.			
<ul> <li>I take / took my father to Sp</li> </ul>	ain last wook	6 Why did you <i>leave / left</i> your job?	
<ul> <li>Did you(hear)/ heard me?</li> </ul>	ann last week.	7 Did Fred speak / spoke to you about Andy?	
1 Did Theo bring / brought his	wife with him?	8 Where did that woman keep / kept all her mone	
2 When did Gemma start / sta		<ul><li>9 Rolf <i>learn / learnt</i> English when he was young.</li></ul>	
3 1 see / saw Eric in the superr		10 Sorry – I forget / forgot to buy milk.	
4 The lesson <i>begin / began</i> ve		11 Did you come / came by train or by bus?	
5 How did Oliver break / brok		12 What did you say / said?	
Make simple past question	s.		
		lid he enjoy the music?	
	-		
		?)	
-			
12 He forgot the name of his h	otel, but ( <i>the address</i>	s as well <b>?</b> )	
Make simple past question	s with what, who	and where.	
-			
7 Robert studied somewhere.			
9 Catherine heard somebody.			
4.4.4.4.6			
11 Helen forgot something.			

→ For questions without *did*, like *Who said that*? or *What happened*?, see pages 108–109.

### simple past: more practice

	REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS
Đ	l/you/he/she/it/we/they worked / liked	l/you/he etc <b>went / saw</b>
?	did I/you/he etc work / like?	did I/you/he etc go / see?
-	l/you/he/ etc did not work / like	l/you/he etc <b>did not go</b> / <b>see</b>
	Contraction: didn't	
O C	complete the sentences with affirmative (+	) verbs, questions ( <b>2</b> ) or negatives ( <b>-</b> ).
-	She didn't feel well last night, but (OK this morn	
	'I bought a new coat vesterday.' ('shoes too ?')	Did you buy shoes too?
	We saw the Eiffel Tower, but (see Notre Dame	
1		of Latin 🛨)
2		
3		-
4		′)
5		·
6		)
7		_)
8	'Did the children see a film?' ('two films +')	
9	'I ate your cake.' ('my chocolates too 🎴')	
10	I studied for the exam, but (enough -)	
<b>2</b> N	lake simple past questions.	
•	Sarah and her baby came out of hospital. (When	n) When did they come out?
1		
2		
3	The small woman said something. (What)	
4		
5	I invited somebody to lunch. (Who)	
6	Mary dropped something. (What)	
7	Oliver beat somebody at tennis. (Who)	
8	George wrote to the police. (Why)	
-		
9	Rose asked somebody to marry her. (Who)	

#### **3** Look at the picture, and complete the sentence correctly.



- A did you remember
- B did you remembered
- C do you remembered
- D did you to remember

'That reminds me, dear - ..... the sandwiches?'

### past progressive\* What were you doing at 8.00?

+ ? 

I was working you were working was I workina? I was not working

were you working? you were not working he/she/it was working was he/she/it workina? he/she/it was not working etc we/they were working

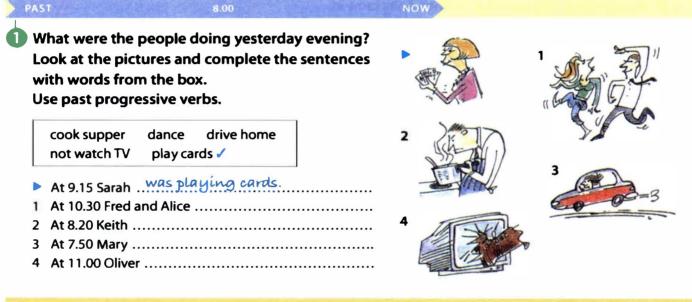
were we/they working?

Contractions: wasn't, weren't

We make the past progressive with was/were + ... ing. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

At 8 o'clock I was waiting for a train. What were you doing?

We use the past progressive to say what was (not) happening around (before, at and perhaps after) a past time. 'What were you doing at 8.00? Were you watching TV?' (NOT What did you do ...) 'At 8.00? No, I wasn't watching TV. I was playing cards.' (NOT+played ...)



We make past progressive questions with was/were + subject +ing.						
<b>STATEMENT</b> +: It was raining. You were working. All the children were singing.						
	Was it raining?	Were you working?	What were all the children singing?			
<ul> <li>Write questions.</li> <li>'At 10.00 I was reading: (a newspaper)</li> <li>Were you reading a newspaper?</li> </ul>						

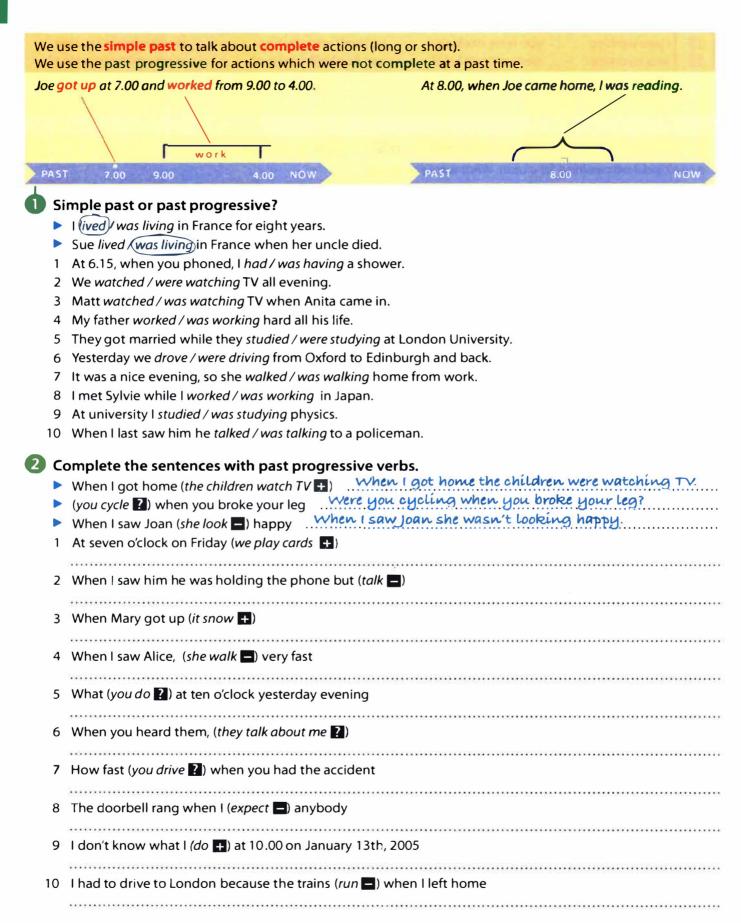
#### When I saw Peter he was eating? (what) What was he eating? 1 'When I went into Alesha's office, she was writing.' (*letters*) 2 'At lunchtime Richard was shopping.' (where) 3 'At 8.30 Anna was cooking' (what) 4 'When I arrived, all the children were crying.' (why) 5 'At midnight, Liz and Jack were driving: (to Scotland)

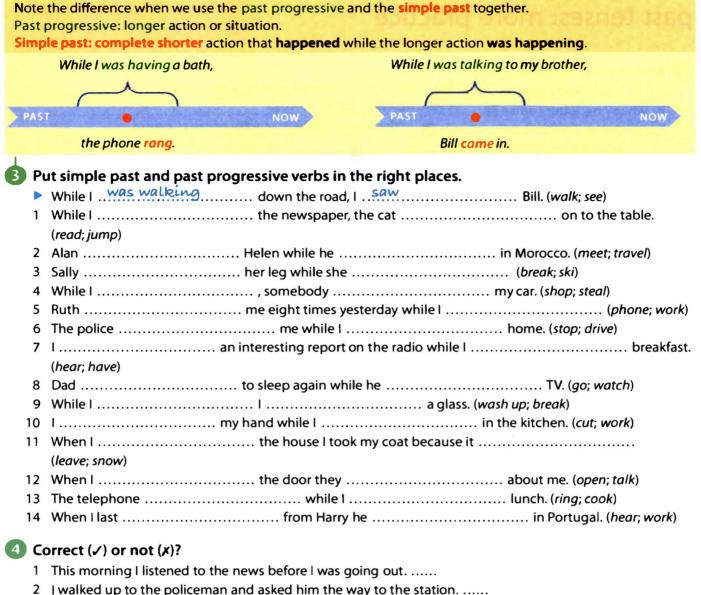
.....

#### 3) What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?

\* Also called 'past continuous'

### simple past or past progressive? I walked / I was walking





- 2 I walked up to the policeman and asked him the way to the station of the sta
- 3 When Ann arrived I was writing letters. .....
- 4 The cat was bringing in a mouse while I was having breakfast. .....
- 5 I didn't go out because when I looked out of the window it rained. .....
- 6 When I went to sleep the teacher was talking about grammar. .....
- 7 The teacher was still talking about grammar when I woke up. .....
- 8 Jenny and Takashi got married while she worked in Tokyo. .....

#### S Put in words from the box, in the simple past or past progressive.

drive open pass pull run shine 🗸 sing start turn turn wait

# past tenses: more practice

	imple past. Make sentences.
	the train / stop / at every station + The train stopped at every station.
	when / my letter / arrive?
	the doctor / remember / my name - The doctor didn't remember my name.
1	what / all those people / want 👔
2	all your brothers / send you / birthday cards 👔 🛛
3	the baby / eat / some toothpaste this morning 🛨
4	the teacher / answer / my question 🗖
5	l / lose / my keys again yesterday 🛨
6	anybody / phone / while I was out 👔
7	The Prime Minister / tell / us that things were getting better 🛨 🛛
8	My friends and I / believe / the Prime Minister 🗖
9	Richard / give / me a birthday present 🗖
10	What time / you / get up / today 👔
0	the second s
	When I walked in (the children fight +)       the children were fighting.
	When I walked in (the children light 1)
1	
1	At 9.00 on Sunday ( <i>we watch TV</i> +)
2	J 1 1 7
3	
4	
5	
6	
, 8	I had to drive to work because the trains (run =)
g	
-	When I saw Peter, he (stand 1) and looking up at my window
10	
<b>B</b> S	imple past and past progressive. Put in the correct verb forms.
	They told the police that they were playing. cards at 10.00. (tell; play)
1	When I out of the house I took my umbrella because it
2	This morning I the newspaper before I went out. ( <i>read</i> )
3	you the football match last night? ( <i>watch</i> )
4	When I into the room they about clothes. ( <i>walk; talk</i> )
5	At 8 o'clock yesterday morning I in the sea. (s <i>wim</i> )
6	I walked up to the classroom window and in. The teacher but
	nobody
7	The telephone as usual, while I a bath. ( <i>ring; have</i> )
8	This time last Friday I on the beach. ( <i>lie</i> )
9	Why you home early yesterday? (go)
10	When I first John he round the world. ( <i>meet; travel</i> )

#### **Grammar in a text.** Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Yesterday   > (get up)got up	at 7.00. When I 1 (look)	out of the
window it 2 (rain)	, exactly like every other day this	s week.
1 3 (wash)	, 4 (get dressed)	,
5 (give)	. the cat his breakfast, and 6 (make)	coffee.
7   (not eat)	anything, because I'm never hungry in	the morning. Then I
8 ( <i>go</i> )	to the bus stop and 🤋 ( <i>wait</i> )	for the bus. It
10 (not arrive)	, as usual, so I 11 (walk)	to the office.
While 1 12 (walk)	, I decided once again that it was	time to find another job – one
with a car. When I 13 (arrive)	, nobody 14 (work)	
15 everybody (talk)	about the weather. The boss	
16 (come in)	and 17 (tell)	everybody to start working, but
this 18 (not make)	much difference. I 19 (sit down)	at my
desk and 20 (start)	thinking about football.	

#### **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know all the words in the box. Use a dictionary if** necessary. Then try to correct the mistakes. Find the answers on the internet if necessary.

	build climb compose discover make invent paint write
	Galileo wrote 'Hamlet' Galileo discovered the moons of Jupiter
	Shakespeare discovered the moons of Jupiter. Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet'.
1	Mozart built the Eiffel Tower.
2	Leonardo da Vinci directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.
3	Shah Jehan invented dynamite.
4	······································
5	Sergei Eisenstein built the Taj Mahal.
6	Gustave Eiffel wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'.
7	Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.
8	Marie Curie first climbed Mount Everest.
9	John Lennon and Paul McCartney discovered radium.
10	
In	nternet exercise. What did these people do? Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out the
a	nswers, if necessary.
1	Alexander Fleming
2	Giuseppe Verdi

- 3 Rembrandt van Rijn .....
- 4 Edmund Whymper .....
- 5 Mary Shelley .....
- 6 Stephanie Kwolek .....
- 7 Christopher Wren .....
- 8 Akira Kurosawa .....

### past tenses: revision test

#### Write the simple past forms.

arriveamved	become	begin	break	bring	
buy	change	cry	develop	feel	
go	hope	leave	like p	ay	start
stay	stop	watch	write	work	••••

#### Circle the correct forms.

- Why didn't you phone / phones / phoned ?
- 1 In the afternoon the rain stoped / stopped.
- 2 You never visited / visitted me in hospital.
- 3 When I arrived she was makeing / making coffee.
- 4 My mother didn't feel / felt well yesterday.
- 5 We usually speak / spoke French in my family when I was a child.
- 6 Henry didn't told / tell the police anything.
- 7 Did you like / liked the film?
- 8 I didn't saw/seen/see the accident.
- 9 John phoned / was phoning just when I went / was going out.
- 10 I played / was playing football a lot when I was at school.

#### Put in simple past or past progressive verbs.

- He ...... told ...... his wife that he ...was playing... chess at midnight. (tell; play)
- 1 I ..... as a translator for two years. (work)
- 2 Jenny ...... as a translator when she ..... Roger. (work; meet)
- 4 We ..... John all evening. (listen to)
- 5 While I ..... my car, Ellie ..... to talk to me. (clean; stop)
- 6 I ...... my hand while I ...... (burn; cook)
- 7 Rick ...... when Emma ..... home. (read; come)
- 8 My mother ..... in Dublin all her life. (*live*)
- 9 While she ..... in Chicago she ..... ill. (study; get)
- 10 The police ...... him while he ..... out of the bank. (catch; run)

#### 4 Each sentence has one or two mistakes. Correct them.

- I looked out of the window, and I was seeing that it rained.
- 1 Yesterday we were driving from London to Bristol and back.
- 2 At university I was studied engineering.
- 3 Why you were crying when I came in? .....
- 4 I was begining to get tired, so I was going home.
- 5 We payed the bill and leaved the restaurant.
- 6 While I was shoping, somebody was stealing my bicycle.
- 7 The doorbell ringed while I was cleaning the flat.
- 8 It was a warm day, so we opening all the windows.
- 9 What time you was got up this morning? .....
- 10 I did lost my keys somewhere when I walked home this evening. .....

# **SECTION 5** perfect tenses

# iŖ

#### grammar summary

(SIMPLE) PRESENT PERFECT: I have worked, she has worked, he hasn't worked etc PRESENT PERFECT PRÓGRESSIVE: I have been working, he has been working etc PAST PERFECT: I had worked, she had worked etc

We use the **present perfect** to talk about **past** actions with some **importance now**. *I've written to John, so he knows what's happening.* 

- We use the **present perfect progressive** mostly to say **how long** things have been going on **up to now**. *I have been writing letters since breakfast time.*
- When we are already talking about the past, we use the **past perfect** to talk about an **earlier time**. Yesterday I found some old letters that Kate **had written** to me from Germany.

A NN CARSTAIRS was born in 1976. She is an explorer who has travelled extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas. For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences.





ISABELLA LUCY BIRD (1831–1904) was a famous explorer. At a time when it was difficult for women to be independent, she travelled in the United States, Persia, Tibet, Kurdistan, China, Japan, Korea and Morocco. She wrote many books about her experiences, illustrated with her own remarkable photographs.

He's not here. He's gone to Paris.

I've made a cake. Would you like some?

I've already read it.

I've been studying English for three years.

#### Look what I've found!

Have you ever been to Canada?

She's been here since Monday.

Nobody was there. They had all gone home.

#### Who's taken my coat?

I've just had a brilliant idea.

The Prime Minister has met workers' representatives. They discussed a number of questions.

I knew I'd seen her somewhere before.



# present perfect: forms I have paid. Has she forgotten?

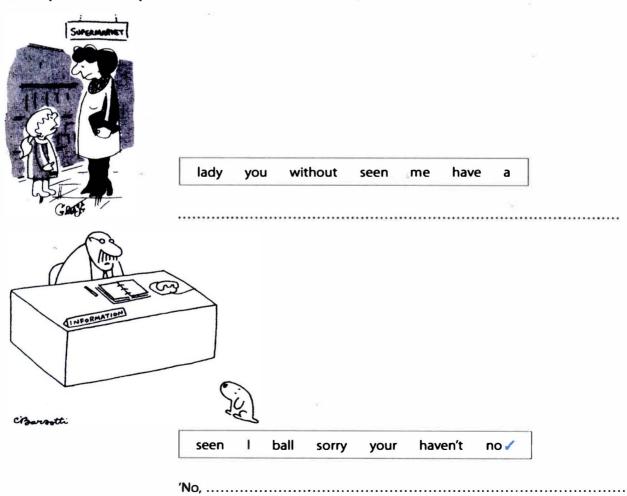
REGULAR VERBS		AN IRREGULAR VERB
l <b>have</b> worked <b>have</b> I worked? I <b>have not</b> worked	you have worked he/she/it has worked e have you worked? has he/she/it worked? you have not worked etc	
For contractions (I'	ve, he's, haven't), see page 301.	
	for the second data was a second start of the second second starts in the form	
	rfect, put <i>have/has</i> with the past participle ( <i>wo</i> end in - <i>ed</i> , like simple past tenses (for spelling i	
	ope> hoped stop> stopped try -	
	past participle is often different from the simple	e past tense.
	ms one by one (see page 299).	
e> seen speak	> spoken go> gone buy> bou	<i>ight</i>
Write as many of th	he irregular past participles as you can. Cl	neck them on page 299,
	that you don't know.	
become become	beginbegun break	bring buy
come c	drink fall	forget
give he	ear hold keep	know
learn le	eave let make	pay
	eave let make ad say shut	
put rea		sit
put rea stand t	ad say shut ake tell think	sit write
put rea stand t Write affirmative (	ad say shut ake tell think ) or negative ( ) present perfect senter	sit write
put       rea         stand       t         Write affirmative (         ▶ I (speak ➡) to the	ad say shut shut tell think think  b) or negative ( ) present perfect senter boss { have spoken to the boss.	sit write nces.
put       rea         stand       t         Write affirmative (         ▶ I (speak ➡) to the         ▶ they (eat ➡) anyth	ad       say       shut         take       tell       think         ad       tell       think         bornegative (       present perfect senter         boss       thave spoken to the boss.         they have not eaten anything.	sit write n <b>ces.</b>
put       rea         stand       t         Write affirmative (         ▶ I (speak ➡) to the         ▶ they (eat ➡) anyth	ad say shut shut tell think think  b) or negative ( ) present perfect senter boss { have spoken to the boss.	sit write n <b>ces.</b>
put       rea         stand       t         Write affirmative ([         I (speak +) to the         they (eat -) anyth         she (forget +) my	ad       say       shut         take       tell       think         ad       tell       think         bornegative (       present perfect senter         boss       thave spoken to the boss.         they have not eaten anything.	sit write nces.
put       rea         stand       t         Write affirmative ([         I (speak +) to the         they (eat -) anyth         she (forget +) my         I (make +) a mistat         you (shut -) the detection	ad say shut take tell think boss! have spoken to the boss. hing	sit write nces.
put       rea         stand       t         Write affirmative ([         I (speak +) to the         they (eat -) anyth         she (forget +) my         I (make +) a mistat         you (shut -) the detection	ad say shut take tell think above spoken to the boss. they have not eaten anything. address address	sit write nces.
put rea stand t Write affirmative ( > I (speak +) to the > they (eat -) anyth 1 she (forget +) my 2 I (make +) a mista 3 you (shut -)the da 4 Alan (work +) very	ad say shut take tell think boss! have spoken to the boss. hing	sit write nces.
put rea stand t Write affirmative ( View of the state of	ad       say       shut         sake       tell       think <b>H</b> ) or negative ( <b>H</b> ) present perfect senter         boss       1 have spoken to the boss.         ning       They have not eaten anything.         address	sit write
put rea stand t Write affirmative ( > I (speak +) to the > they (eat -) anyth 1 she (forget +) my 2 I (make +) a mista 3 you (shut -)the da 4 Alan (work +) very 5 I (hear -) from Ma 6 John (learn -) any	ad say shut take tell think action negative ( ) present perfect senter boss have spoken to the boss. ning	sit write nces.
put rea stand t Write affirmative ( > I (speak +) to the > they (eat -) anyth 1 she (forget +) my 2 I (make +) a mista 3 you (shut -)the du 4 Alan (work +) very 5 I (hear -) from Ma 6 John (learn -) any 7 I (break +) a cup	ad say shut take tell think the or negative (=) present perfect senter boss I have spoken to the boss. They have not eaten anything. address address ake oor y hard ary ything	sit write nces.
put rea stand t Write affirmative ( > I (speak +) to the > they (eat -) anyth 1 she (forget +) my 2 I (make +) a mista 3 you (shut -)the da 4 Alan (work +) very 5 I (hear -) from Ma 6 John (learn -) any 7 I (break +) a cup 8 we (buy +) a new	ad say shut take tell think the or negative (=) present perfect senter boss	sit write



'Somewhere with no irregular verbs.'

We make present perfect questions with have/has + subject + past participle.         STATEMENT I:       You have paid.       The rain has stopped.       The children have gone to Dublin.         QUESTION I:       Have you paid?       Has the rain stopped?       Where have the children gone?         3       Make present perfect questions.        John / leave ?       Has john. Left?         >       why / Fiona / go home ?       Why has Fiona gone home?          >       where / you / put the keys ?       Where have you put the keys?         1       we / pay ?           2       Tim / phone ?           3       you / hear the news ?           4       the dogs / come back ?           5       what / Barbara tell the police ?           6       why / everybody / stop talking ?           9       you / see / Martin anywhere ?           10       who / take / my coat ?           11       what / happen ?           12       where / rolose the window ?           13       why / Peter / close the window ?					
QUESTION 1:       Have you paid?       Has the rain stopped?       Where have the children gone?         3       Make present perfect questions.       >       John / leave ?      Has John Left?         >       why / Fiona / go home ?      Why has Fiona gone home?       >         >       where / you / put the keys ?      Where have you put the keys?       >         >       where / you / put the keys ?      Where have you put the keys?       >         1       we / pay ?	We m	ake presen	it perfect questions wi	ith have/has + subject + past	participle.
<ul> <li>Make present perfect questions.</li> <li>John / leave ?tras. John Left?</li> <li>why / Fiona / go home ?why has Fiona gone home?</li> <li>where / you / put the keys ?where have you put the keys?</li> <li>we / pay ?</li></ul>	STATE	MENT +:	You have paid.	The rain has stopped.	The children have gone to Dublin.
<ul> <li>John / leave ?Has John Left?</li> <li>why / Fiona / go home ?Why has Fiona gone home?</li> <li>where / you / put the keys ?Where have you put the keys?</li> <li>we / pay ?</li></ul>	QUES	TION ?:	Have you paid?	Has the rain stopped?	Where have the children gone?
<ul> <li>John / leave?Has John Left?</li> <li>why / Fiona / go home?Why has Fiona gone home?</li> <li>where / you / put the keys?Where have you put the keys?</li> <li>we / pay?</li></ul>					
<ul> <li>why / Fiona / go home ?</li></ul>					
<ul> <li>where / you / put the keys ?</li></ul>		John / leav	ve?		
<ul> <li>1 we / pay ?</li> <li>2 Tim / phone ?</li> <li>3 you / hear the news ?</li> <li>4 the dogs / come back ?</li> <li>5 what / Barbara tell the police ?</li> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>		why / Fion	a/go home?	y hus floru gone nome?	
<ul> <li>2 Tim / phone ?</li> <li>3 you / hear the news ?</li> <li>4 the dogs / come back ?</li> <li>5 what / Barbara tell the police ?</li> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>		where / yo	ou / put the keys ?	where have you put the R	eys?
<ul> <li>3 you / hear the news ?</li> <li>4 the dogs / come back ?</li> <li>5 what / Barbara tell the police ?</li> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	1	we / pay ?			
<ul> <li>4 the dogs / come back ?</li> <li>5 what / Barbara tell the police ?</li> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	2	Tim / phor	ne?		
<ul> <li>5 what / Barbara tell the police ?</li> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	3	you / hear	the news?		
<ul> <li>5 what / Barbara tell the police ?</li> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	4	the dogs /	come back ?		
<ul> <li>6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?</li> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	5				
<ul> <li>7 what / you / say to Mike ?</li> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	6				
<ul> <li>8 why / everybody / stop talking ?</li> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	7				
<ul> <li>9 you / see / Martin anywhere ?</li> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	8				
<ul> <li>10 who / take / my coat ?</li> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>	9				
<ul> <li>11 what / happen ?</li> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>					
<ul> <li>12 where / my brother / go ?</li> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>					
<ul> <li>13 why / Peter / close the window ?</li> <li>14 Judith / pass / her exam ?</li> </ul>					
14 Judith / pass / her exam ?	12				
	13	•			
IS the postman / come ?	14				
	15	the postm	an / come /		

#### 4 Look at the pictures and put the words in the correct order.



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### finished actions: present perfect or simple past?

#### PRESENT PERFECT: WE THINK ABOUT THE PAST AND THE PRESENT TOGETHER When we think about the past and present together, we normally use the present perfect.

I've written to John, so he knows what's happening now. I've made a cake. Would you like some? Look - I've bought a new dress.

FINISHED ACTION	PRESENT PERFECT	PRESENT
letter (yesterday) ————	l've written to John.	John knows now.
cake (this morning) —————	I've made a cake. Would you like some?	I'm offering you some now.
new dress (lastTuesday)>	Look – I've bought a new dress. <	I'm showing you now.

#### SIMPLE PAST: WE THINK ONLY ABOUT THE PAST, NOT THE PRESENT When we think only about the past, we most often use the simple past.

My grandfather wrote me a lot of letters. (He's dead now; I'm not thinking about the present.) I made a cake for the children, but they didn't like it. (I'm not talking about the present.) I bought a new dress last Tuesday, for the party.

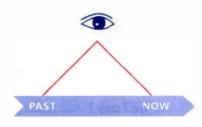
(I'm thinking only about last Tuesday.)

#### Read the sentences and the questions, and circle the correct answers.

- Ann has bought a new coat. Has she got the coat now? (YES) / PERHAPS
- Grandma came to stay with us. Is Grandma with us now? YES (PROBABLY NOT)
- 1 I made a cup of tea. Is there tea now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 2 Eric has made a cake. Is there a cake now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 3 Jane went to France. Is she there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 4 Marlon has gone to Scotland. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 5 Pat and Al started a business. Is the business still running? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 6 Sue has started guitar lessons. Is she taking lessons now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 7 The cat has run away. Is the cat at home now? NO / DON'T KNOW
- 8 The doctor sent Bill into hospital. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 9 Pete lost his glasses. Has he got his glasses now? NO / DON'T KNOW
- 10 Joanna has cut all her hair off. Has she got any hair now? NO / DON'T KNOW

#### (Circle) the correct verb forms.

- 1 Shakespeare never travelled / has never travelled in Africa.
- 2 When I was at school I studied / have studied Latin.
- 3 Rob lost / has lost his job, and he can't find another one.
- 4 We met / have met some very interesting people on our last holiday.
- 5 Look I bought / 've bought some new shoes.
- 6 My grandmother left / has left school at 14.
- 7 'Does your father know you're back in England?' 'Yes, I told / 've told him.
- 8 I made / 've made mushroom soup. Would you like some?
- 9 'What's Rosie's phone number?' 'Sorry, I forgot / 've forgotten.'
- 10 Who built / has built Edinburgh Castle?



NOW



PAST

**60 PERFECT TENSES** 

What are the people saying? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect.

find break 🗸 break buy cut eat give pass sell send stop Somebody ...has broken ...... the window.' 1 John ..... us a postcard. 2 '1 ..... a hat.' 3 '1 ..... my finger.' 4 'The rain ..... 5 'Look what Peter ..... me' 6 '1 ..... my car.' 7 '1 ..... too much.' 8 '1 ..... an earring.' 9 '1 ..... my exam!'

10 '1 ..... my arm.'



### Out the beginnings and ends together, and put in the present perfect verbs.

break 🗸	change	close	find	forget	go	leave	lend	lose	see
---------	--------	-------	------	--------	----	-------	------	------	-----

0	Joe has broken his leg,	A	'Sorry. I know him, but I his name.'
1	Molly can't get into her house	В	'Yes, his girlfriend him.'
2	'He's looking unhappy.'	c	because she her keys
3	'Who's that?'	D	'No, I it.'
4	'That's a good film. Shall we go?'	E	so he can't go skiing
5	'Where's Louise?'	F	'Yes, she her hair-style.'
6	'Can I borrow your bicycle?'	G	'We can't. lt'
7	Antona new job.	н	'I think she to Ireland.'
8	'Shall we have lunch at the Cantina?'	1	'Sorry, I it to Maria.'
9	'Denise looks different.'	J	He's working in a bank now

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to) in present perfect sentences.

'Where's John?' 'He's gone to Paris.' (He's there now.) Mary's gone swimming. She'll be back at 6.00. I've been to Italy lots of times (and come back), but I've never been to Spain.

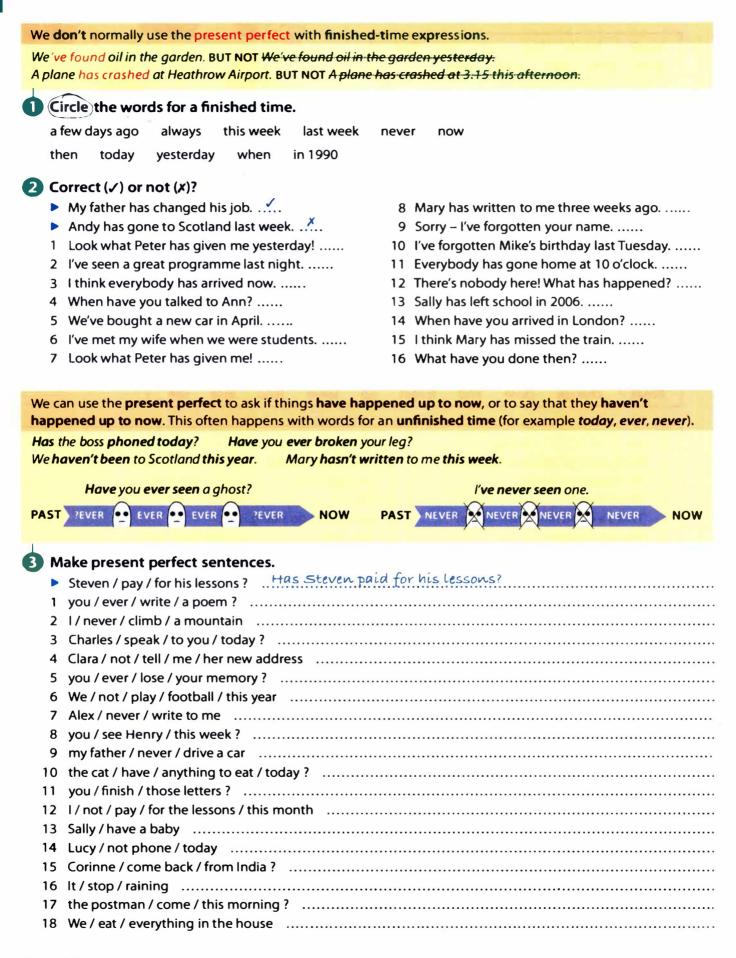
### Put in been or gone.

- 1 'Where's Zoe?' 'She's ..... shopping.'
- 2 Gary's ..... shopping. The fridge is full.
- 3 Have you ever ..... to the United States?
- 4 They're not here. They've all ..... out.
- 5 | haven't ..... to the cinema for weeks.
- 6 Katie's ..... to live in Greece.

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.
l've seen Ann. OR I saw Ann yesterday. BUT NOT <del>L've seen Ann yesterday.</del>
We use the simple past, not the present perfect, in stories (see page 47).
A man walked into a police station and said (NOT A man has walked)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example / *m*, *don*) and full forms (for example / *am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

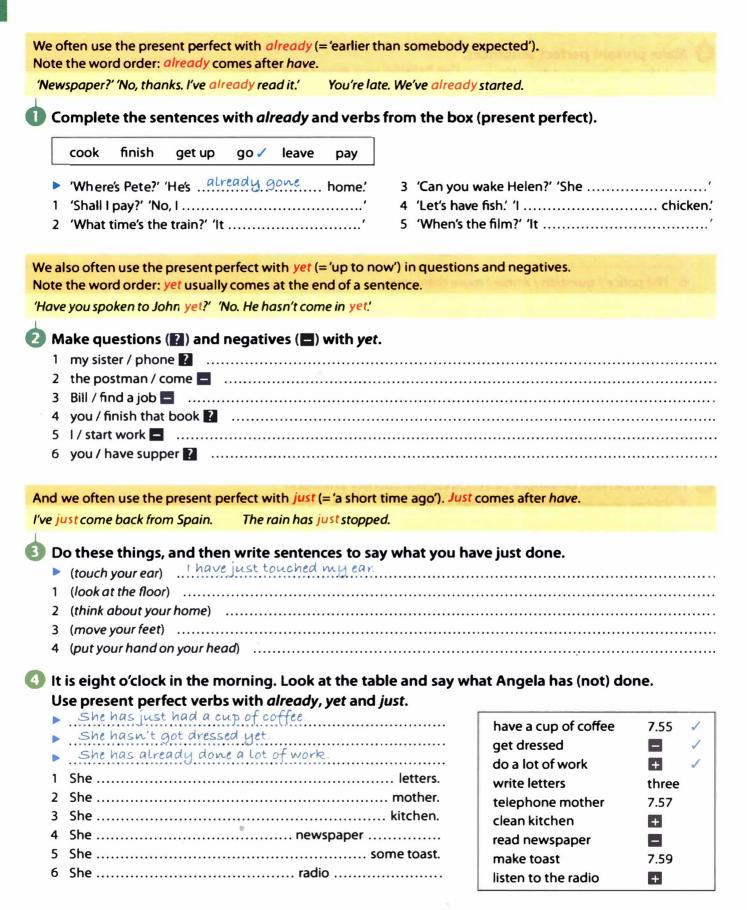
# time words: present perfect or simple past?



We	ca	can use the present perfect to say how often things have happ	ened <b>up to now</b> .
The	at's	t's a wonderful film. I've seen it three times. Sally has only been ve often wanted to come and see you.	
4	м	Make present perfect sentences.	
		I/ break / my arm / three times I've broken my arm th	ree times.
	1	Joe / change / his job / twice this year	
	2	2 how often / she / ask / you for money ?	
	3	3  / often / try / to stop smoking	
	4	Tom / phone / me / six times this week	
	5	5 My father / meet / the Prime Minister / twice	
	6		
	7	7 I / only / play / rugby / once in my life	
	8	3 My brother / often / help / me / in my work	
	9	9 Nobody / ever / understand / her	
I	0	5	
5	Pr	Present perfect or simple past? Circle the correct answe	rs.
	1		ven't bought any clothes this year / last year.
	2	2 I never read / have never read any of his books. 7 Juli	a stayed / has stayed with us last week.
	3	3 Our team <i>won / has won</i> two matches this year. 8 I wo	orked very hard <i>today / yesterday</i> .
	4	Our team won / has won two matches last year.         9   ne	<i>ver saw / have never seen</i> a ghost.
	5	5 Shakespeare <i>never went / has never been</i> to Athens. 10 Wh	en did John phone. / has John phoned?
6	w	Write five things that you didn't do yesterday, and five t	hings that you have never done.
	1	I didn't	yesterday.
	2	2	
	3	3	
	4	4	
	5	5	
	6	5   have never	
	7	7	
	9		
	0		
		for the present perfect with <i>just, yet</i> and <i>already,</i> see page 64.	

evel -

# already, yet and just



# since and for since Tuesday; for ten years

	TUESDAY I've been here since Tuesday NOW
14/0 1	so the present perfect pet the present to say here leng compthing has continued up to per-
	se the <b>present perfect</b> , not the present, to say <b>how long</b> something has continued <b>up to now</b> .
	p <b>een</b> here since Tuesday. (NOT <del>I am here since Tuesday.</del> ) In <b>own</b> John for ten years. (NOT <del>I know John for ten years.</del> )
	an say how long with <i>since</i> or <i>for.</i> se <i>since</i> when we give the beginning of the time (for example <i>since Tuesday</i> ).
	se for when we give the length of the time (for example for three days).
	een here since Tuesday. I've been here for three days. (NOT since three days.)
	nown Mary since 2005. I've known Mary for a very long time.
	ad this car since April. I've had this car for six months.
	ut in <i>since</i> or <i>for</i> .
	six weeks 5
	Sunday 6 breakfast time 10 last week
4	ten years 8 five minutes 12 this morning
1 2 3 4 5 3 H 1 2	ow long have you known people? Write sentences.         I've known my English teacher since September.         I've known         i've         ow long have you had things? Write sentences.         I've had these shoes for six months.         I've had my
	lake present perfect questions with <i>How long</i> ?
1 2 3	you / be / in this countryHow long have you been in this country? Rachel / have / her jobHow long has Rachel had her job? you / know / Mike you / be / a student your brother / be / a doctor Andrew / have / that dog David and Elizabeth / be / together

**Be, know** and **have** are **non-progressive** verbs (see pages 30–31). With most other verbs, we use the **present perfect progressive** (see next page) to say how long things have continued up to now. How long have you been waiting?

# present perfect progressive\* It's been raining since Sunday.

	I have been workingyou have been workinghe/she/it has been working etchave I been working?have you been working?has he/she/it been working? etc
	I have not been working you have not been working etc
	For contractions (l've, he's, haven't etc), see page 301.
/e m	nake the <b>present perfect progressive</b> with <i>have/has been +ing</i> .
le h	ave been living here since April. John's been working in the bank for three months.
	se the <b>present perfect progressive</b> (with most verbs) to <b>say how long</b> things have been continuing <b>now</b> . (For <i>be, have</i> and <i>know</i> , see page 65.)
	een learning English for four years. It's been raining all day. you been waiting long?
	We've been travelling for six hours.
PAS	T THE THE THE THE THE NOW THE THE
M	ake present perfect progressive sentences. Use <i>for</i> or <i>since</i> (see page 65).
•	John started learning Chinese in February. Now it's July. (for) John has been learning Chinese for five months
	It started raining on Sunday. It's still raining. ( <i>since</i> ) It's been raining since Sunday.
1	Mary started painting the house on Monday. Now it's Friday. ( <i>for</i> )
2	We started driving at six o'clock. Now it's ten o'clock. (for)
3	Anna started working at Smiths in January. ( <i>since</i> )
4	Joseph started building boats when he was 20. Now he's 40. (for)
5	We started waiting for the bus at 8.30. ( <i>since</i> )
6	Prices started going up last year. ( <i>since</i> )
7	We started camping on July 20th. (since)
8	My father started teaching 40 years ago. (for)
9	It started snowing at midnight. Now it's midday. (for)
10	The team started training together in June. Now it's September. (for)
	***************************************

REMEMBER: we don't use present tenses to say how long things have been going on. They've been living here since 1998. (NOT They are living here since 1998.) I've been learning English for three years. (NOT I'm learning English for 3 years.)

\* Also called 'present perfect continuous'

### 2 How long have you been learning English?

### Correct (✓) or not (✗)?

- I'm waiting for her since this morning. X.
- I've been waiting for her for four hours. .....
- 1 I have been sitting in this office since 9.00. .....
- 2 She's working here since 1998. .....
- 3 We have been driving for about six hours. .....
- 4 How long are Ann and Peter working here? .....
- 5 Sue has been talking on the phone all day. .....
- 6 How long are you learning English? .....
- 7 My brother's living in Glasgow since March. .....
- 8 That man has been standing outside all day. .....
- 9 I'm only playing the piano since Christmas. .....
- 10 Have you been waiting long? .....

4 Look at the pictures and say what the people have been doing. Use the verbs in the box (present perfect progressive).

.....

	play	play	swim	teach	travel 🗸	write
	She	has be	en trav	elling.		
						•
ر		•••••	•••••			•













# past perfect It had already begun when we arrived.

+ ?	I had seen	you <b>had</b> seen	he/she/it had seen etc
	had I seen?	<b>had</b> you seen?	had he/she/it seen? etc
	I had not seen	you <b>had not</b> seen	he/she/it had not seen etc
		you'd etc; hadn't	nersnerit not seen etc

To make the **past perfect**, put **had** with the **past participle** (worked, seen, lost etc). She didn't phone Alan because she'd lost his number. It was a film that I hadn't seen before.

### Make past perfect sentences.

- I couldn't get in because I ...had forgotten...... my keys. (forget +)

- 1 The woman told me that she ..... in China a few years before. (work +)

- 4 I knew I ..... that man somewhere before. (see 🛨)
- 5 We were surprised to see Mark, because we ...... his letter. (get =)

NOW

We use the past perfect when we are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past time.

PAST

Our train was late, and we ran to the cinema. But the film had already begun.

I got out of the car and went into the school. It was empty. Everybody had gone home. I was glad that I had caught the early bus. Anna wondered if anyone had told Jim. We couldn't understand why Sue hadn't locked the door.

### **2** Circle the correct answers.

EARLIER PAST

- I (didn't recognise) / hadn't recognised Helen, because she cut / had cut) her hair very short.
- 1 No one understood / had understood how the cat got / had got into the car.
- 2 Joe didn't play / hadn't played in the game on Saturday because he hurt / had hurt his arm.
- 3 When I looked / had looked in all my pockets for my keys, I started / had started to get very worried.
- 4 Liz never travelled / had never travelled by train before she went / had gone to Europe.
- 5 | arrived / had arrived at the shop at 5.30, but it already closed / had already closed.
- 6 | didn't have / hadn't had much money after | paid / had paid all my bills last week.

### 3) Put in the simple past or the past perfect.

- Bill didn't tell anybody how he had got into the house. (not tell; get)
- 1 When their mother ...... home, the children ...... all the sweets. (*aet: eat*)
- 2 Yesterday I ...... a man who ..... at school with my grandmother. (meet: be)
- 3 It ..... to rain, and I ..... that I ..... my window. (start; remember; not close)
- 5 I ...... Bob I couldn't go to the theatre, but he ...... the tickets. (*already tell; buy*)

We use the past perfect after when to show that something was completely finished.

When I had watered all the flowers, I sat down and had a cool drink. When Susan had done her shopping, she went to visit her sister.

Make sentences using the past perfect after when.

- Jan finished her dinner. Then she sat down to watch TV. When Jan had finished her dinner, she sat down to watch TV.
- David phoned his girlfriend. Before that he did his piano practice. David phoned his girlfriend when he had done his plano practice.
- 1 George ate all the chocolate biscuits. Then he started eating the lemon ones.
- 2 I turned off the lights in the office. Then I locked the door and left.
- 3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper. Before that she read it.
- .....

.....

- 4 Mark had a long hot shower. Before that he did his exercises.
- 5 Barry phoned his mother with the good news. Then he went to bed.

### Nothing had changed

When I went back to my old school nothing had changed.

Well, OK, the place had closed down.

Doors stood wide, windows had lost their glass, ceilings had fallen. Travellers had camped in the dining-room, and left their names on the walls.

Wind blew through the rooms where I had sat for so long and learnt so little. Rubbish piled up in the corners.

But nothing important had changed.

→ For the past perfect in indirect speech, see page 265.

# perfect tenses: more practice

	erb forms. Make questions or negative sentences.
	She has finished the book.
	The rain has stopped. 👔 🛛 . Has the rain stopped?
1	All those people have gone home. 👔
2	Peter has told us everything. 🗖
3	The postman has been. ?
4	Pat has spoken to Robert. 👔
5	Tim and Angela have bought a house. 🗖
6	Emma's boyfriend has forgotten her birthday. 👔
7	Monica has been working in London all this week. 👔
8	l've phoned Joseph. 🗖
9	Robert and Sally have moved to Ireland. 👔
10	We've been working all day. 🗖
<b>2</b> P	resent perfect or simple past? Somebody has just said these sentences.
C	hoose the best answers.
	'Harry has found a new girlfriend.' Has he still got this girlfriend? YES / PERHAPS
	'Then a cat came into the house.' Is the cat in the house now? YES ( PROBABLY NOT
1	'I've made coffee.' Is there coffee now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
2	'So Ross made soup.' Is there soup now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
3	'And Tom has started Japanese lessons.' Is he taking lessons now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
4	'Jill and Bob opened a driving school.' Is the school running now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
5	' because Pete lost his glasses.' Has he got his glasses now? NO / WE DON'T KNOW
6	'Alan has gone to America.' Is he there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
7	'We had a good time in Bulgaria.' Are they there now? YES / NO
8	'July has been a good month for business.' Is it still July? YES / NO
9	'Tony and Maria went to China.' Are they there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
10	'Polly has just bought a new coat.' Has she got the coat now? YES / PERHAPS
0	
3	Question formation. Make questions (simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive).
	The letter arrived. (when) When did the letter arrive?
1	Everybody has already gone home. ( <i>why</i> )
2	5
3	5
4	
_	
5	
6	5
_	
7	5 11 1 1
8	
9	
10	Somebody has taken my bicycle. ( <i>who</i> )

### **4** Simple past or past perfect? Complete the sentences.

- 1 When I ...... him, I ..... that I ..... him before. (see; know; meet)
- 2 He ..... so many clothes. (not have; buy)
- 3 The meeting ...... when 1 ..... (already start; arrive)
- 4 The car ...... down because I ..... to put oil in. (break; forget)
- 5 I ..... Mary for the first time thirty years ago. (meet)
- 6 After our conversation I ..... everything that she ..... (forget; say)
- 7 The house was empty. Everybody ..... out. (go)
- 8 When he ..... work he ..... out for a walk. (finish; go)
- 9 When I looked in the fridge, I ..... some cheese that I ..... six weeks before. (find; buy)
- 10 He ..... the door, and then realised that he ..... his keys in the house. (close; leave)

### 5 Grammar in a text. Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

not be 🗸 happen have lose not pass spend

Last year	. a good year for Pete and Sonia. Pete 1	a car
accident and 2	a month in hospital, Sonia 3	her job, the
children 4	their school exams, and a lot of other bad	things s

be buy change open pass

This year 6 ...... his job, and is making much more money. They 8 ...... a new house. Sonia 9 ..... a small restaurant, and it's going very well. And the children 10 ...... all their exams this time.

### **6** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: housework. Put simple past verbs into the story. Use a dictionary if necessary.

### Now put present perfect verbs into the conversation.

SISTERS:	Well, Cinderella, have you done everything?
10	the floors? 11 the beds?
12	the furniture? 13 the
clothes?	And 14 them? 15
the dishe	s? And 16 them away?
17	all the rooms?
CINDERELLA	No, I 18 anything. I'm going to
marry the	e Prince. Goodbye!



Internet exercise. Read the two texts on page 57. Then use the internet to find out information about two other people (one living, one dead), and write a few sentences about their lives. Be careful to use the simple past or the present perfect correctly.

pronunciation for grammar

### perfect tenses: revision test

### Put in the past participles.

gogone	break	bring	come	drink	eat
forget	give	leave	make	stand	stay
stop	take	think	try		

5 Who has ..... my coffee? (drink)

7 John ..... off his bicycle yesterday. (fall)

8 I'm sorry, I've ..... your name. (forget)9 I've ..... my address to the police. (give)

10 Somebody has ..... my umbrella. (take)

### Complete the sentences with simple past verbs or past participles.

- I haven't ..... to my sister for a long time. (write) 6 We ..... too much last night. (eat)
- 1 The lessons ..... last week. (begin)
- 2 You've ..... three cups today. (break)
- 3 Why have you ..... home early? (come)
- 4 We ..... what they wanted. (know)

### Circle the correct forms.

- Jenny slept / has slept very badly last night.
- 1 We know / We've known / We've been knowing John and Andy for / since years.
- 2 I work / I'm working / I've been working here since last summer.
- 3 'Mary went / has gone to London.' 'When did she leave? / has she left?'
- 4 Our football team *already has lost / has already lost* ten games this year. It *lost / has lost* all its games last year too.
- 5 Did you ever drive / Have you ever driven a bus?
- 6 My brother speaks good English, but he has never had / never had lessons.
- 7 Did you see / Have you seen Paul yet?
- 8 I started / have started this job for eight weeks / eight weeks ago / ago eight weeks.
- 9 I'm / I've been in this school for / since five years.
- 10 How long do you know / have you known Rebecca?

### Complete the sentences with the simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive.

- I have bought tickets for the match. Do you want to come with me? (buy)
- My grandfather .....ent to school in Ireland. (go)
- 1 When ...... his new watch? (lose)
- 2 That child ..... chocolate all day. (eat)
- 3 Andrew isn't here today he .....an accident. (just have)
- 4 It ..... non-stop since Sunday. (snow)
- 5 I ..... mathematics from 1996 to 1998. (study)
- 6 'You're looking happy.' 'Yes, I ..... my exam.' (just pass)
- 7 How long ...... Emma? (know)
- 8 .....a poem? (write)
- 9 The company ...... a lot of money last year. (lose)
- 10 'Do you like the book I gave you?' 'I ..... it yet.' (not start)

# **SECTION 6 modal verbs**

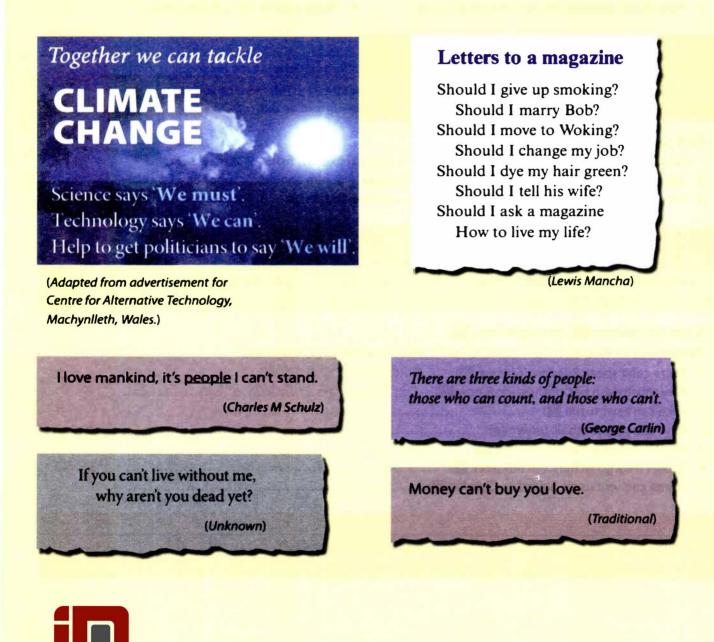
### grammar summary

MODAL VERBS: can, could	may, might	shall, should	will, would	must	ought to	
PAST AND FUTURE OF MODALS:	be able to	have to				

The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs. We use them before other verbs to express certain meanings – for example permission, ability, possibility, certainty.

Modals have different grammar from other verbs. For example, they have no -s on the third person singular: we say *he can*, NOT *he cans*.

*Have to, be able to and used to* are similar to modals in some ways, and they are included in this section. For *will*, see pages 39–40.



# modal verbs: introduction can, must, should etc

	may, might	shall, should	will, would n	nust o	ught to			
		ial group of <b>auxili</b> st other verbs in fo						
INFINITIVES	WITHOUT TO	n haiten eiher vi	anti nete Alf an	and state	nine ip g	Long	10.014	ed an interest
ter modals	(except ought)	, we use infinitive	es without to. (	After oth	er verbs,	infinitive	es have to	<b>)</b> .)
	r phone? (NOT ( use her phone.	<del>Can I to use</del> ) I'd like to go h	Joe <mark>can't</mark> swin nome. Joe s	n. Im seems to h		t tonight. Id.		
Circle th	e correct ans	wers						
	u play / to play			3 Could		s / to pase	the oran	ge juice?
-		lay football today			•	-	igger flat	
	ems be / to be		•			-	e at the w	
		He must be / to be	away.				to Janet.	
				5				
D - S								
odal verbs	have no -s on t	he third person si	ngular (he/she	/it form). (	Other ve	erbs have	-5.)	
IT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay.≦ tennis.	<ul> <li>John cans) Ann seems to b</li> <li>Tim can s</li> </ul>	wim. 1 Our o	<mark>at wants to</mark> cat like	<mark>o go out.</mark> fish.	-	rain.	
Add -s o Add -s o Amy p 3 She m	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay nov	Ann seems to b	wim. 1 Our o	<mark>it wants t</mark> e cat like . 5 Kim	o go out. fish. should.	2 It may. phon	rain. e her mot	
Add -s o Add -s o Amy p 3 She m	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay nov	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work	wim. 1 Our o	<mark>it wants t</mark> e cat like . 5 Kim	o go out. fish. should.	2 It may. phon	rain. e her mot	
Add -s o Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra	n nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay nov nin seem to	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work	wim. 1 Our o in London might com	at wants te cat like . 5 Kim he and see	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8	2 It may. phon Tom war	rain. e her mot	
JT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay. S tennis. ust pay nov in seem to dal questions me? (NOT <del>Do y</del>	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative bu can help me?)	wim. 1 Our o in London might com s (-) without You must no	at wants to cat like . 5 Kim he and see do. ( <b>Othe</b> bot tell Phili	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.)	rain. e her moi nt to ç	
JT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay nov in seem to dal questions	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative bu can help me?)	wim. 1 Our o in London might com	at wants to cat like . 5 Kim he and see do. ( <b>Othe</b> bot tell Phili	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.)	rain. e her moi nt to ç	
Add -s of Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay now in seem to wall questions me? (NOT <del>Do y</del> e mow my friend.	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative bu can help me?) leremy? Sally of	wim. 1 Our o in London might com s (-) without You must no doesn't cook ve	at wants to cat like . 5 Kim he and see do. ( <b>Othe</b> bot tell Phili	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.)	rain. e her moi nt to ç	
Add -s of Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay nov in seem to dal questions me? (NOT <del>Doyn</del> now my friend.	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative (?) and negative (?) and negatives (-)	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must no doesn't cook ve	at wants to cat like . 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe by tell Phili ry well.	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.)	rain. e her moi nt to ç	
JT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT Do your now my friend. restions (P) o res in this exe	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must no doesn't cook ve n't; must not/	at wants to cat like . 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe ot tell Phili ry well.	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h p. (NOT ¥	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <del>Tou don't r</del>	rain. e her mot it to <u>c</u> <del>nust</del> )	go home.
JT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT <del>Doyn</del> restions (?) o restions (?) o res in this exectant's speak Rus	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must not doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ Can she s	t wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe bt tell Phili fry well.	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h p. (NOT ¥ may no inese?	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <del>ou don't r</del>	rain. e her moi nt to ç	go home.
JT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire o Katy m	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT <del>Doyn</del> restions (?) o restions (?) o res in this exections to an't speak Rus nost wash her c	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must not doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ Can she si -)	t wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe ot tell Phili fry well. (mustn't; peak Ch ustn't d	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs l p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) ou don't f	rain. e her mot it to <u>c</u> <del>nust</del> )	go home.
JT Josh kno Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire o Katy m 1 Mike c	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT Doyn commy friend. estions (?) of res in this exe can't speak Rus bust wash her c an't swim. ( <i>ski</i>	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must not doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ Can she si -)	t wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe pt tell Phili pry well. (mustn't; peak Ch ustn't d	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs f p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <del>Tou don't r</del>	rain. e her mot nt to g	go home.
JT Josh know Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire of Katy m 1 Mike c 2 John c	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay. 5 tennis. ust pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT Doyn com my friend. restions (P) o res in this exe can't speak Rus bust wash her c an play footbal	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must not doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ Can she si -)	t wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe ot tell Phili ry well.	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) iou don't r	rain. e her mot it to <u>c</u> <del>nust</del> )	go home.
JT Josh kno Add -s o Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo an you help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire o Katy m 1 Mike c 2 John c 3 Maria i	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay tennis. ust pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT <del>Doyn</del> restions (?) o restions (?) o res in this exect can't speak Rus bust wash her c an't swim. ( <i>ski</i> an play footbal must play the p	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our a in London might com s (-) without You must not doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ Can she si	at wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe bit tell Phili fry well. (mustn't; peak Ch ustn't d	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs l p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <del>ou don't r</del>	must)	go home.
JT Josh know Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo anyou help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire of Katy m 1 Mike c 2 John c 3 Maria of 4 Robert	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT Doy com my friend. restions (?) of tes in this exe can't speak Rus bust wash her c an play footbal must play the p may go to Italy	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our o in London might com s (-) without You must no doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ . Can she si -)	at wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe by tell Phili by well. (mustn't; peak Ch ustn't d	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <i>ou don't i</i>	rain. e her mot nt to g <del>nust</del> )	go home.
JT Josh know Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo anyou help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire of Katy m 1 Mike c 2 John c 3 Maria of 4 Robert	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT Doy com my friend. restions (?) of tes in this exe can't speak Rus bust wash her c an play footbal must play the p may go to Italy	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our o in London might com s (-) without You must no doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ . Can she si -)	at wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe by tell Phili by well. (mustn't; peak Ch ustn't d	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <i>ou don't i</i>	rain. e her mot nt to g <del>nust</del> )	go home.
Add -s of Add -s of Amy p 3 She m 6 The tra 0 DO e make mo anyou help JT Do you k Make qu (Negativ Claire of Katy m 1 Mike c 2 John c 3 Maria of 4 Robert 5 Emma	ws my father. r nothing (-). lay pay now in seem to dal questions me? (NOT Doy com my friend. restions (?) of tes in this exe can't speak Rus bust wash her c an play footbal must play the p may go to Italy	Ann seems to b Tim can s v. 4 Harry work be late. 7 Nick (?) and negative (?) and negative	e ill. The ca wim. 1 Our o in London might com s (-) without You must no doesn't cook ve n't; must not/ . Can she si -)	at wants to cat like 5 Kim he and see do. (Othe by tell Phili by well. (mustn't; peak Ch ustn't d	o go out. fish. should. e us. 8 er verbs h p. (NOT ¥ may no ínese? o ít nov	2 It may. phon Tom war nave do.) <i>ou don't i</i>	rain. e her mot nt to g <del>nust</del> )	go home.

# must You must be home by eleven. Must you go?

Must get up early tomorrow.       You must fill in this form. (NOT You must to fill)         Du must visit us while we're in Paris.       Pat and Jan are so nice - we must see them again.         Complete the sentences with must and verbs from the boxes.         be ✓ go       hurry         pay       speak         stop       study         write         FATHER: You       home by eleven.         4       TAX OFFICE: You         1       TEACHER: You         2       FRIEND: We         2       FRIEND: We         3       DOCTOR: You         3       DOCTOR: You         9       get up       give         9       have       phone         9       get up       give         9       go       have	n the phone
be ✓ go       hurry       pay       speak       stop       study       write         FATHER: You       must be       home by eleven.       4       TAX OFFICE: You       the         1       TEACHER: You       in ink.       5       TEACHER: You daughter       the         2       FRIEND: We       - we're late.       6       BOSS: You       politely o         3       DOCTOR: You       smoking.       7       MOTHER: That child       for the box.	n the phone
be ✓ go       hurry       pay       speak       stop       study       write         FATHER: You       must be       home by eleven.       4       TAX OFFICE: You       the         1       TEACHER: You       in ink.       5       TEACHER: You daughter       the         2       FRIEND: We       - we're late.       6       BOSS: You       politely o         3       DOCTOR: You       smoking.       7       MOTHER: That child       for the box.	n the phone
<ul> <li>FATHER: You</li></ul>	n the phone
1       TEACHER: Youin ink.       5       TEACHER: Your daughter         2       FRIEND: We	n the phone
1       TEACHER: Youin ink.       5       TEACHER: Your daughter         2       FRIEND: We	n the phone
2       FRIEND: We	n the phone
Put the beginnings and ends together. Add <i>must</i> and verbs from the box.	to bed now
0       Smith's latest book is her best, I think.         1       I haven't heard from Annie for ages.         2       I've left my handbag in the restaurant.         3       This cake is delicious.         4       'Velocity' is a wonderful film.         5       I've got a lot of work to do tomorrow.         6       I'd like to see you again.	piece  d
6       I'd like to see you again.         7       The woods are full of flowers.         G       I	

	answer	bring 🗸	come	pay	sit	stay	work	write	
1 2	Must I			. any m . to thi	noney s roon	? 1?	5 6		in my usual place? every question? without a dictionary? if I finish early?

Have to (see pages 76–77) means the same as must. Must has no past (musted) or infinitive (to must). Instead, we use had to and (to) have to (see page 77).

# have to Do you have to teach small children?

siste	r <mark>e to</mark> dri r has to	work	k on Sa	aturd	ays.	Do	l <mark>have to</mark> your chi	ildren	have	to tak	e lunch	nes to s	chool?				
	n <b>plete</b> e√ b		sente		s witl	h have	e to or l have		oand	kno <sup>v</sup>	_		m the		read	wear	]
<ul> <li>Bi</li> <li>A</li> <li>A</li> <li>S1</li> <li>A</li> </ul>	uilders soldier tudents school	hay r s Iteach	ve to	carr	y		with nui heavy t a ur a lot of ch ry clean l	things niform books nildren	5. 5.	6 Foo 7 A s 8 A g 9 Do	otballe ecreta jarden ectors .	ers iry			a	ood at sy a lot of t good n . about abou	training. nemory flowers it drugs
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	ʻl wan 'Jo an 'Wher	is son at you d Aleo n wou and I a will b	ne wo to go c wor uld yo are go e 250	ork fo o to ye rk for ou like oing o ) Euro	or you our a a Mex e your out to os.'	i and la unt's p xican f r holida onight.	oarty.' īrm.' ay?'	A B C D E F G H	, , , , ,	>0 <b>e</b> s s	he hay	ve to		sma sintil 1 sma all n	nish?' ow?' the end Il child iow?' . t?'	 d?' lren?' 	
<ul> <li></li> <li>1</li> <li>2</li> <li>3</li> <li>4</li> </ul>	I have	to ta	ike ti	hetri	ain t	to wor	do eve		*****								
<ul> <li></li> <li>1</li> <li>2</li> <li>3</li> </ul>	l neve	r hav	le to s	speal	k Ch	iinese	ave to d							·····			

# mustn't and don't have to We mustn't wake the baby.

not have to goetc
mean ' <mark>Don't do this'.</mark> e mean <b>'This isn't necessary'</b> .
istn't wake the baby.
box.
animals run around in the toilets.
football.
noise after 10 pm.
and verbs from the box.

0	Youdon't have to wake me up;	A I can walk	
	You breakfast for me;	B I'll buy The Times at the station	
	2 You lunch for me;	C Cathy's going to the post office	
3	You me to the station;	D I'll just have coffee	
4	You me your newspaper;	E I've got an alarm clock	
1	5 You those letters;	F everybody here understands English	.
6	5 You French;	G I'll have lunch in the canteen	

### Mustn't or don't have to?

- You ...dow't have to ..... pay John I've already paid him.
- 1 You ..... stay up late tonight you've got school tomorrow morning.
- 2 You ..... stay up late to wash the dishes I'll wash them in the morning.
- 3 We ..... leave the door open the rain will come in.
- 4 We ..... leave the door open Peter has got a key.
- 5 You ...... write to Deepak about this I've already written to him.
- 6 You ..... write to Deepak about this if you do, he'll tell everybody.
- 7 You ..... drive so fast the police will stop you.
- 8 You ..... drive so fast we've got a lot of time.
- 9 I ..... look in the cupboard again I've looked in there twice.
- 10 I ..... look in the cupboard Holly has put my birthday present in there.
- 11 You ..... phone Maxine now she's probably asleep.
- 12 You ..... phone Maxine now tomorrow will be fine.

## had to, will have to I didn't have to pay.

	PAST: HAD TO	FUTURE: WILL HAVE TO
ł	l/you/he etc had to go	l/you/he etc <b>will have to</b> go
?	did I/you/he etc have to go?	will I/you/he etc have to go?
-	l/you/he etc did not have to go	I/you/he etc will not have to go
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; didn't; won't	enie Breedsman Winschalt and Fish
lus	t has no past or future: <del>musted</del> ; <del>will must</del> .	
Ve	use had to for the past and will have to for the fut	ure of both <i>must</i> and <i>have to</i> .
1y i	num had to leave school at sixteen. Did you ha	we to tell Jo? I didn't have to pay.
lice	will have to start school next September. Aled	won't have to come.
) \	Vrite about the things that John had to do (	
	(learn French +) He had to learn French	
	( <b>P</b> - <b>·</b> ) ···· <b>=</b> )	ennis.
1	(learn Russian 🖃)	
2	(learn maths 🛨)	
З	(learn music 🖃)	
4	(play football 🛨)	
5	(write poems -)	
6	(write stories +)	
	Nake questions with Did have to?	
1		to learn French at school?
	Annie / work last Saturday Did Annie hav	e to work last Saturday?
1	Adam / pay for his lessons	
2	Tina / take an exam last year	
3	Joe and Sue / wait a long time for a train	
4	-	
5		
6	Peter / cook supper	
) (	Complete the sentences. Use 'll have to, w	vill have to? or won't have to with
t	he verbs in the box.	
	ask get get go learn play stud	dy 🗸 tell work

Cara wants to be a doctor. She <u>Il have to study</u> hard.

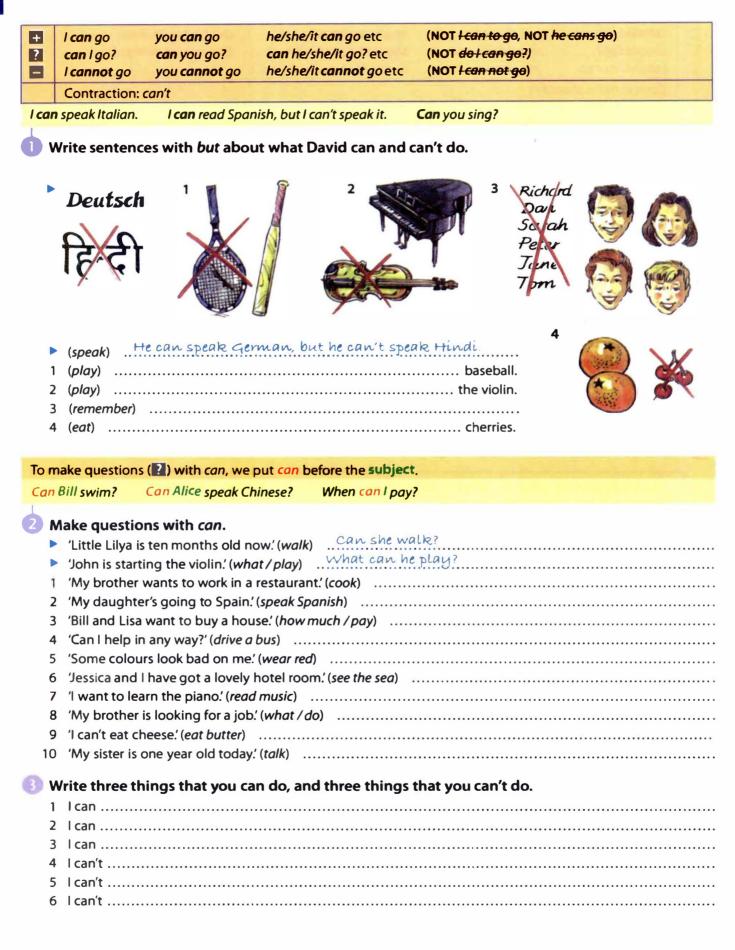
- 1 Lucy needs a new passport. She ...... a form from the post office.
- 2 Edward's got a new car, so he ..... to work by bus.
- 4 'Jack wants to be a pianist.' 'He ...... for hours every day.'
- 5 'Can I go home early?' 'I don't know. You ..... the boss.'
- 6 I'm working next Sunday, but I ..... on Saturday.
- 7 'Liz wants to go to the US.' '..... she ...... a visa?'
- 8 I don't know the answer now. I ...... you tomorrow.

# should What should I tell John?

shou	uld go ld I go? uld not go	you <mark>should</mark> should you you should	go?	he/she/it should go e should he/she/it go? he/she/it should not	etc (NOT	i <del>l should to go</del> ) i <del>do l should go?</del> )	
	ractions: sho						
				hould for suggestions	, opinions an	nd advice.	
		out less comm					
should	<b>/ought to</b> be	e more careful.	Peop	le <b>shouldn't</b> drive fast i	n the rain.	Should I wear a tie?	
Choose	e the best v	erbs, and co	mplete t	he sentences with	should and s	shouldn't.	
				careful with you			
				your baggage			
2 I thir	nk everybody			a foreign lang	uage. ( <i>work, le</i>	earn, teac <b>h</b> )	
				hing in the newspape			
				fruit or vegetables eve		, eat, sell)	
				(work, smoke, ge			
				the truth. ( <i>tell</i> , so			
				with knives. ( <i>thinl</i> eir children's letters. ( <i>r</i> e			
8 Pare	1115		TD				
	ole		fas	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i>	walk)		
	ole		fas		walk)		
) You	ble	always	fas	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. (sa	walk) y, pay, play)	box	
) You	ble	always	fas	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i>	walk) y, pay, play)	box.	
) You Make o	questions w	always	the ques	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. (sa	walk) y, pay, play) bs from the	<b>box.</b> Where Who	
O You Make o QUES	questions w	always rith should I,	t <b>he que</b> s	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. (sa stion words and ver	walk) y, pay, play) bs from the		
) You Make o QUES VERB	auestions w TION WORDS S: arrive	i <b>th should I,</b> What ✓ Wl put phone	t <b>he ques</b> the ques hat Wr sit 1	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver nat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who	- 64
O You Make o QUES VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone	t <b>he ques</b> the ques hat Wr sit t	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver nat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I l	
Vou Make d QUES VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wl put phone	t <b>he ques</b> the ques hat Wh sit 1	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. (sa stion words and ver nat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I l 'At abo	out 7.
You           Make c           QUES           VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone	t <b>he ques</b> the ques hat Wr sit t	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I l 'At abo first?' 'Mr A	out 7. ndrev
You         Make c         QUES         VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	i <b>th should I,</b> What ✓ Wi put phone	t <b>he ques</b> the ques hat Wr sit t	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I l 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu	out 7. ndrev ue dre
You         Make c         QUES         VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wl put phone	the ques	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I l 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t	out 7. ndrev Je dre he tal
You         Make c         QUES         VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone Itell	the ques	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver nat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t this box?' 'On	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sł
You           Make c           QUES           VERB                 3           4           5	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone Itell	the ques	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t this box?' 'On	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sł
You         Make c         QUES         VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive nat should	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone	the ques	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell 🗸 wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t this box?' 'On ou up?' 'Not too early	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sl
You         Make c         QUES         VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive hat should st to talk abc	ith should I, ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone I tell	the ques hat Wh sit t	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver nat time What time tell ✓ wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where yo yo	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t 'At the end of t this box?' 'On ou up?' 'Not too early t's good.	out 7. ndrev ue dre he ta the sl
You         Make c         QUES         VERB	ole questions w STION WORDS S: arrive hat should st to talk abc	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone	the ques hat Wh sit t	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver nat time What time tell ✓ wake wear	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where yo yo	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t this box?' 'On ou up?' 'Not too early	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sl
You         Make of         QUES         VERB	ole questions w stion words S: arrive nat should nat should st to talk about new passpoor should or m	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone I tell out what's neconstructions wust.	the ques hat Wh sit 1	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell ✓ wake wear ad we use <i>should</i> to ta <i>nth. I should eat m</i>	walk) y, pay, play) <b>bs from the</b> Where yo yo	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t 'At the end of t this box?' 'On ou up?' 'Not too early t's good.	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sł
You         Make d         QUES         VERB	ole questions w stion words S: arrive nat should nat should st to talk about new passpoor should or m	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone I tell tell out what's neco rt: I'm travelling	the ques hat Wh sit 1	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell ✓ wake wear ad we use <i>should</i> to ta <i>nth. I should eat m</i>	walk) y, pay, play) bs from the Where you k about what ore fruit, but l	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t 'At the end of t this box?' 'On ou up?' 'Not too early t's good.	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sh , plea
You         Make of         QUES         VERB         VERB	ale auestions w stion words S: arrive hat should hat should st to talk about a new passpoor should or m look OK?' 'Ye	ith should I, What ✓ Wi put phone I tell out what's neconstructions wust.	the ques hat Wh sit t sit t essary, ar g next mod	t in towns. ( <i>drive, run,</i> what you think. ( <i>sa</i> stion words and ver hat time What time tell ✓ wake wear wake wear and we use <i>should</i> to ta on th. <i>I should eat m</i>	walk) y, pay, play) bs from the Where Where yo Ik about what ore fruit, but 1	Where Who John?' 'Tell him I I 'At abo first?' 'Mr A 'Your blu 'At the end of t 'At the end of t this box?' 'On ou up?' 'Not too early t's good.	out 7. ndrev ue dre he tal the sl , plea

- 3 You .....n't smoke near babies.
- 6 You ..... be over 16 to buy cigarettes.
- 7 'What music ...... | play?' 'Mozart.'

# can He can play the piano.



# could; be able to She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive soon

	PAST			
+ ? -	l could go could I go? l could not go	you <b>could</b> go <b>could</b> you go? you <b>could not</b> go	he/she/it <b>could</b> go etc <b>could</b> he/she/it go? etc he/she/it <b>could not</b> go etc	(NOT <del>/ could to g</del> e) (NOT <del>did / could go?</del> )
	Contraction: co	uldn't		

	FUTURE	
+ ? -	<ul> <li>I/you etc will be able to go</li> <li>will I/you etc be able to go?</li> <li>I/you etc will not be able to go</li> </ul>	
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't	

#### To talk about the past, we use could.

I could talk when I was thirteen months old.	I could walk when I was ten months old.
I <b>couldn't</b> understand the teacher yesterday.	How could you say that to me?

### Choose the best verbs, and use them with *could* to complete the story.

What could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then make some sentences with *I could* or *I couldn't*.

climb trees	dance	fight	play chess	play the piano	read	run fast	sing	write
					•••••			
					******	•••••		
does <b>not</b> have	an infinit	ive ( <del>to ca</del>	A). Instead, w	e use (to) be able t	<b>O</b> .			
t to be able to	speak Ger	man. (NC	DT <del>to can sp</del>	eak German:) I'll	be able i	o drive sooi	n.	
Aake sentend	ces with v	vill be a	ble to.					
				n.				
I task The Ita	alk / soon							
Little I im / ta								
2 I/pay you/	next week							
2 I/pay you / 3 I hope that /	next week go to Ame	erica / or	e day					

4

# may and might It may snow. I might have a cold.

+	l <b>may</b> go l <b>may not</b> go	you <b>may</b> go you <b>may no</b>		/she/it <mark>may</mark> /she/it <mark>may</mark>	go etc not go etc					
	No contractio	ons: <del>mayn't</del>	5. S. H	a starting	-		Service C	1	100	
We	use may to say	that things ar	e possible	- perhap	s they are (	not) tru	e, or per	haps the	y will (no	t) happen.
	at's that animal <b>nay not</b> be here		e. It may be	e a rabbit.'	l <b>may</b> go t	to Wale:	s at the w	ee <mark>kend</mark> .		
Wed	lo not use may	in this way ir	question	S.						
lt mo	ay snow. BUT NO	DT May it snow	جہ							
	ewrite the se									
	Perhaps Sara	h's illSar	ah may	be ill.						
	Perhaps we v	von't go out.	Wemi	ay not go	out.					
1	Perhaps it wo	on't rain								
2	Perhaps we'll	buy a car			•••••					
3	Perhaps Joe	s not at home								
4	Perhaps Ann	a needs help.	•••••							
5	Perhaps the	oaby's hungry								
6	Perhaps I wo	n't change m	/ job							
7	Perhaps she's	married								
8	Perhaps he d	oesn't want te	o talk to yo	ou						
9	Perhaps you'	re not right.								
10	Perhaps I wo	n't be here to	morrow.							
2 P	ut the begin	nings and e	nds toget	her; put i	in <i>may</i> wi	th wor	ds from	the bo	κ.	
Γ	not be de	cide give	go 🗸 🤇	ao noth	nave sno	ow s	tay			

- 0 'What are your plans for next year?'
- 1 'Are you going to buy that coat?'
- 2 'Where are your parents going on holiday?'
- 3 'Shall we phone Pete now?'
- 4 'It's getting very cold.'
- 5 'What are you doing this evening?'
- 6 'Are you going to study medicine?'
- 7 'What are you giving Oliver for his birthday?'

Α	'I'm not sure. I
В	'Not sure. They at home.'
С	'No. I to study physics.'
D	'Yes. I think it
Ε	'Perhaps; I enough money.'
F	'I don't know. I him a sweater.'
G	'It's early; he out of bed yet.'
Н	'We round to Sophie's place.'

We may live without poetry, music and art; We may live without conscience, and live without heart; We may live without friends, we may live without books; But civilised man cannot live without cooks.

(Owen Meredith)

Science fiction is the literature of might be. (CJCherryh)

Note the difference between <i>may not</i> and <i>can't</i> .	
She <b>may not be</b> at home – I'll phone and find out. (= 'Perhaps she's not at home') She <b>can't be</b> at home: she went to Spain this morning. (= 'She's certainly not at home')	Level
We can use <i>can't</i> to express great surprise or disbelief.	
'Karen's going to marry Des.' 'It <b>can't be</b> true. She hates him!'	
3 Put in may not or can't.	
1 We can try that restaurant, but they have a table free.	

- 2 There are no lights in the house, and they're not answering the doorbell. They ..... be at home.
- 3 He says he's got lots of money, but it ..... be true.
- 4 'You've won 1 million Euros in the lottery: 'No, it ...... be true!'
- 5 She says her dog talks to her, but dogs ..... talk.
- 6 I'll ask that policeman, but he ..... speak English.
- 7 'Can you come tomorrow?' 'I'll see. I ...... have time.'
- 8 1 ..... pass the exam, but I'm hoping for the best.
- 9 'They've found elephants in Antarctica.' 'That ...... be right.'
- 10 I'm going to see my old primary school teacher tomorrow, but she ...... remember me.

+ ?	l <b>might</b> go	you <b>might</b> go	he/she/it <b>might</b> go etc
	<b>might</b>   go?	<b>might</b> you go?	<b>might</b> he/she/it go? etc
	l <b>might not</b> go	you <b>might not</b> go	he/she/it <b>might not</b> go etc
	Contraction: mig	ghtn't	a set the set of the set of a first set of the set of t

We can use *might* in the same way as may – especially if we are **not so sure** about things. 'Are you ill?' 'Not sure. I might have a cold. Or perhaps not.' I might not be here tomorrow. Might is unusual in questions.

# John has no money. He is thinking about things that might happen. Put in verbs from the box with *might*.

L	6-11	C	and the		
DUY	rall	nna	make	sena	win 🗸

might win a lot of money in the lottery. Or l 1 ...... some money in the street.
 Or Uncle Max 2 ...... me \$1,000. Or a rich woman 3 ...... in love with me.
 Or the bank 4 ....... a mistake. Or somebody 5 ...... my old car.

### **S** Might or might not? Circle the correct answers.

- Kate had a big lunch, so she might want / might not want to eat this evening.
- 1 It's getting late. I might finish / might not finish this work on time.
- 2 If the traffic gets very bad we might miss / might not miss the train.
- 3 If he's had a good day, your dad might give / might not give you money for the cinema.
- 4 Andrew's story is so good that his teacher might believe / might not believe he wrote it.
- 5 Helen's not feeling well today I'm afraid she might pass / might not pass her exam.
- 6 Alan wasn't at the last meeting. He might know / might not know the new members.
- 7 'Where's Tom?' 'He might be / might not be in the kitchen.'
- 8 I've got toothache. I might have to / might not have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
- 9 I'll do my best, but I might have / might not have time to help you.
- 10 I hope we can take the car, but it might / might not start.

## can, could and may: permission Can I use the phone?

We use <i>can I?</i> or <i>can we?</i> to ask if it is OK to do things: to ask permission.								
Can I use the phone, please?	Mum, can I leave the table now?	Can we wait here?						
We often use Can I have? and Can we have? to ask for things.								
Can I have your address, please?	Can we have some water?							

Make questions with Can I ...?

#### DON'T SAY THIS! SAY THIS (to your sister, a friend, a waiter, your secretary) (borrow) Can 1 borrow your pen (, please)? Lend me your pen. 1 I want a glass of water. (have) ..... (use) ..... 2 I'm going to use your pencil. (have) ..... 3 I want some more coffee. (put) ..... 4 I'll put my coat here. (have) ..... 5 Give me some bread. 6 Show me those photos. (look at) .....

**Could ...?** is more formal and polite than *can ...?*, so we use it, for example, with strangers, older people, teachers and bosses. **Could I possibly ...?** is very polite.

**Could we** leave our luggage here until this afternoon? **Could I possibly** borrow your paper for a moment?

### Make polite questions with Could I ...?

DON'T SAY THIS!	SAY THIS (to a stranger, a teacher, a boss, an older person)
Lend me your pen.	(borrow) Could I borrow your pen, please?
1 I need to use your calculator.	(use)
2 I'm leaving early today.	(leave)
3 I want to take your photo.	(take)
4 Lend me your newspaper.	(borrow)
5 I'm going to turn on the TV.	(turn on)
6 I want to open a window.	(open)

We use *can/can't*, but not *could/couldn't*, to say that it is or isn't OK to do things. (You can't is like you mustn't - see page 77.)

You **can** leave your books here if you want. (NOT <del>You could leave your books</del> ...) You **can't** use the gym between 1.00 and 2.00.

### Put the beginnings and ends together. Add *can* and verbs from the box.

borrow 🗸 eat park play turn on watch

0	If you don't have a torch,	Α	in this car park
1	The children	В	they the cake in the kitchen
2	Tell the boys that	С	youcan borrow mine
3	lf you're cold,	D	you
4	lf you're bored,	Ε	in the garden
5	Only teachers	F	you television

### 4 What do the signs tell you? Use You can't ... here with words and expressions from the box.

You can't park here. 3	
You car't park here. 3	
1       4         Image: Constraint of the second secon	
We use <b>Can I/we?</b> to <b>offer help</b> .	
Can I help you? Can we book the tickets for you? Can I carry those for you?	
<ul> <li>Use Can 1? to offer help in these situations.</li> <li>Your friend has just come home from hospital. Offer to do some shopping for her. Can 1 do some shopping for you?</li> <li>You're going to make a cup of tea for yourself. Offer to make one for your sister.</li> <li>You work in a shop. A customer walks in. Offer to help her.</li> <li>Offer to drive your brother to the station.</li> <li>Your friend has got a headache. Offer to get some aspirins for her.</li> </ul>	
May I have your name, please, sir? May I use the toilet please, Mrs Roberts?	
<b>You may</b> open your books now. You may ask questions after the Prince has finished speaking. This is a tourist visa: <b>you may not</b> take a paid job. You may not leave until the bell rings.	
A teacher is telling her class what to do. Complete the text with <i>may</i> and verbs from the box	ζ.
do leave not leave take talk 🗸 not talk use use	
Please work in groups. You ►	

# can/could you?: requests Can you lend me a stamp?

Level

We can **ask people to do things** (make requests) with *can you* ...? This is informal; we often use it when we are talking to **friends**; and also, for example, in **shops** and **restaurants**.

Joe, can you lend me a stamp? Can you bring me some more butter?

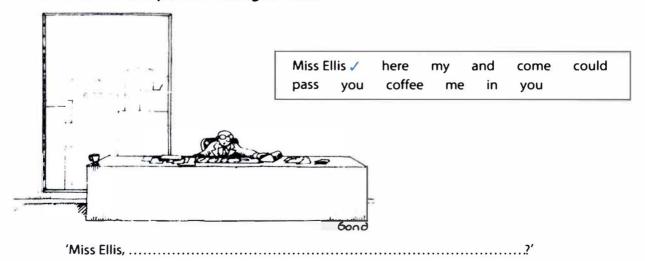
*Could you ...?* is more formal and polite; we often use it, for example, when we are talking to strangers, older people, teachers or bosses. *Could you possibly ...?* is very polite.

Excuse me, Mr Andrews, could you lend me a stamp? I'm sorry to trouble you, but could you possibly watch my luggage while I get a coffee?

Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

1       Could you	_	
<ul> <li>Could youtell me your name?</li> <li>Could you possibly</li></ul>		babysit clean drive give 🗸 hold lend pass put speak tell 🖌 tell wait
1       Could you       me the rice?       7       Could you possibly       me a pee         2       Can you       my suit?       8       Can you       me a peer         3       Can you       me the time?       9       Could you       more slowly?         4       Could you       me to the station?       10       Could you       here for a few mi         5       Find better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, P = polite, PP = very p       Popen the window. (I)       Can. you open the window?         6       Could you lend me a pen?       Lend me a pen. (P)       Could you possibly help me?         1       Open the door. (I)       Could you possibly help me?       Give me an envelope. (P)         3       Pass me the sugar. (I)       Watch my children for a minute. (P)       Ghange some dollars for me. (PP)         5       Tell me the time. (P)       Wait outside. (I)       8         7       Wait outside. (I)       8       Translate this letter for me. (PP)         9       Come back tomorrow. (I)       Come back tomorrow. (I)		Can you
2       Can you		Could youtell
<ul> <li>3 Can you</li></ul>	1	Could you me the rice? 7 Could you possibly me a pen?
<ul> <li>4 Could you</li></ul>	2	Can you my suit? 8 Can you these papers away?
<ul> <li>4 Could you</li></ul>	3	Can you me the time? 9 Could you more slowly?
<ul> <li>Find better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, P = polite, PP = very po</li></ul>	4	Could you me to the station? 10 Could you here for a few minu
<ul> <li>Lend me a pen. (P)Could you lend me a pen?</li> <li>Help me. (PP)Could you possibly help me?</li> <li>Open the door. (I)</li> <li>Give me an envelope. (P)</li> <li>Pass me the sugar. (I)</li> <li>Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>		ind better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, P = polite, PP = very pol
<ul> <li>Open the window. (I)Can. you open the window?</li> <li>Lend me a pen. (P)Could you lend me a pen?</li> <li>Help me. (PP)Could you possibly help me?</li> <li>Open the door. (I)</li> <li>Give me an envelope. (P)</li> <li>Pass me the sugar. (I)</li> <li>Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>		ind better wave of ealing a secole to de these this as (L. informal, D., aslite, DD., some sel
<ul> <li>Help me. (PP)Could you possibly help me?</li> <li>Open the door. (I)</li> <li>Give me an envelope. (P)</li> <li>Pass me the sugar. (I)</li> <li>Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>		
<ol> <li>Open the door. (I)</li> <li>Give me an envelope. (P)</li> <li>Pass me the sugar. (I)</li> <li>Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ol>		
<ul> <li>2 Give me an envelope. (P)</li> <li>3 Pass me the sugar. (I)</li> <li>4 Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>5 Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>7 Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>3 Pass me the sugar. (I)</li> <li>4 Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>5 Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>7 Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>	1	Open the door. (I)
<ul> <li>4 Watch my children for a minute. (P)</li> <li>5 Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>7 Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>	2	Give me an envelope. (P)
<ul> <li>5 Tell me the time. (P)</li> <li>6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>7 Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>	3	Pass me the sugar. (I)
<ul> <li>6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)</li> <li>7 Wait outside. (I)</li> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>	4	Watch my children for a minute. (P)
<ul> <li>7 Wait outside. (!)</li> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (!)</li> </ul>	5	Tell me the time. (P)
<ul> <li>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</li> <li>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</li> </ul>	6	Change some dollars for me. (PP)
9 Come back tomorrow. (I)	7	Wait outside. (I)
9 Come back tomorrow. (I)	8	Translate this letter for me. (PP)
	9	
	10	

### But the words of the caption in the right order.



# irlanguage

# shall in questions What shall we do?

Weo	n use <i>shall 1?</i> or <i>shall we?</i> when we are asking or suggesting what to do.	
Shall	ut the lights on? Where <b>shall we</b> meet tomorrow? <b>Shall we</b> go and see Bill?	
Ьм		
	e sentences with shall I?	
	ut / the meat / in the fridge? Shall I put the meat in the fridge?	
	hat / tell / the police ?	
1	hat / buy / for Sandra's birthday ?	••
2	hen / phone you ?	
3	ay / now ?	
4	ean / the bathroom ?	
5	ow many tickets / buy ?	
6	here / leave the car ?	
7	hat time / come this evening ?	
8	nut / the windows ?	
9	hen / go shopping ?	
10	et / your coat ?	
2 M	e sentences with <i>shall we?</i>	
	hat time / leave?	
	atch / a film tonight?	
1	o out / this evening ?	
י כ	ave / a game of cards ?	
2	by / travel to London ?	
4	hat / do at the weekend ?	
	here / go on holiday?	
	ok for / a hotel ?	
6		
7	hat time / meet Peter ?	
8	bw much bread / buy ?	
	ave / a party ?	
10	hen / have the next meeting?	

### We can use Shall I ...? to offer politely to do things for people.

Shall I take your coat? Shall I make you some coffee?

### Make sentences offering to:

	carry somebody's bag
1	post somebody's letters
2	do somebody's shopping
3	make somebody's bed
4	read to somebody
5	drive somebody to the station
6	make somebody a cup of tea
7	clean somebody's car
8	phone somebody's secretary
9	cut somebody's hair
0	bring somebody an aspirin

### would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be taller.

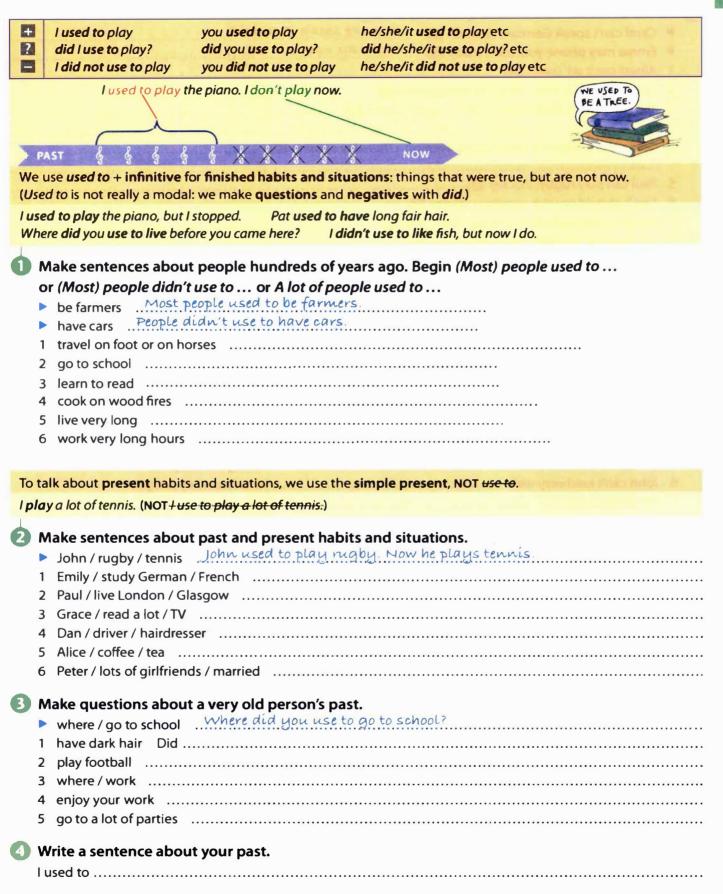
We often use would in the expression I'd like (='I would like'), to ask for things. It is more polite than I want. I'd like a return ticket, please. I'd like a seat by the window. We can offer things with would you like ...? Would you like a drink? How many eggs would you like? Make sentences with I'd like ..., please or Would you like ...? two tickets + I'd like two tickets, please. coffee ? Would you like coffee? 1 a black T-shirt 🛨 2 an aspirin ? 3 the newspaper ? 4 an ice cream + 5 some more toast 👔 6 a receipt + We can use would like to talk about things that people want to do. I'd like to learn Chinese. What would you like to do on Sunday? Would you like to have lots of brothers and sisters? I wouldn't like to be an astronaut. Which of these things would you like to be or do? Write sentences beginning I'd like to ... or I wouldn't like to ... ▶ be shorter l'd like to be shorter OR I wouldn't like to be shorter. 1 be taller ..... 2 be younger ..... 3 be older 4 go to the moon ..... 5 live in a different country 6 have a lot of dogs 7 write a book 8 (your sentence) We often use Would you like to ...? in invitations. Would you like to come to Scotland with us? Don't confuse would like (= 'want') and like (= 'enjoy'). Compare: I'd like some coffee, please. (NOT Hike some coffee, please.) I like coffee but I don't like tea. Would you like to go skating today? (NOT Do you like to go ...?) Do you like skating?

### Circle the correct forms.

- 1 Do / Would you like to come to dinner?
- 2 'Would you like coffee?' 'Yes, I do.' / 'Yes, please.'
- 3 | like / would like mountains.
- 4 Do / Would you like to go out tonight?
- 5 I like / 'd like to go home now.

- 6 Do you like dancing? Yes, I do. / Yes, please.
- 7 | like / would like to get up late tomorrow.
- 8 | don't / wouldn't like old music.
- 9 I don't / wouldn't like to be an animal.
- 10 'An apple?' 'Yes, I like / 'd like one.'

# used to I used to play the piano.



# modal verbs: more practice

E F	I Forms of modal verbs. Make questions or negatives.								
	Carol can't speak German. (Spanish 2)	n she speak Spanish?							
			may not do ít today.						
1									
2									
			)						
4	Olivia has to work on Wednesday evening. ( <i>Thursday evening</i> 🗖 )								
5									
6									
7									
8	The boss would like some coffee. (now ?)	• • • • • • •							
9			he children 🗖) 🛛						
10									
10									
0-									
	ast and future. Change the times of these s								
	Helen can ski. Helen could ski								
	I can speak French now on holiday next year.								
2									
3	, , ,								
4	Can you play the guitar?								
5	Must you wear a tie to work?								
6	John can't read very well.	•••••	when he was younger.						
7	We can't buy a car.		before next year.						
8	I must see the doctor.	•••••	last week.						
9	Everybody can say what they think		in the year 3000.						
10	You can't sing now. You		last year.						
	And you	next	year, either.						
<b>.</b>									
	dvice with should. Put the beginnings and	end	s together.						
	1 Aunt Mary's thirsty.	A	You should give her a saucer of milk						
	2 I'm getting fat.	В	You should buy some new clothes						
	3 My girlfriend's angry with me.	с	You should buy a new one						
	4 The cat needs a drink.	D	You should make her a cup of tea						
	5 My hair's falling out.	E	You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets						
	6 l'm tired.	F	You should take more exercise						
	7 I don't like Anna's new hairstyle.		G You should practise your service						
	8 I never have any money.	н	You should study grammar						
	<ul><li>9 I don't play tennis very well.</li></ul>		You shouldn't go to bed so late						
	10 The car won't go.		You shouldn't tell her						
	11 My clothes are all out of fashion.	-							
	-	K	You should change your shampoo						
	12 My English teacher says I make too many mistakes.		You should tell her you love her						

Permission and requests. Make these sentences more polite. (Different answers are possible.)
Give me some water. Can/Could/May I have some water?
I want a cup of coffee.
Can I take a photograph of you?
Close the door, John.
I need you to help me.
Give me that newspaper.
Will you clean my bicycle, please?
Can I borrow some money from you?
Let me use your phone.
Hold this.
Wash all my clothes before tomorrow.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: eight useful things. Complete the sentences with you can and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	cook food 🗸 keep food cool keep food very cold make copies make phone calls take photos wash clothes wash plates, cups etc
1	With a cooker
	With a freezer
	With a washing machine         With a fridge
5	With a mobile phone
6	With a dishwasher
7	With a camera





GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jobs. Complete the sentences with *might be* and words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

a busine an opera			a gardener a vet 🗸	a lawyer	
Little He	nry likes animals	. When he grow	s up he mi	ght be a fo	armer or a vet.
1 Little An	gela loves aerop	lanes. She migh	t		
2 Little Ge	orge is intereste	d in money			
3 Little An	rita likes singing	and she has a v	very loud void	e	
4 Little Per	er likes talking.				
5 Little Ali	e likes arguing.				
Internet e		earch engine	(e.g. Google		nree short simple sentences with
1				4	
2				5	

3 .....

6 .....

### Correct (✓) or not (✗)?

- John cans swim. .X...
- I must go now. .....
- 1 I don't must see Andrew today. .....
- 2 Anna can't to speak English. .....
- 3 Last year I must sell my car. ...
- 4 Would you like to have some coffee? .....
- 2 Circle the correct verbs.
  - Can / Might / Mustn't | help you?
  - 1 If you travel to Morania you can / should / must have a visa.
  - 2 You shouldn't / don't have to / couldn't laugh at old people.
  - 3 Passengers must / must not / should not smoke in the toilets.
  - 4 I think you should / must / may eat less and take more exercise.
  - 5 You mustn't / may not / don't have to tell me if you don't want to.
  - 6 You may / have to drive on the left in Britain.
  - 7 We don't have to / mustn't pay now, but we can if we want to.
  - 8 I may not / could not be here this evening.
  - 9 She isn't answering the phone. She shouldn't /can't be at home just now.
  - 10 People should / have to smile more often.

### 3 Choose the correct verbs to rewrite the sentences with the same meaning.

	I know how to swim. (can/may)
1	It is necessary for you to phone Martin. ( <i>must/might</i> )
2	It is possible that Ann will be here this evening. ( <i>can/might</i> )
3	It is not necessary for you to wait. (mustn't/don't have to)
4	It's not good for people to watch TV all the time. (mustn't/shouldn't)
5	Do you want me to open a window? (shall/will)
6	It is important for people to cooperate. (may/should)
7	John smoked when he was younger. (used to/would)
8	It is possible that it will rain. (can/may)
9	Alan knows how to speak Spanish. (can/could)
10	I would like you to help me. (Can/Should)

### 4 Grammar in a text. Choose the best modal verbs to complete the quotations.

- 1 Those who can / can't / shall, do. Those who can / can't / shall, teach. (Traditional)
- 2 We may / can / must love one another or die. (W H Auden)
- 3 It is not enough to succeed. Others can / may / must fail. (Gore Vidal)
- 4 You *shall / could / may* fool all the people some of the time; you *must / can / shall* even fool some of the people all the time; but you *can't / couldn't / wouldn't* fool all of the people all the time. (*Abraham Lincoln*)

- 5 It may rain tomorrow. .....
- 6 Can you singing? .....
- 7 Must you go? .....
- 8 I may not be here this evening. .....
- 9 Do you use to smoke? .....
- 10 Alex musts work harder. .....

# **SECTION 7** passives

### grammar summary

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

- We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject.
   Mrs Harris cooks our meals.
   Andrew broke the window.
- We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject.
   Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris.
   The window was broken by Andrew.

We make **passive verbs** with **be** (am, are, is etc) + **past participle** (cooked, broken etc). **Passive** verbs have the **same tenses** (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as **active** verbs. For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

(I'm afraid, Mr Klesmerod, that your blood type has been discontinued.

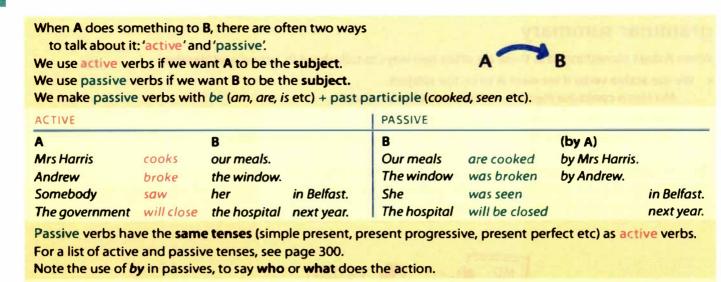


### Do you know? (Answers at the bottom of the page)

1	Which of thes	e is used to boil w B a sink	<b>/ater?</b> C a kettle	D a hot water bottle
2	<b>Which US Pres</b> A Lincoln	i <b>dent was killed i</b> B Kennedy		D Nixon
3	Which game i	s played with a ra	cket?	
-	A golf	B cricket	C football	D tennis
4	<b>If you are beir</b> A in a shop	<b>ig served, where a</b> B in a church	a <b>re you?</b> C in the sea	D in hospital
5	The Olympic G	iames have never	been held in:	
		B Tokyo	C London	D Chicago
6	Which of these metals was discovered by Marie Curie?			
	A uranium	B radium	C gold	D platinum
7	Which of thes	e was not written	by Shakespeare	?
	A Hamlet		Ausic C Othello	
8	Which country	was governed by	y the Pharaohs?	
	A Sweden	B China	C Egypt	D Japan

# passives

# passives: introduction English is spoken in Australia.

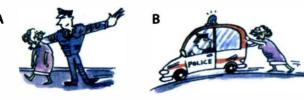


Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. (NOT ... from Mrs Harris.)

### Which picture goes with which sentence?

- The policeman helped the old lady. ....
- 1 The policeman was helped by the old lady. .....
- 2 The car hit a tree. .....
- 3 The car was hit by a tree. .....

- 4 Annie loves all dogs. .....
- 5 Annie is loved by all dogs. .....
- 6 The Queen photographed the tourists. .....
- 7 The Queen was photographed by the tourists. .....





G



Η



### **2** Circle the correct answer.

- 1 English speaks / spoken / is spoken in Australia.
- 2 | studied / was studied French for three years at school.
- 3 We spent / was spent too much money on holiday.
- 4 This window broke / was broken by your little boy.
- 5 Her clothes made / are made in Paris.
- 6 This book written / was written by my brother.
- 7 The new university will open / will opened / will be opened by the Prime Minister.
- 8 Ann was driving / was driven much too fast, and she stopped / was stopped by the police.
- 9 This house built / was built in 1800.
- 10 Everybody had / was had / was have a good time at the party.

# simple present passive We are woken by the birds.

	am I woken? are you woken? is he/she	t <b>is woken</b> etc z/it woken? etc t <b>is not</b> woken etc
	For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2, 301	. The spatial sector was and an engine with the
	use the <b>simple present passive</b> like the simple p igs that happen <b>all the time, repeatedly, often,</b> s	resent active, for things that are <b>always true</b> , and <b>sometimes, never</b> etc (see page 17).
m	<b>paid</b> every two weeks. Is Jeremy liked by the o	other children? Stamps <b>aren't sold</b> here.
Fo	or spelling rules for adding -ed to verbs, see page 46; for irreg	jular past participles, see page 299.
C	Complete the contender with $am/am/a$	
	A lot of paper	
1		
	2 Jane	h
	3 I	
5		
6		
7	We woken by the birds every morning	
	3 you seen by the same doctor every v	-
	Put simple present passive verbs into these	
	A lot of olive oil . is used in Gree	-
1	3	
2		
3		
4		
5	5 5	
6	<ul> <li>Spanish in Peru. (speak</li> <li>Cricket by two teams o</li> </ul>	
2 2	3 Our windows once a m	
0		
	Make simple present negatives and question	ons.
		in America.' (not make)
	'Where are they made?	' 'In China.'
1	'My name	with a Y.' (not spell)
	'How	' 'L, E, S, L, I, E.'
2	2 'That kind of bird	
	Where	
3	Where	
	'How	
4	Diamonds	
-	'Where	
5	,	
	'How much	' 'l don't remember'

# future passive Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.

+ ?	l <b>will be</b> woken	you <b>will be</b> woken	he/she/it will be woken etc	
	will I be woken?	will you be woken?	will he/she/it be woken? etc	
	I will not be woken	you will not be woken	he/she/it will not be woken etc	
	For contractions (I'll, won't etc), see page 301.			

We use the **future passive** like the future active (see page 39), to say things that we **think**, **guess** or **know** about the future, or to ask **questions** about the future.

One day all the work will be done by machines. Where will the match be played?

Make future passive sentences with the verbs from the box.

clean close / finish open send speak

- 1 The museum ...... by the Queen.
- 2 One day English ..... everywhere.
- 3 This job ..... in a few days.
- 4 Your room ...... while you're out.
- 5 Your tickets ...... to you next week.

### 2 Make future passive negatives and questions.

- 1 'The visitors ...... to the hotel by bus.' (take)
- 'How ...... there?' 'By taxi.'
- 2 'The new library ..... in the Central Square'. (build)
- 3 'English ..... at the conference' (speak)
- 'What language .....' 'Chinese.'

### 3 Make five future passive sentences from the table.

Next year Tomorrow Next week Tonight One day In 20 years	your bed / bicycle / breakfast / food / clothes / dinner / glasses / house / room / work	clean / cook / do / eat / make / send to Canada / steal / wash / take away	by	a small man in a raincoat / a black cat / two old ladies / a beautiful woman / people from another world / the President / a big dog / your old friend Peter /
In 20 years	room / work			a machine

### Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen by your old friend Peter.



+	I was woken you were woken he/she/it was woken etc
2	was I woken? were you woken? was he/she/it woken? etc
-	I was not woken you were not woken he/she/it was not woken etc
	For contractions (wasn't etc), see page 301.
10.11	the simple past passive like the simple past active for complete finished actions and events
	use the <b>simple past passive</b> like the simple past active, for <b>complete finished actions and events</b> page 47).
his a	table was made by my grandfather. Was the letter signed? We weren't met at the door.
C	omplete the sentences with <i>was/were</i> .
1	The fire seen in Renton, a kilometre away.
2	Most of the matcheswon by Indian teams.
3	These keysfound in the changing room yesterday – are they yours?
4	We couldn't find the station, but we
	1 stopped by a policeman in Green Road this morning.
	Yesterday a mancaught trying to burn down the Town Hall.
P	ut simple past passive verbs into these sentences.
1	Our passports
2	These books
3	l don't think this room
4	We at the airport by a driver from the university. ( <i>meet</i> )
5	Nobody
6	He away to school when he was twelve. (send)
	lake simple past passive negatives and questions.
	'Weweren't paid when we finished the work' (not pay)
	'When were you paid? 'Two months later.'
1	'My father in England' ( <i>not educate</i> )
	'Where' 'In Germany.'
2	'The letterson Tuesday.' (not post)
	'When' 'On Thursday.'
3	'This in butter.' ( <i>not cook</i> )
	'How' 'In margarine.'
4	'My suit in England <i>'</i> ( <i>not make</i> )
	'Where' 'In Hong Kong.'
5	'The restaurant bill in cash.' ( <i>not pay</i> )
	'How' 'With a credit card.'

We use a past passive structure – to be born – to give somebody's date or place of birth. *I was born in 1964.* (NOT *I born in 1964.* NOT *I am born in 1964.*) My sisters were born in Egypt.

Write a sentence about your date and place of birth.

I .....

### present progressive passive It's being cleaned.

I am being watched + ? am | being watched? ---

you are being watched are you being watched? I am not being watched you are not being watched

he/she/it is being watched etc is he/she/it being watched? etc he/she/it is not being watched etc

For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2 and 301.

We use the present progressive passive like the present progressive active, for things that are happening now (see page 24), or for things that are planned for the future (see page 38).

'Where's the carpet?' 'It's being cleaned.' When are you being seen by the doctor?

Questions and answers. Use the words in the box to complete answers to the questions. Use the present progressive passive.

the grass / cut 🗸 he / watch I/send it / clean it / paint it / rebuild my hair / cut my watch / repair she / interview the engine / repair we / follow

- 'Can we play on the football pitch?' 'No, the grass is being cut.....' 2 'Did Alice get that new job?' 'Not yet - ..... today.' 3 'What time is it?' 'Sorry, I don't know: ......' 4 'Why the big smile?'..... to Hawaii for a week' 5 I usually read a magazine while ..... 6 I think ..... by a police car. 7 'Where's your car?' 'At the garage.....'
  - 8 The school is closed this year.
  - 9 George doesn't know that ...... by the police.
- 10 I can't use my office this week because .....

Imagine you are in a busy hotel at midday. Make sentences to say what is being done.

(beds / make) Beds are being made 1 (bills / pay) ..... 2 (coffee / make) ..... 3 (drinks / serve) 4 (food / prepare) ..... 5 (baggage / bring down) ..... 6 (money / change) ..... 7 (new guests / welcome) ..... 8 (reservations / take) ..... 9 (phones / answer) 10 (rooms / clean)





### present perfect passive The house has been sold.

+ ? 

I have been seen vou have been seen have I been seen? I have not been seen you have not been seen

have you been seen?

he/she/it has been seen etc has he/she/it been seen? etc he/she/it has not been seen etc

For contractions (l've etc), see page 301.

We use the present perfect passive like the present perfect active (see pages 60-65), to talk about past actions and events which are important now - for example, when we give people news.

The house on the corner has been sold. We haven't been invited to Anna's party.

#### News: put the verbs into the present perfect passive.

- A new university ...has been opened in Kew today by the Prince of Wales. (open)
- 1 Lord Retlaw ...... for drunk driving. (arrest)
- 2 An old painting from a school in Wales ..... for \$250,000 by an American museum. (buy)
- 3 An 18-year-old soldier ..... in an accident in Devon. (kill)
- 4 The two lost children .....alive and well in a London park. (find)
- 5 An unknown actor ...... to star in the new film of 'Macbeth'. (choose)

ride

- 7 'What's the problem?' 'My bicycle ......' (steal)
- 8 | ..... to write something for the local newspaper. (ask)
- 10 Everybody in the class ...... to Stacey's party. (invite)

(1) 'It's never been done.' Make a sentence for each picture.

مجعزبان ايرانيان



It's never



2 .....







### passives: more practice

Tenses. Put in simple present, simple past or future passive verbs.

- 'Frankenstein' ...was written..... by Mary Shelley. (write)
- 1 Butter ..... from milk. (make)
- 2 Last night two men ..... in a fight in a nightclub. (kill)
- 3 One day all our work ..... by machines. (do)
- 4 English ..... as a second language by millions of people. (speak)
- 5 This computer ..... in Japan. (make)
- 6 All the footballers ...... by a doctor before the match last Sunday. (examine)
- 7 This room ..... every day. (clean)
- 8 You ..... of the test results as soon as possible. (inform)
- 9 The new road ..... in July next year. (open)
- 10 Diamonds ...... in several countries in Africa. (find)

Present progressive passive. Imagine that you are in a busy hotel at one o'clock. All the hotel staff are on strike (they have stopped work) because they want more money. Write sentences about six things that are not being done. Some useful words:

baggage bills coffee new guests reservations	drinks food money rooms telephones	
Beds are not being made.		
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	······	
•••••••••••••••••		

**GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: travelling by air. Make sure you know the words in the box.** Use a dictionary if necessary. Then imagine you are in an airport, and write six or more sentences about what is being done.

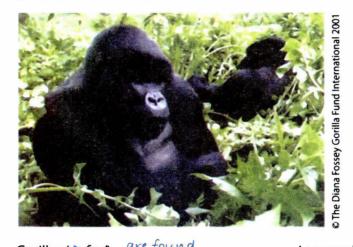
SUBJECTS:	arriving pass	sengers	baggag	je 🧸 🛛 bo	arding p	asses	cars	
	departures	passpo	orts res	ervation	s tick	ets		
VERBS:	announce	check	make	meet	park	print	sell	x-ray 🗸
			and a state	100	100	100		



.....

4	Te	enses. Put in present perfect passive or present progressive passive verbs.
		'Is the Army Museum still in Green Street?' 'No, it has been closed
	1	Don't look now, but I think we
	2	Hello, police? I'd like to report a theft. My handbag (steal)
	3	'Why did you take the bus?' 'My car
	4	I think someone's been in my room – some books (move)
	5	'There's nobody here.' 'No, all the students home.' (send)
	6	'When'
		'Tomorrow morning.' ( <i>interview</i> )
	7	A group of suspected terrorists by the police. (arrest)
	8	Another group of suspected terrorists
		(not arrest, watch)
	9	The hospital will be closed for two years, while it
1	10	James

#### **Grammar in a text.** Put in simple present active or passive verbs.





Gorillas ( > find)	in several countries in Central Africa. They are about
1.6 metres tall, and they (1 cover) .	with black or brown hair. Gorillas' lives
(2 spend)	in groups. Each group has five to ten gorillas in it. The gorillas
in a group (3 <i>walk</i> )	about 0.5 to 1.0 km per day, looking for food. They
(4 not eat)	all the leaves in one part of the forest before moving on;
some leaves (s leave)	on the trees and plants.
At night gorillas (6 sleep)	in nests; these nests
(7 make)	of branches and leaves. The number of gorillas living in Africa
today (8 not know)	but it is certain that this number is getting smaller.
Why? Because in the countries wh	ere the gorillas (9 <i>live</i> ) more and more
trees (10 cut down)	every year.

# **6** Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find short simple sentences with the following verbs. Write the sentences.

"are made"
"is spoken"
"will be spent"
"are being built"
"have been seen"
"were given"
"were sent"
"was arrested"

### passives: revision test

#### Circle the correct passive or active verb form.

- This book written I was written by my uncle.
- 1 Derek posted / was posted his letter to the university today.
- 2 We did a lot of work for the school, but we didn't pay / weren't paid.
- 3 My friend Douglas speaks / is spoken seven languages.
- 4 The letter H doesn't pronounce / isn't pronounced in French.
- 5 A new hospital will build / will be built in the town centre.
- 6 You can't come in here the room is cleaning / is being cleaned.
- 7 We have invited / have been invited to John's party tonight.
- 8 This sauce makes / is made with oil and vinegar.
- 9 French speaks / is spoken in Belgium.
- 10 John broke / is broken his leg last week.

#### Correct (✓) or not (✗)?

- English is spoken in New Zealand. .....
- I am born in Manchester. .X...
- 1 I was studied German for three years. .....
- 2 Emma invited to a party by her boss. .....
- 3 How is written your name? .....
- 4 'Where's your coat?' 'It's being cleaned.' .....
- 5 Our car has been stolen. .....
- 6 When is that window broken? .....
- 7 This book was written from my father. .....
  - 8 I was taken to the opera by a friend of mine. .....
- 9 The new road will finished in July. .....
- 10 Our house was built in 1850. .....

#### 3 Put in the correct passive tenses.

- 'The Birds' ...was directed by Alfred Hitchcock. (direct)
- 1 'Is the library still downstairs?' 'No, it ......' (move)
- 2 A new hospital ..... here next April. (open)
- 3 Somebody has been in my handbag. Some money ...... (take)
- 4 'Where's your black sweater?' 'It .....' (wash)
- 5 You ...... your examination results before the weekend. (tell)
- 6 'My car .....' 'Well, tell the police.' (steal)
- 7 This phone ...... in China. (make)
- 8 Spanish ..... in most of South America. (speak)
- 10 I ..... to help you. What can I do? (ask)
- 12 Do you think all translation ...... by computers one day? (do)
- 13 'When .....?' 'Tomorrow'.(play)
- 14 Three computers ...... from the school since Christmas. (steal)
- 15 The factory closed suddenly last week, and all the workers ...... away. (send)
- 16 This kind of cheese ..... from goats' milk. (make)
- 17 Alice ...... by a car the other day, and her leg ...... (hit; break)
- 18 Your letter ..... now it will be ready in five minutes. (translate)
- 19 It says in today's paper that gold ..... in Scotland. (find)
- 20 'Have you done those letters?' 'Not yet. They ..... by five o'clock' (finish)

# **SECTION 8** questions and negatives

#### grammar summary

To make questions, we normally put an auxiliary verb (be, have, can etc) before the subject. John has gone. --> Has John gone? She's leaving. --> When is she leaving?

To make **negatives**, we put **not** or **n't after an auxiliary verb**. John is working. —> John is **not** working. I could swim —> I couldn't swim.

If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do. I live in Manchester. -> Where do you live? He said 'Hello'. -> What did he say? She likes cold weather. -> She doesn't like cold weather.

We do **not** use **do** when a **question word** is the **subject**. **What** happened? (NOT <del>What did happen?</del>)

#### Who are you?

Who were you talking to when I came in just now and you put down the phone? Who were you thinking about when I asked you and asked you again and you answered 'Why, no one'? Who were you with last night when you came home late and said you'd been walking alone?

What was I hoping for that first day when I knocked on your door? What was I thinking about when I first asked you out? Who was I looking at when I first sat looking at you?

Who are you?

#### I didn't do the housework

I didn't feed the goldfish, I didn't make the bed, I didn't study algebra. I watched a film instead.

I didn't practise on the flute, I didn't write to Jean, I didn't visit Aunty May. I read a magazine.

I didn't do the housework. I started. Then I quit, and wrote a poem just to say I love you. This is it.

### yes/no questions Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa?

### AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

To make questio		verb before the subj	ect. ould, can, could, shall, shou	ld, may, might and must.)
			The train will be late. Will the train be late?	
<ul> <li>Put the wor</li> <li>you ready</li> <li>telephone</li> <li>swim your</li> <li>tired are you</li> <li>he at is hour</li> <li>go must not</li> <li>Spanish the</li> <li>tomorrow</li> <li>Aunt Ruth</li> <li>forgotten</li> <li>your sister</li> <li>coffee some</li> </ul>	ds in the right ord are <u>Are yourre</u> d she has Mary <u>boother can</u> brother can <u>can</u> ou <u>can</u>	der to make questi ady? tas she telephonea n your brother sw	ons. Mary? .m?	······································
TO your nome	e secretary gone has			
If there is no aux	iliary verb: put do/	does/did before the s	ubject and use the infinit	ive (without to).
STATEMENT +: QUESTION ?:	l need a visa. <mark>Do</mark> l need a visa? (N	IOT <del>Need I a visa</del> ?, NO	T <del>Do I to need a visa?</del> )	
STATEMENT +: QUESTION ?:	John wants to go h Does John want to		John wants to go home?)	
STATEMENT +: QUESTION ?:				

#### Make questions with you.

You want to know if somebody:

- understands ... Do you under stand?
- called you \_\_\_\_\_\_ Did you call me?
- 1 drinks coffee at bedtime
- 2 likes classical music
- 3 knows your friend Andrew
- 4 went skiing last winter .....
- 5 works in London
- 6 lives in a flat or a house
- 7 watches a lot of TV
- 8 remembered to buy bread
- 9 saw Barbara last weekend
- 10 plays tennis .....

#### 3 Make questions with she.

You want to know if somebody:

- plays football ... Does she play football?
- 1 speaks Arabic .....
- 2 knows Mr Peters .....
- 3 works at home .....
- 4 lived in Birmingham .....
- 5 went home last week .....
- 6 plays the piano .....
- 7 rides horses .....
- 8 likes working with children .....
- 9 travelled a lot last year .....
- 10 drives to work .....

#### We don't put do with other auxiliary verbs.

Can you swim? (NOT Do you can swim?)

#### Choose the correct question.

- ► (A) Will you be ready soon? B Do you will be ready soon?
- ► Ā Live you in London? (B) Do you live in London? C Are you live in London?
- 1 A Do you are tired? B Do you tired? C Are you tired?
- 2 A Do you must go now? B Must you go now?
- 3 A Do you speak Japanese? B Speak you Japanese? C Are you speak Japanese?
- 4 A Do you have been to New York? B Have you been to New York?
- 5 A Were you go to work by car? B Did you go to work by car? C Went you to work by car?
- 6 A Can she sing? B Does she can sing?
- 7 A Is Judy looking for a job? B Does Judy looking for a job? C Is Judy look for a job?
- 8 A You said something? B Did you said something? C Did you say something?

#### Only put one verb before the subject.

Is her father working today? (NOT <del>Is working her father today?</del>) Has your brother got children? (NOT <del>Has got your brother children?</del>) Did those people telephone again? (NOT <del>Did telephone those people again?</del>)

#### 5 Put the verbs in the right place to make questions.

→ For more practice with present questions, past questions etc, see Sections 2-5.

→ For question tags like It's late, isn't it?, see pages 288–289.

### question words When will you see her?

#### WHERE IS ...? WHEN CAN ...? WHY DOES ...?

Questions with where, when, why etc normally have the same word order as yes/no questions (pages 104–105). We put am/are/is/was/were or another auxiliary verb (have, will, can etc) before the subject.

STATEMENT ET:	Anna is in Russia.	i win see her on ruesduy.
QUESTION ?:	Where is Anna?	When will you see her? (NOT When you will see her?)
If there is no oth	er auxiliary verb, we	e use <i>do/does/did</i> + <b>infinitive</b> (without <i>to</i> ).
	He likes his job.	l came here to learn English.
OUESTION 2:	How does he like his	iob? Why did you come here? (NOT Why you came here?)

#### Make questions with the words in the boxes.

how when </br>

- (you staying?) "Where are you staying?" 'At the Park Hotel'
- 1 (you here?) ...... 'To see Scotland.'
- 2 (you been today?) ...... 'To Edinburgh.'
- 3 (you going to Glasgow?) ...... 'Next weekend.'
- 4 (you like Scotland?) ...... 'It's great!'

how when when where why

- 6 (you come by car?) .....'I like driving.'

We often ask questions with how + adjective/adverb. How old is your sister? How tall are you? How fast can you run?

Here are some common expressions with *how*. Use them to complete the questions.

	How old …? ✓ How big …? ⊢		How long? How often?		
	How old are		you?' '37 r	ext birthday.	
1	·	•••••••••••••••	your house	e from here?' 'Abo	ut 5 km.'
2	·		John?' 'Ve	ry tall – nearly two	metres.'
3	' she driving?' 'The police say she was doing 160 km/h.'				
4	·		you see yo	ur parents?' 'Every	y week:
5	·		Petra's flat	?' 'Very small – jus	t one room and a bathroom.
6	<i></i>		you stay in	China?' 'I was the	re for six months.'
7	<b>'</b>		you speak	Spanish?' 'Not ver	ry well:

nt time is the film? What time does the train le at colour are her eyes? (NOT <del>What colour have?</del> at size are you? (buying clothes) What size we at sort of books do you read? What sort of film	) What colour is your car? ould you like?
Put the beginnings and ends together, and	put in an expression with <i>What</i>
0	A 'Eight o'clock, if it's not late.'
1 ' is the baby's hair?'	B ' , small or large?'
2 ' music do you play?'	C 'She hasn't got any.'
3 'I'd like a packet of rice, please.'	D 'Pop, mostly.'
5 TU like a packet of fice, please.	E 'I don't remember – it was very late.'
4 'Can I borrow one of your sweaters?'	
	F 'Sure would you like? Blue? Green?'
4 'Can I borrow one of your sweaters?'	

To ask for descriptions, we often use What is/are/was/were ... like?

'Where have you been?' 'In Ireland.' **What was** the weather **like**?' 'OK.' **What's** your new boyfriend **like**?' 'He's very nice.' '**My** brother writes detective stories.' 'Yes? **What are** they **like**?' 'Not very good, really.'

Make questions with *What ... like*?, using expressions from the box.

	your new girlfriend your new house your new car your new boss 🗸 your new school your new neighbou	
	What's your new boss like?	'He's not very good at his job.'
1		'She's a lot of fun.'
2		'Very noisy. They have parties all night.'
3		'OK – it's a bit slow.'
4		'Great – we've got much more room.'
5		'It's interesting. I travel a lot.'
6		'The teachers aren't much good.'

 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some more useful questions

 Where are you from?
 Where do you come from? (NOT From where ....? – see page 111)

 How long have you been here?
 How long are you here for? (= 'Until when ...?')

 How long does it take to get to London?
 How long does it take to learn English?

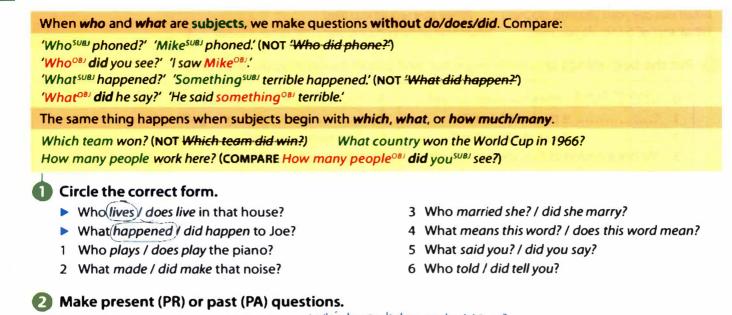
 How do you spell that word?
 How do you pronounce this word?

For questions with who, what and which, see page 108.

I keep six honest serving-men (They taught me all I knew): Their names are What and Why and When And How and Where and Who.

(Rudyard Kipling)

# question-word subjects Who phoned? What happened?



	car / belong / to Mary (which – PR)
	you / buy / glasses (how many - PA) . How many glasses did you buy?
1	people / come / to her party (how many – PA)
2	Peter / catch / train (which – PA)
	bus / go / to the station ( <i>which</i> – PR)
	Douglas / speak / languages (how many – PR)
	Alice / like / music (what sort – PR)

6 music / keep / the baby quiet (what sort – PR)

#### **3** Look at the picture and complete the sentences.

- 7 ..... Nobody.



Can you write four more questions and answers about the picture?

1	
2	
2	
5	
4	

C		
5		ake questions. Ask about the words in italics.
		(a) John broke <i>the window</i> . (b) <i>John</i> broke the window.
		(a) What did John break? (b) Who broke the window?
	1	(a) Melissa bought <i>a coat</i> . (b) <i>Melissa</i> bought a coat.
	2	(a) The bus hit <i>that tree</i> . (b) <i>The bus</i> hit that tree.
	3	(a) Rose lost the office keys. (b) Rose lost the office keys.
	-	
		(a) Paul teaches Arabic. (b) Paul teaches Arabic.
	4	(a) Paul leaches Arabic. (b) Paul leaches Arabic.
	_	
	5	(a) Mike hates computers. (b) Mike hates computers.
6		rite questions about the pictures, using the words in the box. Do you know the answers?
	<b>(</b> T	hey are at the bottom of the page.)
	Ē	The Eiffel Tower
		build / build paint first reach write
		Who built the Eiffel Tower?
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
		<image/>
		3 The Great Wall of China     4 Sunflowers
	144	
		rite questions about books, plays or songs. Ask some people.
	W	no wrote
	••••	
	For	the difference between which and what, see page 322. For whom, see page 322.
		🖉 Gustave Eiffel. 1 Robert Peary in 1909. 2 Leo Tolstoy. 3 The emperor Shi Huangdi (and a lot of other people). 4 Van Gogh

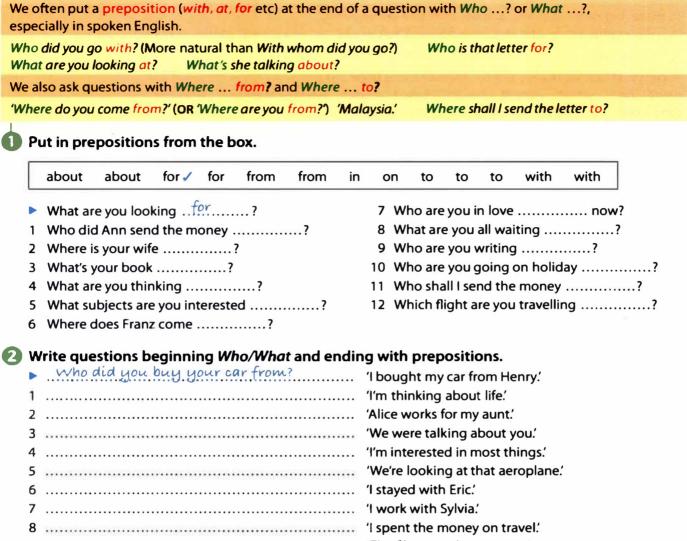
Level 2

# questions with long subjects Are Ann and her mother and father coming?

Be	ca	reful when questions have long subjects. The wo	rd order does not change.
ls	A	Ann	coming tomorrow?
Ar	e A	Ann and her mother	coming tomorrow?
Ar	e A	Ann and her mother and father and Uncle George	coming tomorrow? (NOT Are coming tomorrow Ann?)
W	hat	time will the bus for the dinner and dance leave? (	NOT What time the bus will leave?)
Н	ive	Bill and Jenny and their children arrived? (NOT Ha	ve arrived Bill and Jenny?)
W	her	edid the President and his wife stay? (NOT Where s	<del>itayed?</del> OR <del>Where did stay?</del> )
Is	the	food for the children's party ready? (NOT Is ready-	<del>?</del> )
1	Μ	ake <i>yes/no</i> questions.	
		The boss's secretary travels a lot.	
		Does the boss's secretary travel a lot?	
	1	Your sister Caroline is talking to the police.	
	2	All the people here understand Spanish.	
	2	Most of the football team played well.	
	3		
	4	The man at the table in the corner is asleep.	
0		aka muantiana with muantian wards	
2	M	ake questions with question words.	
		The President and her husband live in Madrid.	
		Where as the Preslaent and her husband	d live?
	1	A ticket for Saturday's concert costs €15.	
		How much	
	2	The film about skiing in New Zealand starts at 8.	00.
		What time	
	3	The second word in the first sentence means 'kir	
		What	
	4	The man in the flat downstairs wants to change	
	-	-	
		wily	
8	P	ut the words in the correct order.	
	1	laughing / why / all those people / are / ?	
	•		
	-		
	2	is / eating / that big black dog / what / ?	
	3	going / everybody in your family / to Scotland /	
	4	what game / those children / playing / are / ?	
	5	Lola and her friends / studying / are / where / ?	
	6	those people over there / French / are / speaking	a/?
			, .

### prepositions in questions Who did you go with?

Level Z



- 9 ...... 'The film was about Russia.'
- 10 ...... 'You can get tickets from my office.'

In conversation, we often ask short questions with Who/What/Where + preposition.

'I'm going camping.' 'Who with?' 'William wants to talk to you.' 'What about?'

#### Complete the questions with one word.

- 1 'I'm thinking.' '..... about?'
- 2 'I've got a letter.' '..... from?'
- 3 'She hit him.' '..... with?'
- 4 'She's getting married.' '..... to?'
- 5 'I'm going to America: '..... with?'
- 6 'Jamie's writing a book.' ..... about?'
- 7 'I'm writing postcards.' 'Who .....?'
- 8 'I've bought a present.' 'Who .....?'
- 9 'Jane has arrived.' '..... from?'
- 10 'I've got a question.' '..... about?'
- 11 'Send this box.' 'Where .....?'
- 12 'I'm making a cake.' 'Who .....?'

# negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know why.

### AM NOT HAVE NOT WILL NOT CANNOT DO NOT

To make negative sentences: put not after an auxiliary verb.											
(Auxiliary verbs are: be (am etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might, must.)											
It is not raining. I have not seen Bill. She cannot understand me.											
In conversation we usually use contractions (see page 301):											
aren't isn't wasn't weren't haven't hasn't hadn't won't (= 'will not') wouldn't											
can't couldn't shan't shouldn't mightn't mustn't											
We say I'm not, NOT <del>I amn't.</del> We can also say you're not (= 'you aren't'), he's not, she's not etc.											
It isn't/It's not raining. We weren't at home. I haven't seen Ben.											
She can't understand me. You mustn't tell anybody. I'm not ready.											
She con condeistand me. Too mostri cien anybody. Tinnot ready.											
Make negative sentences. Use contractions.											
Dogs can swim. (fly)											
1 Milk is white. ( <i>red</i> )											
2 The children are at school. ( <i>at home</i> )											
3 Max has been to Japan. ( <i>Egypt</i> )											
4 You must give this letter to Erica. ( <i>her mother</i> )											
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (in the office)											
6 I could talk when I was two years old. (swim)											
7 We were in London yesterday. ( <i>Birmingham</i> )											
8 I'm Scottish. ( <i>English</i> )											
Write five things that you can't do. Here are some suggestions.											
dance draw drive play chess/bridge etc play the piano/guitar etc											
remember faces remember names ride a horse sing											
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths											
<ul> <li>I can't speak German.</li> </ul>											
1											
2											
3 I can't remember: names, faces,											
4 and I've forgotten the other.'											
S 🦦											
Write five things that you probably won't do next week. Here are some suggestions.											
go to New York get married get rich play football become President											
write a poem buy a car make a cake read Shakespeare climb Mount Everest											
I probably won't go to Paris next week											
1											
2											
3											

If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did + not/n't + infiniti	ve (without to).
I like — I don't like She knows — She doesn't know (NOT <del>Sh</del>	<del>e doesn't knows</del> )
He arrived — He did not arrive (NOT He did not arrived) It rain	ed — It didn't rain

#### Make negative sentences.

	Cats eat meat. (potatoes) Cats don't eat potatoes.
	Cervantes wrote 'Don Quixote' (Mozart) Mozart didn't write 'Don Quixote'
	Shakespeare lived in London. (New York)
2	Dictionaries tell you about words. (phone books)
3	The earth goes round the sun. (round the moon)
4	Most Algerians speak Arabic. (Russian)
5	Fridges keep food cold. ( <i>cookers</i> )
	The Second World War ended in 1945. (1955)
	John knows my parents. (my sister)

#### Use expressions from the two boxes, and write eight things that you don't do.

buy socks dance go to sleep play football play the violin ride a bicycle speak English sing study mathematics write poetry

after breakfast at Christmas in London in the bath in the middle of the night at school in the middle of the road on the bus in the sea on the telephone on Tuesdays I don't buy books in London. 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 ..... 7 ..... 8 .....

#### 6 Complete these negative sentences. Use aren't, haven't, doesn't etc.

- 1 'What's the time?' 'I ..... know.'
- 2 'What was the film like? 'It ..... very good.'
- 3 'Would Stella like some coffee?' 'No, she ...... drink coffee.'
- 4 I ..... seen William for weeks. Is he OK?
- 5 Pat and Jim ..... very happy with their new car.
- 6 'Can I see you tomorrow?' 'I ..... be here. How about Tuesday?'
- 7 'Was the lesson any good?' 'I ..... understand a word.'
- 8 She ..... buy the coat; it was too expensive.
- 9 The baby ..... got much hair.
- 10 'Can we go?' 'In a minute. I ..... ready.'

For more practice with present negatives, past negatives etc, see Sections 2–5.

NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115). Nobody understands me. (NOT <del>Nabody doesn't understand me.</del>) She never phones me. (NOT <del>She doesn't never phone me.</del>)

### not and no

#### We use not to make a word, expression or clause negative.

Not surprisingly, we missed the train. (NOT No surprisingly...) The students went on strike, but not the teachers. (NOT ...-no-the teachers.) I can see you tomorrow, but not on Thursday. I have not received his answer.

#### We use no with a noun or -ing form to mean 'not any' or 'not a/an' (see page 115).

**No teachers** went on strike. (= There weren't any teachers on strike.) I've got **no Thursdays** free this term. (= ... **not any** Thursdays ... ) I telephoned, but there was **no answer**. (= ... **not an** answer.) **NO SMOKING** 

#### Put in not or no.

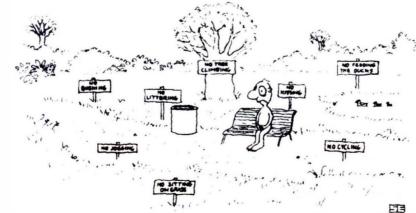
- 1 I work hard, but ..... at weekends.
- 2 She was ..... able to understand him.
- 3 They had ..... butter left in the shop.
- 4 They repaired my watch, but ..... properly.
- 5 We've got ..... time to talk now.
- 6 I can come round, but ..... tonight.
- 7 They did ..... want to help.
- 8 'Do you smoke?' ..... usually.'
- 9 She's a woman with ..... sense of humour.
- 10 'Shall I put some music on?' 'OK, but ...... too loud.'

#### Change not any/a to no.

- I haven't got any money.
- 1 There aren't any newspapers.
- 2 There isn't any time.
- 3 There weren't any letters. .....
- 4 I didn't see a light.
- 5 He didn't give an answer.

We don't usually put not with the subject. Instead, we use a structure with it. It wasn't Bill who phoned, it was Pete. (NOT Not Bill phoned ...)

### NO-MAN'S LAND



### negatives with nobody, never etc Nobody loves me.



I never hated a man enough to give him diamonds back. (Zsa Zsa Gabor) I have nothing to say, and I am saying it, and that is poetry. (John Cage) Sometime they'll give a war and nobody will come. (Carl Sandburg)

### questions and negatives: more practice

1 Q	uestions with and without <i>do/did</i> . Ask about the words in <i>italics</i> .
•	She said something. Who said something?
	She said something. What did she say?
1	Julia cooked dinner.
2	Julia cooked eggs.
3	The ball hit Joe.
4	The ball hit <i>Joe</i> .
5	Sarah plays the guitar.
6	Sarah plays the guitar.
7	Beth speaks eight languages.
8	Beth speaks eight languages.
9	Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
10	Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
10	
2 Pr	epositions in questions. Write questions for these answers.
	I was thinking about you
	I went with Henry.
	I'm writing to Margaret.
	I bought it for my mother.
	The letter's from my uncle.
	We were talking about life.
6	I carried it in a paper bag.
	I sold my car for €1000.
, 8	She hit him with her umbrella.
0	I sent the flowers to Caroline.
9	
10	She comes from Denmark.
B Lo	ong subjects. Put in auxiliary verbs to make questions.
	why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year
	la. ts year?
	the 7.15 train / run on Saturdays
	why / all those people / looking at me
	Anna and Oscar / have lunch together / yesterday
2	Anna and Oscal / have functi together / yesterday
3	that man in the dark coat / work / for the government
2	
4	
4	
5	what /those shildren / doing / in the garden
5	what / those children / doing / in the garden
0	
7	Tom and his sister / staning / at your bayes ( this work
/	Tom and his sister / staying / at your house / this week
0	
8	when / Emma's teacher and her class / going / to Paris

	vot, hodody, hever etc. make negative sentences.
1	I read newspapers. (not) I don't read newspapers.
	I read newspapers. (never) . I never read newspapers.
1	Somebody spoke. (nobody) Nobody spoke.
	My father eats meat. ( <i>never</i> )
	2 Peter likes jazz. (not)
3	B There's something to do in this town. ( <i>nothing</i> )
4	I understood everything. ( <i>nothing</i> )
5	5 Sally plays the piano. ( <i>not</i> )
e	5 I go to the cinema. ( <i>hardly</i> )
7	7 Something happened. ( <i>nothing</i> )
8	3 Somebody wants to talk to you. ( <i>nobody</i> )
9	9 I've got some money. ( <i>no</i> )
10	) I've got enough money. ( <i>not</i> )

#### **Grammar in a text.** Read the poem, and then write one yourself.

Jus	t you wait and see
ľm	getting older.
The	ere isn't time to do everything.
I ca	n't speak German
	or climb mountains.
I ca	n see
ľm	not going to be a ballet dancer
	or an opera singer.
rll	never discover a new planet
	or run a two-hour marathon
	or write the novel of the century.
But	I'll do something good.
Just	you wait and see.

Your poem
I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't
or
I can see
I'm not going to
or
I'll never
or
Or
But I'll
Just you wait and see.

6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know the words in the box, Use a dictionary if necessary. Then read statements 1–6 and correct the five that are wrong.

cat	dinosaur	elep	grizzly	
bear	hunt	insect	реп	guin
spider	tiger			

- Penguins can fly. Penguins can't fly.
- 1 Adult grizzly bears can climb trees.
- 2 Elephants live for 50–70 years.
- 3 Tigers live in Africa.
- 4 The first people hunted dinosaurs.
- 5 Spiders are insects.
- 6 Cats can see when there is no light.

Internet exercise. Get information from the internet (in English) about some of the animals in Exercise 6, or about some other animals. Then write some negative information about the animals, using can't, don't, aren't etc.

### questions and negatives: revision test

 Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'. Speak you English? Do you speak 10 Did Sarah phoned yesterday? ..... Did you understand? ...Correct 11 Not speak English. 1 Does your brother living with you? 12 I couldn't find my glasses nowhere. ..... ..... 2 Are coming to the party all your friends? 13 I'm no ready yet. 14 I had no money. ...... 3 Did you see Tom yesterday? ..... 15 At what are you looking? ..... 4 Play you football? ..... 16 I never work at weekends. 17 She didn't say nothing. 5 Why you are tired? ..... 18 This sentence is no right. 6 What time does the lesson start? ..... 7 What is your boss like? ..... 19 Nobody didn't help me. ..... 8 Where I can pay? ..... 20 She works in China, but no in Beijing. 9 Who did tell you that? ..... ....... Complete the questions. What time is the film?' 'Eight o'clock' 7 '..... music do you like?' 'Pop.' 1 '..... is that?' 'My brother.' 8 '..... can you sprint?' 'I can do 2 '..... did you go home?' 'I was tired.' 100m in 12.4 seconds.' 9 '..... are your shoes?' '42' 3 '..... were you born?' 'In Scotland.' 4 '..... is Roger?' '27 next birthday.' 10 '..... is John's new girlfriend .....?' 5 '..... is her hair?' 'Black.' 'She's very nice.' 6 '..... are you?' '1 metre 84.' 3 Make negative sentences. ▶ I can speak French. (Spanish) . I can't speak Spanish. Kelly is at home. (*at work*) ..... 1 2 l've forgotten your name. (your face) 3 Peter drives buses. (taxis) 4 We went to Spain. (Portugal) 5 You must use this phone. (*that one*) 6 Henry eats fish. (meat) 7 These people play rugby. (soccer) 8 Luke broke his arm. (his leg) 9 I'll be at home in the morning. (the afternoon) 10 Elisabeth reads magazines. (books) 4 Make questions with she and her sisters. live in England? Do she and her sisters live in England? 1 been to America? 2 like dancing? ..... 3 can swim? ..... 4 be here tomorrow? 5 go to the party yesterday? 6 ever studied history? 7 can drive? 8 phone last night?

9 talking to Philip when you saw them?10 get married soon?

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *lim, don't*) and full forms (for example *lam, donot*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# **SECTION 9** infinitives and *-ing* forms

#### grammar summary

INFINITIVES: (to) go, (to) break, (to) see etc -ING FORMS (ALSO CALLED 'GERUNDS'): going, breaking, seeing etc

We can use both -ing forms and infinitives as subjects (but -ing forms are more common). Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)

We can use **infinitives** to say **why** we do things. I got up early to catch the 7.15 train.

After some verbs we use infinitives; after others we use -ing forms. I expect to pass my exams. (NOT <del>| expect passing</del> ...) I'll finish studying in June. (NOT <del>|'ll finish to study</del> ...)

We can use infinitives after some adjectives and nouns. She's ready to leave. I'm glad to see you. I've got work to do.

After **prepositions** we use -*ing* **forms**, not infinitives. You can't live without eating. (NOT ... without to eat.) I usually watch TV before going to bed. (NOT ... before to go to bed.)

Infinitives often have to before them; but not always. I want to go home, but I can't go now.

# How I stopped smoking

I started smoking when I was 16. I didn't really want to smoke, but at that age it's important to imitate your friends. Once I had started, of course, it was hard to stop. And smoking gave me something to do with my hands. Whenever I met strangers, I couldn't help reaching for a cigarette to give me confidence, to make me look (I thought) cool and sophisticated.

Soon I couldn't get through a day without smoking twenty or thirty cigarettes. But smoking made me feel ill and smell bad, and I was tired of feeling ill and smelling bad. And I realised that it was stupid to spend so much money on a ridiculous habit. So I tried to stop. Hundreds of times. I kept on giving up. I became an expert on giving up smoking. Nothing worked: I always started again.

At last I had a piece of luck. I got terrible bronchitis – so bad that I simply couldn't smoke. It lasted for months. And when I finally recovered, I realised that I had broken the habit. I didn't have to start smoking again. And I never did. 36



### infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go?

/e usu	ually pu	t <b>to</b> with infin	itives.									
		ome. (NOT <del>  wa</del> by sister to say	_	<del>7</del> e:)	lt's importa	nt to get	enough s	sleep.				
ut we	e use inf	initives with	out to afte	er do/doe	es/did in qu	estions a	nd nega	tives (s	ee pag	es 104	and 113).	
oes J	ohn spe	ak Russian? (N	IOT Does	lohn to s	<del>peak ?</del> )	l didn	't under	stand.				
le also	o use in	finitives with tion 6).				n, cou <b>ld</b> ,	m <mark>ay</mark> , mig	ght, will,	, would,	, shall, s	hould,	
can't :	swim. (P	NOT <del>  can't to s</del>	<del>wim.</del> )	Must yo	u go now?	We s	hould fir	nd a ho	tel.			
<ul> <li>I</li> <li>V</li> <li>1</li> <li>I</li> <li>2</li> <li>3</li> <li>S</li> <li>Put</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>I</li> <li>a</li> <li>I</li> <li>a</li> <li></li></ul>	I don't v What tir Do you It's nice Sorry – I t <b>in wo</b> ask ✓ I'm writi Can you Maria w Can you	br nothing (- vantto me does the tr play go be at h can't h rds from the buy go ngto ask lend	stay at s rain olf? ome agai help you. <b>box, wi</b> hear h	n. th or wi help la me som	i <b>thout to.</b> earn len your help. e money? English. cooking?	5   6 ⊑ 7 J. 8   4 V 5   6   7	bo we ane seer hope e send Where dia expect . don't wa must	ren hav ns see d sto d you .	nember ve be til you ag	r buy p red tod gain soo	phone A petrol? ay.	se boots nily soo by bu e mone
ry not told ye he coi	t to forg ou not t mpany o	ative infinitiv et your keys. (i o telephone n did not make to with infin	NOT <del>to</del> ne here. any mone	<del>not forge</del> I'm so y last yea	et) B rry not to st nr. You i	e careful ta <b>y</b> longe must <b>not</b>	r.			ool.		
L	break	go to sleep	have	have	laugh 🗸	make	play	see	talk	tell	wake	]
1   2	lt's nice Be caref	rynot to li ul ry			a he th	adache a Iose glas	iny more ses.	2.				
4 1	Tell the	children	•••••			so n	nuch noi	se.				
5 I	l'd like .				so mi	uch work						
	1.1 1.					-	h		41 - 41			

- 6 Hannah must learn ...... about herself all the time.
- 7 Remember ..... me up tomorrow morning.
- 8 It's important ...... Sheila about Peter and Sandra.
- 9 We'll be sorry ...... you tomorrow.
- 10 Please tell Amir ..... the trumpet after midnight.

# infinitive of purpose She went to Paris to study music.

#### We use an infinitive with to to say why we do something.

I turned on the TV to watch the news. Joanna went to Paris to study music.

#### Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

ask for buy catch drive finish hear learn meet relax turn on 🗸 wait for

- 1 Oliver got up early ...... Mark to the station.
- 2 I was late, so I ran ..... my bus.
- 3 Ann wrote to me ...... Joe's address.
- 4 I sat in the waiting room ..... the doctor.
- 5 Bob's gone to the airport ..... his uncle.
- 6 I went to town on Saturday ......a present for my cousin's birthday.
- 7 I stayed up late last night ..... my English homework.
- 8 Alice went to Beijing ..... Chinese.
- 9 I turned on the radio ..... the latest news.
- 10 I listen to music .....

**2** Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

buy	clean	earn	get	get up	go 🗸	go	make	open	tell	wish	

- Mum gave us some money ......... to the cinema.
- 1 I stood on a chair ..... the top of the fridge,
- 2 Roger's gone to town .....a book.
- 3 We moved closer to the fire ...... warm.
- 4 Use this key ..... the front door.
- 5 I left a note ...... George about the meeting.
- 6 Jane got a part-time job ..... some pocket money.
- 7 I bought some good boots ...... walking in the mountains.
- 8 Alice phoned Sue ..... her a happy birthday.
- 9 I put the kettle on .....a cup of tea.
- 10 I set the alarm clock ..... early.

#### Put the beginnings and ends together, using verbs from the box with to.

buy	cut	dry	oper	n see	wash 🗸	
1 You 2 You 3 You 4 You	u use so u use a u use a u use m u use a u use a	knife torch noney key	B C D		and you thiu	ngs in shops d close doors

# verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.

#### After some verbs we use infinitives, usually with to.

I hope to go to Ireland later this year. Did Jeremy agree to help you with your work?

#### Read the texts, and write down the verbs that are followed by an infinitive with to.

I'm eighteen, and I hope to be an airline pilot. My parents have agreed to pay for lessons if I do well in my exams. My brother says girls shouldn't be pilots, but I refuse to listen to him.

When I started to work here, my boss promised to give me interesting work, travelling to Europe and Asia. I expected to enjoy my job. But all my work is boring, and I don't do any travelling. I've tried to talk to my boss, but she doesn't listen. Now I've decided to look for another job.

I've always been afraid of water. Then one day last year I thought, 'I don't want to live like this'. So I found some special lessons for people like me. I'm learning to swim, and next summer I plan to take water-skiing lessons.



I needed to be at work early this morning. But I forgot to set my alarm clock, and I woke up at 7.30 instead of 6.30. Then everything seemed to go wrong. I had no clean shirts, the bus was late, ...

I began to learn karate four years ago, and I've continued to go to lessons twice a week since then. I love it. I've visited some other karate clubs, but I prefer to learn at my own club, because the teaching is so good.

•	hope to agreed to
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
	•••••
8	
9	
10	
11	

13	

12 .....

en did you <b>begin to learn / begin learning</b> karate? I <mark>rted to have / started having</mark> these headaches ab President continued to speak / continued speakin I <mark>fer to live / prefer living</mark> in the country – the city is	ng for an hour and a half.
For -ing forms after try and forget, see page 308.	
Love Everyone feels it, has felt it, or expects to feel it. (Anthony Trollope, 1883)	War will stop when men refuse to fight. (Pacifist slogan, 1936)

He preferred to be good rather than to seem good.

(Sallust, of Cato, 54 B.C.)

(Anthony Newley, 1961)

(Anita Loos, 1925)

Stop the world, I want to get off!

#### **2** Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes and *to*.



1–4: agree decide expect ✓ need plan ✓ try

- ALICE: 'The exam seemed easy. I was surprised when I got a low mark.' Alice ...expected to pass the exam; she was surprised when she got a low mark.

- 2 JANE: 'Could you possibly lend me £5?' ANDY: 'Sure'
- Andy has ..... lend £5 to Jane.
- 4 Lizzie was expecting a call from Sarah. Sarah rang the number, but it was engaged. Sarah ...... phone Lizzie, but the number was engaged.

5-10: forget learn promise refuse start want

- 5 Oliver lives in the US, but he took all his driving lessons in France.
  Oliver ...... drive in France.
  6 PATRICK: 'I will write to you every day, Barbara.'
- Patrick has ...... write to Barbara every day. 7 BOB: 'I was going to post a birthday card to my mother, but I didn't remember.'
- Bob ..... post his mother's birthday card.
- 8 PHILIP: 'Please, please lend me your car.' AGNES: 'No, no, no and no.'

Agnes has ..... lend her car to Philip.

- 10 Susan said her first word when she was seven months old. Susan ...... talk when she was seven months old.

11-15: begin continue hope prefer seem

- 11 Mark plays the piano and the trumpet. The trumpet is his favourite. Mark can play the piano, but he ...... play the trumpet.
- 12 Ling usually stops work at 5.00, but yesterday she didn't stop until 7.00. Ling ...... work until 7.00 yesterday.
- 13 John swims every day; he's going to try for the national team next year.

John ..... be in the national swimming team next year.

- 14 'I'm not sure, but I think Rebecca was worried yesterday evening.'
   Rebecca ...... be worried yesterday evening.
- For infinitives in indirect speech (after tell, ask etc), see pages 125 and 269.

For sentences like I don't want to, see page 293.

### verb + object + infinitive He wants me to cook.

We	of	ten say that we <b>want somebody to do</b> something.
Му	bo	pyfriend <b>wants me to do</b> all the cooking. (NOT <del>wants that I do all the cooking:</del> )
We	са	in use <b>would like</b> in the same way.
ľđ	lik	e you to listen to this song. (NOT <del>I'd like that you listen</del> )
6		ake sentences with <i>want</i> or <i>would like</i> .
		MRS LEWIS: Ann, can you post my letters, please? (want) Mrs Lewis wants Ann to post her letters.
	1	SARAH: John, could you cook tonight? ( <i>would like</i> )
	2	POLICEMAN: Please move your car, sir. (want)
		the man
	3	MOTHER: Helen, please wash your face. ( <i>want</i> )
		Helen's mother her
	4	BILL: Andy, can you help me? ( <i>would like</i> )
	5	ROGER: Karen, could you lend me some money? (would like)
		lend him
	6	JESSIE: Be quiet for a minute, Peter. ( <i>want</i> )
	7	DAVID: Alice, can you have dinner with me? ( <i>would like</i> )
	8	MIKE: The government should put more money into schools. (would like)
	-	
	9	LUCY: Bill, stop playing that terrible music. ( <i>want</i> )
	-	
1	0	MARY: Gordon, could you make the bed for once? ( <i>would like</i> )
	0	MART. GOTGOT, COULD YOU Make the bed for once: (would like)

2 Different people want Alice to do different things. Complete the sentences.

buy a better guitar buy him do something  $\checkmark$  go to America with him go to Russia with her lend her spend every weekend stop study take him for work

Everybody wants her to do something

1 Her boss ...... harder.

- 2 Her little brother ...... a bicycle.
- 3 Her dog ...... a walk.
- 4 Her boyfriend .....
- 5 Her friend Martha ...... a blue dress.
- 6 Her guitar teacher .....
- 7 Her mother ..... at home.
- 8 Her sister .....
- 9 The people downstairs ...... playing loud music at night.
- 10 Her father ..... economics.

We can use some other verbs like this. For example: *ask, expect, help, need, tell.* I *asked Peter to go* to America with me. The doctor **told me to take** a holiday. We don't **expect you to work** at weekends. I **need you to translate** this letter.

8	Change the sentences.
	They thought that we would be late. (expect) They expected us to be late.
1	I didn't say to Alan 'Go home.' ( <i>tell</i> )
2	I said to Fred 'Please be quiet.' (ask)
3	
_	I carried the books with Joe. ( <i>help</i> ) I helped
5	The policewoman said to me 'Show me your driving licence.' ( <i>tell</i> )
-	
6	Ann finished the work with me. ( <i>help</i> ) Ann
7	I said to the shop assistant 'Can you help me?' ( <i>ask</i> )
8	
9	
10	
10	
<b>(</b> ) C	Dan's family wanted different things from him. Write sentences.
	His mother 'Be happy' His mother wanted him to be happy.
	His grandfather: 'Don't be a politician'. His gandfather didn't want him to be a politician.
1	His father: 'Get rich'
2	His sister Isabel: 'Be good at sport'.
-	
3	His brother Andy: 'Go to university'.
2	
4	His sister Nicole: 'Don't got to university'.
5	His brother Henry: 'Be a racing driver'.
5	
6	His grandmother: 'Be a doctor'.
0	
7	
7	
8	His maths teacher: 'Study maths'.
0	
9	His literature teacher: 'Study literature.'
10	His music teacher: 'Don't study music. Please.'
5 V	Vhat do/did people want you to do/be in life?
	Mu parents want needs he a doctor
	Mu teacher wanted me to study en almeering
	My course wanted me to stray engineer my
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

# it with infinitive subjects It's nice to be here with you.

More	on't often begin sentences with infinitive subjects (like <i>To be here with you is nice</i> ). often, we begin with <i>it</i> and put the infinitive later. tructure <i>It is/was</i> etc + adjective + infinitive (with to) is very common.
lt's ni	ce to be here with you. It was good to see you again. It's important to remember people's names.
<b>C</b>	To take your passport is necessary. It's necessary to take your passport. To phone John was not necessary.
2	To understand that woman is impossible.
3	To stay in bed late on Sundays is nice.
4	To say 'No' is sometimes difficult.
5	To make our children happy was easy.
6	To tell the truth is sometimes dangerous.
7	To eat out in restaurants is expensive.
8	To learn a foreign language perfectly is almost impossible.
9	To travel is nice.
10	To visit my parents was good.
2 C	omplete these sentences about a summer holiday. Use <i>It was</i> and words from the box.

a bit hard to understand dangerous to swim expensive to eat impossible to be interesting to see nice to have really good to get away  $\checkmark$  very easy to make

It was really good to get away from home and work.

1 ..... sunshine every day.

2 ..... how other people live.

3 Sometimes ..... the language if people

4 ..... friends.

5 ..... in restaurants, but the food was wonderful.

6 The sea was beautiful, but .....

7 There were so many things to do that..... bored.

talked fast.

#### What do you think? Make sentences beginning *It's*, using words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.



always	often	sometimes	never	right	wrong	good
bad	necessary	stupid	dangerous			

	take exercise
	tell the truth
2	relax
	save money
4	give money to beggars
5	drive fast
6	fight
7	be polite to older people
8	dress well
9	smoke
10	work very hard

#### **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: learning and using a language: what is important?**

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then make sentences with *It's important to ..., It's not necessary to ...* or *It's important not to ...*. Different answers are possible: for ours, see the answer key.

	5	compreh results	ension rules	correctne: translate	ss immediate vocabulary	mistake	practise	pronunciation
LEARNI								
exp	ect imm	nediate re	sults	It's import	ant not to expec	t immedia	ate results	
1 prac	ctise gra	immar						
2 tran	slate ev	erything		•••••				
4 read	l things	that inter	est you					
PRONU	NCIATIO	N						
5 have	e perfec	t pronune	ciation					
GRAMM	ΑΔΤΙΓΔΙ	CORRECT						
	EHENSIC							
9 prac	tise list:	ening to E	nglish	••••••		•••••	••••••	
VOCAB	ULARY							
0 kno	w 3,000	-5,000 wo	ords					
1 know	w 50,00	0 words						
2 have	e a good	d English-	English d	dictionary .				
3 have	e a good	d bilingua	l diction	ary				

### adjective + infinitive glad to find you at home



We can use **infinitives** (with to) after **adjectives** to say **why we feel** afraid, glad, happy, pleased, sad, surprised, unhappy etc.

Mum will be glad to find you at home. I'm pleased to meet you.

#### Put in suitable adjectives or infinitives.

- 1 Hello. I'm very glad ..... you. (meet, tell, like)
- 2 I was sorry not ..... Barbara at the party. (forget, talk, see)
- 3 I'm ...... to say that I've got bad news for you. (glad, sorry, surprised)
- 4 I'm ..... to wake her up she always shouts at me when I do. (excited, pleased, afraid)
- 5 We were pleased ...... a free weekend at last. (work, have, know)
- 6 When I got home, I was surprised ...... a policeman in the kitchen. (get, leave, find)
- 7 I was not ..... to hear that I had failed my exam. (surprised, sorry, sad)
- 8 Anna was not ...... to find that the cat had brought a mouse in. (sad, pleased, unhappy)
- 9 I was sorry ...... home and go to America. I knew I would miss my family. (get, stay, leave)
- 10 We're always ..... to go on holiday. (surprised, sad, happy)

We can use **infinitives** (with to) after **adjectives** to say **what we think** of things that people do. We do this with adjectives like *clever*, *crazy*, *right*, *silly*, *stupid* and *wrong*.

You're **crazy to think** you can get there in an hour. You were **clever to bring** an umbrella.

#### **2** Write sentences with infinitives.

	Angela's wrong to carry all her money in one bag.
	Annie got to the airport early. She was clever. Annie was clever to get to the airport early.
1	Eleanor listens to Mark. She's silly.
2	Elizabeth took the train without a ticket. She was wrong.
3	l sat on my glasses. I was stupid.
4	I washed a white shirt with a red one. I was wrong.
5	You believe Luke. You're silly.
6	You eat a good breakfast. You're right.
7	You lent money to Chris. You were crazy.
8	I thought the new Prime Minister was a good man. I was stupid.
9	Rebecca told Peter she loved him. She was wrong.
10	l stayed in bed until lunchtime. I was right.
	***************************************

### adjectives with enough/too + infinitive too tired to sing

After adjective + enough, we can use an infinitive (with to). Note the word order - see page 176. Julie's old enough to drive now. (NOT Julie's enough old ...) John isn't strong enough to carry that.

Make sentences with is/isn't old enough to ....

Alice is 13. Mark is 16. Cathy is 17. John is 18. Liz is 21.

- 3 Mark ...... school. 4 Cathy ...... home.
- 5 Cathy ..... vote.
- 6 John ..... his name.
- 7 Liz ..... a bus.

IN BRITAIN - AT WHAT AGE CAN YOU?						
When you are	you can					
13	work part-time					
16	leave home					
17	leave school					
18	drive a car					
18	vote					
18	change your name					
21	drive a bus					

#### Rewrite these sentences using ... enough ... to ....

1	Laurie is not very tall, so he can't play basketball. He's
2	Annie's only 14, so she can't vote.
	I'm not very strong. I can't open this bottle.
	My French is good. I can read a newspaper.
	Peter isn't very old. He can't go out by himself.
	Rob is intelligent. He will do well at university.

### ter too + adjective, we can use an infinitive (with to).

1 too tired to sing. Alice was very afraid – too afraid to speak.

#### Change two sentences into one. Use too ... to ....

	I'm very sleepy. I can't drive. I'm too sleepy to drive.
1	Helen is very ill. She can't work.
	My grandfather is very old. He can't travel.
3	I'm very bored. I can't listen any longer.
	Cara's very hot. She can't play tennis.
	I'm very hungry. I can't work.
	I'm very tired. I can't drive.
	I was very afraid. I couldn't move.
	Molly was very ill last week. She couldn't go to school.
	Our dog's very fat. It can't run.
10	My mother's very deaf. She doesn't understand what people say.

Middle age: the age when you are too old to play tennis and too young to play golf.

### noun/pronoun + infinitive some letters to write

#### We can often use infinitives with to after nouns.

I've got some letters to write. Sorry - I haven't got any money to lend you.

#### Complete the sentences with the expressions from the box.

dress to wear film to watch friend to see homework to do letters to post shopping to do stories to tell 🗸

- My uncle always has very interesting ...stories to tell.......... about his year in Nepal.
- 1 Please can I go out tonight, Dad? I've got no .....
- 2 I'm going to the post office have you got any .....
- 3 I think I'll stay at home tonight. I'm a bit tired, and there's a good ...... on TV.
- 4 Have you got a ..... to the party, or will you have to buy one?
- 5 If you've got any ......, we can go to the supermarket later.
- 6 I'll be home a bit late tonight I've got a ...... after work.

We can use infinitives with to after words like somebody, anything and nowhere (see page 172).Would you like something to drink?I haven't got anything to read; can I borrow this book?There's nothing to eat in the fridge.Those poor people have nowhere to live.

#### Complete the sentences with *somebody* etc and the verbs *in italics*.

- POLICEMAN: Move on, please. There's (see) ... nothing to see.
- 1 I can't go to the party: I don't have (*wear*) .....
- 2 Could I possibly use this table? I need (work) .....
- 3 When I arrived, there was (do) ..... all the work was finished.
- 4 Everyone in our class was ill today, so our teacher had (teach) .....
- 5 I'll be with you in a few minutes I have (finish) .....
- 6 All my friends are out of town tonight, and I've got (go) .....
- 7 Everybody needs (*love*) .....
- 8 My brother couldn't find (stay) ..... in Bristol.
- 9 I'm looking for (*help*) ..... me with the disco on Saturday.
- 10 Your arms are full give me (carry) .....

#### NOTHING TO EAT

She had nothing to eat. They made a film about her because she had nothing to eat.

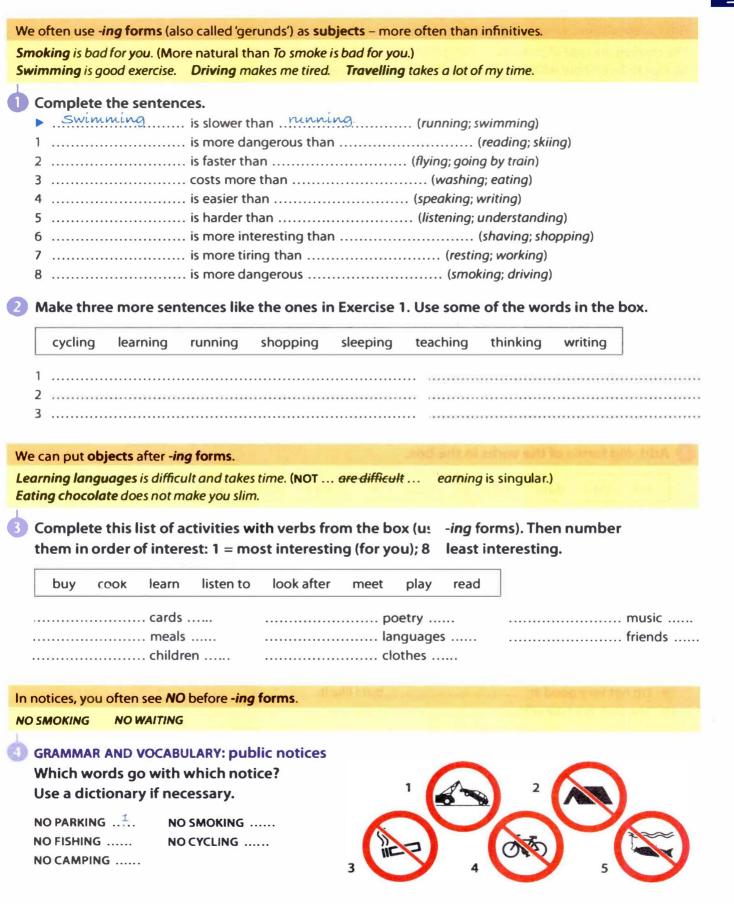
Her husband was killed in the war. They wrote a book about how he was killed in the war.

Her mother and brother were executed by the revolutionaries. There was an opera about it. Both her children died (there was no hospital). You can see the photographs at an exhibition in London.

Then somebody wrote a poem.

Still she had nothing to eat.

# -ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you.



### مجعزبان ايرانيان

# preposition + ...ing Thank you for coming.

#### After prepositions, we use -ing forms of verbs.

The children are tired **of going** to the same place every summer. (NOT ... are tired of to go to ...) She spoke for an hour **without using** notes. (NOT ... without to use ...) Thank you **for coming**. I worry **about spending** too much money. We're thinking **of going** to Jamaica for Christmas.

→ For spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.

#### Put the beginnings and ends together.

0 1 2 3 4	Please don't leave without I don't like the idea of Are you interested in	A B C D E	being late for his train watering my garden while I'm on holiday telling me that you're going going to Vienna with us next weekend? working all my life
5	I never get tired of	1	being able to fly
6	Thank you very much for		selling his house
7	My brother's thinking of		drinking lots of coffee
8	I can't work without		reading
9	Sometimes I dream of		babysitting

#### 2 Add -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

	ask	be 🗸	close	get	go	hear	ski	smoke	wash	watch	work
	Alice dreams ofbeing										
1	I'm tired of the same old stories; doesn't John realise he's boring us?										
2	Which British Prime Minister was famous for big cigars?										
3	I'm thinking of to Greece next summer – have you ever been there?										
4	Eric's interested in football on television, but not in playing it.										
5	Don't worry about the dishes – I'll wash them in the morning.										
6	She ran out without the door.										
7	They didn't pay me much for in their garden.										
8	Jessica and Rob are talking about married.										
9	I'm not very good atbut I like it.										
10	She t	ook my	bike wit	hout							

People talking without speaking, People hearing without listening, ... 'Fools,' said I, 'You do not know

Silence like a cancer grows.'

(from 'Sound of Silence', song by Paul Simon)

#### **3** Make sentences with very / quite / not very good at ...ing or bad at ...ing.

	RUN	SWIM	CYCLE	DRAW	SING	KEY
JANE	*	•		0	☆	* VERY GOOD
BOB			0	*	☆	🛱 QUITE GOOD
SUE	*	*		0		O NOT VERY GOOD
MARK	*	☆	*		0	BAD
(Bob / sw (Jane / ru (Mark / s (Jane / d (Sue / sin	n, cycle) n, cycle) aw, run) wim, run) vim, sing) un, cycle) ing, draw) g, swim)	sue is very	good at ru	inning, an	about yourse	d at cycling.
n my pocke	et money <b>by</b> w	working in a	say how peop petrol station or without	n. She pas		s without studying.
Make sent When I lo I Left t Ali got a	et money by a tences with eft the house the house the wonderful je	working in a bying o e this mornir his mornir ob. He was ir	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla	n. She par ing. ose the wind closing the lace at the rig	ssed her exams lows. e windows. ght time.	
Make sent When I lo I left t Ali got a	et money by a tences with eft the house the house the wonderful je	working in a bying o e this mornir his mornir ob. He was ir ful job by	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in th	n. She par ing. ose the wind closing the lace at the rig	ssed her exams ows. e.windows.	
Make sent When I left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful je of a wonder yed awake. Si	working in a bying o e this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee.	n. She par ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla	ssed her exams lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	
Make sent When I loger Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful ju of a wonder ved awake. Si nk three glas	working in a bying o e this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee.	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla	ssed her exams lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	3ht tíme.
Make sent When I left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles v	et money by a tences with eft the house the house the wonderful jo t a wonder ved awake. Sl nk three glas	working in a bying o this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots sses of water. He turned th	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee.  He didn't state ne TV on.	n. She pas	ssed her exams lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	zht tíme.
n my pocke Make sent When I le I Left t Ali got a Ali got a Ali go Ellie stay Paul dran Charles w	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful jo t a wonder ved awake. Sl nk three glas woke us up. I find out the	working in a bying of this morning of this morning of the turned the meaning of	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee.  He didn't sto ne TV on. a word. Use a	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the lace at the rig he right pla op.	ssed her exams lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	9.ht tíme.
n my pocke Make sent When I le I Left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles w You can Mike pai	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful jo the house the find out the d for his new	working in a bying of this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots sees of water. He turned th meaning of v house. He o	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee. . He didn't state ne TV on. a word. Use a didn't borrow	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla op. a dictionary.	ssed her exams	3ht tíme.
n my pocke <b>Take sent</b> When I le I Left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles w You can s Mike pai	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful jo t a wonder yed awake. Sl nk three glas woke us up. I find out the d for his new	working in a bying of this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots sees of water. He turned th meaning of whouse. He o	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee. . He didn't state ne TV on. a word. Use a didn't borrow	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla op. a dictionary. v any money.	ssed her exams lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	9.ht tíme.
n my pocke Make sent When I le I Left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles w You can s Mike pai Helen los	et money by a tences with eft the house the house the wonderful ju- tot a wowder ved awake. Sl nk three glas woke us up. I find out the d for his new st her driving	working in a bying of this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots sees of water. He turned the meaning of v house. He of g licence. She	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee. . He didn't sta ne TV on. a word. Use a didn't borrow	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla op. a dictionary. v any money.	ssed her exams	3ht tíme.
Make sent Make sent When I left t Ali got a Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles v You can Mike pai Helen los	et money by a tences with eft the house the house the wonderful ju- tot a wonder ved awake. Sl nk three glas woke us up. I find out the d for his new st her driving all his homew	working in a bying of this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots sses of water. He turned th meaning of v house. He of g licence. Sho work. He did	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng without n the right pla being in the s of coffee. . He didn't sto ne TV on. a word. Use a didn't borrow e drove too fa	n. She pas . ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla op. a dictionary. v any money. ast, too ofter by help.	ssed her exams	3ht tíme.
Make sent When I lo I Left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles v You can Mike pai Helen los Carl did a Teresa co	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful jo the house the wonderful jo the house the worke a wonder red awake. Sl nk three glas woke us up. I find out the d for his new st her driving all his homew	working in a bying of this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots ses of water. He turned th meaning of v house. He of g licence. Sho work. He did	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng, I didn't clo y without n the right pla being in the s of coffee. . He didn't sto ne TV on. a word. Use a didn't borrow e drove too fa ln't ask for any esn't use any	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla op. a dictionary. v any money. fast, too ofter by help. salt.	ssed her exams	3ht tíme.
n my pocke Make sent When I le I Left t Ali got a Ali got Ellie stay Paul dran Charles v You can Mike pai Helen los Carl did a	et money by i tences with eft the house the house the wonderful jo the house the wonderful jo the house the worke a wonder red awake. Sl nk three glas woke us up. I find out the d for his new st her driving all his homew	working in a bying of this mornin his mornin ob. He was in ful job by he drank lots ses of water. He turned th meaning of v house. He of g licence. Sho work. He did	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clo ng, I didn't clo y without n the right pla being in the s of coffee. . He didn't sto ne TV on. a word. Use a didn't borrow e drove too fa ln't ask for any esn't use any	n. She pas ing. ose the wind closing the closing the lace at the rig he right pla op. a dictionary. v any money. fast, too ofter by help. salt.	ssed her exams	9ht tíme.

I look forward to hearing from you. (NOT Hook forward to hear from you.)



### verb + ...ing I can't help feeling unhappy.

#### After some verbs we use -ing forms.

Some of these verbs are: keep (on) (= 'continue', 'not stop'), finish, stop, give up (= 'stop', for habits), go, can't help (= 'can't stop myself'), spend (time), mind, suggest, practise, enjoy. I can't help feeling unhappy. Do you mind sharing a room? Alex has gone swimming.

Complete the sentences with -ing forms. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

- 1 Has Julia finished ..... her photos? (take)
- 2 Robert's given up ..... sweets. (eat)
- 3 'Where's Helen?' 'She's gone .....' (shop)
- 4 | have to practise ...... so | can pass my test. (drive)
- 5 Alec suggested ...... at the supermarket. (stop)
- 6 On Sunday I spent three hours ..... in the garden. (work)

3

Write sentences using the expressions in the box with -ing forms.

He can't help She enjoys / They've just finished He's given up They're going All that week, it kept She's practising She's suggesting 🗸 🛛 It's just stopped

WHERE SHALL

WE GO!

HOW ABOU ROME

She's suggesting

going to Rome.

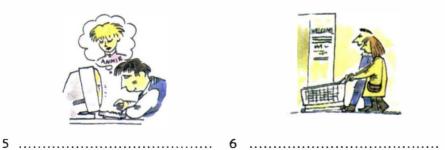
LOOK - IT'S NOT



She enjoys skiing



2 .....



.....

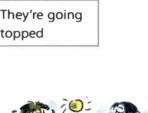


..... 



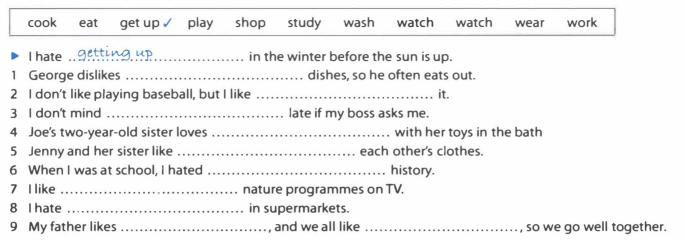
1

7 ..... .....





We use -ing forms after love, like, (not) mind (= '(not) dislike'), dislike, hate.	
But in <i>-ing</i> forms of the verbs in the box.	



Write about ten things you love/hate etc doing. Use expressions from the box or write about other things.

cooking dinner for friends dancing until 1 a.m. eating out with friends getting up early listening to loud music lying on a sunny beach reading novels swimming in the ocean travelling to new places watching old films walking in the mountains walking in the rain I love walking in the mountains. 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 5 ..... 6 ..... 7 ..... 8 ..... 9 ..... 10 .....

After love, like and hate we can also use infinitives with to with the same meaning. I love to sing. = I love singing. Rachel likes to go out / going out with friends. Mum hates to cook / cooking on an electric cooker. (BUT NOT I dislike to listen to opera: AND NOT Do you mind to wait for a few minutes?)

### infinitives and -ing forms: more practice

#### 1 Adjective or noun + infinitive. Complete the sentences with infinitives.

	(I saw Daniel.) I was happy to see Daniel.
	(I need to do some shopping.) I've got some shopping to do.
1	(I found a cat in my bed.) I was surprised
2	(She left her job.) She was wrong
3	(I can't buy a car.) I've got no money
	(I gave Peter money.) I was crazy
	(We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad
6	(I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry
7	(I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too
8	(Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some
9	(Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time
	(I need a drink.) I need something

### 2 Infinitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives (with *to*) from the box.

catch cut impress keep learn	look for make 🗸 make pay stop watch
0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers	A to make her feel better.
1 Alicia went to America	B coffee
2 I switched the TV on	C my head warm
3 I took two aspirins	D English
4 Carolyn went to the kitchen	E the news
5 I'm wearing a hat	F my headache
6 I have to work in the evenings	G food
7 lused a small knife	H for my new car
8 Jack bought some new clothes	I the potatoes into pieces
9 We all ran as fast as we could	J his girlfriend
10 The cat got up on the table	K the train

### 3 *-ing* form subjects. Put these activities in order of interest (for you) and make sentences with *more interesting*.

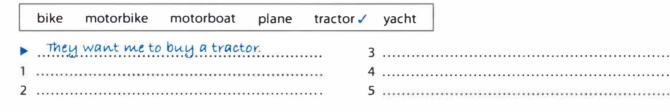
driving talking to			playing ches birds watch	studying English ling	studying history
Drivin than liste		musíc		 . Watching birds	s is more interestin
•••••			••••••	 ••••••	
	••••••		••••••	 ••••••	••••••
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			 	

#### **4** Grammar in a text. Complete the text with expressions from the boxes.

1-4: glad to leave

5–7: happy to be pleased to see surprised to find

**5** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: vehicles. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the advertisements and say what the advertisers want you to buy.







Heathield H300 Hybrid



• 4130 Molloy frame • 24-speed Hitalo gears

# SORENSEN

Sorensen... Setting a new standard in design and performance.



1000 hours AF/E. CofA to

November, New leather seats

CELGA 113A

ALPHA. 25550

6 Internet exercise. Find three advertisements on the internet. Write some words from each advertisement, and say what the advertisers want you to do or buy.

------

### infinitives and -ing forms: revision test

0	0			
		it in the correct form of the verb.		
		I promise to Phone you every day. (phone)		The boss refused to me. (talk)
		She suggestedseen a doctor. (see)	7	I thought of you a birthday card,
	1	We agreed together. (work)		but I forgot. (send)
		I didn't expect John there. (see)		They still haven't finished (talk)
		I'm really going to stop (smoke)		Bill doesn't want with us. (come)
	4	I can't keep – I'm too tired. (drive)	10	Your English is good, but you must practise
	5	Iris has decided a car. (buy)		(speak)
6	<b>C</b> -			
2		prrect the mistakes or write 'Correct'.	•	
		I want seeing you. to see		I'm glad to see you.
		Can I help you?Correct.		Learning languages is difficult.
		It's necessary to get a visa.		I don't want that you pay for me.
	2	I hope to not have problems at university.		It's dangerous to smoke.
		**************		We need getting tickets.
	3	I went to Mexico for learning Spanish.		You can't live without to eat.
		************	15	l often think about change my job.
	4	His parents wanted him to be a doctor.		
				I was wrong to say that to her.
	5	You can get there faster by take the train.	17	l would like see you again.
			18	Is it necessary to buy a ticket now?
	6	I stopped to smoke last year.		******
	7	She keeps telephoning me.	19	Try to not forget your keys.
	8	We decided going by bus.	20	You must pay now.
-		ta tak		
3		rite sentences with want.	-c D	aul to tell him everything.
				-
	1	ANNA ->> BETH: look after / children		
	2	JOE -> JACK: lend / money		
	3	PETER'S MOTHER		
	4	SAM —> JOE: go shopping	•••••	
	W	rite sentences with would like.		
		ALICE -> OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would li	ke c	olivia to make coffee.
	5	TOM —> SARAH: pass / newspaper		
	6	MIKE'S PARENTS -> MIKE: study / medicine		
	7	THE BOSS> EMMA: answer / phone		
	W	rite sentences with <i>not want</i> .		*
		CAROL -> ROBERT: drive fast Carol doesn't wa	Int	Robert to drive fast.
	0	MARY $\rightarrow$ JACK: look / her / like that		
	0			
	0	HARRY -> JIM: say / anything / police		
	7	manni - Jim. say / aliyuliliy / DUILe		
1				

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *I am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### **SECTION 10** special structures with verbs

#### grammar summary

Several different structures are practised in this section:

- structures with get
   It's getting late.
   I got a letter.
   Get out!
- verbs followed by prepositions Look at this.
- phrasal verbs
   Hurry up we're late.
- verbs with two objects Can you lend me some money?

- have something done
   I have my hair cut every week.
- let's Let's go and see a film tonight.
- imperatives Come in and have some coffee.





'Don't embarrass me again, spell-checker.'

### structures with get get up; get your coat; it's getting cold

Get has different meaning Get + direct object: 'receive	
Get your coat – it's time to g	o. She got a letter from her mother.
Get + adjective: 'become'	
It's getting cold. The pro	oblem is getting worse.
Get + adverb particle / pre	position: 'move, change position'
What time do you usually ge I couldn't get on the bus bec	e <mark>t up</mark> ?It takes me an hour to get to work. ause it was full.
Complete the senten My English is	nces using expressions with get.
1 I need to	. some out of the bank.
2 Antonia	her car and drove away.
3 1 a long	from Arthur this morning.

- 4 What are you doing in my room? .....!
- 5 If you go out in the rain without a coat, you'll .....
- 6 If you don't put on a sweater, you'll .....
- 7 We have to ..... the bus at the next stop.
- 8 If I don't have breakfast, I ..... really ..... about eleven o'clock.
- 9 I'm ...... ing ...... , I think I'll go to bed.
- 10 It ..... early in winter.

Get is often used with a past participle. Common expressions: get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb.

Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= ... 'was arrested' ... ) We never get invited anywhere.

#### Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles).

 break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress

 ▶ When he was 12 he ...got sent

1 I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it .....

2 Anna and Brian have only been married for a year, but they're .....

- 3 His glasses ...... when he fell off his bike.
- 4 I'm going to ..... and go to bed.
- 5 Every time he goes walking in the country he .....
- 6 If you leave your bag there, it'll .....
- 7 That child takes hours to ..... in the morning.
- 8 'Shall we go swimming?' 'OK. I'll just go and ......'
- 9 Do you think we'll ..... to Roger's party?
- 10 Sarah and Oliver ...... in a beautiful little church in the country.

### verbs with prepositions Wait for me.

With some verbs, we put a preposition (for, to, at etc) before an object.

#### Wait for me! (NOT Wait me!) I listen to a lot of music. (NOT Histen a lot of music.) Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in verbs from the box. 0-4: ask believe 🗸 belong laugh wait 5-9: happened think listen look talks 0 Do you believe A at my pronunciation. ..... 1 I know my English is bad, but please don't ..... B for it and I'll give it to you. ..... 2 If you're late, I'll ..... C for you..... D in life after death? .... 3 If you want anything, just ..... 4 Does this coat ..... E to you? ..... 5 I've got something important to say: please ..... F about himself. ..... 6 Their garden is wonderful. G about the future..... H at those roses! ..... 7 Megan lives from day to day. She doesn't .....

#### 2 Look again at Exercise 1, and write the preposition after each verb.

8 He's very boring: he always .....

9 Paula's an hour late. What's .....

asktor	believe	belong	happen	laugh
listen	look	talk	think	wait

You arrive at a place, or in a very big place (NOT to).				
The train <b>arrives at</b> Oxford Station at 17.15. When did you <b>arrive in</b> Britain?				
You get <b>into/out of a</b> car; you <b>get on/off</b> a bus, train, plane or ship.				
I got out of the taxi at Piccadilly Circus. We got off the bus at Trafalgar Square.				
Look after = 'watch and take care of'; look for = 'try to find'.				
Could you look after the children this evening? I'm looking for my glasses.				
You <b>pay</b> a person or a bill; you <b>pay for</b> something that you buy.				
'Have you paid Joe?' 'Yes, I paid his bill last week.' Can you pay for the drinks?				

#### 3) Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

- 1 Don't wait ..... me if I'm late.
- 2 What time did you arrive ..... the airport?
- 3 Don't listen ..... him he's being stupid.
- 4 I'm looking ...... John's house while he's away.
- 5 We're looking ..... a bigger house.
- 6 Did you ask ..... coffee?
- 7 We need to talk ..... money.
- 8 'Whose is that car?' 'It belongs ...... Carola.'
- 9 I forgot to pay ..... the tickets.
- 10 I don't want to think ..... the future.
- 11 She got ..... her car and drove away.
- 12 I couldn't get ..... the bus because it was full.

For more about prepositions, see pages 273-286.

- 13 'What's happened ...... your hand?' 'I cut it on some glass.'
- 14 The children still believe ...... Father Christmas.

I to her? .....

to me. .....

1

- 15 When I got ..... the train I realised I'd forgotten my ticket.
- 16 Can you pay ..... the taxi driver?
- 17 When did you arrive ...... Ireland?
- 18 She got ..... the car and went into her house.
- 19 Why are you looking ..... me?
- 20 We had to get ..... the plane because there was a bomb.

Some verbs have **two parts**. The second part is a small **adverb** (*back, away, out* etc). These verbs are called 'phrasal verbs'. The small adverbs are not the same as prepositions (but some of them look the same).

#### SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS

be in/out/away/back get out get up go away go/come back go on (= 'continue') go in/out hurry up lie down look out look round sit down stand up turn round wake up

'Can I speak to Ann?' 'She's not in.' Come back soon. This headache won't go away. Look out! Come in and sit down. It's time to get up.

#### Complete the sentences.

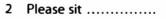
- The door opened and I went ........
- Come.... back and see us soon.
- 1 I usually ...... up at seven o'clock in the morning.
- 2 Shall we ..... out this evening?
- 3 I heard a noise behind me and turned .....
- 4 I can't go ..... Can we stop for a minute?
- 5 I'm going home for a bit. I'll be ..... after lunch.
- 6 Hurry ..... We're late.
- 7 I'm not feeling well. I'm going to ..... down for an hour.
- 8 'I love you.' '..... away!'

#### Look at the pictures and complete the captions.



1 Wake .....!







3 Come .....!

#### Some phrasal verbs can have objects.

#### SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS THAT CAN HAVE OBJECTS

bring back fill in (a form) fill up give back give up (= 'stop doing') let in look up (something in a dictionary etc) pick up put down put on (clothes) switch/turn on/off (lights, electrical appliances) take away take off (clothes) throw away turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) wash up (cups, plates etc)
Please fill in this form and post it. I'm trying to give up smoking. I put on my best clothes for the interview. Shall I switch on the lights? Could you turn down the radio? Don't throw away the newspaper.
In phrasal verbs, <i>up</i> often means ' <b>completely</b> '.
I'll cut up the wood. Let's clean up the house. Fill up your glass. I tore up her letter.

### B Here are some sentences from books and conversations. Complete the phrasal verbs with words from the boxes.

back down down off on on up

1 It was a good feeling to put ...... dry clothes and eat a large cooked breakfast.

2 Switch ..... the kettle and sit on that chair while I make tea.

- 3 Put ..... your paper and listen to me.
- 4 Switch ..... the lights when you are not using them.
- 5 It's hot in here. Do you mind if I turn ..... the heater a bit?
- 6 If you find a café, could you bring ...... a couple of sandwiches?
- 7 I think I'll wash ..... the plates and cups now.

break fill give let look pick take

- 8 If you want to know what grammar is, ..... up the word in the dictionary.
- 9 You can't ..... up a newspaper these days without reading about terrible things.
- 10 She got ill and had to ..... up her job.
- 11 He ..... in six goals in four games.
- 12 Why did you have to ..... in the form?
- 13 I ..... off my shoes whenever I can.
- 14 ..... up the firewood into little pieces, can you?

The small adverb can usually go before or after the object.

Switch on the kettle. OR Switch the kettle on. He let in six goals. OR He let six goals in.

When the object is a pronoun (him, her, it etc), the small adverb must go after it.

Switch it on. (NOT Switch on it.) He let them in. Take it away.

#### Change the sentences twice.

- She put on her coat. She put her coat on. She put it on
- I washed up the plates. ! washed the plates up. ! washed them up.
   1 Could you turn down the TV?
- 2 You can throw away the potatoes.
- 3 Why don't you take off your glasses?
- 4 Please put down that knife.
- 5 Shall I fill up your glass?
- 6 I'll switch on the heating.





## Level 2

### verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters.

SOME VERBS THAT CAN HAVE TWO OBJECTS get offer brina buy cook fetch find give lend make pass send show teach take tell write pay promise read Some verbs can have two objects. Two different structures are possible: 1 VERB + PERSON + THING 2 VERB + THING + TO/FOR + PERSON I gave Peter lunch yesterday. I gave lunch to Peter yesterday. Could you take the boss these letters? Could you take these letters to the boss? I've made everybody tea. I've made tea for everybody. Most often, we use verb + person + thing, especially with personal pronouns (me, you etc). Can I show you my photos? I wrote her a long letter, but she never answered. I've bought you a present. I'm going to put John to bed and tell him a story. Change the structure. Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Alison. I'll make some tea for you. I'll make you some tea. 1 | lent Joe my bicycle vesterday. 2 I often read stories to Lucy. 3 Carol teaches small children maths. 4 Ruth showed the photo to the others. ..... 5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers. ..... 6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? ..... 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. ..... 10 I want to get a good watch for Peter. ..... Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates —> SALLY: a book --> FRED: flowers --> ANNIE: a picture --> LUKE: a sweater --> MARY: a camera --> JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 3 ..... 1 Sally ..... 4 2 ..... 5 ..... Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend 🗸 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and ..... me a four-year-old child. (Groucho Marx: 'Duck Soup') 2 ..... me liberty or ..... me death. (Patrick Henry) 3 Money can't ..... you love. (Traditional) We don't use describe, explain, say, suggest or borrow in the verb + person + thing structure. (NOT Explain me this: NOT She said me 'hello'. NOT Can + borrow you a stamp?)

If you have something done, you don't do it yourself; somebody does it for you. I have my hair cut every week. I have my car serviced at the garage every 10,000 km.



Fred cuts his hair himself.



Eric has his hair cut at Franco's.

Ann is very practical: she likes doing things herself. Bill is not so practical: he has things done by other people. Complete the sentences.





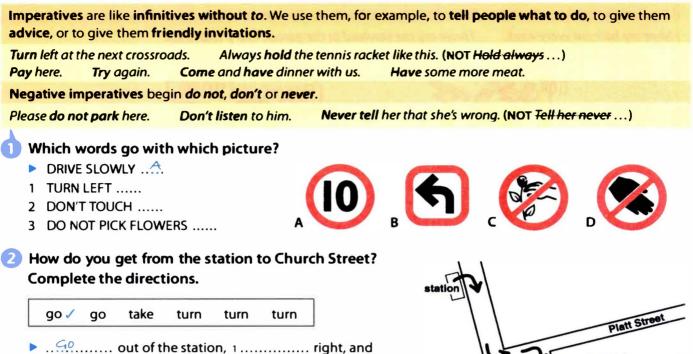


	Ann checks her oil herself.	Bill has his oil checked	at the garage.
1	Ann checks her tyres herself.	Bill	. at the garage.
2	Ann changes her oil herself.	Bill	. at the garage.
3	Ann repairs her car herself.	Bill	. at the garage.
4	Ann cleans her shoes herself.	Bill	. on the way to work
5	Ann does the gardening herself.	Bill	. for him.
6	Ann types her letters herself.	Bill	. by his secretary.

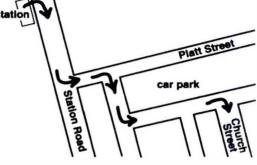
#### Make sentences with should have ...

- 1 Mary's watch isn't going. (repair)
- 2 Mike's trousers are dirty. (clean)
- 3 Steve and Helen's kitchen window is broken. (repair)
- 4 Pete's hair is getting very long. (cut)
- 5 Tom and Janet's new car has done 10,000 km. (service)
- 6 Emma's eyes are giving her trouble. (check)
- 7 Jasper's roof lets water in. (repair)
- 8 Daniel's phone makes funny noises. (check)

### imperatives Come in. Don't worry.



2 ...... down Station Road. 3 ...... left into
Platt Street, then 4 ...... the first road on the right.
After the car park, 5 ..... left, and Church
Street is the second on the right.



#### **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common imperative expressions**

Make sure you know the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences.

	1–5: Be careful! Have a good journey/holiday Help! Hurry up! Look out! ✓ Sleep well 6–11: Come in Don't forget Don't worry Follow me Have some (more)
	Make yourself at home Sit down Wait for me!
	Look out!
1	
2	There's ice on the steps.
3	can't swim!
4	' ' 'Thanks. I'll send you a postcard.'
5	'I'm going to bed.' 'Goodnight'
6	'I'll be home late tonight.' 'OK
7	I can't walk as fast as you!
8	coffee.' 'No thanks. If I drink any more I won't be able to sleep
9	'I'd like to speak to the manager, please.' 'Of course, sir, please
	'Jill's gone into hospital.' '
1	Hello in and
	Please

We don't use imperatives, even with *please*, to ask for things politely (see page 86). Could you tell me the time? (NOT Tell me the time, please.)

### مجعزبان ايرانيان

### let's (suggestions) Let's go.



We can make suggestions with let's (or let us - very formal) + infinitive without to.I'm tired. Let's go home.Let's eat out this evening.Let's see what's on TV.The negative is Let's not ... or Don't let's ... (informal).

Let's not go camping this summer. Let's not tell John about Mary and Pete. Don't let's invite that fool Raymond.

th	bok at the pictures and complete the suggestions, using <i>Let's (not)</i> Let's go for a walk.
1	Let's not
2	play
3	cards.
4	go ing.
5	
6	
7	watch
8	go





#### **2** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cities and countries

Do you know the English names for cities and countries round the world? Complete the conversations using names in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	Athens Bangkok Beijing Copenhagen I	stanbul Lisbon 🗸	Marrakesh
	Mexico City Moscow Prague Rio Vienna	a Warsaw	
	'I'd like to visit Portugal' 'Let's go to Lisbon'		
1	'I'd like to visit Greece.' 'Let's go to		
2	'It would be nice to see Denmark.' 'Let's go		
3			
4			
5			
6	'What about a holiday in Russia?'		
7	'Morocco sounds interesting.'		
8	'I've never been to Turkey.'		
9	'What about Thailand this year?'		
10	'I'd love to see China.'		
11	'It's time to see Mexico.'		
12	'Brazil this summer, OK?'		

### special structures with verbs: more practice

#### Phrasal verbs. Put in the missing words. I'm really tired. I'm going to ........ down for half an hour. 1 Hurry .....! We're late. 2 Don't turn ....., but somebody is following us. 3 Can you ..... in this form? 4 The radio's too loud. Can you ..... it down? 5 It's dark. I'll switch ..... the lights. 6 It's cold. ..... on your coat. 7 Shall I wash ..... these plates? 8 She borrowed my shoes and never brought them ..... 9 'I must talk to you.' 'No! ..... away!' 10 It's 6.30. Time to ..... up. Phrasal verbs with objects. Change the sentences twice. He put on his glasses. He put his glasses on. He put them on. I turned the radio down 1 Could you wash up the cups? 2 You can throw away those papers. ..... 3 Why don't you take your coat off? ..... 4 You need to fill in this form. 5 Please bring my bicycle back. 6 Let me fill up your glass. 7 Please put down that gun. 8 I'll switch the TV on. 9 Can you cut up the onions? ..... 10 Pick your coat up. 3 Verbs with two objects. Change the structure. Send John this letter. Send this letter to John. Can you make some coffee for me? Can you make me some coffee? 1 Alice sent her sister €500. 2 Sarah bought ice creams for the children. 3 Let's send Granny a postcard. Duth chaused the photo to the oth

4	Ruth showed the photo to the others.
5	I gave some flowers to the secretary.
6	Can you find John's address for me?
7	I found a hotel for Aunt Patsy.
8	Take these papers to Mrs Lewis.
9	I've given George all the information.
10	I want to buy a nice present for my sister.

#### Imperatives. Complete the sentences.

- Be ...careful. with those glasses they break easily.
- 1 ..... in and close the door.
- 2 Don't ..... Everything will be all right.
- 3 Goodbye! .....a good journey.
- 4 Look .....! There's a car coming.
- 5 ..... yourself at home.
- 6 .....! I can't turn the water off!
- 7 Goodnight. ..... well.
- 8 'Where's the Director's office?' 'I'll show you. ..... me.'
- 9 ' .....a good holiday.' 'Thanks. I'm sure we will.'
- 10 Don't ..... to phone us when you arrive.

#### Grammar in a text. Read the text and put in imperatives from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1-5: fetch hold let pick put 6–10: continue get throw get open 11-16: blow drink find kneel remove telephone

#### Instructions for giving a cat a pill

up the cat. 2 ..... it in your left arm like a baby.
 ..... your right forefinger and thumb at the sides of the cat's mouth and push the mouth open, holding the pill in your left hand. Put the pill into the cat's mouth.
 ..... the cat close its mouth and swallow the pill.

Pick up the pill from the floor and 5 ...... the.cat from behind the sofa. Pick up the cat. Hold it in your left arm like a baby and 6 ...... as before.

Fetch the cat from the bedroom and 7 ..... the pill away. 8 ...... another pill out of the packet. Hold the cat in your left arm, holding its back legs tightly with your left hand. 9 ...... the cat's mouth and push the pill to the back of the mouth with your right forefinger. Hold the mouth shut while you count to ten.

10 ..... the pill out of the goldfish bowl. Get the cat down from the top of the wardrobe. Wrap the cat in a towel. 11 ..... on the floor, holding the cat firmly between your knees. Put the pill in the end of a drinking straw. Force the cat's mouth open with a pencil and 12 ...... down the drinking straw.

16 ..... a new home for the cat. Get a dog.

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the following phrasal verbs: pick up, bring back, switch on, throw away, fill up. Write them here.

### special structures with verbs: revision test

### Which is/are correct? Circle the letter(s) of the correct sentence(s).

#### One, two or more answers may be correct for each question.

- 1 A He picked up the plate.
  - B He picked the plate up.
  - C He picked up it.
  - D He picked it up.
- 2 I don't repair my car myself. I ...
  - A repair it in the garage.
  - B let it repair in the garage.
  - C let repair it in the garage.
  - D have repaired it in the garage.
  - E have it repaired in the garage.
  - F have it repair in the garage.
- 3 A I sent some flowers to my mother.
  - B I sent some flowers my mother.
  - C I sent to my mother some flowers.
  - D I sent my mother some flowers.
- 4 A DO NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
  - B NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
  - C DON'T OPEN THIS WINDOW
  - D OPEN NOT THIS WINDOW
- 5 A Let's to play cards.
  - B Let's playing cards.
  - C Let's play cards.

- 8 A Don't listen to! B Don't listen him!
  - C Don't listen!

6 A Let's not go home.

B Let's don't go home.

7 A I got out the bus at the station.

B I got off the bus at the station.

C I got on the bus at the station.

D I got down from the bus at the station.

C Not let's go home.D Let's go not home.

- D Don't listen to him!
- 9 A They're looking at a hotel.
  - B They're looking a hotel.
  - C They're looking for a hotel.
  - D They're looking to a hotel.
- 10 A I'm getting cold.
  - B Can you get some bread?
  - C Get out of here.
  - D Let's get married.

#### 2 Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

- 1 What's happened ...... Tom? He's an hour late.
- 2 I usually arrive ..... the station at 8.30.
- 3 'Have you lost something?' 'I'm looking ..... my keys.'
- 4 'You look happy.' 'Yes, I'm thinking ..... my holiday.'
- 5 I had to wait ..... the bus for half an hour this morning.
- 6 Have you paid ..... the tickets?
- 7 Could you look ..... the children for half an hour?
- 8 Who's paying ..... the bill for lunch?
- 9 My parents don't like me to ask ..... money.
- 10 I got ..... the bus and sat down.
- 11 Listen ..... this it's really interesting.
- 12 Anna still believes ...... Father Christmas.
- 13 Do you belong .....a political party?
- 14 I'll sing, but please don't laugh ..... me.
- 15 I need to talk ..... the secretary.
- 16 Look .....! There's your brother.
- 17 I send money ..... my parents every week.
- 18 You can pay ..... the driver when you get ..... the bus.
- 19 They talked ..... sport all evening it was very boring.
- 20 My girlfriend comes ..... Ireland.

### SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the

#### grammar summary

A/An shows that we are talking about one person or thing. We often use a/an:

- in **descriptions** She's an interesting person. He's got a loud voice.
- when we say what something is, or what somebody's job is.
   This is a return ticket. I'm an engineer.

The usually means 'You know which one(s) I'm talking about'. Can I use the phone? (The hearer knows that this means 'your phone'.)

Nouns used without articles often have a special meaning. *I dislike cats*. (This means 'all cats'.)

Most Western European languages have articles. So if you speak (for example) French, German, Spanish or Greek, you will not have too many problems with *a/an* and *the*: they are used mostly in the same way as your articles. There are a few differences; see pages 156–161. If you speak a non-Western-European language (for example Russian, Polish, Arabic, Chinese, Japanese), you may find articles more difficult. Study all of this Section, especially pages 154–155.

> There is a mountain far away. And on the mountain stands a tree. And on the tree there is a branch. And on the branch there is a nest. And in the nest there is an egg. And in the egg there is a bird. One day the bird will fly. One day we will be free.

> > (old folk song)

An Englishman, an Irishman, a Scotsman and a Welshman went into a pub. The Englishman...

Shut the door and turn off the lights when you go, will you?

We've got offices in Australia, Canada and the United States.

He's a doctor and she's an engineer.

There's some bacon in the fridge if you're hungry.

My wife's from California.

I'll meet you at the Palace Hotel in Clark Street at 8.00.

He's got a very nice smile.

You have beautiful eyes.

We went to the Czech Republic on holiday last year.

> I'm afraid Ann's in bospital again.

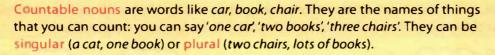
We both studied at Birmingham University.

People a

## a/an; pronunciation of the

e use a		- h	1	out ide -				
book	a coat			new idea		1.0.11		
		owel sound (fo			ound of <i>a, e,</i>	1, O, U).		
addres	ss an eg	g an iaea	an ol <b>d hou</b>	se				
• 9	n <b>a or an.</b> . ticket holiday	► aft 5 exe		1 bicy 6 day		2 airport 7 America		shop student
e choos	se a or an b	ecause of pron	unciation. r	not spelling.				
		head BUT an ho			o hour is like	our		
		ella, BUT a unive					ounced ' d	ou-ropean'),
a unifo	orm (pronou	inced 'you-nifori	m'), <mark>a u</mark> seful	book				
an o <b>ra</b> i	nge, an ope	<mark>ra,</mark> an office BUT	a one-pour	nd stamp (pro	onounced 'w	un)		
D.+ i=	n adjective	20						
		e) an expen	sive car		5 an uncle	(rich)		
	address (ne	w) a new a	ddress	•••••		isy)		
		····				ise (hard)		
						ige (European)		
	appie (big)				5 a langua	•		
< a c	hild (unhan	nv)			9 a hook (	small		
		ру)			9 a book (	small)		
4 a tr efore a c	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we pron	ounce the a	os /ðə/ (like th				
4 a tr fore a c fore a v Pronc the be	consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning	<mark>sound we prone</mark> d we say /ði/ (it the woman	ounce <b>the</b> a rhymes wit the child	<mark>is /ðə/ (like th</mark> h see). the time	ne end of <i>m</i> o the place	other). the house	the horse	
4 a tr fore a c fore a c fore a c Pronc the be the en	consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning nd the ol	<mark>sound we proned we say /ði/ (it</mark> the woman d man the of	<mark>ounce <i>the</i> a</mark> rhymes wit the child ffice the	<mark>is /ðə/ (like th</mark> h see). the time address t	the place he Americar	the house		
4 a tr efore a c efore a v Pronc the be	consonant vowel soun punce: eginning nd the ol	<mark>sound we prone</mark> d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of	<mark>ounce <i>the</i> a</mark> rhymes wit the child ffice the	<mark>is /ðə/ (like th</mark> h see). the time	ne end of <i>m</i> o the place	the house		
4 a tr fore a c fore a v Pronc the be the en the ho	consonant consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning nd the ol our the c	<mark>sound we prone</mark> d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive	ounce <b>the</b> a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the	<mark>is /ðə/ (like th</mark> h see). the time address t European	the place he Americar	the house		
4 a tr fore a c fore a c Pronc the be the en the ho GRAM	consonant consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning nd the ol our the o	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef	the time address t European	the place he Americar the unifor	the house		
4 a tr fore a c fore a c fore a c the be the be the en the ho GRAM	consonant consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning nd the ol our the o	<mark>sound we prone</mark> d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef	the time address t European	the place he Americar the unifor	the house		
4 a tr efore a c efore a c the be the en the ho GRAM	consonant consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning nd the ol our the o	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef	the time address t European	the place he Americar the unifor	the house		
4 a tr fore a c fore a v Pronc the be the en the ho GRAM Comp	consonant consonant vowel soun ounce: eginning nd the ol our the o	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef	the time address t European	the place he Americar the unifor	the house		
4 a tr fore a c fore a v Pronc the be the en the ho GRAM Comp	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive VOCABULARY: s entences with Calculator	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef a words fro torch	the time address t European <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b>	the place he Americar the uniforn . <b>Use a or a</b>	the house	the horse	
4 a tr fore a c fore a v Pronce the be the en the ho GRAM Comp alar	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive VOCABULARY: s entences with calculator	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef to words fro torch	the time address t European <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>fu</b>	the place he Americar the uniforn . <b>Use a or a</b> hammer	the house	the horse	
4 a tr fore a c fore a v Pronce the be the en the ho GRAM Comp alar alar > You 1 You	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive vocABULARY: s entences with calculator w-opener	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef a words fro torch torch	the time address t European ful things om the box envelope	the place he Americar the uniforn . <b>Use a or a</b> hammer	the house	the horse	
4 a tr efore a c fore a v Pronce the be the en the ho GRAM Comp alar Pronce alar	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we prome d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive VOCABULARY: s entences with calculator w-opener is usefu	the child ffice the ersity the <b>seven usef</b> <b>words fro</b> torch torch	the time address t European <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>fu</b>	the place he Americar the uniforn . <b>Use a or a</b> hammer	the house	the horse	
4 a tr efore a c efore a v Pronce the be the en the ho GRAM Comp alar Pronce the sec the sec sec sec the sec the sec t	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we prone d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive VOCABULARY: s entences with calculator w-opener is usefu	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef to words fro torch torch torch	the time address t European <b>ful things</b> <b>om the box</b> envelope ins. you send a l ematics.	the place he Americar the uniforn . Use a or a hammer	the house	the horse	
4 a tr efore a c efore a v Pronce the be the en the ho GRAM Comp alar alar > You 1 You 2 3 You 4 You	rain ( <i>early</i> )	sound we prome d we say /ði/ (it the woman d man the of one the unive VOCABULARY: s entences with calculator w-opener is usefu	ounce the a rhymes wit the child ffice the ersity the seven usef a words fro torch torch torch to open ti 	the time address t European <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>ful things</b> <b>om the box</b> envelope ins. you send a l matics.	the place he Americar the uniforn . Use a or a hammer	the house	the horse	

### countable and uncountable a car, cars; petrol



Uncountable nouns are words like *smoke*, *rice*, *water*, *petrol*. These are things that you can't count: you can say 'smoke', but not '<del>one smoke</del>' or '<del>two rices</del>' or 'three waters</del>'. Uncountable nouns are only singular. (For more information, see page 198.)



#### Singular countable, plural countable or uncountable? Write 'SC' (singular countable), 'PC' (plural countable) or 'U' (uncountable) against the words.

bird SC.	bottles .PC.	blood	children	flower	love
meat	mountains	music	nose	oil	photos
piano	river	snow	songs	table	windows

We use *a/an* only before singular countable nouns. (*A/An* is a bit like **one**: you can't say <del>one houses</del> or <del>one air</del>.)

SINGULAR COUNTABLE	PLURAL COUNTABLE	UNCOUNTABLE
a house	houses (NOT <del>a houses</del> )	air (NOT <del>an air</del> )
a car	cars	petrol

#### Put in a/an or nothing (-).

- Jake's father makes ..... films.
- I need ....<sup>9</sup>.... new bicycle.
- 1 I never drink ..... milk.
- 2 Jane is ..... old friend.
- 3 Most ..... cars use ..... petrol.
- 4 | often listen to ..... music.

- 5 The police are looking for him with ...... dogs.
- 6 My room has got ..... really big window.
- 7 That child wants ..... new shoes.
- 8 She was wearing ..... orange skirt.
- 9 They live in ..... very nice house.
- 10 | never have ..... sugar in ..... coffee.

We often use an uncountable noun (without a/an) to say what something is made of. The walls in the house were all made of glass. This sweater is made of silk.

**GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials.** Put in words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

brick	cotton	glass	leather	metal	plastic	silk	stone	wood	wool
Shoes	are made	ofleat	ther or pla	istic.		B Hou	ses are m	ade of	
1 Socks are made of						4 Shirt	s are mad	de of	
2 Cars a	re made of	f				5 Table	es are ma	de of	

We use **one** instead of *a/an* when the **exact number** is important. Compare: Can I have **a** cheese sandwich? (NOT <del>Can I have one cheese sandwich?</del>) No, I asked for **one** sandwich, not two! I only want **one** sandwich.

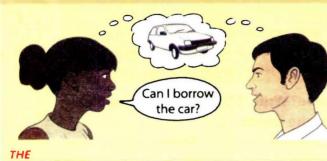
#### 4 Put in *a/an* or one.

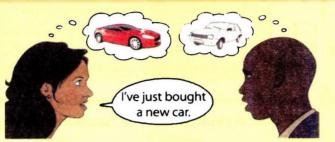
- She's got ....?. nice coat.
- She's only got ... coat.
- 1 Can I have ..... boiled egg?
- 2 No, I said ..... egg, not two.

- 3 I've got ..... problem. Can you help?
- 4 She's only got ..... child.
- 5 John's got ..... beautiful sister.
- 6 ..... girlfriend is enough.

### the and a/an Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.

We use *the*, not *a/an*, to talk about somebody or something, when the speaker and hearer **both know about** this person or thing; when they both know **which one(s)**. **In other cases** we use *a/an*.





A/AN

Could you open a window? (I don't mind which window.) Is there a post office near here?

Have you got a phone? Let's go and see a film. He looked at a tree. I need a room for tonight.

She arrived in an old taxi.

I've just bought a new coat.

(You know which coat - I'm telling you.)

(You know which one - the one near here.)

I didn't like the film. (= 'the one that we saw') He looked at the moon. (There's only one.)

(You know which room - I'm telling you.)

(You know which train - I'm telling you.)

Can luse the phone? ( = 'your phone')

#### Put in *a/an* or the.

Could you close the door? (You know which door.)

I'm going to the post office.

She's in the front room.

She came on the 8.15 train.

How much is the red coat?

- I walked up to her house, rang ...... bell and opened ...... door.
- He lives in …<sup>9</sup>..... small village.
- 1 Look that's John walking across ..... street.
- 2 Can I use ..... bathroom?
- 3 I need ..... English-French dictionary have you got one?

- 5 Where's ..... teacher? She's very late.
- 6 I want ..... long holiday in ..... sun.
- 7 Who's ..... man in your office?
- 8 I'm leaving on ..... 4.30 bus.
- 9 'Which is your coat?' '..... green one.'
- 10 Claire's looking for ..... new job.
- 11 Why are you looking at ..... sky?
- 12 I'll meet you at 4.30 at ..... bus stop outside ......... police station.

We use the before only; first, second etc; and superlatives like oldest, most (see page 223).

She's the only woman for me. I live on the second floor. It's the oldest restaurant in Glasgow. He bought the most expensive one.

Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in *a/an* or *the*.

0	Sarah'sthe	A	cup of coffee?
1	l've got	В	first train tomorrow morning?
2	John's	C	hottest day of the year
3	What time is	D	most intelligent person in our family
4	Yesterday was	E	only boy in the class
5	Would you like	F	present for you

### irlanguage

We often use *a/an* to talk about a person or thing for the first time; and *the* when we talk about the person or thing again.

A man walked up to a policeman. The man took out a map and asked the policeman ...

#### Put in *a/an* or the.

#### A BAG IN A BAG

This is  $\blacktriangleright$ ....... true story. Once I went into 1 ....... big sports shop because I wanted 2 ....... sports bag. 3 ....... assistant came up to me, and I told him what I wanted. 4 ...... assistant brought me three different bags. I chose 5 ....... smallest one and paid for it. 6 ...... assistant put 7 ....... bag in 8 ....... large plastic bag. I told him one bag was enough, and asked him to take 9 ....... bag out of 10 ......... other bag. He did so, but he looked very unhappy as I walked out of 11 .......... shop.

REMEMBER: we don't use *a/an* with **plurals**. We can use *the* with **plurals**.

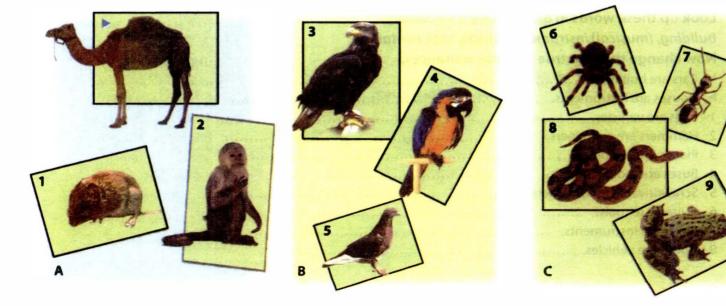
She's wearing black shoes. (NOT ... a black shoes:) She bought the shoes last week.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: animals, birds and other creatures

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the groups of pictures and complete the sentences. Put in *a/an* or *the*.

ant	camel 🗸	eagle	frog	monkey	mouse ( <i>plural</i> mice)	parrot	pigeon	snake	spider
GROUP /	A								
This	is acam	L It's	the	bigges	t animal inthe	group.			
This	is	lt′s		smallest	animal in g	group.			
2 This	is	lt's		most int	elligent				
GROUP	в								
B This	is	lt's		fastest b	ird in grou	p.			
1 This	is	lt's		only blu	e and yellow	in			
5 This	is	lt's		smallest					
GROUP	2								
5 This	is	it's		only crea	ature with eight legs in				
7 This	ic	lt'c			creature with six le	as in			

- 7 This is ...... It's ..... creature with six legs in .....
- 8 This is ...... It's ...... with no legs .....
- 9 This is ...... It's ..... sreen creature .....



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE 155



We use <i>a/an</i> when we sa	y what something is, or what	it job somebody does.	
A pony is <b>a</b> small horse.	Canada is <mark>a</mark> big country.	My sister is <mark>an</mark> electrician.	
REMEMBER: we don't use d	a/an with plurals.		
Ponies are small <b>horses</b> . (	NOT <del>a small horses.</del> )		

#### Say what these people's jobs are. Use the words in the box.

<ul> <li>She's a doctor.</li> <li>1 He's a</li></ul>			or ✓ driver hairdresser assistant teacher
	3 4 5 6 7 8	She's a doctor. He's a He's She's He She He She He She	

2	Complete the sentences with your own ideas.
	1is a good film.
	2 is a bad film.
	3 is a terrible singer.
	4 is an interesting book.
	5is a great man/woman.
	6are beautiful animals.
	7 is a/an
3	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: kinds of things
	Look up these words in a dictionary if necessary:
	building, (musical) instrument, vehicle, tool, container.
	Now change these to true singular sentences.
	Cars are buildings. A car is a vehicle.
	Houses are instruments. A house is a building.

- 1 Bags are vehicles.
- 2 Hammers are containers.
- 3 Pianos are buildings.
- 4 Buses are tools.
- 5 Screwdrivers are containers.
- 6 Guitars are tools.
- 7 Boxes are instruments.
- 8 Hotels are vehicles.

1

(

### a/an: describing people She's got a nice smile.

We often use *a/an* in descriptions.

She's got a guiet voice. (NOT ... the guiet voice.)

She's got blue eyes. (NOT ... a blue eyes.)

REMEMBER: we don't use a/an with plurals or uncountable nouns.

 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the words in the box, and add a/an if necessary. big beard big ears big nose 🧸 dark hair long neck loud voice nice smile 🗸 She's got . a nice smile. ► He's got a big nose 1 She's got ..... 2 He's got ..... 3 She's got ..... 4 He's got ..... 5 She's got ..... 2 Here are two descriptions of the same person. Put in a or nothing (-). A 'My name's Sandra. I'm tall and slim. I've got ▶..... blue eyes, ▶....<sup>A</sup>.... small nose, 1..... big mouth and 2...... dark hair. I think I've got 3..... nice smile. I wear 4...... glasses.' B 'Sandra's got 1..... very friendly face with 2..... lovely smile. She's got 3..... long dark hair and 4..... blue eyes. She's got 5..... long legs, and she's very pretty. She's wearing 6..... blue dress today. She's got 7 ..... nice voice.' 3 Write a short description (two or three sentences) of a friend of yours. Use some words from Exercises 1 and 2. \*\*\*\*\* **DESCRIPTIONS WRITTEN BY ENGLISH 7-YEAR-OLDS** My Friend my Dad My friend is Annie Lydgord. Annie's got shore hair and loves horses. Annie has blue He's got greek eyes like me. eyes and a round head with a short has got light brown hait He haircut down to her forchead. Annies in some places.

He's got a friendly face.

always happy and 61. makes a really good griend.

### talking in general without the People are funny.

We do not normally use *the* to talk about people or things in general. *The* does not mean 'all'. We use *the* to talk about particular people or things (see page 154).

GENERAL	PARTICULAR
People are funny.	The people in that house are funny.
I like music.	The music's too loud – can you turn it down?
Sugar is fattening.	Could you pass the sugar?
She's interested in dogs and horses.	'Why are the dogs barking?' 'There's somebody outside.'

#### Make some sentences from the words in the boxes.

Artists Builders Cats Dogs Horses Photographers Pianists Shop assistants Students Teachers	build don't eat don't like eat learn like paint play sell take teach	cats dogs grass houses meat music photos pictures things
<ul> <li>Dogs don't like cats.</li> <li>Teachers teach things.</li> </ul>		
1		
2		
3		

#### Circle the correct forms.

- The old people Old people often forget the things / things.)
- I like talking to the old ladies / old ladies who live in that house.
- 1 The books / Books are expensive in my country.
- 2 'Where shall I put the books / books?'On the floor.'
- 3 Japanese is a difficult language for the English people / English people.
- 4 The flowers / Flowers are beautiful. Thank you very much!
- 5 The life / Life is sometimes hard.
- 6 I don't understand the words / words of that song.
- 7 The food / Food in this restaurant is very expensive.
- 8 The water / Water turns into the ice / ice at 0°C.
- 9 Why are the windows / windows open in this room?

### Here are some common sayings about men and women (not all true!). Complete the sentences with words from the box, and give your opinion.

L	drivers	lost 🗸	money	things	things	think	think	understand	understand
•	Men nev	er ask th	e way whe	n they're	lost		TRI	JE / NOT TRUE	
1	Men are	better			than wo	men. TF	RUE / NOT	TRUE	0
2	Women	are more	careful wi	th		tha	an men.	TRUE / NOT TRU	IE
3	Women		•••••••••	men.	Men don't			women.	TRUE / NOT TRUE
4	Women			that n	nen will ch	ange, bu	t they do	n't. TRUE / NO	T TRUE
5	Men dor	ʻt		tha	t women v	will chang	ge, but th	ey do. TRUE /	NOT TRUE
6	Men pay	too mud	h for		tl	hat they w	vant. Wo	men buy	t
	they dor	't want b	ecause th	ey're chea	p. TRUE	NOT TRU	E		

### irlanguage

#### 3 Read the two texts and then write one yourself.

Llove snow. Llike poetry, art and walking. I don't like football, big dictionaries or hot weather. I hate telephones, banks, vegetable soup, pop music and small dogs. I hate writing letters. I don't like swimming or opera. I like children, apples, sport, television and cheese. Hove computers, history, dancing, cats, nice clothes and shopping.

.....

6

### Choose some words from the box to complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary. Don't use *the*!

art chess dancing football history music opera photography poetry politics (*singular*) skating swimming tennis travel

- 1 | like .....
- 2 | don't like .....
- 3 I like ..... better than .....
- 4 | love ......, but I hate .....
- 5 lenjoy .....
- 6 I think ...... is interesting, but ..... is boring.
- 7 ..... is difficult.
- 8 I'm good at ...... but I'm not so good at .....
- 9 | prefer ..... to ......
- 10 I'm not interested in .....
- 11 Most people are interested in .....
- 12 Not many people are interested in .....



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### names Mary, Africa, the USA

Level 2

	<i>IE</i> : PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, MOST PLACES
people: The	
<b>Mary</b> works for <b>D</b> General Parker	<mark>r Andrews</mark> . (NOT <del>The Mary the Dr Andr</del> e <del>ws.</del> ) Prince Charles Aunt Elizabeth
languages: Die	
Sorry, I don't speai	k Russian. (NOT <del> the Russian.</del> )
most place-nam	es (for example continents, countries, states, lakes, mountains, towns, streets): Die
Africa Cuba Wall Street Pic	s. (NOT <del> the Texas.</del> ) Queensland Dublin Lake Geneva Mount Everest ccadilly Circus Hyde Park Times Square
Complete the	sentences with words from the boxes.
Lake Superior	r London Oxford Street Peru Queensland 🗸 Spanish Uncle Eric
2 Here's a postc	card from in
Africa Fran	nce Kilimanjaro Napoleon Switzerland
5 6	was a very small man. is the highest mountain in is next to
5 6 IAMES WITH <i>THE</i> : SC	is the highest mountain in is next to
5 6 IAMES WITH <i>THE</i> : SC	OME PLACES eas and oceans (but not lakes!): <i>the</i>
5 6 AMES WITH THE: SO deserts, rivers, so the Sahara Desert	is the highest mountain in
5 6 AMES WITH <i>THE</i> : SC deserts, rivers, se	is the highest mountain in
5 6 IAMES WITH THE: SC deserts, rivers, so the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands	is the highest mountain inis next to
5 6 IAMES WITH THE: SC deserts, rivers, so the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands	is the highest mountain in is next to
5 6 IAMES WITH THE: SC deserts, rivers, so the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands expressions with	is the highest mountain in is next to
5 6 MAMES WITH THE: SC deserts, rivers, so the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands expressions with the Czech Republi large areas of the	is the highest mountain in is next to

#### **BUILDINGS WITH THE**

#### most names of buildings: the

the Hilton Hotel the Globe Theatre the Eiffel Tower the Great Pyramid

the Old Mill Restaurant the British Museum the Taj Mahal

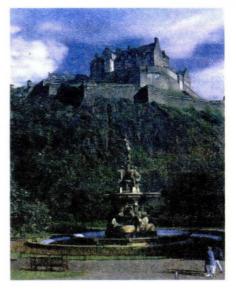
#### EXCEPTIONS

 place-name + Airport, Station, Cathedral, University, Palace, Castle, School: The Oxford Airport Glasgow Central Station

Exeter Cathedral Cambridge University Buckingham Palace Didcot Junior School

name + possessive 's: the
 St Paul's Cathedral McDonald's



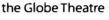




the Tower of London









the Taj Mahal

#### Out the before five of these buildings, and nothing (-) before three.

#### 4 Put in the or nothing (-).

1American English2Asia3Blue Train Restaurant4Dominican Republic5Florida6Gobi Desert7Lake Michigan8Metropolitan Museum9Mississippi (River)10Mount Kenya11New York12North Sea1314Regent Street15Rocky Mountains16Trafalgar Square17Egypt18White House19Whitehall Theatre20

### special cases in bed; after lunch; a hundred; ....

NO	
• 11	neals: Die
tc	o nave breaktast/lunch/dinner; before/at/after/for breakfast etc
d	ays, dates, public holidays, months and years: the
01	n Tuesday(s) <mark>; on September 17th; at Christmas; in J</mark> uly; in 2006
th	his/next/last + a day or longer period of time: the
th	nis Monday; next Friday; last week; next month; this summer; last year

#### Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.

breakfast 🗸 Easter lunch next Saturdays Tuesday winter

- I usually just have toast and coffee for ...breakfast
- 1 Let's have ...... together on .....
- 2 We usually go to Scotland at .....
- 3 I'm working at home ..... week.
- 4 It got very cold last .....
- 5 I play tennis with Rob on .....

#### August 23rd Christmas last September 1616 this

- 6 My holiday is in ..... year.
- 7 Lindsay's birthday is on .....
- 8 Shakespeare died in .....
- 9 The whole family always comes together at .....
- 10 We went to California ..... summer.

#### NO ARTICLE (THE) COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (2)

• places and activities: Die

to/at/from school/university/college; to/in/out of church/prison/hospital/bed; at home; to/at/from work; on holiday

• transport: expressions with by: the

by car/bus/bicycle/plane/train/underground/boat and on foot

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

	ł	bed	car	church	foot	home	holiday	hospital	prison	school	university	work	
--	---	-----	-----	--------	------	------	---------	----------	--------	--------	------------	------	--

- 1 I usually stay in ..... late at the weekend.
- 2 Jake's going to ..... to study business.
- 3 Most of the people in our village go to ..... on Sundays.
- 4 I was in ..... for a week when I broke my leg.
- 5 If I go to ..... by ..... it takes half an hour.
- 6 Uncle George comes out of ..... in June.
- 7 I'm not going there on ..... it's raining.
- 8 'Is Kirsten at .....?' 'No, sorry, she's out.'
- 9 'Are you working in August?' 'No, I'm on ......'
- 10 We had to learn Latin at .....

A/AN (BEFORE SINGU	LAR COUNTABLE NOUNS)
• after with, without	t and <i>as</i>
	n with a dictionary. (NOT <del>with dictionary:</del> ) hout a ticket. (NOT <del>without ticket.</del> ) bus-driver.
• after haven't/has	n't got
We haven't got a f	ax. (NOT <del>We haven't got fax.</del> )
• in exclamations w	vith What!
What a crazy idea	
• before hundred/t	housand/million and netted 51 and a week at must average buck and a determine the second
a hundred days	a thousand people a million dollars

#### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in *a/an*.

- 11				
	0	What	A	American passport
	1	I didn't listen to the programme; I haven't got	В	<sup>0</sup> terrible day! <sup>0</sup> .
	2	I want a house with	С	garden
	3	I went to sleep on the sofa and used my coat as	D	hundred times
	4	l've told you	E	million people in our city
	5	There are about	F	blanket
	6	You can't work there without	G	radio
	7	Phil's working as	н	stupid idea!
	8	What		job
	9	It's hard to live without	J	tourist guide

#### THE: COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH THE

the same; the country/sea/mountains; on the right/left; at the top/bottom/side/front/back; in the middle; at/to the cinema/theatre; on the radio (BUT on TV)

Her hair is same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is same colour ...)We live in the country.I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea.Our house is the second on the right.Write your name at the top of the page.I don't often go to the cinema.

#### Make sentences.

	Anne's house / the first / left
1	Patrick and I work / same office
2	We / going / theatre / tonight
3	My room / top / house
	Would you like / live / country?
5	We usually go / mountains / Christmas
6	Joe always sits / back / class
7	Suzie's office / right
8	I would like / live near / sea
9	Why are you driving / middle / road?
10	Please sign your name / bottom / this paper

#### POSSESSIVES

We don't use a/an or the with my, your etc (see page 188). your address (NOT the your address) my friend / a friend of mine (NOT a my friend)

### articles: more practice

#### Mixed article uses. Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).

- 1 My sister lives in ..... big flat.
- 2 'Where's ...... phone?' 'In ..... kitchen.'
- 3 Andy's brother is ..... architect.
- 4 I'm taking ..... 10.15 train.
- 5 Most people like ..... animals.
- 6 Do you play ..... tennis?
- 7 ..... music's too loud please turn it down.
- 8 All our furniture is made of ..... wood.
- 9 Carola has got ..... beautiful brown eyes.
- 10 I don't want to be ..... student for the next five years.

- 11 I'm not interested in ..... politics.
- 12 Can I switch on ..... lights?
- 13 ..... vegetarians don't eat ..... meat.
- 14 ..... petrol is very expensive these days.
- 15 We haven't seen ..... sun for a week.
- 16 Where did you put ..... butter?
- 17 I often listen to ..... music when I'm driving.
- 18 ..... life is sometimes hard.
- 19 I don't like ..... fish.
- 20 Perhaps ...... people are more interesting than ...... grammar.

#### Names and special article uses. Correct (1) or not (1)?

- 1 The Canada is a big country. .....
- 2 Have you ever seen Eiffel Tower? .....
- 3 Andy works at Apollo Theatre. .....
- 4 The River Rhone runs into the Mediterranean Sea. .....
- 5 Hello. I'm at the Oxford Station. .....

- 6 Would you like to work as teacher? .....
- 7 He was in bed at 10.00. .....
- 8 We live in a small town in south. .....
- 9 Please write your address at the top of the page. .....
- 10 I don't eat much for the lunch. .....

3 Countable or uncountable? How many countable and uncountable nouns can you find in these advertisements?



COUNTABLE:	
UNCOUNTABLE:	
	3

#### Grammar in a text. Put in *a*, *an*, *the* or nothing (–).



#### A TRUE STORY

In 1...... 1969, in 2...... Portland, 3...... Oregon, 4..... man went to rob 5...... bank. He didn't want 6..... people in 7..... bank to know what was happening, so he walked up to one of 8..... cashiers, wrote on 9..... piece of 10..... paper, 'This is 11..... robbery and I've got 12..... gun', and showed 13.... paper to 14.... cashier. Then he wrote, 'Take all 15..... money out of your drawer and put it in 16..... paper bag.' 17.... cashier read 18.... message, wrote at 19.... bottom of 20.... paper, 'I haven't got 21.... paper bag' and gave 22..... paper back to 23..... robber. 24.... robber ran out of 25..... bank.

#### **5** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials

Learn some or all of the words in the box. Use a dictionary. Then write some sentences to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.

brick plastic	cotton rubber	china silk	diamond silver s	-	_	leather fibre w		paper ool		
Mys	hoes are	made o	fleather	and rubb	er (NOT	the	leather	)		
•••••					••••••	••••••				
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••									·····	
					·····					
								••••••		
••••••		•••••	••••••		•••••				•••••	•••••

### 6 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Britain, Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly.

1	a river
2	a lake
3	a mountain
	a part of the country
5	a hotel
6	a station
7	an airport
8	a tourist attraction
9	a cathedral
10	a museum



#### ..... stairs.' 7 I like watching ..... sport on TV.

8 My second brother is ..... engineer.

6 'Where's ..... toilet?' 'At the top of

4 Ayesha's leaving on ..... 10.30 plane.

- 9 It's hot in here. Can I open ...... windows?
- 10 She stood at her door for a long time looking at ..... moon.
- 11 Most people like ..... children.

#### Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.

- I live in the France. France
- I was born in London. Correct.
- 1 Can I speak to the Professor Anderson? .....
- 2 Greek is a difficult language.
- 3 We've just been to Czech Republic.
- 4 The Soviet Union was founded in 1922.
- 5 She's from Texas.
- 6 Carol has just spent two months in hospital.
- 7 I'll see you the next Tuesday.
- 8 You can't go there without passport.
- 9 Joe's studying to be doctor.
- 10 In Britain people drive on the left.

- 5 | prefer ..... dogs to ..... cats.
  - 6 My flat has got ..... very small kitchen.
  - 7 I need ..... new jeans.
  - 8 Nadia was wearing ..... blue dress.
  - 9 They live in ..... small town.
- 10 I never have ..... milk in ..... tea.
- 12 John's very interested in ..... science.
- 13 I liked everything in the film except ..... music.
- 14 Why did you put ..... shoe in ..... fridge?
- 15 These socks are made of ..... silk.
- 16 I watch ..... football, but I don't play it.
- 17 I'd like to be ..... student again.
- 18 My mother thinks ..... animals are nicer than ..... people.
- 19 ..... children don't usually like ..... vegetables.
- 20 Andy lives in ..... houseboat.

articles: revision test

#### Put in a or an.

diesel?

studying?

- 1 .....address

1 I don't like ..... beer.

3 Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).

3 ..... life can be difficult.

5 Do you drink ..... beer?

1 Rob has got ..... very long hair.

2 ..... books are very expensive.

2 ..... student

2 Peter is ..... very good friend.

- 6 old woman

Countable or uncountable? Put in a or nothing (-).

3 Does your car use ..... petrol or .....

4 Do you listen to ..... music while you're

- 3 ..... English student
  - 7 ..... house

#### 4 ..... university student 8 ..... hour's lesson

5 ..... bus

- 9 ..... one-pound coin
- 10 ..... uncle

### **SECTION 12** determiners

#### grammar summary

this, that, these, those some, any, no enough all, each, every, both, either, neither much, many, a little, a few more, most a lot, lots (a/an, the) (my, your etc)

Determiners are words that come at the beginning of noun phrases, before adjectives. Determiners help to show which or how many people/things we are talking about. this old coat some strange ideas all English words enough people

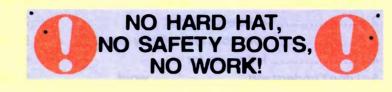
Most determiners are explained and practised in this section. A/An and the have a separate section on pages 151–166. My, your etc are explained together with pronouns on pages 188–189.

**Somebody, anything, nowhere** etc are included here. These are not determiners, but it is more convenient to deal with them in this section.









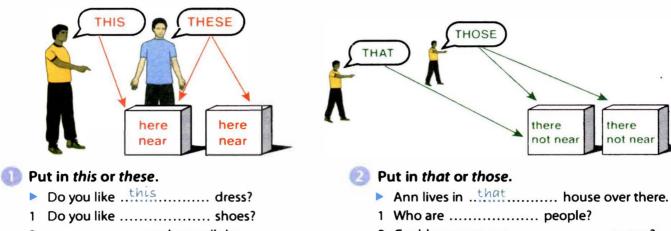




DETERMINERS 167

### this, that, these and those

#### We can use this and these to talk about things that are here, near to us. We can use that and those to talk about things that are there, not near.

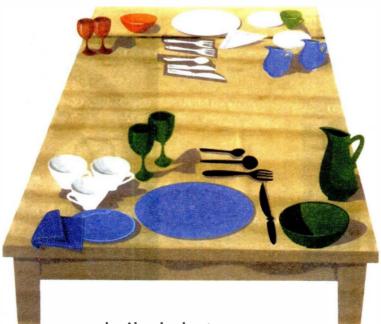


- 2 ..... cat sleeps all day.
- 3 ..... tomatoes are not very good.
- 4 ..... letters are for you.
- 5 I don't understand ...... word.
- 2 Could you pass me ..... papers?
- 3 I don't think ..... train is ours.
- 4 ..... glasses look very nice.
- 5 Why is she running after ..... man?

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cutlery and crockery

Use the words in the box to make ten or more sentences about the colours of the things in the picture. Use a dictionary if necessary.

cup	plate	saucer	knife 🗸	fork	spoon	glass	napkin	jug	bowl
This k	nifeis	black. Th	ose knív	es are	sílver.				
•••••		••••••	•••••			•••••	•••••	•••••	
						********			



مرجعزبان ايرانيان www.irLanguage.com

We can use *this* and *these* to talk about things that are happening now or starting now. We can use *that* and *those* to talk about things that are finished.

I like this music. Listen to these sentences. That lesson was boring. Did you answer those letters yesterday?

### Circle the correct answer.

- Do Did you like that film?
- 1 I'm enjoying / I enjoyed these lessons.
- 2 This game was / will be hard.
- 3 These / Those potatoes weren't very nice.
- 4 That holiday is / was great!
- 5 Do you remember this / that funny hotel in France?
- 6 May I have this / that dance with you?
- 7 I'm going to enjoy this / that meal.
- 8 That political speech is / was really stupid.
- 9 Did you understand this / that explanation?
- 10 Listen to this / that letter from Karen.

We can use this, th	hat, these and thos	se without nouns.	
l don't like <b>this</b> .	Look at these.	Who said that?	Those are pretty.
We can use this to	introduce peop	le, and to introduce	ourselves on the telephone.
This is my friend C	arla. This is Al	ex. Can I speak to Fre	ed?
SI-			

# Out in this, that, these or those.

- I don't like living in ...this.......... country.
- 1 Could you bring ..... box to me, please?
- 2 Why did you say .....?
- 3 ..... is Peter is Mary at home?
- 4 Who are ..... people over there?
- 5 Listen you'll like ..... story.
- 6 Wait I can't walk fast in ..... shoes.
- 7 '..... is my sister Helen.' 'How do you do?'
- 8 ..... was a wonderful meal thanks.
- 9 I'm not enjoying ..... conversation.
- 10 Do you remember ..... people that we met in Greece?
- 11 Let's leave ..... party.
- 12 The meal was nice, but I didn't like ..... wine much.
- 13 Could you take ..... letters to the post office?
- 14 I thought Geoff looked silly in ..... shorts.
- 15 Is ...... your mother coming out of the police station?
- 16 Where are you? I can't see very well with ...... glasses.
- 17 We're going to win ..... match. You wait and see.
- 18 What are ..... birds on the roof?
- 19 I can't eat ..... apple it's too hard.
- 20 I'll never forget ..... ten days with Barbara.

# some and any I need some sugar. Have you got any?



He's got some problems.



She hasn't got any problems.

We use some and any, not a/an, with uncountable and plus	ral nouns. Buy this construction and even in the second
They mean 'a limited number or quantity'.	
We use <i>some</i> in affirmative (+) sentences.	<ol> <li>8 That political speech is / was really imput-</li> </ol>
We use any in negative (-) sentences, and in most question	ons.
I'd like some water. Here are some flowers for you.	
I haven't got any money. There aren't any trains today.	
Have you got any sugar? Do you speak any other langua	ges?
Circle the correct answers.	
I'd like some ' any help.	5 Are there some / any restaurants near here?
1 There aren't some / any letters for you.	6 I'm having some / any problems with my car.
2 Have you got some / any brothers or sisters?	7 I didn't have some / any breakfast today.
3 We need some / any more milk.	8 He hasn't done some / any work for ten years.
4 She's got some / any interesting friends.	9 Do you know some / any Americans?
Complete the sentences with any and words from	n the box.
English newspapers games foreign languages	help 🗸 more to drink sleep
English newspapers games foreign languages	
Harriet likes to do things by herself: she doesn't want	any help.
1 No, I'm not thirsty – I don't want	
2 Joe doesn't speak	
3 Our team hasn't won	
4 I didn't get last	
5   couldn't find a	
We use some in questions which expect the answer 'Yes' - f	or example offers or requests
Would you like some more coffee? Could I have some bre	
Would you like some more conee? Could i have some ore	
<b>3</b> Write sentences with <i>some</i> .	
1 (Ask for coffee) Could I have	
2 (Offer bread) Would you like	
3 (Offer rice)	
4 (Ask for tomatoes)	
5 (Offer more potatoes)	

6 (Ask for more milk) .....

We use <i>any</i> with words like <i>never, without</i> or <i>hardly</i> (= 'almost not'), which have <b>negative</b> meanings.								
They <b>never</b> give me any help. I got there <b>without</b> any difficulty. You made <b>hardly</b> any mistakes.								
Put the beginnings and ends together.								
0       I finished the work without       A       any rain         1       I was tired, so I went to bed without       B       some rain, at last         2       I'm going to do       C       any work in the garden         3       Yesterday we had       D       some work in the house         4       In July we hardly had       E       any supper         5       She never does       F       some supper         6       You're hungry. I'll make you       G       any help								
'Can you lend me some money?' 'Sorry, I haven't got <b>any</b> .' 'I need some more envelopes.' 'I'll bring you some.'								
buy good got        more        put tomorrow want you         'How many children has he got?' 'He hasn't?       'This is wonderful soup.' 'Havesome more'         'This is wonderful soup.' 'Havesome more'       '         'How much did the flowers cost?' 'I didn't'       '         'We need light bulbs.' 'I'll get'       '         'Where's the sugar?' 'There's'       '         'Why didn't you buy any cheese?' 'Because I didn't								
NOTE: Any is used in negative sentences, but is <b>not negative</b> . Not any (or no – see page 114) is negative.								
Sorry, I haven't got any time / I've got no time. (NOT Sorry, I've got any time.)								
Complete the sentences with negative past-tense verbs. Use words from the box.								
<ul> <li>ask be do find get / have</li> <li>I didn't</li></ul>								
sentences with <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> .								
aspirins ballpoint pens dollars jewellery keys love letters make-up red shoes stamps string ties white socks								
aspirins ballpoint pens dollars jewellery keys love letters								
aspirins ballpoint pens dollars jewellery keys love letters make-up red shoes stamps string ties white socks								

Level

# somebody, anything, nowhere, ...

somebody someone something somewhere nobody no one nothing nowhere everybody	anybody anyone anything anywhere everyone everything everywhere
omebody and someone mean the same; so do anybody he difference between somebody etc and anybody etc i ome and any (see pages 170–171). For every, see page 1	is the same as the difference between
<b>omebody</b> telephoned for you. Has <b>anybody</b> seen my ve got <b>something</b> for you. Do you want <b>anything</b> fro he never goes <b>anywhere. Nothing</b> happened. <b>Ev</b>	
Complete the words.Is	<ul> <li>7 'Where did you go at the weekend?'</li> <li>where – we stayed at home.'</li> <li>8 I want to tell you some</li> <li>9 Every in my family has blue eyes.</li> <li>10 I don't knowbody who plays rugby</li> <li>11 Every in this shop is expensive.</li> <li>12 I want to livewhere warm.</li> <li>a you complete them with somebody, anything etc.</li> <li>5 Ten people in one room with no bath, no water,</li></ul>
4 said 'thank you': not one man.	?
4said 'thank you': not one man. <b>Ster nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything</b> and <b>Sterybody knows. (NOT E<del>verybody know.</del>) Everything i</b>	nd <i>nothing</i> we use singular verbs.
fter nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything ar verybody knows. (NOT Everybody know.) Everything is Put in verbs from the box. Use singular forms.	nd <i>nothing</i> we use singular verbs.
fter nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything ar verybody knows. (NOT Everybody know.) Everything i	<ul> <li>A nothing we use singular verbs.</li> <li>S OK. Nothing happens here.</li> <li>4</li></ul>
After nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything are overybody knows. (NOT Everybody know.)       Everything is everything.         Put in verbs from the box. Use singular forms.         agree be be happen have know         1 Nobody	<ul> <li>And nothing we use singular verbs.</li> <li>s OK. Nothing happens here.</li> <li>4 everybody here?</li> <li>5 everybody got a drink?</li> <li>6 No one with me.</li> <li>enough (see page 115).</li> </ul>
In the second	<ul> <li>And nothing we use singular verbs.</li> <li>s OK. Nothing happens here.</li> <li>4 everybody here?</li> <li>5 everybody got a drink?</li> <li>6 No one with me.</li> <li>enough (see page 115).</li> </ul>

I wanted some plums, but there were **none** in the shop.

No one can help me.

# much and many How much milk? How many languages?

# We use *much* with singular (uncountable) nouns, and *many* with plurals.

Do you listen to much music? Do you go to many concerts?

### Put in *much* or *many*.

- She doesn't speak ........ English.
- She doesn't buy ....... clothes.
- 1 I haven't got ..... time.
- 2 Do you play ..... football?
- 3 There aren't ..... people here.
- 4 Are there ..... Americans in your company?
- 5 We don't have ..... rain in summer.
- 6 I don't eat ..... meat.
- 7 Have you travelled to ..... countries?
- 8 We don't watch ..... films.
- 9 Was there ..... traffic on the road?
- 10 Not ..... tourists visit our town.
- 11 Do you know ..... songs?
- 12 She doesn't have ..... trouble with English.
- 13 There aren't ..... birds in the garden.
- 14 She doesn't get ..... money in her new job.
- 15 There hasn't been ..... rain this year.

We use how much with singular (uncountable) nouns, and how many with plurals. How much milk do you want? How many languages are there in the world?

### Write the questions. Do you know the answers? (See the bottom of the page.)

- plays / Shakespeare / write How many plays did Shakespeare write?
- plays / Shakespeare / write
  symphonies / Beethoven / write
  cents / in a dollar
  are there
  kilometres / in a mile
  states / in the USA
  blood / in a person's body
  air / we breathe / every minute
  do we
  points / you get / for a try in rugby union
- 8 food / an elephant / eat every day

We can use *much* and *many* without nouns if the meaning is clear. 'Have you got any money?' 'Not much.' 'How many people were there?' 'Not many.'

**Much** and **many** are used mostly in **questions** and **negatives**. They are unusual in spoken affirmative (+) sentences. In an informal style, we prefer expressions like *a lot of* (see page 174).

'Do you get much snow in winter?' 'Not much, but we get a lot of rain.' (NOT ... <del>we get much rain.</del>) 'Have you got many English friends?' 'No, I haven't got many English friends. But I've got a lot of American friends.' (NOT USUALLY ... <del>I've got many American friends.</del>)

Answers to Ex 2: • thirty-seven 1 nine 2 and 6 distribution 2 and 1 distres 2 and 2

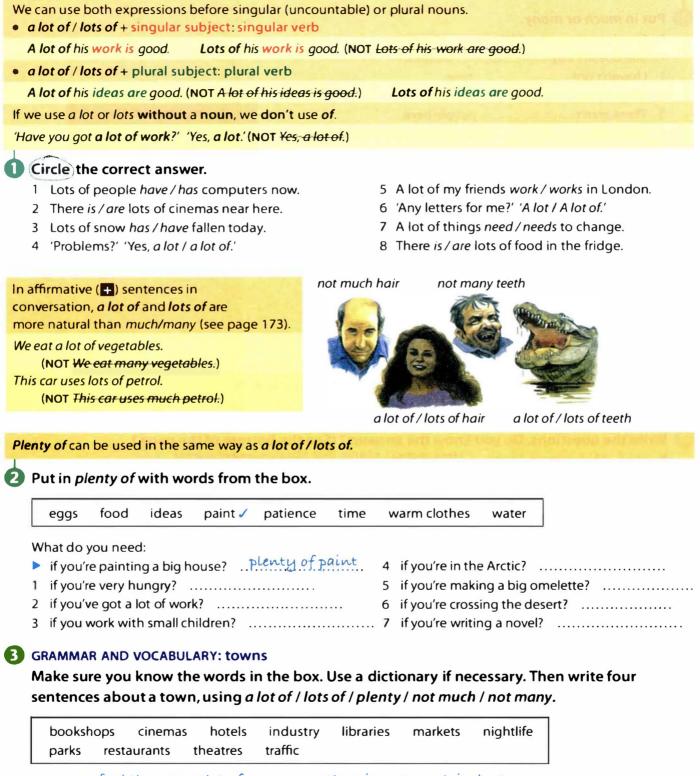
So many worlds, so much to do, so little done.

(Alfred Lord Tennyson)

# a lot of and lots of

I haven't got a lot of time just now.

A lot of and lots of are common in an informal style. They mean the same.



He's got lots of money and lots of friends.

In Oxford there are a lot of museums; there is not much industry.

# a little and a few a little English; a few words

# We use *a little* with singular (uncountable) nouns, and *a few* with plurals. If you're hungry, we've got a little soup and a few tomatoes.

# 1) Put in *a little* or *a few*.

- 1 I know ..... English.
- 2 I speak ..... words of Spanish.
- 3 I'll be on holiday in ..... days.
- 4 Can you give me ..... help?
- 5 Grace will be ready in ..... minutes.
- 6 Could I have ..... more coffee?
- 7 I'd like to ask you ..... questions.
- 8 I'm having ..... trouble with the police.
- 9 The soup needs ..... more salt.
- 10 I'm going away for ..... weeks.

Little and few (without a) have a rather negative (-) meaning (like not much/many). A little and a few have a more positive (+) meaning (like some).

We've got a little food in the house if you're hungry. (= 'some, better than nothing') There was little food in the house, so we went to a restaurant. (= 'not much, not enough') His lesson was very difficult, but a few students understood it. (= 'more than I expected') His lesson was so difficult that few students understood it. (= 'not many, hardly any')

# **2** Circle the correct answer.

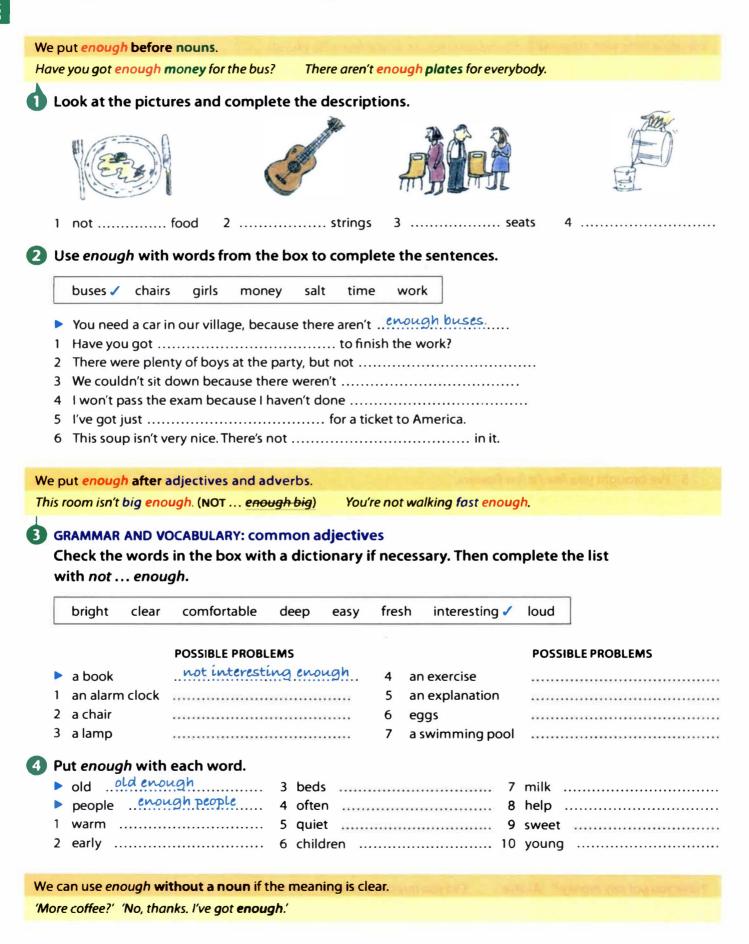
- I have(little) a little time to read newspapers and no time at all to read books.
- 1 Come about 8 o'clock; I'll have little / a little time then.
- 2 There was *little / a little* water on the mountain, and we all got very thirsty.
- 3 Foreign languages are difficult, and *few / a few* people learn them perfectly.
- 4 I'm going to Scotland with few / a few friends next week.
- 5 I've brought you few / a few flowers.
- 6 Life is very hard in the Arctic, so few / a few people live there.
- 7 She was a difficult woman, and she had few / a few friends.
- 8 'Would you like something to drink?' 'Little / A little water, please.'

Little and few are rather formal; in conversation we use not much/many or only a little/few. There wasn't much food in the house. OR There was only a little food in the house. The lesson was so difficult that not many / only a few students understood it.

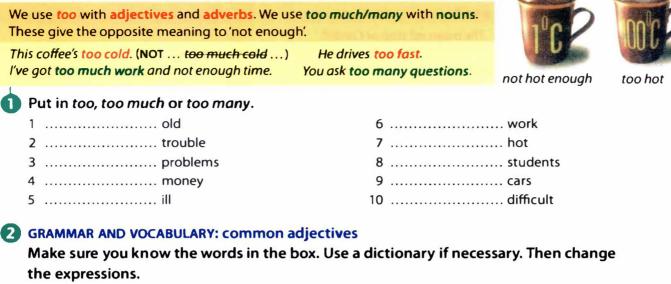
### Make these sentences more conversational.

- Ispeak little English. I only speak a little English OR I don't speak much English.
- There was little room on the bus.
   Few people learn foreign languages perfectly.
   She has few friends.
   We get little rain here in summer.
   This car uses little petrol.
   There are few flowers in the garden.
   Our town gets few tourists.
   We have little time to catch the train.

We can use (a) little and (a) few without nouns if the meaning is clear. 'Have you got any money?' 'A little.' 'Did you buy any clothes?' 'A few.'



# too, too much/many and not enough



	cheap	dry e	xpensive	fast 🗸	hard	heav	y I	nigh	light	low	
	narrow	short	slow 🗸	soft	tall	thick	thin	wet	wide	5	
			too slov				4	not har	d enou	gh =	•
	too slow	=not	fast enou	gh			5	too nar	row = .		
1	not high	enough	=				6	too exp	pensive	=	
2	not tall e	nough =					7	too dry	· =		
3	not heav	y enough	n =				8	too thio	ck =		

A man is going walking in the mountains for three days. Look at the things that he is taking and give your opinion, using (not) enough or too much/many. Use a dictionary if necessary.

ř

YOUR OPINION
--------------

HE IS TAKING		YOUR OPINION
1 packet of soup		not enough soup
1 camera		enough cameras
8 maps		too many maps
5 pairs of socks	1	
1 pair of boots	2	
3 pocket torches	3	
1 tube of sun-cream	4	
2 waterproof jackets	5	
2 pairs of sunglasses	6	
10 kg of bread	7	
2 kg of cheese	8	
100 cl of water	9	
1 orange	10	
1 bar of chocolate	11	
1 small bar of soap	12	*****
3 toothbrushes	13	



# all all my friends are here; my friends are all here

All ca	n go with a n	oun or with a w	erb.			
	e trains stop a		ne trains <b>all st</b> a			
	-	n on Monday.		s all begin on Monda		Mu clothes all need closning
All D	<b>rds</b> lay eggs.	Birds all lay	eggs.	All my clothes nee	a cleaning.	My clothes <b>all need</b> cleaning.
1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	The buses all All the films s Our secretari The children All these coa All languages The people a All my friend These houses All those sho	like travelling. run on Sunday start at 7 o'clock es all speak Ara all went home. ts cost the sam s have gramma Il voted for the s live in Londor s all need repai ps belong to th	rs All the abic e Radical Cons n rs ne same family	e buses run on Si ervatives.	undays.	
Note	the word ord	er when all goo	es with a verb	. All goes:		
1 be	fore one-word	d verbs				
Th	e guides <mark>all sp</mark> e	<b>ak</b> German.	The visitors	all arrived this morn	ing. We <b>al</b>	<b>got</b> up late.
2 af	er auxiliary vo	erbs (will, have,	can etc) and	after are and were.		
	-	ll understand Sp all arrived. (NO <sup>.</sup>		. <del>all can understand !</del> <del>rrived:</del> ) We <b>were</b>		We all were tired.)
2 P 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Mark's friend The offices of The lessons w These childre Our windows Sorry, the tick We went to N The shops wi We stopped f	own sometimes s have gone ho ose at weekend vill start on Tue on can swim. are dirty. stare dirt	s		ll gone hom	e
10						

We **don't** normally use **all** without a noun to mean '**everybody**' or '**everything**'. **Everybody** knows that. (NOT <u>All know that.</u>) I've forgotten **everything**. (NOT <del>i've forgotten all</del>.)

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. (Universal Declaration of Human Rights) Justice is open to all people in the same way as the Ritz Hotel. (Judge Sturgess)

# all and every; each

We use <b>every</b> with <b>singular</b> nou	ns and verbs. Compare:	
All people are interesting. All teachers make mistakes.	Every person is interest Every teacher makes m	ing. (NOT <del>Every person are</del> ) iistakes.
We can use other determiners (t	h <b>e, my, this</b> etc) after <b>all</b> , b	out not after <i>every</i> . Compare:
All the shops were closed.	Every shop was closed.	(NOT <del>Every the shop</del> )
<ol> <li>All animals breathe air.</li> <li>She's read all the books in</li> <li>I paid all the bills.</li> <li>All the computers are wor</li> <li>All languages have verbs.</li> <li>All London trains stop at F</li> <li>I've written to all the custor</li> </ol>	Every bus was late. the library. king today. Reading.	
9 All children can be difficul	t	
ach and every are similar. We u	se <b>each</b> for <b>two or more</b> ,	but we use <i>every</i> for three or more.
She had a bag in <mark>each</mark> hand. (NO	in every hand.) She	e had a ring on <b>each/every fin</b> ger.
<ol> <li>There's a pub on each side</li> <li>She wrote a careful answe</li> <li>He works in London and P</li> <li>She wears a watch on each</li> </ol>	h ear. <u>No.</u> nday. <u>Yes</u> every of the road. r to each letter. Paris, and he's got a girlfrie n wrist. ut each one is strange in a	day except Sunday. Ind in each city.
= 'from morning to night').		esdays, Wednesdays etc') and <i>all day</i>
<sup>(</sup> he restaurant is open <b>all day, e</b> <sup>(</sup> Behind every successful ma	n	'Behind every successful man stands a
is a good woman.' (Traditiona		surprised mother-in-law.' (Hubert Humphrey)

'Behind every successful woman stands a good man, looking rather confused.' (E Stabetsi) 'Behind every successful man is a woman, behind her is his wife.' (Groucho Marx)

# both, either and neither

use both, either and neither to talk about <b>two</b> people or things. h (= == 'one and the other') has a plural noun. her (== 'one or the other') has a singular noun. ther (== 'not either, not one and not the other') has a singular noun.
you free on Monday or Wednesday?' 'I'm free on both days.' nich day is better for you?' 'Either day is OK.' out four o'clock?' 'No, sorry, I'm not free on either afternoon.' nat about Thursday or Saturday, then?' 'No, neither day is any good.'
Put in both, either or neither.
1 children are very tall.
2 I'm busy on afternoons.
3 'Which room can I have?' 'You can have room rooms have a view of the sea.'
4 students tried the exam, but student passed.
5 I'm lucky – I can write with hand.
5 It's very heavy: use hands to carry it.

- 7 ..... coat will look good on you. Why don't you buy one of them?
- 8 I don't like ..... coat. And ..... coats are very expensive.
- 9 'Do you want your holiday in July or August?' ..... month will be fine.'
- 10 ..... my brothers studied medicine, but ..... brother works as a doctor.
- 11 I paid for ..... tickets Ann's and mine.
- 12 'What do precipitate and recursion mean?' 'I don't know ...... word.'

### **2** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that come in twos

# Make sure you know all these words. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences, using *both*.

	ankle 🗸	direction	earring	end	eye	knee	parent	sex	side	sock	team
	I hurtboth ankles										
1	Cars are	parked on				of the	road.				
2		her		are	doctors						
3	Traffic or	n the road wa	as very slov	<i>i</i> n							
4			ar	e playir	ig really	/ badly.					
5	She hurt				skiing.						
6	I've lost .		my		– h	ave you	seen them	anywł	nere?		
7	Police we	ere stopping	cars at				of the	bridge.			
8	That chile	d has got ho	les in		of h	is					
9	I need ne	ew glasses. B	oth				are gettin	ig wors	e.		
10	His shop	sells clothes	for	•••••							

We use determiners (some, any, much, many, more, most, few, enough etc) with of before other determiners (the, this, my etc) and before personal pronouns (it, us etc). **DETERMINER + OF** DETERMINER WITHOUT OF • before the: some of the people here some people (NOT some of people) before this etc: too many of those books too many books l've got too many. before my etc: a few of our friends a few friends She has a few. • before it, us etc: enough of it most of them enough milk most students Change the expressions. 6 most mistakes (these) 1 not much milk (*the*) ..... 7 too many students (the) 8 more potatoes (those) 2 any friends (my) ..... 3 enough meat (that) 9 not much money (my) 5 a few ideas (her) Put in of or nothing (-). Some ...... people don't like her. 6 There wasn't enough ...... food for everybody. 7 I didn't have much ...... time to talk to her. 1 Can you lend me some more ...... money? 8 A few ...... us want to change things. 2 I've lost some ...... the addresses. 9 I spend a lot ..... my time in Scotland. 3 I don't like many ..... his books. 10 We haven't got any more ...... eggs. 4 She knows a few ...... those people. 11 I've got some ...... bread, but not much ...... 5 'Do you like jazz singers?' 'Some ...... 12 She didn't understand much ...... it. Note the difference between most people/things (in general) and most of the people/things (particular ones). Most people like dancing. Most of the people at the party were dancing. You can pay by credit card in most shops. Most of the shops here are open on Sundays. Put in most or most of the. 1 ..... people talk to themselves. 2 I know ...... people in our village. 3 ..... people on the bus had no tickets. 4 ..... people like music. 5 ..... cars are expensive. 6 There are students in ..... houses in this street. 7 ..... cats eat fish. 8 Our cat eats ...... things: fish, meat, biscuits, cheese, ... 9 I understand ...... words in this book. 10 She's very friendly: she gets on well with ..... people. NOTE: we often drop of after all and both. After a lot / lots / plenty we always use of with a noun or pronoun (see page 174). All (of) my friends. a lot of problems, (NOT a lot problems) Both (of) her parents.

# determiners: more practice

# Demonstratives; some and any. Put in the correct forms.

- 2 I didn't like ..... film yesterday. (this / that)
- 3 Who are ..... people in John's car? (these / those)
- 4 '..... is my friend Beth.' 'How do you do?' (this / that)
- 5 'Look at ..... earrings.' 'Where?' 'On my ears, of course!' (these / those)
- 6 You never tell me ..... about your work. (something / anything)
- 7 I didn't have ..... breakfast this morning. (some / any)
- 8 'This is good ice cream.' 'Would you like ..... more?' (some / any)
- 9 'What are you thinking about?' '.....' (Anything / Nothing)
- 10 We got to London ..... any difficulty. (with / without)

### Mixed determiners. Put in all, each, every, everybody, everything, both, either or neither.

- 1 Has ..... student arrived?
- 2 Hold the string at ..... end.
- 3 Tell me .....
- 4 She stayed in bed ..... day yesterday.
- 5 We're open ..... day except Tuesday.

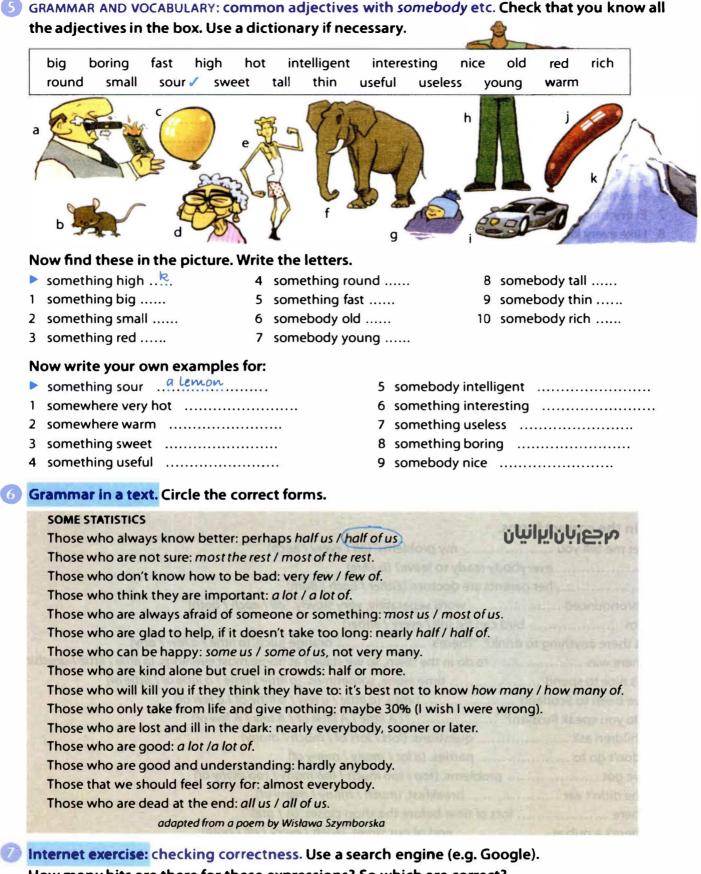
# 3 Mixed determiners. Circle the correct forms.

- 1 Can I give you my answer tomorrow? I need little / a little time to think.
- 2 His ideas are so difficult that few / a few people understand them.
- 3 There were only a little / a few people at the meeting.
- 4 I'd like to ask you few / a few questions, if I may.
- 5 Too much work, too little / few time.
- 6 James always has much / lots of money.
- 7 Were there much / many girls at the party?
- 8 A lot of my friends think / thinks I'm wrong.
- 9 Am I driving too / too much fast?
- 10 Are those shoes big enough / enough big?

# Of with determiners. Put in the correct forms.

- 1 ..... the children enjoyed the show. (Most / Most of)
- 2 ..... people like animals. (Most / Most of the)
- 3 ..... us are meeting at Joe's tomorrow evening. (A few / A few of)
- 4 Have you seen ...... good films recently? (any / any of)
- 6 She finished ...... the work, but not ..... it.
- (most / most of / all / all of)
- 7 Have you got ..... milk? (enough / enough of)
- 8 You ask ..... guestions. (too many / too many of)
- 10 I don't like ..... these books. (many / many of)

- 7 I can write with ..... hand.
- 8 I can write with ..... hands.
- 9 Do vou know ..... here?
- 10 Not ..... animals can swim.



# How many hits are there for these expressions? So which are correct?

"too much fast"	"too fast" 10,900,000: Correct
"everybody is"	"everybody are"
"everything are"	"everything is"
"most people"	"most of people"

# determiners: revision test

forrect the mistakes and rewrite the sentences.
Would you like little more coffee?
He spoke fast, but I understood all.
I'm hungry, but there isn't nothing to eat.
She has much money.
A lot of us was at the party last night.
Most of people think I'm right.
He was carrying a heavy bag in every hand.
Everything are very difficult.
I like every kinds of music.
I think you're driving too much fast.
If everybody are ready, we can go.

# 2 Circle the correct forms.

- 1 I'm enjoying this / that game.
- 2 This / That lesson was really hard.
- 3 I've had a postcard from these / those people we met in America.
- 4 What's this / that thing in the tree over there?
- 5 Hello. This / That is Mike. Can I speak to Anna?
- 6 There's somebody / anybody on the phone for you.
- 7 I need / I don't need some help.
- 8 Could I have some / any more coffee?
- 9 Anna hardly said *anything / nothing* all evening.
- 10 We never go somewhere / anywhere interesting.

# 3 Put in the correct forms.

- 1 Let me tell you ..... my problems. (all / every / each)
- 2 ..... everybody ready to leave? (Is /Are)
- 3 ..... her parents are doctors. (Either / Each / Both)
- 4 I pronounced ...... word separately, very slowly. (all / each / both)
- 5 Not ..... bird can fly. (all / every / either)
- 6 'Is there anything to drink?' 'There's ..... orange juice.' (a little / a few / any)
- 7 There was ...... to do in the town, so we stayed at home most evenings. (a little / little / anything)
- 8 It's nice to spend ...... time alone, sometimes. (a little / little / a little of / little of)
- 9 I've been to Scotland ..... times. (a little / a few / a little of / a few of)
- 10 'Do you speak Russian?' '.....' ( A little / A little of / A few / A few of)
- 11 Children ask ..... questions. (lots / lots of / much / many)
- 12 I don't go to ..... parties. (a lot / many / many of)
- 13 I've got ..... problems. (too / too much / too many / too many of)
- 14 She didn't eat ..... breakfast. (much / many / many of)
- 15 There ..... lots of time before the shop closes. (is / are)
- 16 There's a pub at ..... end of our street. (each / every / all / both)
- 17 She thinks she knows ...... (all / all of / everything)
- 18 | practise karate ...... day except Tuesday. (all / either / every)
- 19 'Which car can I have?' 'Sorry ..... car is free.' (neither / either / any / both)
- 20 I'd like ..... sweet. (something / something of)

# **SECTION 13** personal pronouns; possessives

# grammar summary

I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves each other

We use pronouns when it is not necessary, or not possible, to use a more exact noun phrase. Mrs Parker phoned. She said ... (The speaker uses the personal pronoun she because it is not necessary to repeat Mrs Parker.)

Ann talks to herself all the time. (It is unnecessary to repeat Ann.)

In this section we explain personal pronouns (I, me, you etc); possessives (my, your etc and mine, yours etc); reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself etc); and each other.

Indefinite pronouns (somebody, anything etc) are explained in Section 12, together with some and any. Relative pronouns (who, which etc) are explained in Section 19.



# irlanguage

Level 1

SUBJECTS	1	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
OTHER USES	me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them
2 Tell we/	HIM ETC TIONS: M HIM ETC WERS: M correct on't under id that?' ' us your a	<b>IE, HIM ETC</b> <b>answer.</b> rstand. 'It was <i>she</i> / I		Why is _ ?' 'It's me.' (I	Help him. lane with hir NOT <del>'I am.'</del> OF 'I'm tired.' 5 'Where's there.'	n? Is the t <del>if is !?</del> ) ' <b>Me too</b> .' s your broth are the child	ll them anyth at <mark>for</mark> us?	<b>'Yes, that's him.'</b> e / him over
<ol> <li>'Does yo</li> <li>'I'm seeir</li> <li>'Mr Carte</li> <li>Where an</li> <li>'Have yo</li> </ol>	our father ng Lucy a er's here.' re your fr ou spoker	and Pete on ' 'Ask riends? n to Mrs Lew	or them. ish?' ' Tuesday.' 'Oh to wait 're ver ris?' 'Not yet. in Germany	, give downstairs ry late. I'm going to	my lo ' o speak to	ove:	his evening.'	
We use <b>it, they</b> like Scotland, l					ntries and a cause it cost			
2 'Where d 3 'What die 4 'What sh 5 'Can I ha 6 'Did you 7 'Where a	are my ke did that c d you thi nall I do w ve John's enjoy yo are your <u>c</u>	eys?' ' at come from ink of the film with these left address?' 'l pur holiday in glasses?' 'l've	're on th m?' ' tters?' 'Just p I'll give n Ireland?' 'Ye e lost e concert?' 'H	came ir 's not ve ut ut to yo es,	ry good. on the ta ou this aftern 's a wond	ible: ioon: lerful place:		
We use it to tal It's five o'clock. It's 20 miles fror	It's Tu	uesday.	It's December	17th today.	It's my b	pirthday. It's raining.	ing and	
1 What tim	ne is it? It		questions b		3 What's t			

We don't usually leave out personal pronouns. (For exceptions in spoken English, see page 293.)	
Jan arrived in America in 1976. <b>He f</b> ound a job in a clothes shop. (NOT Found a job)	

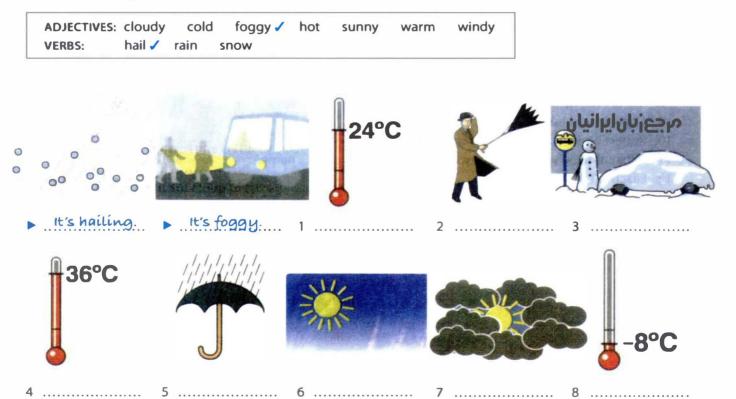
'What languages do you know?' 'I can speak some German.' (NOT '<del>Can speak</del> ...) 'Is your room OK?' 'Yes, I like i**t**.' (NOT <del>'Yes, I like.'</del>)

5 Write answers, using *I*, you etc.

- 'What time is the next train?' (8.30 / leaves / at) It Leaves at 8.30.
- 1 'Where's John?' (has / London / to / moved)
- 2 'Have you seen my glasses?' (on / chair / are / that)
- 3 'What do you think of my new shoes?' (like)
- .....
- 4 'What's Elisabeth going to do?' (medicine / study / going to / is)
- 5 'I'm learning Greek.' 'Is it easy?' (No / difficult / is)
- 6 'Where's my bicycle?' (put / in / the garage)
- 7 'What do you do at weekends?' (*play / tennis*)
- 8 'Do you like my picture?' (is / beautiful)

# **6** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: weather

Make sure you know the adjectives and verbs in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then label the pictures.



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.

1	-> m	y	This is <b>my</b> coat.
you	-> yo	our	That's <b>your</b> problem.
he	-> hi	is	John's visiting his mother.
she	-> he	er	Ann looks like her brothers.
it	-> its	s	The club has its meetings on Tuesdays.
we	-> 01	ur	Our friends Joe and Pat are staying with us.
they	-> th	neir	The children have spent all their money.
who?	-> wi	hose?	Whose coat is this?

### Possessives don't change for singular and plural.

our friend our friends (NOT ours friends)

Note how we use *his* and *her*: if a **boy** or **man** has something, we use *his*; if a **girl** or **woman** has something, we use *her*.

*I saw John and his sister yesterday.* (NOT ... John and her sister ...) Mary and her brother are students. (NOT Mary and his brother ...)

We often use possessives with parts of the body and clothes.

Phil has broken **his arm**. (NOT <del>Phil has broken the arm.</del>) She stood there with **her eyes** closed and **her hands** in **her pockets**.

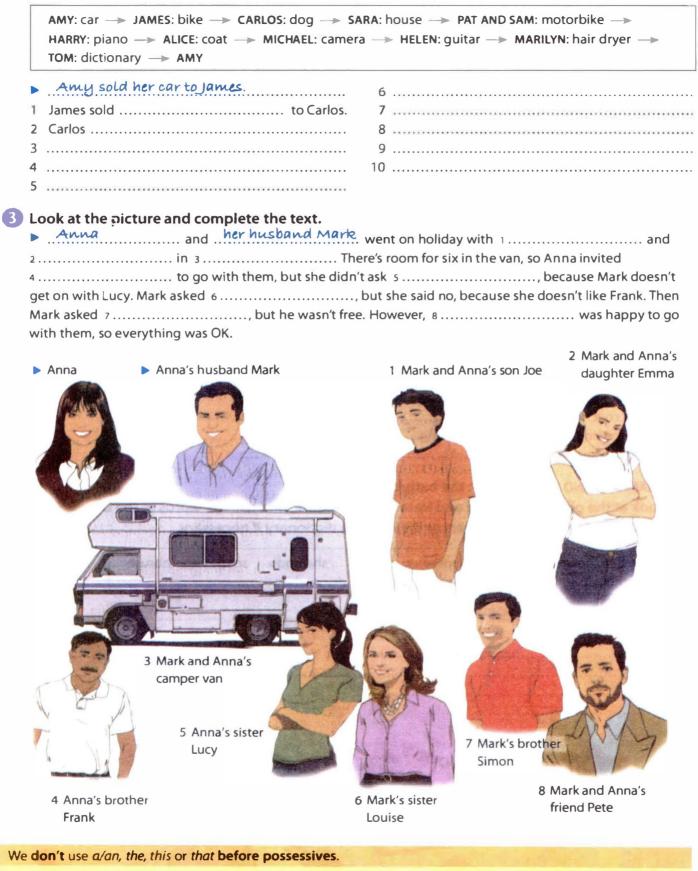
### Put in the correct possessives.

- We're taking ...... holiday in June.
- 1 Tina's lost ..... keys.
- 2 Peter says ..... wife is ill.
- 3 ..... car is that outside?
- 4 My bank has changed ..... name.
- 5 I'm going to sell ..... motorbike.
- 6 My students have got ..... exam next week.
- 7 Stephen writes to ..... girlfriend every day.
- 8 Maria lives with ..... father in Portugal.
- 9 Come in and take ..... coats off.
- 10 Robert broke ..... leg skiing last winter.
- 11 'What film did you see?' 'Sorry, I've forgotten ...... name.'
- 12 Elizabeth did well in ..... exams.



'Your loving son,'

### 2 Who sold what to who? Make sentences.



 we don't use d/an, the, this or that before possessives.

 my car (NOT the my car)
 this idea OR my idea (NOT this my idea)

 Don't confuse its (possessive) and it's (= 'it is' or 'it has' - see page 301). Compare:

 The company had its annual meeting yesterday. It's losing a lot of money.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES 189



# possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine.

DETERMINER	PRONOUN
my coat	mine
your car	yours
his chair	his
her book	hers

DETERMINER	PRONOUN
its price	
our house	ours
their problem	theirs

We use <i>mine, yours</i> etc w	thout nouns. Compare:

That's not **my** coat. This is mine. (NOT <del>This is the mine.</del>) Is that **your** car? I thought <mark>yours</mark> was a Ford. **Their** garden is much bigger than ours. (NOT ... <del>ours garden</del>)

We can use the question word whose with or without nouns.

Whose coat is that? Whose is that coat?

### Rewrite the sentences with possessive pronouns.

- That's my newspaper. That's mine.
- 1 I prefer our house to their house. I prefer our house to .....
- 2 Her hair looks better than your hair. Her hair .....
- 3 Your hair looks terrible.
- 4 That dog looks like our dog.
- 5 That car's not her car.
- 6 This coat isn't my coat.
- 7 My cooking is better than his cooking. .....
- 8 Is this bike your bike? .....

### 2 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: the bathroom

Look at the pictures of David and Natasha's bathroom, and use the words in the box to make sentences with *his, hers* or *theirs*. Use a dictionary if necessary.

dressing gown hair dryer make-up razor toothbrush toothpaste towel washcloth 🗸	
The red washcloth is his.	б
1 The is not theirs.	7
2	8
3	9
4	10
5	11



**190** PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES

# reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc

	himself she → herself it → itself → themselves
<ul> <li>We use myself, yourself etc when an object is the same product myself shaving this morning. (NOT <i>l-cut me</i>) We we tried to kill himself. (Different from <i>He tried to kill him.</i>)</li> <li>Circle the correct answer.</li> <li>1 She doesn't love him / himself.</li> <li>2 She likes looking at her / herself in the mirror.</li> <li>3 Old people often talk to them / themselves.</li> <li>Put in myself, yourself etc.</li> <li>1 I'm teaching</li></ul>	
We can also use <b>myself</b> etc to <b>emphasise</b> – to say 'that per it's best if you do it yourself. I want to speak to the manage Put in myself, yourself etc. 1 Did you cut your hair? 2 Peter and Ann built their house	
Note the difference between ourselves etc and each other.	<ul> <li>Each other or -selves?</li> <li>Henry and Barbara write to</li></ul>

by myself/yourself etc (= 'alone') enjoy myself/yourself etc Take care of yourself. Help yourself. (= 'Take what you want.') Make yourself comfortable.

**GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common expressions with reflexive pronouns** 

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *Im*, *don*, *t*) and full forms (for example *I am*, *do*, *not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# personal pronouns and possessives: more practice

1	2	3	4	5
l	me	my	mines	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	hers	hers	herself
it	it	its	-	itself
we	our	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
its they	them	their	theirs	theirselves

### **ID** Forms. There is one mistake in each column. Find the mistakes in columns 2–5 and correct them.

### Mixed structures. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 John and her wife have gone to Greece.
- 2 This coat is my. .....
- 3 Their house is much bigger than our. .....
- 4 That dog has hurt it's ear. .....
- 5 'What about this music?' 'I like.' .....
- 6 There are five miles to the nearest station.

### \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

- 7 We are Tuesday. .....
- 8 Where's the station?' 'He's over there.'
- 9 Their were all late. .....
- 10 'Did you like France?' 'I thought was wonderful.'

- 11 'Where are your gloves?' 'I've lost its.'
- 12 'Who did that?' 'It was I.'
- 13 'Which girl is your sister?' 'That's she in the red dress.' .....
- 14 Is cold again today.
- 15 'What's her name?' 'Have forgotten.'
- 16 Lucy broke the leg skiing. .....
- 17 'What's the date?' 'Is December 17th.'

### .....

- 18 Is that the my coat? .....
- 19 Who's car is this? .....
- 20 'Who's that?' 'I am.' .....

### Reflexives and each other. Complete the captions.







1 He's talking to ...... 2 She's talking to ...... 3 They're talking to .....

# Mixed pronouns. Put in a personal pronoun (*me*, you etc), a reflexive pronoun (*myself*, yourself etc), each other or nothing (–).

- 1 When I'm alone I don't always cook for .....
- 2 We love ..... very much, but we fight all the time.
- 3 When he looks at ..... in the mirror, he gets very depressed.
- 4 Don't help ..... I want to do it by .....
- 5 Anna and I write to ..... every week.
- 6 The children really enjoyed ..... at your party.
- 7 I'm sorry. I haven't got time to teach ...... to cook. You'll have to teach .....
- 8 'Can we have some coffee?' 'Sure. Help ......'
- 9 My girlfriend doesn't speak much Italian, and I don't speak much Chinese, so we sometimes have trouble understanding .....
- 10 Come in and make ..... comfortable.

### **192 PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES**

# **5 Reflexives. Circle** the right pronouns.

- 1 Of all my wife's relations | like myself / herself the best. (Joseph Cook)
- 2 Novels are about other people and poems are about *themselves / yourself*. (*Philip Larkin*)
- 3 An egotist: a person more interested in *himself / yourself* than in me. (*Ambrose Bierce*)
- 4 'How do you know you're God?' 'Simple. When I pray to Him I find I'm talking to myself / himself'. (Peter Barnes)
- 5 We grow neither better nor worse as we get old, but more like *ourselves / themselves*. (*May Lamberton Becker*)
- 6 You can always get someone to love you even if you have to do it *ourself / yourself*. (*Tom Masson*)

# 6 Grammar in a text. Choose words from the boxes to complete the text.

each other her his its themselves they your

My brother and 1 ..... girlfriend have known 2 ..... for about five years,

but 3 ...... 've only been going out together for six months.

he her him she their they we

Before that, he didn't like 4..... and 5..... didn't like him, but later 6..... became good friends, and started going out together.

her hers his its it's our their they they're

7 ...... both have small flats. His flat is in the town centre, and 8 ...... very comfortable.
9 ..... is a long way out, and it's not so nice. So they spend most of 10 ..... free time at 11 ..... place.

she's

he her hers herself him himself its it's

each other I my they them their themselves they're

# Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of these three expressions gets most hits? Can you see why?

"She broke her arm." "She broke the arm." "She broke his arm."



# personal pronouns and possessives: revision test

# 1 Complete the table.

1	me	my	mine	myself
	you			
he		his		
			hers	
	it		_	
		our		
				yourselves
they				

# **2** Correct the mistakes.

	I him haven't seen today. haven't seen him
1	'Is the soup OK?' 'Yes, I like.'
2	There are 20 miles to the shopping centre.
3	We are Friday.
4	Peter and her sister are in Brazil.
5	l like our garden better than their.
6	Olivia and Karl are nice. But theirs children!
7	Who's is this bag?
8	Ann and I write to ourselves every week.
9	I really enjoyed at your party.
10	I'm teaching me to play the guitar.
	Where's the my bike?
12	Is April 1st today.
	James fell off his horse and broke the arm.
	'What's Joe's phone number?' 'Have forgotten.'
15	I sat down, made me comfortable, and waited for her to say something.
3 Pi	ut in a personal pronoun ( <i>me, you</i> etc), a possessive ( <i>my, your</i> etc), a reflexive
	nyself, yourself etc), or each other.
	I don't like and he doesn't like
	Don't help
	Oliver and his girlfriend phone
	Thanks for yesterday evening. We really enjoyed
	like cooking for other people, but I don't much like cooking for
	Let's work together: the work will go much faster if we help
	Hi, Paul. Help in a minute.
	'Will you teach
	'Who broke the cup?' 'It wasn't
	'Which is your mother?' 'That's over there by the window.'
	My parents don't understand, and my boyfriend doesn't understand
	, and sometimes I don't understand
12	That girl keeps losing shoes.
	Bill's coming this evening with three sisters.
	I don't like looking at photos of
	Mary's mother's really nice, but I don't like
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# **SECTION 14 nouns**

# grammar summary

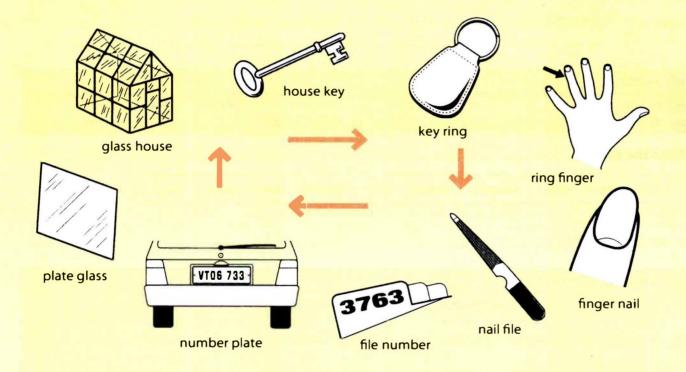
**Nouns** are mostly words for things and people – for example *house, tree, driver, child, water, idea, lesson.* Most nouns can come after *the*.

English nouns can be **countable** (we can say *two houses*) or **uncountable** (we can't say <del>two waters</del>). **Countable** nouns have **plurals** (*houses*), and we can use *a/an* with them (*a house, an idea*). **Uncountable** nouns have **no plurals**, and we **can't** use *a/an* before them.

Some English uncountable nouns are countable in some other languages (like furniture).

We can join two nouns:

- with a possessive 's or s' (for example my brother's wife, my parents' house).
- with a preposition (for example a piece of cake).
- directly one after the other (for example chocolate cake, a shoe shop).





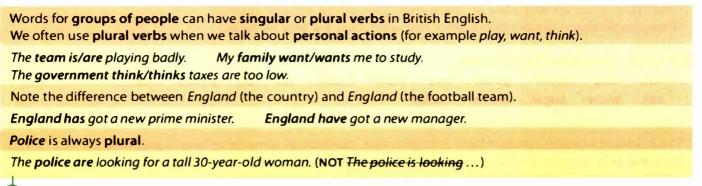


# singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box, boxes

IOW TO MAKE PLURALS         most noum: ++s       book $\rightarrow$ books       home $\rightarrow$ homes       car $\rightarrow$ cars         +s, -sh, -ch, -x; +es       bus $\rightarrow$ buses       wish $\rightarrow$ wishes       church $\rightarrow$ churches       fox $\rightarrow$ foxes         Write the plurals.       apple $\checkmark$ boss $\checkmark$ box brush cat chair church class dress garden gas glass hotel plane ship table time tree watch wish       +         +-S:	ne c <mark>ar</mark>	four cars	one aay	ten aays	one baby	four <b>babies</b>	one chila	six children	
most nouns: +-sbook $\rightarrow$ bookshome $\rightarrow$ homescar $\rightarrow$ cars-s, -sh, -ch, -x: +-esbus $\rightarrow$ buseswish $\rightarrow$ wisheschurch $\rightarrow$ churchesfox $\rightarrow$ foxesWrite the plurals.apple $\checkmark$ boss $\checkmark$ boxbrushcatchairchurchclassdressgardengasglasshotelplaneshiptabletimetreewatchwish+-s:.apples.applesbosses.adaption.adaption.adaption.adaption+-s:.apples.adaption.adaption.adaption.ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s.aday $\rightarrow$ daysmonkey $\rightarrow$ monkeystoy $\rightarrow$ toys.by, dy, fy, -gy, etc: -y-iesbaby $\rightarrow$ babieslady $\rightarrow$ ladiesWrite the plurals									
-s, sh, -ch, -x: +-es bus $\rightarrow$ buses wish $\rightarrow$ wishes church $\rightarrow$ churches for $\rightarrow$ foxes Write the plurals. apple $\checkmark$ boss $\checkmark$ box brush cat chair church class dress garden gas glass hotel plane ship table time tree watch wish +-S:	IOW TO M	MAKE PLURAL	.5	and all all all all all all all all all al		and the second			
Write the plurals.         apple / boss / box brush cat chair church class dress garden gas glass hotel plane ship table time tree watch wish         +-S:       apples         +-S:       apples         +-ES:       bossses         bounder to boss / box brush cat chair church class dress garden gas glass hotel plane ship table time tree watch wish         +-S:       apples         +-ES:       bossses         bossses       bossses         bounder to boss / box days       monkey → monkeys         -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s       day → days         -by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: -y → -ies       baby → babies         boy / city / copy country family guy holiday key party way         +-S:       .boys         -y → -IES:       cittles         common + men       balf → halves         half → halves       shelf → shelves         half → laves       wife → wives         boot → feet       penny → pence         half → laves       wife → wives         boot → teeth       peoson → people       leaf + leaves         common → women       potato → potatoes       loaf → loaves       sheep → sheep								urchan four four	1000
apple / boss / boxbrushcatchairchurchclassdressgardengasglasshotelplaneshiptabletimetreewatchwish+ -5:	-5, -51,	-cn, -x: + -es	ous		WISH	wishes chi		inches iox —> ioxe	s a
glasshotelplaneshiptabletimetreewatchwish+-S:	Write	the plurals	•						
glasshotelplaneshiptabletimetreewatchwish+-S:	apr	ole 🖌 boss -	/ box	brush cat	t chair	church clas	s dress	garden gas	
+ -ES: bosses OUNS ENDING IN -Y -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s day $\rightarrow$ days monkey $\rightarrow$ monkeys toy $\rightarrow$ toys -by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: -y $\rightarrow$ -ies baby $\rightarrow$ babies lady $\rightarrow$ ladies lorry $\rightarrow$ lorries Write the plurals. boy $\checkmark$ city $\checkmark$ copy country family guy holiday key party way +-S: boys -y $\rightarrow$ -IES: cittles OMMON IRREGULAR PLURALS pouse $\rightarrow$ mice child $\rightarrow$ children half $\rightarrow$ halves shelf $\rightarrow$ shelves tota $\rightarrow$ feet penny $\rightarrow$ pence knife $\rightarrow$ knives thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ feet penny $\rightarrow$ pence knife $\rightarrow$ knives thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ teeth person $\rightarrow$ people leaf $\rightarrow$ leaves wife $\rightarrow$ wives han $\rightarrow$ men life $\rightarrow$ lives boar $\rightarrow$ loaves sheep $\rightarrow$ sheep								ga	
+ -ES: bosses OUNS ENDING IN -Y -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s day $\rightarrow$ days monkey $\rightarrow$ monkeys toy $\rightarrow$ toys -by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: -y $\rightarrow$ -ies baby $\rightarrow$ babies lady $\rightarrow$ ladies lorry $\rightarrow$ lorries Write the plurals. boy $\checkmark$ city $\checkmark$ copy country family guy holiday key party way +-S: boys -y $\rightarrow$ -IES: cittles OMMON IRREGULAR PLURALS pouse $\rightarrow$ mice child $\rightarrow$ children half $\rightarrow$ halves shelf $\rightarrow$ shelves tota $\rightarrow$ feet penny $\rightarrow$ pence knife $\rightarrow$ knives thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ feet penny $\rightarrow$ pence knife $\rightarrow$ knives thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ teeth person $\rightarrow$ people leaf $\rightarrow$ leaves wife $\rightarrow$ wives han $\rightarrow$ men life $\rightarrow$ lives boar $\rightarrow$ loaves sheep $\rightarrow$ sheep		011	lec						
+-ES: bosses OUNS ENDING IN -Y -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s day $\rightarrow$ days monkey $\rightarrow$ monkeys toy $\rightarrow$ toys -by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ -ies baby $\rightarrow$ babies lady $\rightarrow$ ladies lorry $\rightarrow$ lorries Write the plurals. boy $\checkmark$ city $\checkmark$ copy country family guy holiday key party way +-S: boys - $\gamma \rightarrow$ -IES: cittics OMMON IRREGULAR PLURALS house $\rightarrow$ mice child $\rightarrow$ children half $\rightarrow$ halves shelf $\rightarrow$ shelves thief $\rightarrow$ thieves thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ feet penny $\rightarrow$ pence knife $\rightarrow$ knives thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ feet penny $\rightarrow$ pence knife $\rightarrow$ knives thief $\rightarrow$ thieves bot $\rightarrow$ teeth person $\rightarrow$ people leaf $\rightarrow$ leaves wife $\rightarrow$ wives han $\rightarrow$ men life $\rightarrow$ lives loaf $\rightarrow$ loaves sheep $\rightarrow$ sheep	+ -5:								
IOUNS ENDING IN -Y         -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s       day $\rightarrow$ days       monkey $\rightarrow$ monkeys       toy $\rightarrow$ toys         -by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ -ies       baby $\rightarrow$ babies       lady $\rightarrow$ ladies       lorry $\rightarrow$ lorries         Write the plurals.	+ -ES:	bos	ses						
$-ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s$ $day \rightarrow days$ monkey $\rightarrow$ monkeys $toy \rightarrow toys$ $-by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: -y \rightarrow -ies$ $baby \rightarrow babies$ $lady \rightarrow ladies$ $lorry \rightarrow lorries$ Write the plurals. $boy \checkmark$ city $\checkmark$ copy country family guy holiday key party way $+-S:$ $boys.$ $-Y \rightarrow -IES:$ .cittlesOMMON IRREGULAR PLURALSnouse $\rightarrow$ micechild $\rightarrow$ childrenhalf $\rightarrow$ halvesshelf $\rightarrow$ shelvesthief $\rightarrow$ theethperson $\rightarrow$ peopleleaf $\rightarrow$ leaveswife $\rightarrow$ liveslife $\rightarrow$ livesnoman $\rightarrow$ menpotato $\rightarrow$ potatoesloaf $\rightarrow$ loavessheep $\rightarrow$ sheep									
-ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-sday $\rightarrow$ daysmonkey $\rightarrow$ monkeystoy $\rightarrow$ toys-by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ -iesbaby $\rightarrow$ babieslady $\rightarrow$ ladieslorry $\rightarrow$ lorriesWrite the plurals. $boy \checkmark$ city $\checkmark$ copy country family guy holiday key party way+-S:.boys-ites.cittles·Y $\rightarrow$ -IES:.cittlescommon vertices.cittlescommon vertice.child $\rightarrow$ childrenhalf $\rightarrow$ halves.shelf $\rightarrow$ shelvestheif $\rightarrow$ teeth.person $\rightarrow$ peopleleaf $\rightarrow$ leaves.wife $\rightarrow$ wiveslife $\rightarrow$ livesnoman $\rightarrow$ menpotato $\rightarrow$ potatoesloaf $\rightarrow$ loavessheep $\rightarrow$ sheep									
$\begin{array}{c} -by, -dy, -fy, -gy, etc: -y \rightarrow -ies  baby \rightarrow babies  lady \rightarrow ladies  lorry \rightarrow lorries \\ \hline \begin{tabular}{lllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$	OUNS E	NDING IN -Y						TESSIE .	
Write the plurals. $boy \checkmark$ city \checkmark copy country family guy holiday key party way $+ -5:$ $boy 5.$ $-Y \rightarrow -IES:$ citiesOMMON IRREGULAR PLURALSOMMON IRREGULAR PLURALSoutrieschild $\rightarrow$ childrenhalf $\rightarrow$ halvesshelf $\rightarrow$ shelvesthief $\rightarrow$ thickesboy 5.···································	-ау, -еу	ı, -oy, -uy: + -	s //	day →	- days	monkey —	monkeys	toy -> toys	
boy city copycountryfamilyguyholidaykeypartyway+-S:boys-Y -> -IES:citiesOMMON IRREGULAR PLURALSnouse -> micechild -> childrenhalf -> halvesshelf -> shelvesnouse -> micechild -> childrenhalf -> halvesshelf -> shelvesnouse -> feetpenny -> penceknife -> knivesthief -> thievesnot -> feetperson -> peopleleaf -> leaveswife -> wivesnon -> menlife -> liveslife -> livesnom an -> womenpotato -> potatoesloaf -> loavessheep -> sheep				s baby -	→ babies	lady -> lo	adies	lorry> lorries	
poth -> teethperson -> peopleleaf -> leaveswife -> wivesnan -> menlife -> livesvoman -> womenpotato -> potatoesloaf -> loavessheep -> sheep	Write boy + -S:	the plurals	copy c				key party	way	••
roman> women potato> potatoes loaf> loaves sheep> sheep	Write boy + -S: -Y -> OMMON	the plurals	copy c js es PLURALS child	ountry far	mily guy	holiday k alf → halves	shelf	shelves	•••
	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON	the plurals	copy constants sees PLURALS child penny	ountry far → children y → pence	mily guy	holiday k alf → halves nife → knives	shelf thief	f → shelves f → thieves	
tomato tomatoes sen serves insti insti	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house bot -> both -> both ->	the plurals	copy constants copy constants child penny perso	country far → children y → pence n -→ people	mily guy 	holiday k alf → halves nife → knives paf → leaves fe → lives	shelf thief wife	shelves → thieves → wives	
	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house bot -> both -> both ->	the plurals	copy constants	country far $\rightarrow$ children $\gamma \rightarrow$ pence $n \rightarrow$ people $o \rightarrow$ potato	mily guy	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ knives haf $\rightarrow$ leaves fe $\rightarrow$ lives haf $\rightarrow$ loaves	shelf thief wife shee	f → shelves f → thieves f → wives p → sheep	
	Write boy +-S: $-Y \rightarrow$ COMMON house bot bot $\rightarrow$ both bot $\rightarrow$ coman -	the plurals	COPY C S COPY C S S C C C C C C C C C C C C C	country far country far coun	mily guy hi ki es la toes se	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ knives haf $\rightarrow$ leaves here $\rightarrow$ lives haf $\rightarrow$ loaves here $\rightarrow$ selves	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	f→ shelves f→ thieves → wives p → sheep → fish	
	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house bot -> both -> hon -> yoman	the plurals	copy constraints of the second	country far country far coun	mily guy hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ halve	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	f→ shelves f→ thieves → wives p → sheep → fish	
his bus runs at weekends. Most of the buses run at weekends.	Write boy +-S: -Y -> COMMON house pot -> poth -> hon -> roman	the plurals √ city √ -IES: citi I IRREGULAR F → mice feet - teeth men → women resent verbs uns at weeker	COPY C S COPY C S C C C C C C C C C C C C C	country far country far coun	mily guy hi ki bes la toes se ter singular ses run at we	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ knives haf $\rightarrow$ leaves haf $\rightarrow$ leaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ selves hat <b>plural</b> now hat <b>plural</b> now hat <b>plural</b> now	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	f→ shelves f→ thieves → wives p → sheep → fish	
his <b>bus runs</b> at weekends. Most of the <b>buses run</b> at weekends. Iy <b>brother has</b> a small flat. Both my <b>brothers have</b> good jobs.	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house both -> both -> forman forman	the plurals	copy constructions Copy c	country far country far country far country far country far country far country far country far country far people country people country people country people country people country people country far people country people country peo	mily guy hi hi ki bes la toes se ter singular tes run at we bers have go	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ knives haf $\rightarrow$ leaves haf $\rightarrow$ leaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ selves hat <b>plural</b> now hat <b>plural</b> now hat <b>plural</b> now	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	f→ shelves f→ thieves → wives p → sheep → fish	
his <b>bus runs</b> at weekends. <b>Most of the buses run</b> at weekends. <b>Both my brothers have</b> good jobs. Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house both -> both -> both -> homan imple pr his bus r ly broth Put in	the plurals √ city √ -JES: citi IRREGULAR F > mice feet - teeth men → women resent verbs uns at weeker er has a small a plural nou	copy co ses PLURALS child penny person potate tomate have diffe nds. M I flat. E	country far country far country far country far country far country far country far pence pence pence pence pence pence pence potato to	mily guy history ter singular ters nave go	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ knives haf $\rightarrow$ leaves haf $\rightarrow$ leaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ loaves haf $\rightarrow$ selves had plural now had plural now had plus.	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	f → shelves f → thieves f → wives p → sheep fish e 16).	
his bus runs at weekends.       Most of the buses run at weekends.         Ay brother has a small flat.       Both my brothers have good jobs.         Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.       7 My are giving me trouble. (too	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house both -> both -> both -> his bus r his bus r his bus r hy broth Put in > The	the plurals	copy constructions of similar constructions of	country far $\rightarrow$ children $\gamma \rightarrow$ pence $n \rightarrow$ people $o \rightarrow$ potato to $\rightarrow$ tomat rent forms aff lost of the bus Both my broth ple present in Scotlan	mily guy hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi hi	holiday alf $\rightarrow$ halves hife $\rightarrow$ knives hife $\rightarrow$ leaves haf	shelf thief wife sheep fish - JINS (see page	f → shelves f → thieves f → thieves f → wives p → sheep → fish e 16). are giving me trouble. (are giving me trouble. (are giving me trouble.)	
his bus runs at weekends.       Most of the buses run at weekends.         hy brother has a small flat.       Both my brothers have good jobs.         Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.         Their homes       Are         In Scotland. (be)       7 My       My         In Our       Play a lot of football. (child)       8 Those       cost too much. (watch)	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house bot -> bot -> b	the plurals	copy co S. PLURALS child penny person potate tomat tomat have diffe nds. M Iflat. E ns or sim are 	country far country far country far country far country far country far country far pence pence pence people potato to> potato to> tomat country forms aff cost of the bus control the bus	mily guy history ter singular tes run at we hers have go t verbs. hd. (be) all. (child)	holiday alf — halves hife — knives hife — knives hife — leaves heat — leaves heat — loaves heat — loaves heat - loaves	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	$f \rightarrow shelves$ $f \rightarrow thieves$ $f \rightarrow wives$ $p \rightarrow sheep$ fish e 16). ere giving me trouble. ( <i>i</i> cost too much. ( <i>watc</i> )	
his bus runs at weekends.       Most of the buses run at weekends.         Ay brother has a small flat.       Most of the buses run at weekends.         Both my brothers have good jobs.         Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.         Their homes       Are         I Our       play a lot of football. (child)       7 My       My       are giving me trouble. (too         I Our       play a lot of football. (child)       8 Those       cost too much. (watch)         I Those       don't look English. (student)       9 Most       Cry at night. (baby)	Write boy +-S: -Y -> OMMON house pot -> pot -> poth -> his bus r his bus r hy brothe Put in - The 1 Our 2 Tho	the plurals √ city √ -IES: citi I IRREGULAR F → mice feet - teeth men → women resent verbs uns at weeker er has a small plural nou eir homes	copy constructions of the second seco	country far country far country far country far country far country far country far country far people country people country peopl	mily guy hi ki bes la toes se ter singular tes run at we bers have go t verbs. hd. (be) all. (child) h. (student)	holiday alf -> halves hife -> knives hife -> leaves haf -> leaves haf -> loaves haf -> loaves haf -> loaves haf -> selves had plural nou hod jobs. 7 My 8 Those 9 Most	shelf thief wife sheep fish -	f→ shelves f→ thieves → wives p → sheep → fish e 16). ere giving me trouble. (in cost too much. (watch cost too much. (watch)	
his bus runs at weekends. Ay brother has a small flat.       Most of the buses run at weekends. Both my brothers have good jobs.         Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.       Their homes       Are       Most of the buses run at weekends. Both my brothers have good jobs.         Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.       7 My       are giving me trouble. (tool 1 Our         In Scotland. (be)       7 My       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       10 The       Cost too much. (match)	Write boy +-S: -Y> OMMON house both both both	the plurals √ city √ boy	copy co S. Copy co S. S. Copy co S. S. S. S. S. S. S. S. S. S.	country far country far country far country far country far country far country far country far people country people country peopl	mily guy hi hi ki bes la toes se ter singular tes run at we bers have go t verbs. hd. (be) all. (child) h. (student) you. (want)	holiday alf — halves hife — knives af — leaves fe — lives haf — loaves elf — selves r and plural nou eekends. hod jobs. 7 My 8 Those 9 Most 10 The	shelf thief wife sheep fish - JINS (see page	$f \rightarrow shelves$ $f \rightarrow thieves$ $f \rightarrow wives$ $p \rightarrow sheep$ $f \rightarrow fish$ e 16). ere giving me trouble. ( <i>i</i> cost too much. ( <i>watc</i> ). cry at night. ( <i>baby</i> ) are all wet. ( <i>match</i> )	
Ay brother has a small flat.       Both my brothers have good jobs.         Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.         Their homes       are         In Scotland. (be)       7 My         In Our       play a lot of football. (child)       8 Those         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most         In Our       Cost too much. (watch)         In Scotland. (be)       9 Most	Write boy +-S: -Y -> COMMON house both -> both -> house both -> house -	the plurals	copy co S. PLURALS PLURALS child penny person potate tomat tomat have diffe nds. M Iflat. E ns or sim are play a are alw	country far country far country far country far country far country far country far country far people country people country peopl	mily guy his guy his for the second toes lo toes second ter singular ter singular t	holiday alf> halves hife> knives hife> leaves here> lives haf> loaves here> loaves	shelf thief wife sheep fish - uns (see page a those	f→ shelves f→ thieves f→ thieves f→ wives p→ sheep fish e 16). e 16). are giving me trouble. ( <i>i</i> cost too much. ( <i>watc</i> ) cry at night. ( <i>baby</i> ) are all wet. ( <i>match</i> ) ? (guy)	: <b>h</b> )

Level 1

# singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors



# Group nouns ( $\checkmark$ ) or not (x)?

army ..... audience ..... beach ..... class ...... club ...... Communist Party ...... company ...... crowd ...... idea ...... lunch ...... guestion ...... room ...... school ...... train ......

Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in plural verbs from the box.

are have haven't need 🗸 play want sav

0	The club	A her to go to university	
1	The company	B only classical music	
2	Her family	C scored a goal this year	
3	The orchestra	D that they're losing money	
4	This team	E	
5	England	Fasking for information about the accident	
6	The police	G just lost against Germany	

Some nouns are always plural. Some common examples: trousers jeans tights shorts pants pyjamas glasses scissors **Those** trousers **are** too short. (NOT That trouser ...) Where are my glasses?



Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

black trousers blue jeans 🗸 dark glasses scissors shorts silk pyjamas tiahts

- 1 | can't see very well with these .....
- 2 It's hot today. I'm going to put on .....
- 3 These ..... don't cut very well.
- 4 You'd better put on your best ..... for the interview.
- 5 She always sleeps in .....
- 6 I've got a hole in my ..... again.

We can also use the expression a pair of with these nouns.

There is a pair of scissors on your chair. (NOT ... a scissors ...)

three pairs of jeans (NOT three jeans) two pairs of pyjamas (NOT two pyjamas)

# countable and uncountable nouns



**Countable nouns are words like** *car, book, chair.* They can be singular or plural. Uncountable nouns are words like *petrol, rice, water.* They are only singular.

### Circle) the uncountable nouns.

cup dog flower quitar oil river love meat music ear photo salt snow sugar women wool

The following words are uncountable in English (but countable in some other languages). They are normally only singular. We can use some with them, but not a/an. (NOT a travel, a furniture) advice baggage bread furniture hair information knowledge luck luggage news spaghetti (and macaroni etc) travel work

I need some advice. This furniture is too expensive. His hair is very long. Travel teaches you a lot.

2 Put *a* with the countable nouns and *some* with the uncountable nouns.

bread	cheque	baggage	fridge	furniture
handbag	holiday	knowledge	luck	
newspaper	problem	station	travel	work

Out in suitable uncountable nouns from the box.

advice baggage furniture hair information 🗸 news spaghetti travel work

- Can you give me some information about the school?
- 1 'Have you got much .....?' 'No, just one small bag.'
- 2 I live 50 kilometres from my work, so I spend a lot of money on .....

3 This ..... isn't very good. You've cooked it for too long.

- 4 I've stopped reading the papers. The ..... is always bad.
- 5 I don't know what to do. Can you give me some .....?

6 All this ..... is from my mother's house.

7 I've got too much ...... and not enough free time.

8 I like your ..... when it's long like this.

 To give a countable meaning, we usually use a longer expression or a different word.

 Can you give me a piece of advice?
 Did you have a good journey?

Put in words or expressions from the box.

a piece of advice a piece of baggage 
a piece of information
a piece of news a job a journey

- a suitcase a piece of baggage
- 1 selling cars
- 2 driving from London to Edinburgh
- 3 'Don't marry him, dear.'
- 4 'The next train leaves at 10.15.'
- 5 'There has been a big train crash.'

For articles with countable and uncountable nouns, see page 153.

Some words can be countable or uncountable, with different meanings.

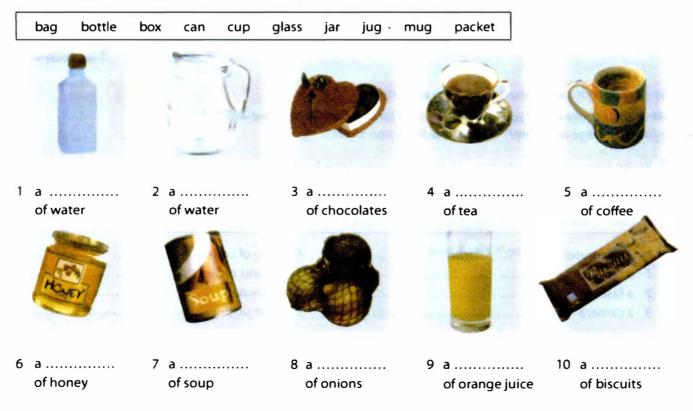
A light was on in the house. (= 'a lamp')Light travels at 300,000 km a second.I've seen that film three times.Time goes fast when you're having fun.I had a strange experience yesterday.We need a secretary with experience.Three coffees, please. (= 'cups of coffee')I drink too much coffee.

# **S** Look at the pictures and put in descriptions from the box.



# **6** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: containers

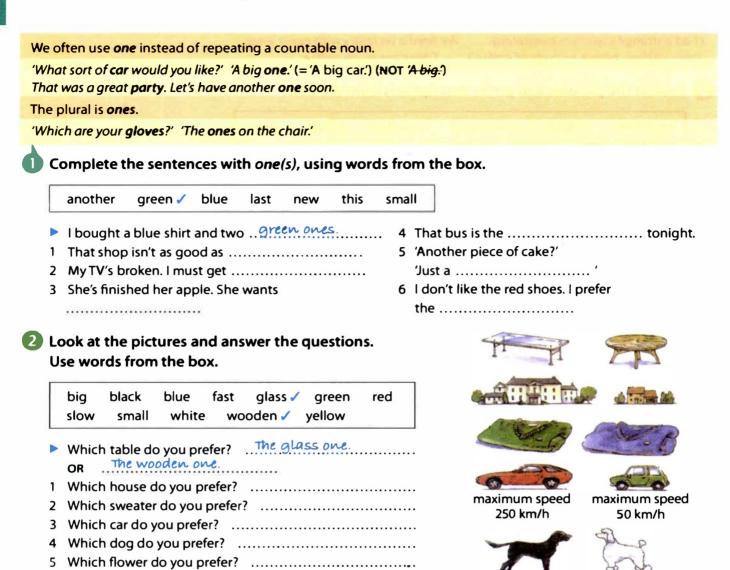
Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then use them to complete the descriptions under the pictures.



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *I am. do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

**NOUNS 199** 

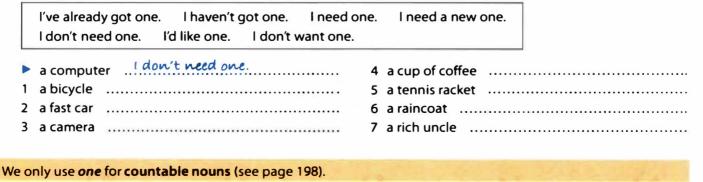
# one and ones a big one; the ones on the chair



### We say one, not a one, when there is no adjective.

'What sort of cake would you like?' 'One with a lot of cream.' (NOT 'A one with ...-') 'Is there a garage near here?' 'There's one in Weston Street.'

Write some true sentences. Use the expressions in the box.



'Would you like some coffee?' 'Yes, black (coffee), please.' (NOT <del>'Yes, black one ....')</del>

# 's and s' possessive: forms son's, sons', men's

# HOW TO MAKE POSSESSIVE FORMS singular nouns: +'s my son's car John and Iris's flat the cat's leg most plural nouns: +' those boys' passports the babies' toys our wives' stories plurals without s +'s most children's poems three men's names the people's voices

### Make possessive forms by adding 's or '.

- my mother. S... nose
- my sisters..... names
- 1 Alice and John..... house
- 2 artists..... ideas
- 3 my dog..... ears
- 4 those dogs..... ears
- 5 those men..... faces
- 6 his girlfriend..... piano
- 7 their grandchild..... birthday
- 8 their grandchildren..... school
- 9 ladies..... hats

- 10 my aunt and uncle..... shop
- 11 Patrick..... books
- 12 a photographer..... job
- 13 our postman..... cat
- 14 postmen..... uniforms
- 15 Joyce..... pen
- 16 the thief..... bag
- 17 the thieves..... car
- 18 that woman..... brother
- 19 most women..... desks
- 20 your mum and dad..... bedroom

### Correct the mistakes and write the correct sentences.

	This is the children's room. This is the children's room.
1	That big building is a girl's school.
2	Is this your mothers' office?
3	May I speak to the bosses secretary?
4	What's Jane and Peters' address?
5	This is a picture of my grandparent's wedding.
6	Do you know John' new girlfriend?
7	She writes for a womens' magazine.
8	Is that Roberts' car?
9	Let me have Ruth's and Jack phone number.
10	What's your wive's job?

### We can use more than one possessive noun together.

John's mother's cat Helen's boss's car My father's secretary's sister's baby

# Write the possessive expressions. My son has a teacher. She has a husband. My sister has a secretary. She has an office Jane has children. They have bicycles. Rob has a family. They have a holiday flat. Olivia has a boyfriend. He has a cat. The Prime Minister has a wife. She has a problem. Luke has an uncle. He has a farm. Mr Patterson has a doctor. She has a car. The President has a niece. She has a business. Charlotte has a boss. He has a wife. The Director has a husband. He has a friend. She has a mother. She has a cousin.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# 's and s' possessive: use lan's car; the boss's car

	essive nouns with 's or s' <b>take the place</b> of <i>the</i> .
the c	ar that belongs to lan $\rightarrow$ lan's car (NOT lan's the car) the shoes that belong to Jo $\rightarrow$ Jo's shoes
But a	possessive noun can have <b>its own article</b> .
the c	ar that belongs to the boss
the s	hoes that belong to the children> the children's shoes
	lake 's or s' possessive structures.
	The dog belongs to Joe. <u>Joe's dog</u>
	The dog belongs to the postman. the postman's dog
1	The house belongs to Astrid.
2	The house belongs to the doctors.
3	The book belongs to Oliver and Carla.
4	The car belongs to the teacher.
5	The money belongs to the girls.
6	The money belongs to Susan.
	hange the sentences.
	The classes are using the new books. (the French teachers)
	The French teachers' classes are using the new books.
1	The car is parked in front of the house. ( <i>the builder</i> ; Anna)
2	
2	Do you know the address? ( <i>the tall woman</i> )
2	Their badtime is eight o'slock (the shildson)
3	Their bedtime is eight o'clock. ( <i>the children</i> )
4	The brothers are all in the army. (Alice and Pat)
Weu	se <b>possessive</b> 's and s' mostly to talk about people and animals, not things: for example their <b>possessions</b> ,
	rience, relationships (family, friends etc), parts of the body.
	purse Ann's English lessons Ann's holiday Ann's husband Ann's friend
	ad's book (NOT the book of my dad) my horse's ears (NOT the ears of my horse)
BUT	he roof of the house (NOT t <del>he house's roof</del> ) the top of my desk (NOT <del>my desk's top</del> )
14	rite two sentences for each item.
	Is the door open? (Paul; the library) Is Paul's door open? Is the door of the library open?
1	What's the name? (your brother; that book)
1	what's the name: (your brother, that book)
2	Is there anything in the pockets? ( <i>the children</i> ; <i>that coat</i> )
-	is there arything in the poekets. (the elimoren, that coat)
3	You can see the church from the window. ( <i>Emma</i> ; the living room)
4	Why are the arms so dirty? (John; your chair)

### With some common time words, we add 's to say how long something takes.

a second's thought a minute's silence

Choose a time expression for each sentence. Use the words in the box.

second / minute hour day week year

'Who was it?' I asked. There was a pause before she answered. <u>A second's pause</u>.
After university, Les took a course to become a teacher.
Lin had a holiday with her mother earlier this year.
Oxford is nearly 600 km from Edinburgh – that's a journey.
Sita's new job will mean a drive to work every morning.
There was a wait while the computer started up.

We can use noun + 's or s' without another noun, if the meaning is clear.'Whose coat is that?' 'Harry's.'My hair is dark, but my children's is fair.We also use noun + 's or s' without another noun for offices, churches and some shops.Ibought this at Sainsbury's.I hate going to the dentist's.She sings at St. John's.

**)** Look at the picture. There is some confusion. Complete the sentences as in the example.



- The handbag is probably .....
   The gun .....
- 3 The crown ......
- 4 The big shoes .....
- 5 The document case .....

 We often use noun + 's or s' without another noun to talk about people's homes.

 I saw Monica at June and Barry's on Friday.

 Lee is going to his sister's next weekend.

# Other people's homes: write about two or more things in your past. Use at ...'s or at ...s'.

I met my girlfriend at Judy's. I went to my grandparents' for Easter.

We can put one noun before another when we are talking about a kind of thing or person. The first noun is usually singular, even if it has a plural meaning.

milk chocolate = a kind of chocolate, with milk in itchocolate milk = a kind of milk, with chocolate in itflower shop = shop that sells flowers (NOT flowers shop)corner shop = a shop on a cornerhotel receptionist = a receptionist in a hotelhistory teacher = a teacher who teaches history

Use the words in the box to make noun + noun structures. You can use some of the words more than once.

army aspirin business corner flower garden home email jazz kitchen milk perfume police prison village opera pop

- 3 kinds of shop flower shop, corner \_ shopvillage shop
- 1 3 kinds of address
- 2 3 kinds of bottle
- 3 3 kinds of singer
- 4 2 kinds of wall
  5 3 kinds of uniform
- 6 2 kinds of chair

# Change the expressions in the box to noun + noun structures, and put the beginnings and ends together. Remember: don't make the first noun plural.

clothes for babies make-up for eyes 
building with offices in it food for dogs engineer who works on computers school of languages drawer for knives

Judy wears too much ...eye make-up.... to the office A but he couldn't repair it. ..... 0 They're going to put a big ..... 1 B I want to learn Japanese. ..... 2 Our dog won't eat .....; - does she think she's at a party? .... С 3 The ..... looked at my printer, D he only wants fresh meat or fish. ..... Do you know of a good .....? 4 Ε when my brother was born. ..... My aunt made some lovely ..... 5 F at the corner of our street. ..... 6 Why are the spoons in the .....? G And who put them there? .....

We often use noun + noun structures to talk about what things are made of.

# Write noun + noun names for these.

- soup with chicken in it \_\_\_\_\_\_ chicken soup
- 1 a box made of metal
- 2 cakes with chocolate in them .....
- 3 a fork made of plastic
- 4 soup made of vegetables .....
- 5 a jacket made of leather
- 6 shirts made of cotton
- 7 a plate made of paper .....
- 8 salad with tomatoes in it .....
- 9 a wall made of stones .....

### We often use **noun + noun** structures when the second noun is made from a **verb + er**.

a truck driver = a person who drives a truck a hair dryer = a machine for drying hair

### What do we call these people or things?

- This person drives a bus. ... a bus driver
- 1 This person manages an office.
- 2 This machine makes coffee.
- 3 This person drinks coffee.
- 4 This person loves animals.
- 5 This stuff cleans floors.
- 6 This person plays tennis.
- 7 This thing opens letters. .....
- 8 This person smokes cigars. .....
- 9 This person climbs mountains.

### NOUN + NOUN STRUCTURE OR 'S / S' POSSESSIVE STRUCTURE

We mostly use 's or s' when the first noun possesses, experiences or has a relationship with the second noun. We use a noun + noun structure for other kinds of meaning. So things do not usually take 's /s'. Compare:

the dog's name (possession: the dog has a name) Ed's brother (relationship: Ed has a brother) BUT a shoe brush (the shoe doesn't possess or experience the brush; shoes don't have relationships)

### Circle the correct answers.

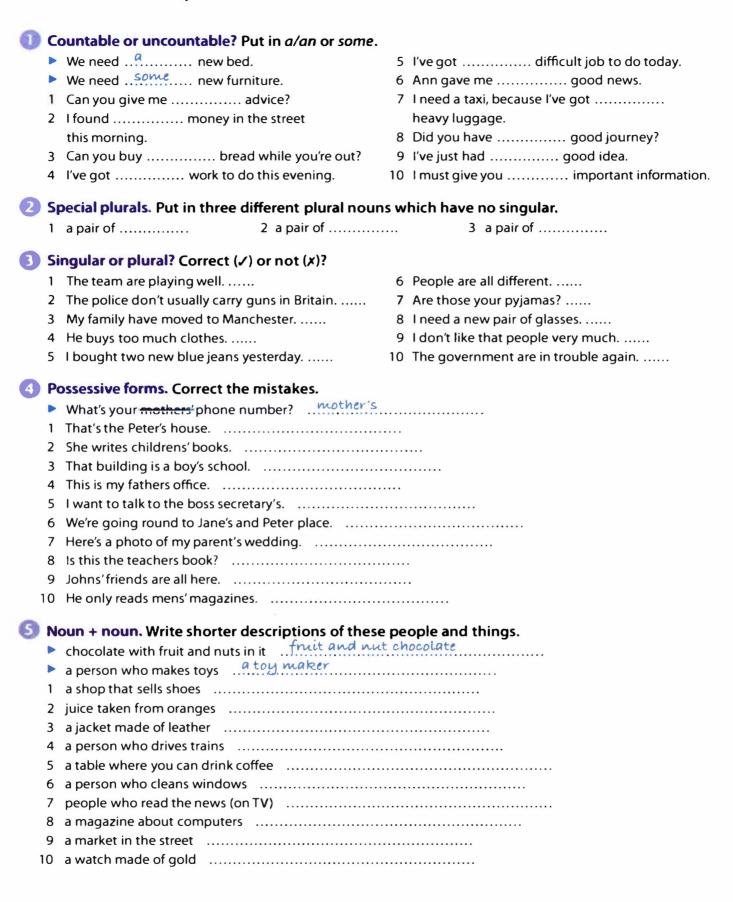
- 1 Could I borrow your telephone's book / telephone book for a minute?
- 2 Is that your teacher's book / teacher book, or is it yours?
- 3 Elizabeth's journey / Elizabeth journey took her to five continents.
- 4 The train's journey / train journey from Huntsville to Victoria was very boring.
- 5 My aunt's home / aunt home is full of beautiful furniture.
- 6 Our holiday's home / holiday home is in the French Alps.
- 7 My brother's interview / brother interview with the president will be on the radio today.
- 8 I was very nervous about my job's interview / job interview.

### **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: one-word noun + noun structures**

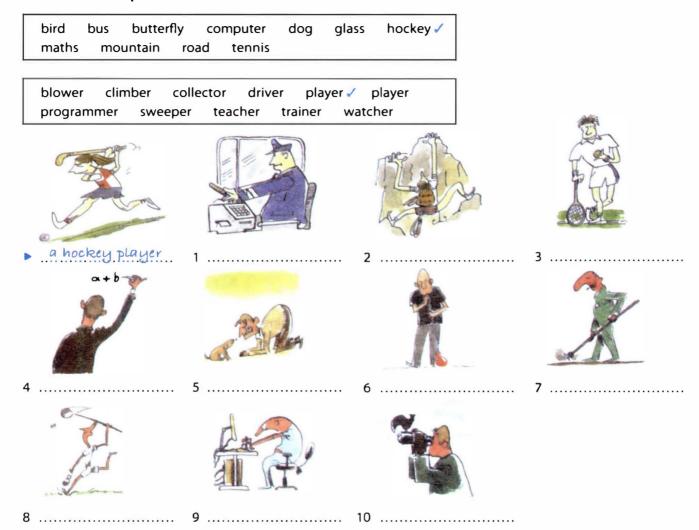
Some short **noun** + **noun** structures are so **common** that we write them as **one word**, for example: armchair bathroom bedroom bookshop businessman businesswoman hairbrush handbag raincoat postman postwoman schoolchild suitcase toothbrush toothpaste



## nouns: more practice



# 6 Noun + noun. What are these people? Put together words from the two boxes and write the descriptions.



### **Grammar in a text.** Read the text and circle the correct forms.

In the centre of Mappleford/ Mappleford centre there's a large ancient covered market with all sorts of interesting shops: 1 shops of clothes / clothes shops, butchers, grocers, jewellers etc etc. But my favourite place in the market is Joe's Café. It's a real 2 business of family / family business: Joe, 3 the wife of Joe / Joe's wife, his sons, his 4 son's / sons' wives, his daughter and his 5 daughter's / daughters' boyfriend all work there at different times. It's not luxurious – there are 6 tables and chairs of plastic / plastic tables and chairs – but it's excellent value. Joe's café is the best place in town for a full English breakfast. For a few pounds, you get a big plate of eggs, bacon and sausages, as much toast and butter as you can eat, and an enormous cup of tea. All sorts of people 7 have / has breakfast at 8 Joe / Joe's, from professors to 9 drivers of buses / bus drivers / bus's drivers. When they've all gone off to work, Joe and his family have time for a short rest, and then the café starts filling up with tourists who have come to try Joe's famous 10 cake of chocolate / chocolate cake. If you're ever in Mappleford, take my advice and visit Joe's Café.

# 8 Internet exercise. Checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following expressions get most hits? So which are correct?

"a heavy baggage"	"some heavy baggage " . <u>9200</u>
"a coffee table"	"a table coffee "
"the President's birthday"	"the birthday of the President "
"a bus driver" "a bus'	s driver " "a driver of bus"
"a gold watch "	"a watch of gold"

### nouns: revision test

0	Write the plurals.									
	bus buses	fox		jour	ney		match	יייי ר		book
	table	foot		pers	on		knife			mouse
	dog	day		fami	ly		woma	an		leaf
	man	child		car			wife			baby
2	Which nouns can b	oe plu	ral? Write th	e plur	al c	or x.				
	▶ note		3	idea				7	furniture	
	▶ money		4	duck				8	governm	nent
	1 information		5	knowle	edg	е		9	class	
	2 bread		6	journe	у.			10	traffic .	
0	Circle the correct f	orms								
	1 My cousin is a teni	nis play	ver / player of a	ennis /	teni	nis's player.				
	2 The police is / are	lookin	g for a tall thi	n man.						

- 3 I'm going to have a sleep of an hour / an hour sleep / an hour's sleep now.
- 4 Do you read woman's / womans' / women's / womens' magazines?
- 5 I like travelling to other countries / countrys / countreys.
- 6 'Coffee?' 'Yes, please. One large / Large one / A large one / A large?'
- 7 Could you give me some information / informations?
- 8 England is / are leading by 4 goals to 2.
- 9 My sister works in a flower shop / flowers shop / shop flower / shop's flower.
- 10 I can't find her number in the phone book / phone's book / book of phone / book of the phone.

### Correct the mistakes.

He's bought two new trousers. Pairs of trousers 1 I like eating chocolate milk. 2 My parents lived all their lifes in Dublin. 3 | like looking round books shops. 4 Who was the people who came to see you? 5 Peter is my son's sister. 6 | like those gloves. How much are the blue? 7 It's a nice jacket, but I'd like a one with pockets. 8 You will never be a player of football. 9 Marco Polo wrote a book about his journies. 10 'Where did you buy it?' 'In the market of street.' 11 We spent the weekend at my brother. 12 A vet is a doctor of animals. 13 The mother of Anna speaks good Spanish. 14 My father gave me earrings of silver for my birthday. 15 Can I have some oranges juice? 16 Birmingham, Liverpool and Manchester are three important citys in England. 17 I couldn't open the house's door 18 There's the Peter's house 19 Do you have the address of Emma? 20 I've got a big work to do today.

## **SECTION 15** adjectives and adverbs

### grammar summary

Adjectives are words like *easy, slow, sorry, important*. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after some verbs (e.g. *be, seem, look*).

an easy job a slow train I'm sorry. This letter looks important.

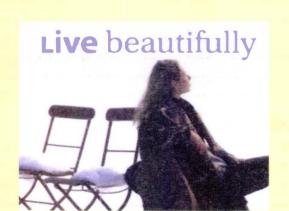
Adverbs are words like *easily, slowly, yesterday, there*. Adverbs tell you, for example, how, when or where something happens.

I won the game easily.

Please speak slowly.

She arrived yesterday.

Great books for young readers!



'A wonderfully funny and moving book' DELICIOUSLY, CREAMY

'AN UNFORGETTABLE NOVEL'

Generation Hot socks:

the perfect way to warm cold feet and make you feel good

## adjectives a beautiful little girl who was not stupid

a fast car fast cars (NOT fasts-cars) Before nouns, we don't usually put and between adjectives.

a big bad wolf (NOT a big and bad wolf)

Colour adjectives usually come after others.

beautiful red apples (NOT red beautiful apples)

### Put in the adjectives and write the story.

One day, a time ago, ( <i>long fine</i> )	<ul> <li>One fine day, a long time ago</li> </ul>
a girl (beautiful little)	1
in a coat ( <i>red</i> )	2
was walking through a forest (dark)	3
with a bag ( <i>big</i> )	4
of apples (red wonderful)	5
to see her grandmother. ( <i>old</i> )	6
Under a tree (tall green)	7
she saw a wolf ( <i>big bad</i> )	8
with teeth. ( <i>white long</i> )	9

### 2 Put the words in the correct order and continue the story.

'good little , girl morning', said	1 'Good
big the bad wolf.	2
'going you where are	3
that with bag heavy	4
day this fine on?'	5
'going my see to grandmother I'm old'	б
girl the said little.	7
'lives small she in house a	8
new the supermarket near.'	9

### But in adjectives from the box to finish the story.

big friendly stupid little

'OK', said the wolf in a 1..... voice. 'I'll see you later.' 'I don't think so,' said the 2..... girl, who was not 3..... She took a 4.... pistol out of her bag and shot the wolf dead.

(from an idea by James Thurber)

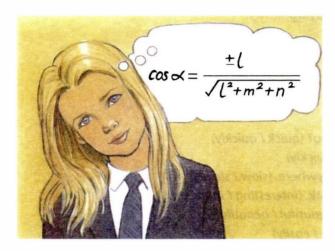


'I don't think so,' said the little girl.





and and beautiful cold hungry intelligent tired



- 1 She is .....
- 2 He looks .....

### Make sentences.

	'Jack / very / tall / be' . jack's very tall.'	'Yes, he's nearly 2 metres.'
1	' expensive / that / look / car'	'No, it's cheap.'
2	' seem / happy / Adele '	'She's in love again.'
3	' ill / tired / and / feel / I '	. 'Shall I call the doctor?'
4	dark / very early here in winter / get / it	
5	getting / my parents / old	

6 Make sentences with adjectives from the box.

Australian bad beautiful hot 🗸 late rich

- 1 'The train / be / .....' 'No, it's on time.'
- 2 'He / look / .....' 'No, he's American.'
- 3 'Your hair / look / .....' 'Oh, thanks.'
- 4 My memory / getting very / .....
- 5 I want / become ..... / and famous .....

We don't usually use adjectives without nouns. 'Polly's ill.' 'The poor girl.' (NOT 'The poor.')

مجعزبان ايرانيان

Adjectives are connected with nouns and pronouns. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after *be, seem, look* etc (see pages 210–211). Adverbs are connected with other words – for example verbs. Some adverbs tell you how something happens. These often end in -*ly*.

It's an easy language.	You can learn this language easily.
The music is slow.	The pianist is playing slowly.
He <mark>r ideas</mark> are interesting.	She <b>spoke interestingly</b> about her ideas.
Joe looked hungry.	Joe ate hungrily.

### Choose an adjective or an adverb.

- Could I have a ...quick..... word with you? (quick / quickly)
- She walked away ...quickly...... (quick / quickly)
- 1 This is a ..... train it stops everywhere. (slow / slowly)
- 2 He talked very ...... about his work. (interesting / interestingly)
- 3 You've cooked the meat ...... (beautiful / beautifully)
- 4 I've got an ..... job for you. (easy / easily)
- 5 She writes in ..... English. (perfect / perfectly)
- 6 I sing very .....(bad / badly)
- 7 I feel ..... today. (happy / happily)
- 8 You seem very ...... (angry / angrily)
- 9 Anne's a ..... swimmer. (strong / strongly)
- 10 Could you talk more ..... please? (quiet / quietly)

### HOW TO MAKE -LY ADVERBS

<ul> <li>usually: adjective + -ly</li> <li>-y -&gt; -ily</li> <li>-ble -&gt; -bly</li> </ul>	quick —> quick <b>ly</b> easy —> easi <b>ly</b> possible —> possibly	real> really (NOT <del>realy</del> ) happy> happily	complete> completely
	possible -> possibly		

### 2 Write the adverbs.

	wrong wrongly	4	thirsty	8	wonderful
1	final	5	probable	9	cold
2	sincere	6	usual	10	unhappy
3	loud	7	nice	11	comfortable



## other adverbs I like sport very much.

goir	ng awa	y tomorrov ut much.	when, where or h w. We ran dow I watch TV a los	vnhill. The	accident happ guitar <b>a bit</b> .	ened the	e. 15 a little.	
	-		me at the end of a			-		and the object
.se u	VERB		OBJECT	ADVERB	y do not con	ic betwee		and the object.
					(1)07 (			
	speak make		English very good bread	well. here.			well Englis	<del>?</del> .) <del>ood bread</del> :)
у	boug		a lot of clothes	yesterday				et of clothes:)
	-	t enjoy	the holiday	much.				the holiday.)
	like		sport	very much			uch sport:)	
Mal	ko son	tences w	ith adverbs fro	m the box (D	ifferent ans	wors are	nossible	)
	_					weisale	possible.	<b>,</b>
C	arefull	y clearly	y correctly	perfectly slo	wly tomor	row m	nuch yes	terday
► S		cook / the	Cook the sou	p slowly. O	R Cook th	e soud ci	arefully.	
			er					
		_	nt/a/l					
			doctor/you					
		-	ks/he/four					
			address / didn't					
	-		/1					
8 s	peak /	and / plea	se (two adverbs)					
	to abo		ings that you lil					
			ings that you lil					
3	•••••	••••••	•••••	••••••	6		•••••	
verb	os can g	go before	adjectives, and b	efore past part	iciples (for ex	ample bro	oken, finish	ed).
ribly	sorry	(NOT terrib	<del>le sorry</del> ) near	ly ready co	mpletely finis	hed		
Con	nplete	the sent	tences with wo	ds from the b	ox. (Differe	nt answe	ers are po	ssible.)
b	adly	beautifu	lly completely	extremely	happily 🗸	nearly	terribly	very well
► J	oe and	Ann have	been happily		rried for twe	nty-five ve	ears.	
			sorry to					
			eat – the fridge i					
		-						
J 1			day, David was			coung.		
		_					nouch	
4 A	hafar	dhoroir					nouun.	
4 A 5 T							-	
4 A 5 T 6 'I	s your	new house	e ready yet?' 'No,	but it's		finished	d.'	<b>F</b> 1

# adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc

Level 2

Some	adverbs, for example <i>always</i> or <i>certainly</i> , usually go with the verb.	
how	ften: always often usually sometimes ever hardly ever (= 'almost never')	never
how	ertainly: certainly definitely probably	
othe	already also just still even only	
These	adverbs go before most verbs, but after auxiliary verbs (have, will, can, must etc) and after	
am/a	e/is/was/were.	
BEFO	E MOST VERBS AFTER AUXILIARY VERBS AND AM ETC	
lalw	ys read in the evenings. I have always enjoyed reading.	
	often goes to New York. He can often get cheap flights.	
She h	Irdly ever sees him. He is hardly ever at home.	
Icert	inly like London. It will certainly rain tomorrow.	
We o	ly want to see Barbara. We are only here to see Barbara.	
Jack	Iready knows Sophie. Jack has already met Sophie.	
U P	t the adverbs in the correct places.	
	l speak French, but people know that I'm English. ( <i>often; always</i> ) I often speak French, but people always know that I'm English.	
	<b>U</b>	
1	Jake eats fish. He eats fish for breakfast. ( <i>always; even</i> )	
r	Any place toppic, but she place in the evenings (effect $a=1/2$ )	•••••
2	Ann plays tennis, but she plays in the evenings. ( <i>often</i> ; <i>only</i> )	
2		•••••
3	Edward puts tomato sauce on everything. He puts it on ice cream. ( <i>usually; probably</i> )	
		•••••
4	I forget names. I forget faces. (sometimes; never)	
-	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5	Jane gets angry, and she shouts at people. ( <i>hardly ever; never</i> )	
		********
6	l get to the station on time, and the train is late. ( <i>always; always</i> )	
-		•••••
7	I will phone you tomorrow, and I will write next week. ( <i>definitely; probably</i> )	
0		•••••
8	I drink tea. I drink coffee. ( <i>usually; sometimes</i> )	
0		
9	Your sister is a good singer. She is a very interesting person. ( <i>certainly; also</i> )	
10	My mother is asleen 1 think she is ill (still probably)	
10	My mother is asleep. I think she is ill. ( <i>still; probably</i> )	
		*******
	stions, these adverbs usually go after auxiliary verb + subject.	
Do yo	<i>Lever</i> write poems? Has Mary always lived here? Are you often in London?	
<b>b</b> n	the advarter is the correct places	
	t the adverbs in the correct places.	
1	Do you play cards? (often)	
2	Have you been to Tibet? (ever)	
3	Are you happy? ( <i>always</i> )	
4	Does the boss take a holiday? ( <i>ever</i> )	
5	Do you eat in restaurants? ( <i>usually</i> )	
6	Is Bethany ill? ( <i>still</i> )	

### Longer expressions usually go at the end of a sentence. Compare:

She often plays tennis.She plays tennis two or three times a week.She hardly ever wins a game.She wins a game once or twice a month.She always practises.Does she practise every afternoon?



### Look at the table and make some sentences with often, once a day etc.

ΑCTIVITY	EVA	том
goes swimming	1/d*	1/m
plays football	-1	3/w
plays tennis	1/w	1/y
goes skiing	5-6/y	-
goes to the theatre	1/w	2-3/y
goes to the cinema	3-4/y	2/m
goes to concerts	-	1/w

\*1/d = once a day;

2/m = twice a month; etc

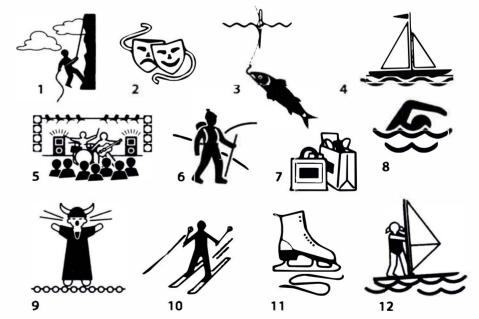
with offen, once a day etc.
Eva often goes swimming.
Eva goes swimming once a day / every day
Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year.

### **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY:** go with spare-time activities

Look at the pictures, and put the correct numbers with the activities. Use a dictionary if necessary.

### IN YOUR SPARE TIME YOU CAN:

go walking ..... go climbing ...... go swimming ...... go sailing ...... go wind-surfing ...... go skating ...... go skating ...... go fishing ...... go shopping ...... go to the opera ...... go to the theatre ...... go to concerts ......



### S Write some sentences about your spare-time activities. Use words from Exercises 1–4.

	I never go climbing.	4
	1 go swimming every day	5
1		6
2		7
3		8

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

## interested and interesting etc

### *Interested, bored, excited* etc say how people feel. *Interesting, boring, exciting* etc describe the things (or people) that cause the feelings.

She's very interested in the lessons. (NOT She's very interesting in the lessons.) The lessons are always interesting. (NOT The lessons are always interested.) I'm often bored at work, because I've got a boring job.

Write these words under the pictures: *interested*, *interesting*, *bored*, *boring*.



2



### **2** Put in words from the box.

1 .....

annoyed (= 'a little angry') < annoying excited exciting frightened frightening surprised surprising

.....

3

- 2 A woman hears noises at night. She is ...... The noises are ......
- 3 A family makes ...... holiday plans. The children are very .....
- 4 Your exam mark is very good. This is ...... And you are .....

Here are the beginnings of five books. Write what you think of the books. Use very interesting, quite interesting, not very interesting, quite boring or very boring.

- After King Leofric died in 1342, ...
   I think this book is probably .....
   The moment Olga walked into Alan's office, he realised his-life had changed for ever ...
- .....
- 4 The man in black had already killed five people that morning. The sixth ...
- 5 Four billion years ago, our world ...

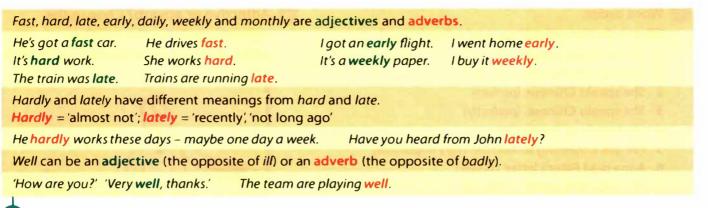
.....

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: adverbs of degree; subjects of study

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write how interested you are in some of the subjects. You can use *extremely* (= +++), *very*, *quite*, *not very*, *not or not at all* (= --).

	art	biology	economics	history	literature	mathematics	philosophy	physics	politics
ťn	n extr	emely inte	rested in			l'm			

## fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly, ...



### These are sentences from real conversations. Put in words from the boxes.

early hard hardly weekly well

- 1 And I really understand Italian quite .....
- 2 You've got no playschool tomorrow so you haven't got to get up ....., have you?
- 3 Why should I work ..... when you never do anything?
- 4 Departures from the UK are ..... mid-morning on Sundays from Dover.
- 5 She was really, you know, nervous, and ..... came out of her flat at all.

### **2** Choose the best answer.

- You look ....., Mike. (early / lately / well)
- 1 Your father read the ..... Express when he was alive. (hardly / Daily / lately)
- 2 You haven't seen the window cleaner ....., have you? (lately / hard / weekly)
- 3 I ran as ..... as I could, along the Tottenham Court Road. (early / fast / hardly)
- 4 I ..... sleep an hour at a time. (well / hard / hardly)
- 5 I got up ..... to finish some work. (well / hardly / early)
- 6 My daughter cooks really ..... (hardly / well / lately)
- 7 I went to bed very ..... last night. (late / lately / hardly)
- 8 I go to Cambridge ..... for a business meeting. (well / hardly / weekly)
- 9 I need a rest. I've been working ..... all week. (lately / hard / hardly)
- 10 My grandfather hasn't been very well ..... (early / lately / daily)

Friendly, lonely, lovely, silly are adjectives, not adverbs.

She gave me a friendly smile. (BUT NOT She smiled friendly.)He was very lonely. (BUT NOT He-walked-lonely-through the streets.)Her voice is lovely. (BUT NOT She sings lovely.)Don't be silly.

There are no adverbs friendlily, lovelily etc. Instead, we use other words or expressions.

She spoke in a friendly way. She sings beautifully.

### Correct ( $\checkmark$ ) or not (x)?

- 1 He spoke very friendly, but I didn't like him. .....
- 2 You have a lovely smile. .....
- 3 He's not stupid, but he sometimes talks really silly. .....
- 4 He doesn't speak English very well, but he writes it lovely. .....
- 5 I gave her a friendly look, but she turned away. .....

## adjectives and adverbs: more practice

### 1 Word order.

### Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

- She's a cook. (good)
- 1 She was driving a fast car. (red)
- 2 She speaks Chinese. (perfect)
- 3 She speaks Chinese. (perfectly)
- 4 I lost my keys. (yesterday)
- 5 I've got a meeting tomorrow. (very important)
- 6 Anna read Peter's letter. (slowly)
- 7 Tim plays the piano. (brilliantly)
- 8 Lucy is unhappy. (terribly)
- 9 They make very good ice cream. (here)
- 10 She's been unmarried for 15 years. (happily)

### 2 Adjective or adverb?

### Circle the correct answers.

- 1 You are making a terrible / terribly mistake.
- 2 She walked up the steps *slow / slowly*.
- 3 It was raining very hard / hardly when I got up.
- 4 The boss is a really friend / friendly person.
- 5 | cook very bad / badly.
- 6 Amelia looks very unhappy / unhappily.
- 7 I'm extreme / extremely sorry I arrived so late / lately.
- 8 I drove very careful / carefully on the snow.
- 9 I was late / lately because of a problem with the trains.
- 10 I've complete / completely forgotten his name.
- 11 Your hair looks beautiful / beautifully.
- 12 He doesn't work very hard / hardly.
- 13 I can't understand her. She talks very unclear / unclearly.
- 14 The President spoke in perfect / perfectly French.
- 15 This letter isn't very good / well written.

### 3 Adverbs with the verb. Write sentences about yourself.

1	l often
2	l never
	l am sometimes
4	l usually
	I have often
	I have never
	I have always
	l am certainly
	I will probably
	I will definitely
10	I will definitely

4 Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct words for the caption.



'Be careful / Be carefully, these plates are extreme / extremely dirty.'

### 5 Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

	She was wearing a red beautiful coat. a beautiful red coat
1	There are films interestings on TV tonight.
2	There's a good and cheap restaurant in Dover St.
3	He's tall, dark, good-looking.
4	I am very interesting in the lessons.
5	I like very much this music.
6	'Emma's got appendicitis.' 'The poor!'
7	I'm terrible sorry!
8	l lost yesterday my glasses.
9	She smiled happy when I walked in.
10	I often have thought of changing my job.
11	There were some difficults questions in the test.
12	The boss always talks to us friendly.
13	My mother speaks very well Arabic.
14	You look beautifully in that dress.
15	You're walking too fastly for me.
16	Please drive careful.
17	The manager welcomed us in perfectly English.
18	John always is ready to help people.
19	We speak usually Spanish together.
20	I worked hardly, but I failed the exam.

### **6** Grammar in a text. Put in adjectives or adverbs from the box.

daily early / fast friendly hard hardly late lonely silly

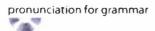
I don't like getting up ...early....... so I usually stay in bed too long, and then have to eat breakfast very 1 ...... and run for my train. On the train I read the 2 ...... paper, because after I get to work there's no more time for reading. The boss is nice, but she makes us work very 3 ......, and I often have to stay 4 ....... to finish everything. There's a nice new secretary in the office. I s ...... know her, but she always gives me a 6 ..... smile when I arrive. She hasn't lived here long. Perhaps it's a 7 ...... idea, but I wonder if she's 8 ...... I think I'll ask her out.

# **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: nouns and adjectives.** Find the answers. Use a dictionary to help you. Different answers are possible.

a bed	a light	apples	children	coffee	hair	holidays	milk	skin	water 🗸	water
It can b	e cold, wa	rm or hot.	water		6	It can be ha	rd or so	ft		
1 It can b	e strong c	r weak.			7	It can be ro	ugh or s	mooth.		
2 It can b	e deep or	shallow.				It can be fre	-			
3 They ca	in be long	or short.			9	They can be	sweet	or sour.		
4 It can b	e dark or f	air			10	They can be	e quiet c	or noisy.		
5 It can b	e bright o	r dim								
Intornat	oversise		rch anaine		ه (مامم	o find com	: <b></b>	lo cont		hard

# Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with *hard* and some with *hardly*. Write three of each.

1	 4	
2	 5	
3	 6	



## adjectives and adverbs: revision test

### 1 Write the adverbs.

quick	quickly	real	complete	possible
happy		nice	easy be	autiful
probabl	e	usual	incredible	
unhapp	у	right	. sincere	hungry
careful		perfect	warm	angry
compre	hensible	slow		

### 2 Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

- It's a day. (nice)
- 1 I saw a good film. (yesterday)
- 2 Andy can help you. (definitely)
- 3 You speak Russian. (very well)
- 4 She smiles. (never)
- 5 Alice had some ideas. (really interesting)
- 6 They sell very good clothes. (here)
- 7 I have been to Norway. (never)

### Correct (✓) or not (४)?

- Read this now. .....
- 1 She makes wonderfully soup. .....
- 2 I spoke to them very slow and clear. .....
- 3 It snowed very hard yesterday. .....
- 4 That secretary isn't very friendly. .....
- 5 I sing terribly bad. .....
- 6 Your baby looks really happy. .....
- 7 I'm sorry I got here so lately. .....

- 8 Karl plays the violin. (very badly)
- 9 I have paid. (already)
- 10 He was wearing a new suit. (blue)
- 11 We see Annie and Seb. (often)
- 12 Emma read the report. (slowly)
- 13 Judy and Simon are late. (always)
- 14 You are right. (probably)
- 15 I go to the cinema. (hardly ever)
- 8 Fill in this form very carefully. .....
- 9 I complete forgot to phone Paul. .....
- 10 She studied very hardly for the exam. .....
- 11 Everybody spoke perfect English. .....
- 12 This fish isn't very well cooked. .....
- 13 They asked some difficults questions. .....
- 14 Do you know a hotel good and cheap? .....
- 15 I never have understood maths. .....

### 4 These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

	He was wearing <del>black old boots</del>
1	He's short, fat, stupid-looking.
2	We usually are at home on Saturdays.
3	I am boring in the science lessons.
4	People never will stop fighting.
	l listen always to the news at breakfast.
	'Jenny's in hospital.' 'The poor!'
7	We often have been to India.
8	We're terrible late.
	They stood up slow when we walked in.
10	The weather already is getting better.
	Never you tell me what you are thinking.
	Your hair looks beautifully today.
	John probably has forgotten my name again.
	I don't like you driving so fastly.
	Please speak slow.

# comparison

## **SECTION 16** comparison

### grammar summary

We can **compare** people and things with each other using **as** ... **as**, -**er than** or **more** ... **than**. Joe's **as tall as** me. Jane's **taller than** me. She works **more carefully than** me.

We can use -est or most to compare people and things with all of their group. John is the oldest of Mary's children. Nasima's the most intelligent person in the class.

We use *-er* and *-est* with shorter adjectives and some short adverbs; we use *more* and *most* with other adjectives and adverbs.



## comparative and superlative adjectives: forms

Comparative adjectives are forms like colder, more famous. Superlative adjectives are forms like coldest, most famous. most short (one-syllable) adjectives: + -er, -est old -> older, oldest short adjectives ending in -e: +-r, -st nice -> nicer. nicest Write the comparative and superlative adjectives. cold colder, coldest 5 strange ..... late Later, Latest 6 fine ..... 7 high ..... 1 green ..... 2 safe ..... 8 wide ..... 3 rich ..... 9 near ..... 4 small 10 white short adjectives ending in one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -er, -est fat -> fatter, fattest thin ---> thinner, thinnest BUT don't double w: low -> lower, lowest Write the comparative and superlative adjectives. red redder, reddest 3 new ...... slow slower, slowest ..... 4 wet 1 big ..... 5 slim 2 hot ..... two-syllable adjectives ending in -y: y -> i + -er, -est happy --- happier, happiest Write the comparative and superlative adjectives. friendly friendlier, friendliest 3 sleepy ..... 1 lazy ..... 4 angry ..... 2 hungry ..... 5 dirty ..... most other longer adjectives: + more, most hopeful --> more hopeful, most hopeful Write the comparative and superlative adjectives. ► famous more famous, most famous 4 dangerous 1 careful 5 important 6 boring ..... 2 beautiful 3 intelligent 7 interested • irregular adjectives: good --> better, best bad --> worse, worst far -> further, furthest OR farther, farthest Put in irregular comparative adjectives. I know that my handwriting is bad, but Jenny's is ....... 1 I'm so tired. Is the bus stop much .....? 2 I don't enjoy train travel here, but I do in France – the trains are ..... there. 3 'How's your toothache today?' 'It's .....' 'You should see a dentist.'

## comparative or superlative?

### We use **comparatives** to compare people and things with **other people and things**. **A** is bigger than B. **A** is bigger than B and c. John is a more careful driver than Robin.



Dawn is tall.



■ Dawn is taller than
 Leah. ■



 Dawn is taller than all the other players.



We use superlatives (usually with *the*) to compare people and things with all of the group that they are in. **A** is the biggest of the three letters **A**, **B** and **c**. John is the most careful driver in the family.



Dawn is the tallest player in the team.

### 1 Circle the correct answer.

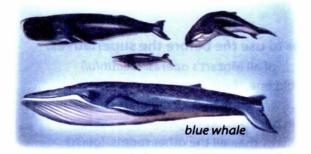
- Dawn is older / the oldest than all of her sisters.
- Leah is taller / the tallest person in her family.
- 1 All of the players are nice, but Sarah is certainly the nicer / the nicest.
- 2 This is the better / the best women's basketball team in the country.
- 3 Basketballs are more expensive / the most expensive than footballs.
- 4 Ice hockey is a more dangerous / most dangerous sport than basketball or tennis.
- 5 Of all the sports in the Olympics, which sport is more dangerous? / the most dangerous?
- 6 A basketball court is usually bigger / the biggest than a tennis court.
- 7 Which is the faster / the fastest game? Not chess.
- 8 Which is the more / most expensive game? Poker?

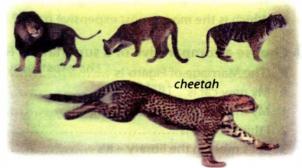
### **2** Choose a comparative or a superlative. Remember to use *the* before the superlatives.

- The Marriage of Figaro' is ... the most beautiful ..... of all Mozart's operas. (beautiful)
- 1 My mother and her sisters are all ...... than their children. (short)
- 2 I think Annie is ...... person in our class. (intelligent)
- 3 Let's meet in the library it's ..... than all the other rooms. (quiet)
- 4 My bedroom is ..... room in the house. (cold)
- 5 A 3-year-old's voice is ..... than 200 people in a busy restaurant. (loud)
- 6 Brazil is ...... South American country. (big)
- 7 My computer is much ..... than me. (intelligent)
- 8 Which is ..... thing to study? (boring)

# comparatives: use brighter than the moon

e us	se than after comparative adjectives.
issia	a is <b>bigger than</b> China. (NOT <del>that China</del> :) Rob and Tina are <mark>older than</mark> Emma.
	ompare each pair of things in the box. Write two sentences for each pair. ore than one answer may be possible.
	<b>COMPARE</b> : the sun and the moon ✓ dogs and cats train travel and air travel the Sahara and the Himalayas English and Chinese Canada and Ireland
	ADJECTIVES: big bright / cheap cold easy difficult fast friendly hot intelligent small / small
	The sun is brighter than the moon.5The moon is smaller than the sun.6
1 2 3	
	se comparative adjectives with than all the other Alaska's area is 1,518,700km². No other US state is so large. Alaska is larger than all the other US states.
1	The Amazon is 6,670km long. No other river in South America is so long.
2	Blue whales can weigh 120 tonnes. No other whales are so heavy.
3	Mont Blanc is 4,807m high. No other mountain in the Alps is so high.
4	Cheetahs can run at 110km/h. No other big cats are so fast.
5	The Atacama desert has no rain. No other deserts are so dry.





big cats

whales

Level 2

With comparatives, we can say ... than I am / than you are / than John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... than me/you/him/her/it/us/them.

3 Write two endings for each sentence: one with *than me, than you* etc and one with *than I am, than you are* etc.

- Tariq was angry, but I ... was angrier than him. / than he was.
- John's very careful with money, but Maria
   I'm hungry, but you must be
   You're not very short. Tony's .....
- 4 We're excited, but our children .....
- 5 My girlfriend is so beautiful. No other woman .....

We can use *a lot / a bit* (more conversational) or *much / a little* before comparatives. Your cooking is *much better* than my sister's. (NOT ... very better... AND NOT ... too better ...) This book is *a lot more interesting* than that one. You sound *a bit happier* today.



a bit longer

much longer

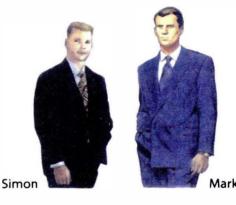
# Use the table. Write sentences about Mark and Simon with *a bit / a little* and *a lot / much* with the adjectives from the box.

short 1/ tall	old / vouna	rich	fast / slow	comfortable	quiet / noisy	
short V / tan	old / young	nen	103(7 3)000	connortable	quict/ noisy	

	How	How	How		How	How	How
	tall?	old?	rich?		fast?	comfortable?	quiet?
Mark	1m95	35	€900,000/year	Mark's car	190km/h	***	**
Simon	1m85	36	€250,000/year	Simon's car	130km/h	**	*****

### Simon is a bit (OR a little) shorter than Mark.

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	



### We can use more than and less than without adjectives.

Liz spent more than a week's pay on that dress.

It took us less than ten minutes to get home.



COMPARISON 225

## superlatives the highest mountain in the world

After superlatives, we normally use in	before the names of places.
Everest is the <b>highest</b> mountain in the v Jamal is the most intelligent person in Sirius is the brightest star in the sky.	
After superlatives, we also use in befo	ore singular words for groups of people.
Sam is the <b>youngest</b> player in the orche Wilkins is the oldest minister in this gov	
In most other cases, we use of after su	uperlatives.
Anna's the tallest of the three sisters.	This is the <b>shortest</b> day <b>of</b> the year.

### 1 Put the beginnings, middles and ends together.

evel 2

0	Jonathan is	A	the biggest state	k	in the group
1	My great-great-aunt is	В	the longest river	1	in my family
2	London is	С	the best musician	m	in the team <mark>?</mark> .
3	Alaska is	D	the fastest runner?.	n	in Africa
4	The guitar player is	E	the biggest city	0	in Britain
5	The Nile is	F	the oldest person	р	in the USA
6	My parents' room is	G	the most expensive	q	of the four bedrooms
7	The Mercedes is	н	the longest day	r	of the five girls
8	Sarah is	T.	the youngest	s	of the three cars
9	June 21st is	J	the biggest	t	of the year
				1	

### Write sentences with superlatives.

	In my job, Friday / busy day / week In my job, Friday is the busiest day of the week.
1	In the 1970s, the Beatles / rich musicians / world
2	Eric says that Eleanor / good singer / group
3	When I was a child, my father / tall man / our town
4	In this country, February / cold month / year
5	Who / old / your three aunts?
6	Helen is very intelligent, but she / quiet person / my class
7	Which / good / these three bikes / ?
8	Which / big city / Argentina / ?
	There is so much good in the worst of us,

and so much bad in the best of us.

(Author unknown)

## comparison of adverbs More slowly, please.

To make the <b>comparative</b> of <b>most adverbs</b> : <i>more</i> + adverb ( than)
Can you speak <b>more quietly</b> , please? I'm working <b>more slowly</b> today <b>than</b> yesterday. Angela writes <b>more clearly than</b> Ellie.
Write sentences with comparative adverbs and <i>than</i> .
<ul> <li>Jacob drives / dangerously / Sam Jacob drives more dangerously than Sam.</li> </ul>
1 Lee talks to people / politely / Ben
2 Liam works / carefully / John
3 Simon goes swimming / often / Karen
4 My car runs / quietly / my sister's car
5 Annie talks / slowly / Rob
6 Olivia thinks / clearly / most people
7 Jack dresses / expensively / me
8 I live / cheaply / my friends
Some short adverbs have comparatives with -er, like adjectives. Examples: early, late, fast, hard, high, long, near and soon.
I got to the station <b>earlier</b> than Mary. Bill lives <b>nearer</b> to school than Pete, so he gets up <b>later</b> .
Irregular comparatives:well $\rightarrow$ betterbadly $\rightarrow$ worsefar $\rightarrow$ further/fartherlittle $\rightarrow$ lessa lot/much $\rightarrow$ more
My mother drives <b>better</b> than my father. He sings badly, but I sing <b>worse</b> . She talks <b>less</b> than he does, but she thinks <b>more</b> . I live <b>further</b> from the centre than you.
2 Use the comparatives of the adverbs in the box to complete the advice.
early fast hard 🗸 high late little long much near

'I want to earn more money.' 'Work ...harder.......'

- 1 'I want to eat my breakfast slowly in the morning.' 'Get up ......'
- 2 'I want to get more sleep.' 'Get up ......'
- 4 'I hate driving to work'. 'Live ..... to your work and walk'
- 5 'I get a lot of headaches.' 'Try to worry ......'
- 6 'I'm afraid I'm going to miss the train' 'Walk ......'
- 7 'I'm no good at basketball.' 'Practise jumping ......'
- 8 'I want to learn everything there is.' 'Live ......'

Sentences with superlative adverbs (for example John drives the most dangerously) are not very common.

## (not) as ... as Your hands are as cold as ice.

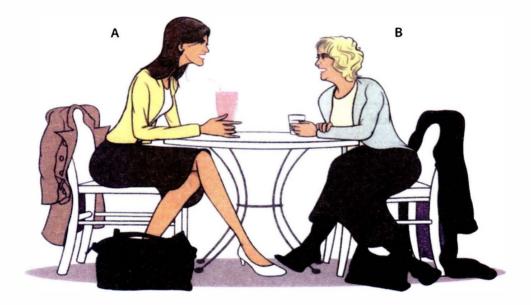
Level 2

### We use (not) as ... as to say that people and things are (not) the same in some way. I don't think Tom is going to be as tall as his sister. Your hands are as cold as ice. Can you read this for me? My eyes aren't as good as yours.

C

Read the sentences and decide: which picture is Jenny and which picture is Cassie?

Jenny isn't as old as Cassie. Jenny's hands aren't as small as Cassie's. Cassie's hair isn't as long as Jenny's. Jenny isn't as fair as Cassie.



Picture A is ..... Picture B is .....

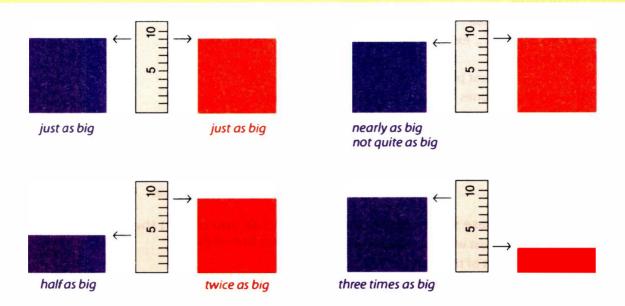
### Now write some more sentences about Jenny and Cassie with not as ... as.

1	slim
2	tall
3	skirt / long
4	bag / big
	coat / heavy
6	glass / big

With *as* ... *as*, we can say ... *as I am / as you are / as John is* etc. But in informal **spoken** English, we usually prefer ... *as me/you/him/her/it/us/them*.

	<ul> <li>Change the sentences in two ways, but keep the same meaning.</li> <li>Nicole's prettier than her sister.</li> <li>Nicole's sister isw't as pretty as her.</li> </ul>
3	Nícole's sister isn't as pretty as she is. You're nicer than the other doctor. The other doctor
2	P He's more interesting than his boss.
7	l'm slimmer than my mother.
-	
4	We're more careful than the Browns.

We can put just, nearly, not quite and half, twice, three times etc before as ... as.He's just as handsome as his brother.My hair is not quite as fair as my sister's hair.The twins are nearly as tall as their mother.Brazil is half as big as Russia.



3 Think of a member of your family. Compare yourself to him or her, using *as* ... *as* and some of the words and expressions from the box. Write five sentences.

BEFORE AS: j	ust	nearly	not quit	e half	twi	ice thre	ee times et	C		
ADJECTIVES:	dark old	fair pretty	friendly quiet	hands short		happy tall	intelligent	kind	nice	
										_
I'm nearl	y as t	tall as a	Grace.			3				
I'm nearl I'm not g	y as l nite a	tall as a	Grace. Is her.			3				
I'm nearl I'm not g	nite a	as tall a	is her.	••••••	•••••					

#### We can use as much as and as many as with nouns.

Deborah doesn't work as many hours as I do, but she makes just as much money as me.

# Make sentences with as ... as or not as ... as, and some of the expressions from Exercise 3. Alice has \$200 and Matt has \$100. Alice has twice as much money as Matt. Eric has 20 cousins, and Tony has 10. Eric Ben eats 3 sandwiches every day; Jo eats 1. Helen has 23 computer games and Adrian has 25. Liz drinks 6 cups of coffee a day; Chris drinks 12.

5 Mike has 600 books, and David has 600 too.
6 Rebecca only has a little free time; Fred has a lot.

## comparison: more practice



- 1 I'm not ..... tall ..... my sister.
- 2 This is the ..... expensive restaurant ..... the town.
- 3 Anna is a bit older ..... her husband.
- 4 Who's ..... best player ..... the family?
- 5 Smith is good, but Jones is ..... and Ericsson is the .....
- 6 Please drive ..... slowly.
- 7 How much fruit can I have? Take ..... much ...... you want.
- 8 Texas is bigger ..... France.
- 9 You're ..... beautiful than I .....
- 10 A metre is more ...... a centimetre and ..... than a kilometre.

### 2 Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong (x). Can you correct the mistakes?

- You're the beautifullest woman I have ever seen. most beautiful
- 1 She's the best pianist of the world.
- 2 My sister is much taller that me.
- 3 Katie is the more beautiful person here.
- 4 Please drive slowlier.
- 5 This is the more expensive hotel in London.
- 6 You drive much faster of me.
- 7 My hands are cold like ice.
- 8 James is much older as his wife.
- 9 Everest is more high than Mount Fuji.
- 10 We all sing badly, but I'm the worse.
- 11 My sister is the intelligentest person in the family.
- 12 I'm happyer this year than last year.
- 13 Tokyo is the biggest city of Japan.
- 14 Robert is the youngest from the three children.
- 15 Sunday is best day of the week.

### **3** Mixed structures. Look at the pictures and make sentences.





C £24, 300 Maximum speed 150km/h

A £17, 999 Maximum speed 120km/h

B £62, 999 Maximum speed 200km/h

# **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: time.** Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then answer the questions, using *more* and *less*.

	century	day	decade	hour	minute	month	second	week	year
	How muc	h is a m	ninute?	More th	an a seco	nd and L	ess than a	in hour	
1	How muc	h is a d	ecade?						
2	How muc	h is a m	nonth?						
3	How muc	h is a w	veek?						
4	How muc	h is an	hour?						
5	How muc	h is a d	ay?						
6	How muc	h is a y	ear?						

### **S** Grammar in a text. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.

John lives in Birmingham. He is a bus driver. He is very interested in history. He is taller than Tom, and betterlooking, but he doesn't have as much money as Tom. Tom works in an import-export firm in Liverpool. He collects antique furniture. He is deeply in love with Julia. He's much older than she is, but not as tall as she is, and he's really not very good-looking. Julia's friend Hannah lives in Birmingham, near her cousin Pete. She's exactly as old as he is, and they're both very interested in information technology. Pete runs a very successful computer business. He has much more money than Tom, but not nearly as much as Hannah. He has dark hair and blue eyes, and he's better looking than Tom, but not as tall as Tom. Pete and John are old friends. They often play tennis together. John is twice as old as Pete (he's nearly as old as Tom), but he usually wins when he and Pete play. They are both deeply in love with Julia. Julia works in a travel agency. She likes fast cars, travel, horse-riding and fashionable clothes. She often goes on holiday with Hannah. Hannah usually pays for the holidays, because Julia doesn't have as much money as Hannah. Hannah is taller than Julia, (but not as tall as John) and very beautiful. Hannah is deeply in love with the tallest of the three men. Julia is deeply in love with the oldest.

- 1 Who is Hannah in love with? .....
- 2 Who is Julia in love with?
- 3 Who is the richest of the five people? .....

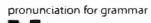
### 6 Than, that or as? Complete the caption.



'There, dear! I think we've left the world a better place ..... we found it!'

### Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

"beautifuller"
"more beautiful" <u>5,880,000</u>
"more happy"
"happier"
"older that"
"older than"
"the highest mountain of Britain"
"the highest mountain in Britain"
"the best player of the team"
"the best player in the team"



# comparison: revision test

	Write the comparatives and superlatives.		
1	tall taller, tallest	11	fat
· ·	I interesting	12	happy
2	2 thin	13	late
į	3 cheap	14	hot
4	4 easy	15	slow
	5 bad	16	big
e	5 beautiful	17	expensive
7	7 lazy	18	dirty
8	3 far	19	important
ç	9 good	20	strong
10	) old		
0	Put in as, than or that.		
	My feet are cold ice.	6	He's as funny toothache.
	2 She looks older her sister.		The car I saw was too small.
	3 I think he's Chinese.		The cat seems worse yesterday.
	4         Alice is much stronger her brother.		It's not as cold last week.
	5 Can't you eat faster that?		She's got a more interesting job me.
			5
3	Put in the correct words.		
	A kilogram is less a tonne and		than a gram.
	2 Jake is bad at languages, but he's not as bad as I	•••••	
-	3 I get up early, at 6.30; George gets up	, at	6.15, and Pam is the, at 6.00.
4	Please speak slowly.		
	5 Karl is oldest player	. the t	eam.
6	6 'How many people can I invite?' ' m		-
7	7 We stayed in the expensive hotel		the city.
8	3 She's not her b	prothe	r.
9	9 Siberia is bigger Europe.		
10	) Phil is a bad teacher, and Annie is a	nd Do	buglas is the
4	These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct	the n	nistakes?
	He's the intelligentest man I have ever met	st int	elligent
1			
2	2 We all play badly, but I'm the worse.		
3	Julie has the more interesting job in our office		
4	Your house is much nicer as ours.		
5	5 Please walk quicklier.		
e	6 His eyes are hard like stones.		
7	<sup>7</sup> London is more big than Paris		
8	My sister is the beautifullest of the three girls.		
ç	Paul is the oldest from the three children.		

10 Monday is worst day of the week.

## **SECTION 17** conjunctions

### grammar summary

before while after although as soon as but until when and because so neither ... nor (For if, see Section 18.) both ... and either ... or (If necessary, use a dictionary to check the meanings of these conjunctions.)

### We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

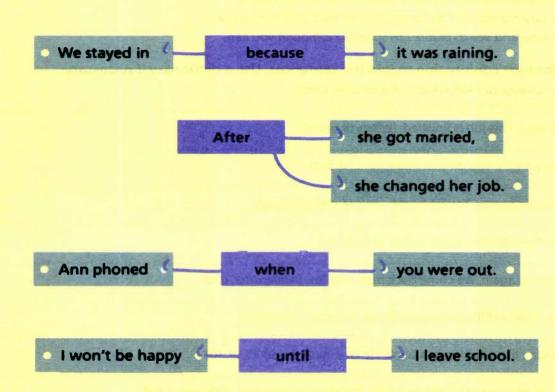
I went to Germany **because** Emma was there. We went home **after** the concert finished. I phoned **as soon as** I got the news.

Some conjunctions (and the words that follow them) can go in two places. I cleaned my room before I went out. Before I went out, I cleaned my room.

We use **present tenses** to talk about the **future** with **time-conjunctions**. I'll phone you when I arrive. Let's wait here **until somebody comes**. She'll pay you as soon as she has the money.

We can use *and* to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words. We **don't** need to **repeat unnecessary words** with *and*.

I went downstairs **and** (I) opened the door. I've got friends in Canada **and** (in) Australia. Could I have a knife **and** (a) fork?



## conjunctions: introduction and, but, because ...

### **Conjunctions** are words like *and, but, because, although, if, while, so, until.* We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

It was cold I like him	and but	l wanted to go home. I don't like her.
He got up	although	he was ill.
I didn't buy it	because	it was too expensive.
I'll phone you	if	the train is late.
Andrew called	while	you were out.
It was raining	SO	l took my umbrella.
I waited	until	Mary was ready.
Let's go out	as soon as	Peter arrives.

### Circle the best conjunction.

- I'll phone you although / so / when ) arrive.
- 1 The party was boring, *although / because / so* I went home.
- 2 The weather was nice, *although / or / until* it was a bit cold.
- 3 She speaks good French, after / because / but she has a strong English accent.
- 4 I enjoyed my month in Argentina, although / and / but I learnt a lot of Spanish.
- 5 I'll tell you my plans because / so / while we're having lunch.
- 6 I helped him after / because / or he was a good friend.
- 7 I'll wait here with you as soon as / until your train leaves.
- 8 Let's talk about the future while / because / or we're walking.
- 9 You can pay me now or / so / because I can wait until next week.
- 10 Please come and see us before / as soon as / although you can.

### Choose the best conjunction to join the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	l lived in Liverpool. I left school. ( <i>if, although, until</i> ) I lived in Liverpool until I left school.
1	We'll be glad. This job is finished. ( <i>when, or, while</i> )
2	I'll be very angry. You do that again. ( <i>and, if, but</i> )
3	I'd like to talk to you. You go home. ( <i>before, and, although</i> )
4	Sue watched TV. John came home. ( <i>if, until, or</i> )
5	We'll see you again. We come back from holiday. ( <i>while, after, and</i> )
6	I like her. She's a difficult person. ( <i>because, before, although</i> )
7	Henry didn't like working in a bank. He changed his job. ( <i>if, or, so</i> )
8	They think they can do what they like. They're rich. ( <i>because, although, until</i> )
9	I want to stop working. I'm 50. ( <i>if, before, and</i> )
10	You look beautiful. You're smiling. ( <i>or, so, when</i> )

## position of conjunctions If you need help, ask me.

When we use conjunctions, there are often two possibilities.						
	itart with the conjunction	2 Put the conjunction <b>between</b> the				
(	and the part that follows it).	two parts of the sentence.				
	ONJUNCTION bbbbb, aaaaa	Aaaaa(,) CONJUNCTION bbbbb				
1	F you need help, please ask me.	Please ask me IF you need help.				
1	WHEN you are in London, phone us.	Phone us WHEN you are in London.				
	LTHOUGH it was raining, I went out.	I went out, ALTHOUGH it was raining hard.				
/	AS SOON AS she could, she went to bed.	She went to bed AS SOON AS she could.				
	e that we often put <b>commas</b> (,) in sentences with					
We	usually use a comma if we start with the conjunc	tion.				
	Put these sentences together in two ways.					
	<ul> <li>I enjoyed the film. The beginning was boring. (a)</li> </ul>	although)				
	I enjoyed the film, although the beginning was borning.	ning was boring.				
	Although the beginning was boring, 1	enjoyed the film.				
-	I put on two sweaters. It was very cold. (because					
		ς,				
	2 I'm going to work in Australia. Heave school. (M					
3	B I go and see Felix. I want to talk to somebody. (					
	-	~				
4	Ann made coffee. Bill fried some eggs. ( <i>while</i> )					
6	i I was interested in the conversation. I didn't un	derstand everything. ( <i>although</i> )				
e	We went to a restaurant. There was no food in t	the house. (because)				
_						
7	We'll have a big party. John comes home. ( <i>whe</i>	n)				
		***************************************				
		······································				
ξ	8 I stayed with friends. My parents were travelling	g. (while)				
	***************************************					
ç	I go for long walks at the weekend. The weathe	nr's fina life				
2	I go tor long warks at the weekend. The weathe	(i s (iiie. (ii)				
10	Come and see us. You arrive in Scotland. (as soc	as)				

NOTE: and, but, or and so always come between the two parts of the sentence.

# tenses with time conjunctions I'll see you before you go.

We	use the simple p	resent with a fu	ture meaning	after befor	e, after,	while, unt	il, when a	nd as soo	n as.
	ee you <b>before</b> you		Contractor in the local division of the loca			ut it <b>after I</b>			
	can use my car w	-		ove until / te					
He	I phone <b>when</b> he	gets home. (NOT	when he w	ill get home.	)				
We	ll start the party <b>a</b>	<mark>s soon as</mark> Alice <mark>a</mark> l	rrives.						
4	Put in verbs fro	m the box lise	a tha cimpla	procent					
U	ut in verbs no			present.					
	arrive be	finish get	go hear	leave	nake	open 🗸	stop v	write	
	• Wait here until	Jane	. the door.		i I'll coo	ok supper	after I	b	back from
	Call me as soo	n as you	about the	2	the gy	/m.			
	exam.			e	íľmgo	oing to trav	vel round	the world	before I
	2 Can you hold t	the baby while I				60.			
	coffee?			7	' l'm no	ot going o	ut until th	e rain	
	8 What's John go	oing to do when	he	8	8 Will yo	ou stay in <sup>s</sup>	while l		shopping?
	school?			9	We'll d	call you as	soon as v	ve	in Paris.
	Give my love to	o Sue when you	to	oher. 10	) We'll <u>o</u>	go for a dr	ink after t	he class .	
6									
C	Put in verbs fro	m the box (sin	iple present	or will).					
	come find	get give 🗸	help loo	k after lo	ook s	tart sto	p tell	travel	
	1'll give	you my	vaddress befo	ore I say do	dhve				
	<ol> <li>Lisa's going to live here until shea job.</li> <li>We're going to look after Sue's flat while she round America.</li> </ol>								
	<ol> <li>We re going to look after Sue's flat while she</li> <li>I round America.</li> <li>I</li></ol>								
		ve've got half an							
		you th							
		ee Maggie while							
								7	
	When I get time, I for a new place to live. Mum's going to move to Scotland after she								
		I'll bring you a present when I home.							
1	) Things		worse before	they get be	tter.				
3	Write five or mo	ore sentences a	about yours	elf, using	some o	f the beg	ginnings	in the b	ox.
	When I leave so	 chool, I'll V	Vhen I finish u	iniversity. l'	۱ ۱	When Laet	married.	1/11	
	When I have ch		When my chi			-			
	When I have ti		en l'm 20/30/4						
	3								
	F								
	ō		•••••						

→ For tenses with if see page 245.

## because and so; although and but

Pro	an say <b>why</b> things happen with <b>because</b> or <b>so</b> (but <b>not both)</b> . u <b>se</b> Sue was tired, she went to bed. / Sue went to bed <b>because</b> she was tired.
	ie was tired, so she went to bed. (BUT NOT <del>Because Sue was tired, so she went to bed.</del> )
/e u	sually put a <b>comma</b> (,) before so. For more about commas with conjunctions, see page <b>235</b> .
J	in the sentences with <i>because</i> (twice) and with <i>so</i> .
	He passed the exam. He had a good teacher.
	Because he had a good teacher, he passed the exam.
	He passed the example he had a good teacher
	He had a good teacher so he passed the exam
1	I changed my hotel. The rooms were dirty.
2	The taxi was late. We missed the train.
3	I didn't like the film. I walked out of the cinema.
0	
	an say that things are <b>not as we expect</b> with <i>although</i> or <i>but</i> (but <b>not both</b> ).
lthe	ugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.
Itho R Po	o <b>ugh</b> Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, <b>although</b> he was tired. Ite was tired, <b>but</b> he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT <del>Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.</del> )
Itho R Po	ugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.
Itho R Po /e u	ough Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, <b>although</b> he was tired. Although Pete was tired, <b>but</b> he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT <del>Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed</del> .) Sually put <b>commas</b> before <b>although</b> and <b>but</b> .
ltha R Pa /e u	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, <b>although</b> he was tired. Sete was tired, <b>but</b> he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT <del>Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.</del> ) sually put <b>commas</b> before <b>although</b> and <b>but</b> . Sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.
ltha R Pa /e u	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Sete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. Sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.
ltha R Pa /e u	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Sete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. So in the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam. although she had a bad teacher.
ltha R Pa /e u	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Sete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. Sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.
Itho R Po /e u ) Jo	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Sete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. Sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.
ltha R Pa /e u Ja	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Sete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. Sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.
ltha R Pa /e u Ja	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Ete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working.
ltha R Pa /e u Ja	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Ete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working.
ltha R Pa /e u Ja	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. Ete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working.
Itho R Po /e u Jo	<ul> <li>bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.</li> <li>but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)</li> <li>buily put commas before although and but.</li> <li>bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.</li> <li>She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.</li> <li>Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.</li> <li>She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.</li> <li>She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.</li> <li>I felt ill. I went on working.</li> </ul>
Itho R Po /e u Jo	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. tet was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) sually put commas before although and but. bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working. She was very kind. I didn't like her.
Itho R Po Jo Jo	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bite was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete-was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         She was very kind. I didn't like her.
Itho R Po Jo Jo	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bite was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         She was very kind. I didn't like her.
ltho R Po Jo Jo 1	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.
ltho R Po Jo Jo 1	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.
Itho R Po Jo Jo 1	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.
ltho R Po Jo Jo 1	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.
Itho R Po Jo Jo 1	bugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.         bete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.)         sually put commas before although and but.         bin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.

level 2

## and I speak Russian, English and Swahili.

We can use <b>and</b> to <b>join</b> sentences, shorter expressions or single words.
Sylvia won the first game <b>and</b> Pete won the second. 'What's she interested in?' 'Scottish dancing <b>and</b> mountain climbing.' 'What shall we have for supper?' 'Fish <b>and</b> chips.'
In lists, we usually put and between the last two things, and commas (,) between the others.
We need soap, bread, orange juice, <b>tomatoes and sugar</b> . She was beautiful, <b>intelligent and kind.</b> (NOT <del>beautiful, intelligent, kind.</del> )
Write the sentences using <i>and</i> and commas.
She speaks (French German Japanese Arabic). She speaks French, German, Japanese and Arabic.
1 My company has offices in ( <i>London Tokyo New York Cairo</i> ).
2 l've invited ( <i>Paul Alexandra Eric Luke Janet</i> ).
3 I'll be here on ( <i>Tuesday Thursday Friday Sunday</i> ).
4 She's got (five cats two dogs a horse a rabbit).
5 He plays (golf rugby hockey badminton).
6 She ( <i>addressed stamped posted</i> ) the letter.
When we use <i>and,</i> we do <b>not</b> usually <b>repeat unnecessary words</b> .
She sings and <b>she</b> plays the violin. — She sings and plays the violin.
He plays tennis and <b>he plays</b> badminton.
They have offices in Britain and in America.
We stayed with my brother and <b>my</b> sister. We stayed with my brother and sister.
The house and the garden were full of people.       If house and garden were full of people.         I've been to Greece and I've been to Turkey.       I've been to Greece and Turkey.
I washed my shirt and I dried my shirt. I washed and dried my shirt.
<ul> <li>Cross out the unnecessary words, and put in commas if necessary.</li> <li>I speak Russian, and + speak English and + speak Swahili.</li> <li>She has painted the kitchen and she has painted the living room and she has painted the dining room.</li> <li>Bob was wearing a pink shirt and Bob was wearing blue jeans and Bob was wearing white trainers.</li> </ul>

- 3 Can you give me a knife and can you give me a fork and can you give me a spoon, please?
- 4 Many people speak English in India and many people speak English in Singapore and many people speak English in South Africa.
- 5 I've written six letters and I've posted six letters this morning.

We use or in similar ways.You can come with me or wait here.I don't speak German, French or Spanish.

# double conjunctions both ... and; (n)either ... (n)or

Weca	an make <b>and</b> more emphatic ('stronger') by using <b>both and</b> .
He's b	oth a top sportsman and a famous writer. She both sings and dances.
We ca	an make <b>or</b> more emphatic by using <b>either or</b> .
	an <b>either</b> come with me now <b>or find</b> your own way home.
	ave time to see either the museum or the cathedral, but not both.
Neith	er nor means 'not one and not the other'.
The le	essons were <b>neither</b> interesting <b>nor</b> useful. He speaks <b>neither</b> English <b>nor</b> French.
	ake sentences with both and, either or or neither nor.
	She speaks (Chinese + Japanese + ) She speaks both Chinese and Japanese.
	You can have (coffee / tea) You can have either coffee or tea.
•	I can (draw = sing =) I can neither draw nor sing.
1	I think that she's (Scottish / Irish)
2	I'd like to work with (animals / children)
3	He did well in ( <i>mathematics</i> + <i>history</i> +)
4	This car is (fast <b>a</b> comfortable <b>b</b> )
5	She (looked at me said anything )
6	l've got problems ( <i>at home</i> + <i>in my job</i> + )
7	You can (stay here / go home)
8	like (theatre 🛨 cinema 🔹)
9	She speaks (English E French E)
10	I don't understand (politics / economics)
2 W	rite some true sentences about yourself.
1	I can both
2	I can neither
3	l like both
4	I don't like either
5	l haven't got either
6	

# conjunctions: more practice

Т	enses with time conjunctions. Put in the simple present or <i>will</i> .
	1. Il phone you when I arrive (phone; arrive)
1	I think I some tea before I to bed. (have; go)
2	I here until your father (wait; arrive)
3	When you again, Ann here. ( <i>come; be</i> )
4	We sorry when Rachel back home. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>go</i> )
5	After we
6	We your tickets as soon as we the money. (send; receive)
7	I very busy until the exams over. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>be</i> )
8	Before I
9	As soon as the rain
10	
10	we Dreaklast alter Luke (nuve, get up)
2 P	osition of conjunctions. Put these sentences together in two ways.
	The weather's good. I go fishing at weekends. ( <i>if</i> )
	If the weather's good, I go fishing at weekends.
	I go fishing at weekends if the weather's good.
1	The teacher was ill. The children had a holiday. (because)
2	I was in China. I made a lot of friends. ( <i>when</i> )
3	They built the new road. It was difficult to get to our village. (until)
4	Jessica wrote three letters. Dylan never answered. ( <i>although</i> )
5	I phoned him. The work was finished. (as soon as)
0	and the sector of the sector sector has been and the sector sector with the sector secto
	ouble conjunctions. Make sentences with both and, either or or neither nor.
	I (swim 🕂 play tennis 💶).
	He (lives / works) in Birmingham.
3	My father speaks (Greek E French E).
4	She likes (pop music 📕 jazz 📕).
5	You can have ( <i>orange juice / water</i> ).
6	I can (sing 🗖 dance 📕).
7	He's (Scottish / Irish).
8	He's studying ( <i>physics</i> + <i>biology</i> +).
9	This sofa is (nice-looking _ comfortable _).
10	Anna (looked at Henry 🗖 spoke to him 🗖). 🛛

#### 4) Grammar in a text. Put conjunctions from the box into the text.

although a	although	and	and	and	because	because	before	SO	until	when	
------------	----------	-----	-----	-----	---------	---------	--------	----	-------	------	--

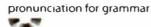
	Andy Probert was bored at school, a
	got a job in a travel agency. He did not stay there very long, 4 he liked the work. He decided
	to move 5
	was in an import-export company. He liked that much better 7 he travelled to America a
	lot 8 the work was very well paid. He worked there for three years, 9 he really
	understood the business; then he started his own company. Now he is doing very well, 10
	the work is sometimes very hard. He says he wants to make enough money to stop working 11
	he is 50.
	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the
	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the
	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put <i>the</i> with the names of the instruments.
	<ul> <li>GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.</li> <li>(Steve, quitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.</li> </ul>
•	<ul> <li>GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.</li> <li>(Steve, guitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.</li> <li>(Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.</li> <li>(Steve, quitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.</li> <li>(Steve, guitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.</li> <li>(Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.</li> <li>(Steve, guitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.</li> <li>(Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.</li> <li>(Karl, trombone, saxophone)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.</li> <li>(Steve, guitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.</li> <li>(Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.</li> <li>(Karl, trombone, saxophone)</li> <li>(Melanie, cello, drums)</li> </ul>

- 6 (Sophie, guitar, trumpet)
- 7 (Charles, Steve, saxophone)
- 8 (Sophie, Steve, trumpet)

	cello	drums	trombone	guitar	piano	saxophone	trumpet	violin
Joanna	×	×	1	1	1	1	1	1
Karl	1	1	×	1	1	×	1	1
David	×	1	1	×	1	1	1	1
Steve	1	1	1	1	1	1	×	×
Melanie	1	1	×	1	×	1	1	1
Sophie	1	1	1	×	1	1	×	1
Karen	1	1	1	1	1	×	1	×
Charles	1	×	1	1	×	1	1	1

### **6** Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

"as soon as we will arrive" .?..... "until it will stop" ...... "after they will finish" ..... "before I will arrive" ...... "while I will be there" ..... "as soon as we arrive" 24,600 "until it stops." ..... "after they finish" ..... "before I arrive" ..... "while I am there" .....



# conjunctions: revision test

0	Thoose the right conjunctions and put the sentences together.
1	I was tired. I went to bed. (while, so, after) I was tired, so I went to bed.
ণ	I'm going to do some gardening. It gets dark. ( <i>because, but, until</i> )
2	2 I couldn't read. It was too dark. ( <i>although, because, so</i> )
3	The food wasn't very good. He ate everything. ( <i>so, but, because</i> )
2	
5	
6	
7	You can't have any more coffee. There isn't any more. (s <i>o, because, why</i> )
8	
ç	
10	
11	I can't tell you the decision. I know myself. ( <i>as soon as, while, until</i> )
12	
13	
14	Andrew saw Zoë. He fell madly in love with her. (as soon as, until, but)
15	l left school. I worked as a taxi driver. ( <i>until, after, while</i> )
~	
<b>9</b>	Correct the mistakes.
	• You can either stay here either come with me. $0^{\gamma}$
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6 7	
8	
9	
10	
11	I'll change my job as soon as I'll find another one.
12	

# **SECTION 18** if

#### grammar summary<sup>®</sup>

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if. He won't come tomorrow if he came yesterday. If that was Mary, why didn't she stop and say hello? If you've been to Paris, you've seen the Eiffel Tower. Oil floats if you pour it on water. If you're happy, I'm happy.

Note the following three important structures:

present tenses for future:
 With if, we use present tenses to talk about the future.
 I'll phone you if I have time. (NOT ... if I will have time.)

if + past, ... would ...
 We can use past tenses with if to show that something is not real or not probable now.
 (We normally use would in the other part of the sentence.)
 If I had more money, I would buy a car now.

• if + past perfect, ... would have ...

To talk about **unreal past** events – things that did not happen – we use **if** + **past perfect**. (We normally use **would have** + **past participle** in the other part of the sentence.) I'm sorry you had all those problems. If you **had asked** me, I **would have helped** you.

These three structures are often called 'first', 'second' and 'third conditional'. The structure with two present tenses (e.g. *If you're happy*, *I'm happy*) is sometimes called 'zero conditional', for no very good reason.

We can use **unless** to mean 'if not', 'except if'. You can't come in **unless** you have a ticket. (=' if you don't have a ticket.')

### مجعزباناياانيان

If you were the only girl in the world, and I were the only boy . . . (Song by Clifford Grey, British songwriter, born 1937)

If you can find something that everyone agrees on, it's wrong.

(Mo Udall, American politician, 1922-1998)

If God did not exist, it would be necessary to invent him.

(Voltaire, French writer, 1694-1788)

If the automobile had followed the same development cycle as the computer, a Rolls-Royce would today cost \$100, get a million miles per gallon, and explode once a year, killing everyone inside.

(Robert X. Cringely, InfoWorld magazine)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, . . . you'll be a man, my son. (Rudyard Kipling, British short-story writer, novelist and poet, 1865-1936)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, you just don't know what's going on. (British Army saying)

If one morning I walked on top of the water across Potomac River, the headline that afternoon would read "President Can't Swim". (Lyndon B. Johnson, American politician, 1908–1973 – President 1963–1969)

If the human mind was simple enough to understand, we'd be too simple to understand it. (Emerson Pugh, American writer on technology)

# if: position; unless

An i	if-c	clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma (,).
IfIh	ha	<b>ve time</b> , I'll clean up the garden. I'll clean up the garden <b>if I have time</b> .
Α.	Ic	se <i>if</i> to put these sentences together in two ways.
		Joe works at Brown's. He probably knows Annie. If Joe works at Brown's, he probably knows Annie. Joe probably knows Annie if he works at Brown's.
1	1	I can't sleep. I get up and read.
Z	2	You take books from my room. Please tell me.
3	3	You're hungry. Why don't you cook some soup?
2	4	She's been travelling all day. She must be tired
5	5	We catch the first train. We can be in London by 9.00.
		an use <b>unless</b> to mean ' <b>if not', 'except if</b> '.
		an't come in <b>unless</b> you have a ticket. (= 'You can't come in if you don't have a ticket.') s I'm very tired, I go to bed about midnight. (= 'Except if I'm very tired')
2 F	Re	ewrite these sentences with <i>unless</i> .
•		Children can't go in if they are not with an adult.
•		Children can't go in unless they are with an adult.
1		If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police.
	1	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. Unless you give me my money, I'm going to the police. You can't park here if you don't live in this street.
2		If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. Huless you give me my money, I'm going to the police. You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film.
2	2	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. <i>unless you give me my money, I'm going to the police.</i> You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. I don't drive fast except if I'm really late.
	2	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. Huless you give me my money, I'm going to the police. You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. I don't drive fast except if I'm really late. If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays.
3	2 3 4 5	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. <i>unless you give me my money, I'm going to the police.</i> You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. I don't drive fast except if I'm really late. If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV.
3	2	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. <i>unless you give me my money. I'm going to the police.</i> You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. I don't drive fast except if I'm really late. If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV. I see my mother at weekends if I'm not travelling.
3 4 5	2 3 4 5 5 5	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. unless you give me my money, I'm going to the police. You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. I don't drive fast except if I'm really late. If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV. I see my mother at weekends if I'm not travelling. If it's not raining, I play tennis most evenings.
3 4 5 6	2 3 4 5 5 7	If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. unless you give me my money. I'm going to the police. You can't park here if you don't live in this street. If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. I don't drive fast except if I'm really late. If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV. I see my mother at weekends if I'm not travelling.

# if: future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if. But after if, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future.

If it is sunny tomorrow, we'll eat in the garden. I'll be sorry if I don't pass this exam. I'll phone you **if** I hearfrom Alice.

#### Choose the best verb to complete the sentence.

- I'll buy you a sweater if I ... find ......... a nice one. (find, hold, pay)
- If it rains, we "I have...... the party indoors. (think, play, have)
- 1 I'll be glad if I .....a letter from Jack tomorrow. (expect, get, decide)
- 2 Olivia ...... back your bike if she remembers. (come, bring, sell)
- 3 If you like, I ...... you Japanese lessons. (bring, hold, give)
- 4 If Alex ....., tell him I'm out. (phone, stop, write)
- 5 We'll stop and see you in Dublin if we ..... time. (give, think, have)
- 6 I'll give you £100 if you ..... smoking. (stay, stop, break)
- 7 I ..... very surprised if Angela marries Jack. (be, stand, find)
- 8 If you sing, I ....., I promise. (not learn, not laugh, not drive)
- 9 If you cook lunch, I ..... supper. (eat, drink, cook)
- 10 The government will do what it likes if nobody ..... it. (stop, speak, find)

#### 2 Put in the correct verb forms.

- ▶ If it ....., we 'll have ..... the party inside. (rain; have)
- 1 I ..... happy if I ..... my exam. (be; pass)
- 2 If you ..... now, you ..... the train. (leave; catch)
- 3 John says he ..... as a taxi-driver if he ..... money. (work; need)
- 4 If I ...... free tomorrow evening, I ...... you on Friday. (not be; see)
- 5 Mary ...... Chinese next year if she ..... time. (study; have)
- 6 | ..... you to the station if I ..... find my car keys. (drive; can)
- 7 If he ..... her, he ..... a happy life. (marry; not have)
- 8 ...... you that you must? (stop; tell)
- 9 If you ..... to your father very politely, ..... he ..... us his car? (talk; lend)

#### Make sentences with if.

I'm afraid the bus will be late.

	(→ get to work late again)
	(→ not find another job) If I lose my job,
2	(→ lose my flat)
3	(→ move back to my parents' house)
4	(→ get very bored)
5	(-> go swimming every day)
6	(→ look very good)
7	(> meet interesting people)
8	(-> go to lots of parties)
9	(> have a wonderful time)

# not real / not probable If dogs could talk, ...

We use if + past tense + would	to talk about things that are <b>not real or not probable</b> now.
IF + PAST TENSE	WOULD + INFINITIVE (WITHOUT TO)
If   had a million dollars,	I would build a big swimming pool.
If you were the President,	what would you do?
If dogs could talk,	they would tell some interesting stories.
If he didn't travel so much,	he'd have more money.
Contractions (see page 301): /	vould 🛶 l'd, you would 🛶 you'd etc
• Put in the correct forms of	of the correct verbs.
If peoplehad	four arms, life
This would be a	nice country if it didn't rain so much. (not rain; be)
	open the fridge, it all my food. ( <i>can; eat</i> )
	here, they what to do. ( <i>know; be</i> )
3 If I the	e answer, I you. ( <i>know; tell</i> )
4 If your boss	you to work on Sunday, you it? ( <i>do</i> ; <i>ask</i> )
5 If you	read people's thoughts, what you? ( <i>can; do</i> )
6 I a car	if I enough money. ( <i>buy</i> ; <i>have</i> )
7 If I yo	u to marry me, what you? (say; ask)
8 Alex ł	his work on time if he so much. ( <i>finish; not talk</i> )
9 I Chin	ese if I more time. ( <i>have; study</i> )
10 If the programmes	better, I more TV. ( <i>be; watch</i> )
2 Make sentences beginni	ag with if
My parents don't live nea	r here, so I don't see them at weekends. Near here, I would see them at weekends.
	use Jane and Peter aren't here.
If Jane	
2 We haven't got enough n	noney, so we won't buy a new car.
3 Fred doesn't answer lette	rs, so I don't write to him.
	ecause I can't find my camera.
	na la se la sue de sete e de la sue ade
	se I can't understand the words.
	e she talks about herself all the time.
7 I haven't got a dog, so I do	
What would you do if you	I had a free year and a lot of money? Write three or more sentences.
travel round the world	study go to (other answers)
1 If)	
J	

Level 2

# If I were you, ...

We sometimes use were instead of was a	after <i>if.</i> This is usually rather <b>formal</b> .
If I were taller I would play basketball.	If John were here, he would know what to do.
We often say If I were you, I would / I'd	, when we want to give people <b>advice</b> .
If I were you, I'd get a new car. I woul	dn't stand there if I were you.

Write sentences with *if I were you*, using the expressions in the box.

call the police at once fly not sell it join a club see a doctor 🗸 take a holiday

- I feel ill: If I were you, I'd see a doctor.
- 1 'I'm really tired.'
- 2 'I haven't got any friends.'
- 3 'Shall I take the train to Scotland?'
  4 'Somebody has stolen my car.'
- 5 'Otto wants to buy my motorbike'
- 2 John Baker has won a lot of money in the lottery. His family and friends are giving him advice. Look at the pictures and use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

	buy a sports car buy a house 🖌 give the money away have a big party put the money in the bank start a business stop work travel round the work	d
	JOHN'S GIRLFRIEND: If I were you, I'd buy a house.	
1	HIS MOTHER:	
2	HIS FATHER:	
3	HIS BROTHER:	
4	HIS GRANDMOTHER:	
5	HIS SISTER:	
6	HIS FRIEND JOE:	
7	HIS FRIEND STEPHANIE:	



The difference between *if I go* and *if I went* (for example) is **not** a difference of **time**. We can use both *if I go/see* etc and *if I went/saw* etc to talk about the **present or future**. With *if*, a **past tense** does not mean 'past time'; it means '**not real' or 'not probable**'.

PROBABLE/POSSIBLE	NOT REAL/NOT PROBABLE		
	If I went to the moon, I would take a lot of photos.		
If I see Ann, I'll give her your address.	If I saw the Prime Minister, I would say 'hello'.		

#### Choose the best sentence-beginning.

- If I(live) / lived to be 75, ...
- 1 If I live / lived to be 175, ...
- 2 If dogs can / could talk, ...
- 3 If I go / went shopping next week, ...
- 4 If Switzerland starts / started a war against Australia, ...
- 5 If the government gives / gave everybody a month's holiday with pay, ...
- 6 If you need / needed help one day, ...
- 7 If everybody gives / gave 10% of their money to poor countries, ...
- 8 If everybody thinks / thought the same as me, ...
- 9 If I am / was the most intelligent person in the world, ...
- 10 If prices go / went up next year, ...

#### 2 Choose the best way to continue the sentences.

- I'm not going to open the window. If I open / opened the window, it will / would be too noisy.
- Maybe I'll open a window. But if lopen/opened a window, it will/would be very noisy.
- 1 I'm going to get up early tomorrow. If I have / had time, I'll / 'd walk to work.
- 2 If I have / had time, | 'll / 'd walk to work, but it's just not possible.
- 3 'I may get a job in Germany.' 'If you get/got it, what will/would your boyfriend say?'
- 4 'There's a job in Germany, but I don't think I'll get it.' 'If you *get / got* it, what *will / would* your boyfriend say?'
- 5 We never leave food on the table. If we *do / did*, the cat *will / would* eat it.
- 6 'Shall I put this on the table?' 'If you do/did, the cat will/would eat it.'
- 7 I'll probably go to university. But if I go / went, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- 8 I'm not going to go to university. If I *go / went* to university, I *won't / wouldn't* earn any money for three years.
- 9 Maybe Jenny will marry Phil. But if she does / did, I'm afraid she won't / wouldn't be happy.
- 10 Phil isn't going to marry Jenny. Because if he does / did, he will / would have a terrible time with her.

#### Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1	If   live to be 90,
	If I lived to be 190,
	If I learn more English,
4	If I learnt 20 languages,
5	If I go to New York,
6	If I went to the moon,

# unreal past If A had happened, B would have happened.

We ca	an use <i>if</i> to talk about <b>unreal p</b>	ast events – things that <b>didn't happen</b> .
We u	se the past perfect and would	have + past participle.
IF + PI	AST PERFECT	WOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE
lf you If Ma	weather had been better, had asked me, ry had seen you, hadn't gone skiing,	we would have gone to the sea. (But it wasn't, so we didn't.) I would have helped you. (But you didn't, so I didn't.) what would you have said? (But she didn't.) she wouldn't have fallen and broken her leg. (But she did.)
P	ut in the correct verb forms	5.
1	lf I	here yesterday, I would have come to see you. ( <i>be</i> )
2	If Joe	harder, he would have passed his exams. (work)
3	If you	a map with you, you wouldn't have got lost. ( <i>take</i> )
4	We would have won the gam	e if we so badly. ( <i>not play</i> )
5	If I had gone to university, I	medicine and become a doctor. (study)
6		you if you had driven more slowly? (crash)
7		badly if you hadn't drunk all that coffee. (not sleep)
8		on holiday with us, you a wonderful
9	If my car (not break down; be)	here at 8 o'clock.
10		youharder at school last year if you the teachers? ( <i>study; like</i> )
11	She (not get; not want)	married if she
12	(help; ask)	you me if I you

2 Getting up early is bad for you. Read the text in the box and make sentences.

-> fall in love and marry her -> go to live in her country -> work in her father's diamond business -> become very rich -> go into politics -> die in a revolution ▶ If I had got up early, I would have caught the 8.15 train. 1 If I had caught ..... ..... 2 ..... ..... and married her. ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... ..... 5 ..... ..... 6 ..... 7 ..... .....

# if: more practice

#### Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Put the beginnings and ends together. (Different answers are possible.).

0	If I had a lot of money,	A	I would give it all to you?.
1	lf you ask me nicely,	В	I'll break my leg
2	If the news was always good,	C	nobody would believe them
3	If we go to the country,	D	I'll dance all night
4	lf we go skiing,	E	I'll wear my new bikini
5	If everybody spoke English,	F	it would be a disaster
6	If I come to your party,	G	I'll make you a cup of tea
7	If everybody was telepathic,	н	newspapers wouldn't have many pages
8	If politicians told the truth,	1	they might say some interesting things
9	lf we go swimming,	J	I'll take my bicycle
10	If animals could talk,	к	international communication would be much easier

#### **2** Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Choose the best ways to continue the sentences.

- I think I'll study medicine. But I know if I do y did that, I(II) 'd have to work very hard.
- She's a very generous person. If she wins / won the lottery, she will / would give it all away.
- 1 I'm not going to buy a car. If I buy / bought a car I will / would spend all my money on it.
- 2 I really must go and see Sandra. But if I go / went and see / saw her, I'll / 'd have to talk to her stupid brother.
- 3 My parents live a long way away. If they live / lived nearer, I will / would see them more often.
- 4 We're going to stay at home this evening. If we go / went out, we won't / wouldn't do anything interesting.
- 5 Those exams are difficult. Unless you start / started working harder, you won't / wouldn't pass.
- 6 The United Moderate Anarchist Party will probably win the election. And if they *win / won*, the country *will / would* be in deep trouble.
- 7 I'm glad Marion isn't going to marry Jack. Because if she *marries / married* him she *will / would* be very unhappy.
- 8 Maybe I'll take you to London with me. But if I take / took you, you'll / 'd have to pay for your ticket.
- 9 If it rains / rained again tomorrow, I won't / wouldn't go cycling.
- 10 Dylan never tells the truth. And if he does / did, I won't / wouldn't believe him.

#### **Grammar in a text.** Put in the missing words.

The laws of work

- 1 If anything can go wrong, it ...... go wrong.
- If a job looks easy, it's difficult. If it ..... difficult, ..... impossible.
- 3 If you think a job will take two hours, it ...... take four days. If you think it ...... take four days, it ...... eight weeks. And so on.
- 4. If you throw something away, you ..... need it the next day.
- 5 If you do what everybody wants you to do, somebody ..... like it.
- 6 If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand, somebody .....

#### Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.

1	If I	coffee last night, I	better. (not drink; sleep)
2	If my parents	more money, I	to university
	after I left school. ( <i>have</i> ; go)		
3	Jessica	to Brazil last year if she	Pete.
	(go; not meet)		
4	lf I	ill last week, I	to Ireland. ( <i>not be</i> ; <i>go</i> )
5	1	. the bus if I	(catch; run)
6	If he	smoking, he	longer. (stop; live)
7	1	. you for help unless I	it. (not ask; need)
8	Yesterday	a better day if I	in bed. ( <i>be</i> ; stay)
9	1	. a sweater if I	it was going to be so cold.
	(wear; know)		
10	If we	time we	to see Uncle Pete. (have: ao)

#### **S** Unreal past. Read the text and complete the chain of *if*-sentences.

#### HOT WEATHER IS GOOD FOR YOU

It was hot, so my mother opened the door. A cat came in and ate her supper, so she went to the shop to buy food. In the shop she saw an advertisement for a secretary. So she got a new job, and met my father. I'm glad it was a hot day!

If it hadn't been hot, my mother wouldn't have opened the door. If she hadn't opened the door, the cat ...... her supper. If the cat



#### **6** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: names of languages

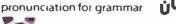
Anna is going to work in another country next year. See if you can make sentences with the correct language names. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	Arabic	Chinese 🗸	Dutch	German	Greek	Portuguese	Swahili	_ربي
•	(China)	If she go	es to Chi	na, she wi	ll have t	o learn Chin	ese.	中文
1	(Egypt)	If she						Nederlands
2	(Brazil)							
3	(Holland	)						Deutsch
4	(Kenya)							Ελληνικά
5	(Greece)							Português
6	(Austria)		*********					Kiswahili
1.00	iternet e		a searcl	n engine (e	e.g. Goog	gle) to find ou	t which of th	ne following

#### are more common.

"unless I buy"	104,000
"if I were you"	
"if she knew"	
"if we go"	
"if they had sai	d"

"unless I will buy"
"if I was you"
"if she would know"
"if we will go"
"if they would have said"



مجعزبان ايرانيان

...

# if: revision test

		ut in the correct verb forms.
		I'm sure John
		l would be very happy if I had more friends. ( <i>have</i> )
	1	If you your glasses, you would see much better. ( <i>clean</i> )
	2	If Peter lives in Little Compton, he probably my friend Jack. ( <i>know</i> )
	3	I and see you tomorrow if I have time. ( <i>come</i> )
	4	If she spoke more slowly, perhaps I her. (understand)
	5	If youat 12.00, you will arrive at 3.20. ( <i>leave</i> )
	6	1 my car unless I needed money. ( <i>not sell</i> )
	7	If you so far away, it would be easier for us to see each other. (not live)
	8.	I this letter for you if I can find my dictionary. (translate)
		If I you very nicely, will you make me some coffee? ( <i>ask</i> )
1	0	If water very cold, it becomes ice. ( <i>get</i> )
2	Fi	ve of sentences 1–10 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
		I usually get up and watch TV if I can't sleepCorrect
		I wouldn't do that if I would be you
	1	I'll be very happy if I'll pass the exam.
	2	If she's from Russia, she probably speaks Russian.
	3	If he would eat more, he wouldn't be so thin.
	4	If I don't see you today, I see you next week.
	5	I'll come and see you on Wednesday if I have time.
	6	If we left early tomorrow morning, we would arrive before 12.00.
	7	Unless he doesn't work harder, he won't pass his exams.
	8	If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I'll play tennis with James.
	9	We'll go and see Max and Chris if we'll be in Berlin.
1	0	I would get a better job if I could find one.
3	Ur	nreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.
	1	If I what to do. (not ask; not know)
	2	If Alex to see him. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>go</i> )
		I'm sorry. I that if I that if I
		listening. ( <i>not say; know</i> )
	4	It nothing when the policeman
		stopped you. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>say</i> )
	5	If I my girlfriend. ( <i>not get</i> ;
		not meet)
	6	Lucy her to hospital when she started
		feeling ill. ( <i>die; not take</i> )
		If I so tired last night, I out. (not be; go)
	8	If I what my father wanted, I medicine.
		(do; study)
	9	Mark enough money.
		(go; have)
1	0	If you in deep trouble.
		(not help; be)

# **SECTION 19** relative pronouns

that

grammar summary

which

(whom)

who

#### We use relative pronouns to join sentences to nouns. The man was Welsh He on the prize. The man (WhO) won the prize was Welsh. We use who for people and which for things. We can also use that for people and things. There's the man who/that sold me my bike. She said a word which/that I didn't hear. We often leave out object pronouns, but not subject pronouns. Do you remember those photos (which/that) I showed you? The photos which/that show the beach are beautiful. (NOT The photos show the beach ...) Prepositions can often go in two places. The woman about whom we were talking walked into the room. (formal) The woman that we were talking about walked into the room. (conversational) We can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which'. The children always eat what I cook. bus Or /bas/ noun, verb art.ist Ow /'a:tist; NAME 'a:rt-/ noun 1 🛥 a person who creates works of art, especially paintings or drawings: an exhibition of work by contemporary British artists o a graphic artist o a make-up artist o Police have issued an artist's impression of her attacker. • (Jigurative) Whoever made this cake is a real artist. O COLLOCATIONS at ART 2 ~ (especially BrE ar tiste /a:'ti:st; NAME a:r't-/) a professional entertainer such as a singer, a dancer or an actor: a recording/solo artist part of a computer system to another verb (-s- or -ss-) 1 ~ sb (from/to...) to transport sb by bus: bee /bi:/ noun 1 a black and yellow flying insect that can sting. Bees live in large groups and make HONEY (= sweet sticky substance that is good to eat): a swarm of bees ◦ a bee sting ◦ Bees were buzzing in the clover. ⊃ see also BEEHIVE, BEESWAX, BUMBLEBEE, QUEEN BEE 2 (NAME) a meeting in a group where people combine work, competirestaurant, as a job tion and pleasure: a sewing bee See also SPELLING BEE the bee's knees (informal) an excellent person or thing: She thinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high cheese Ow /tʃi:z/ noun opinion of herself). have a 'bee in your bonnet about sth (informal) to think or talk about sth all the time and to think that it is very important S more at BIRD, BUSY adj

what

build er /'bildə(r)/ noun 1 a person or company whose job is to build or repair houses or other buildings 2 (usually in compounds) a person or thing that builds, creates or develops sth: a shipbuilder o a confidence builder S see also BODYBUILDER

burg-lar /'ba:gla(r); NAmE 'ba:rg-/ noun a person who enters a building illegally in order to steal

noun (pl. buses, US also busses) 1 - a large road vehicle that carries passengers, especially one that travels along a fixed route and stops regularly to let people get on and off: Shall we walk or go by bus? • A regular bus service connects the train station with the town centre. o a bus company/ driver  $\diamond$  a school bus  $\Im$  VISUAL VOCAB page V46 D compare COACH D see also BUS LANE, BUS SHELTER, BUS STATION, BUS STOP, MINIBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (computing) a set of wires that carries information from one

We were bussed from the airport to our hotel.  $2 \sim sb$  (NAME) to transport young people by bus to another area so that students of different races can be educated together  $\mathbf{3} \sim$ sth (NAME) to take the dirty plates, etc. off the tables in a

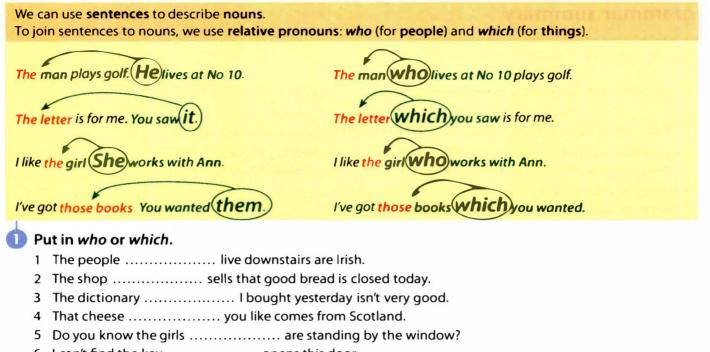
1 • [U, C] a type of food made from milk that can be either soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a particular type of this food: Cheddar cheese o goat's cheese = made from the milk of a GOAT) \* a cheese sandwich/ salad o a chunk/piece/slice of cheese o a selection of French cheeses  $\diamond$  a cheese knife (= a knife with a special curved blade with two points on the end, used for cutting and picking up pieces of cheese) **OVISUAL VOCAB** page V19

plant 0- /pla:nt; NAmE plænt/ noun, verb

• LIVING THING 1 •• [C] a living thing that grows in the earth and usually has a STEM, leaves and roots, especially one that is smaller than a tree or bush: All plants need light and water o flowering/garden/indoor plants o a tomato/potato plant  $\diamond$  the animal and plant life of the area  $\Im$  collocations at LIPE  $\Im$  VISUAL VOCAB page V9  $\Im$  see also BEDDING PLANT, HOUSE PLANT, POT PLANT, RUBBER PLANT

 $\ensuremath{\textbf{sau\cdotcer}}\xspace/(\ensuremath{\textbf{sourcer}}\xspace)/\ensuremath{\,\text{noun}}\xspace$  a small shallow round dish that a cup stands on; an object that is shaped like this: cups and See also FLYING saucers Ovisual VOCAB page V19 SAUCER

# relative who and which the keys which I lost



- 6 I can't find the key ..... opens this door.
- 7 I've lost the earrings ..... Harry gave me.
- 8 The police are looking for three men ..... robbed the National Bank yesterday.
- 9 We know the woman ..... teaches French at Jane's school.
- 10 Here's a word ..... I don't understand.
- 11 Are those the shoes ...... Tracy has just bought?
- 12 I had just one teacher ..... was really good.

We use who or which instead of he, him, she, it etc. Don't use both.

The woman who she teaches me French is ill. Here's the address which you wanted it

#### 2 Circle) the correct answer.

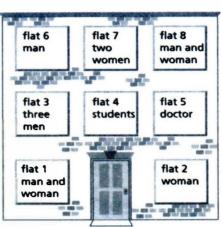
- 1 There's the man who took / he took your coat.
- 2 Do you know the people who live / they live next door?
- 3 I like that woman; she is / is very kind.
- 4 I've found the keys which | lost / lost them.
- 5 Do you like the new dress which I bought / bought it yesterday?
- 6 The car which is parked / it is parked outside belongs to Susan.
- 7 This is a new kind of knife: cuts / it cuts everything.
- 8 The poems which Mark writes / writes them are very hard to understand.
- 9 We've got three children who make / they make a lot of noise.
- 10 What did you do with the sweater which I lent you / I lent you it?

The man who makes no mistakes does not usually make anything. (*E J Phelps*)

# irlanguage

3 Look at the picture and the information, and write sentences with who.
The man and woman who live in flat 8 are from Scotland.

FLAT	INFORMATION
1	play loud music all night
2	broke her leg skiing
3	play golf all day
4	haven't got much money
5	has three children
6	drives a Rolls-Royce
7	are hiding from the police
8	are from Scotland



4 Join the sentences in the place marked \*. Change *he, it* etc to *who* or *which*.

•	Most of the people* speak German. They live in Austria. Most of the people who live in Austria speak German.
	l know a shop*. It sells really good meat. I know a shop which sells really good meat.
1	The bus* isn't running today. It goes to Oxford.
2	Yesterday I met a man*. He works with your brother.
3	The child* was ill. She didn't come to the party.
4	Can you pick up the papers*? They are lying on the floor.
5	The eggs* were bad. I bought them yesterday.
6	Here's the book*. You asked me to buy it for you.
7	I don't like the man*. He is going out with my sister.

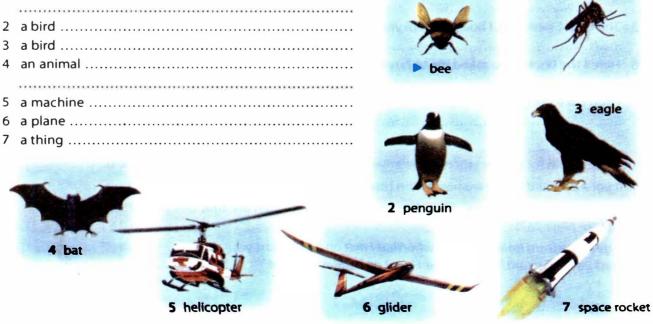
We can use *whom* for people when the relative pronoun is the **object** of the following verb.

I've just got a postcard from a woman whom I met on holiday last year. (I met the woman.)

But *whom* is formal and unusual. In spoken English, we more often use *that* (see page 256), *who* or **nothing** (see page 257).

I've just got a postcard from **a woman who/that I met** on holiday last year. OR I've just got a postcard from **a woman I met** on holiday last year. evel

e ca	an use <b>that</b> instead of <i>who</i> or <i>which</i> .
ne n	nan <b>that</b> lives at number 8 is getting married. You haven't drunk the tea <b>that</b> I made for you.
Jo	oin the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that.</i>
	I'd like to speak to the person*. She wrote this letter. I'd Like to speak to the person that wrote this letter.
	The tomatoes* are all bad. I bought them yesterday. The tomatoes that I bought yesterday are all bad.
1	Joe's got a motorbike*. It can do 200 km an hour.
2	Is that the computer*? It doesn't work.
3	Those are the trousers*. I use them for gardening.
4	A man* wants to marry my sister. He lives in New York.
5	The doctors* all said different things. They looked at my leg.
6	The flowers* are beautiful. You gave them to Aunt Sarah.
7	The children* have gone on holiday. They play football with Paul.
	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that fly rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey 🗸
	doesn't make honey and can bite you
► 1	an insect



# leaving out relative pronouns the car (that) you bought

When a <b>relative pronoun</b> ( <i>who/which/that</i> ) is the <b>object</b> of the following But we <b>can't leave out</b> a relative pronoun when it is the <b>subject</b> of the fo	
(I phoned <b>a man</b> .) (A man phoned me.)	
The man <b>that</b> I phoned spoke Spanish. The man <b>that</b> phoned me	e spoke Greek.
> The man I phoned spoke Spanish. (NOT The man phone	
The train that you want leaves at 10.00. The train that stops at Yo	-
→ The train you want leaves at 10.00. (NOT The train stops	at York goes at 8.00.)
Is the relative pronoun the subject (S) or object (O) of the following t	owing verb?
-	o(m)   helped
	her that we have had
	e that makes paper
	hich you bought
	who cuts my hair
<b>2</b> Look at Exercise 1. Find the expressions with object relative p	ronouns and rewrite them
without who(m), which or that.	
2 5	
<b>3</b> Join the sentences in the place marked * without using <i>who</i> ,	which or that.
The cup of coffee* is on the table. You wanted it.	
The cup of coffee you wanted is on the table.	
1 I'm working for a man*. I've known him for twenty years.	
2 They played a lot of music*. I didn't like it.	
3 The campsite* was very dirty. We found it.	
4 I'm going on holiday with some people*. I know them.	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
5 That book* is very good. You gave it to me.	
6 The ring* belonged to her grandmother. She lost it.	
7 I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years ago.	
8 The papers* are on the table. You wanted them.	
***************************************	
Write three sentences beginning <i>Everybody I know …</i>	
1	
2	
3	

# prepositions the man that she works for

5	N
	ā
	Ś
	~

nen	verbs have prepositions with them (see page 141) – for example <i>look at, listen to</i> . relative pronouns are the objects of these verbs, there are two possibilities:
	relative pronouns are the objects of these verbs, there are two possibilities:
	relative pronouris are the objects of these veros, there are two possibilities.
kee	p the preposition with the verb (more informal; we can leave out who(m)/which/that.)
	woman smiled. I was <b>looking at her</b> . — The woman (whom/that) I was <b>looking at</b> smiled.
The	flat was dirty. He <b>lived in it</b> . 🔶 The flat he l <b>ived in</b> was dirty.
out	the preposition before whom/which (very formal)
The	woman at whom I was looking smiled.
	flat in which he lived was dirty.
ine	nat in which he lived was dirty.
Ch	ange these expressions to make them more conversational. Use that.
	a boy with whom I went to school
	the girl about whom I was talking
	the people for whom I work
3	the house in which I live
4	the music to which you are listening
5	the bus on which I go to work
	5
Re	write the expressions from Exercise 1, but leave out <i>that</i> .
	a boy 1 went to school with 3
	4
2	
the	ok at the information about Helen, and then make sentences (like the example) about e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>o</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>o</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>o</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works fOr a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits fOr people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom.
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>O</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> .
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works fOr a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits fOr people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom.
<b>the</b>	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>O</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> .
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>O</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works fOr a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are
the	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>O</sup> r a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is
the 1 2 3 4 5	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is we write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.
the 1 2 3 4 5	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works fOr a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is we write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.
the 1 2 3 4 5 No	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is we write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.
the 1 2 3 4 5 No	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily</u> and Jack are <u>Tom is</u> <b>Emily and Jack are</b> Tom is <u>Some write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.</u> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karer gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings.
the 1 2 3 4 5 5 No	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily</u> and Jack are <u>Tom is</u> <b>Emily and Jack are</b> Tom is <u>Sometimes birthday presents.</u> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karer gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings.
the 1 2 3 4 5 7 No	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karer gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with Oave her a handbag</u> .
the 1 2 3 4 5 No	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is w write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents. For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karer gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> . The man she works
the 1 2 3 4 5 7 No 1 2	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works fOr a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karer gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> . The man she works The woman
the 1 2 3 4 5 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 2 3 1 1 1 1	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is the friend she lives with. Eric is
the 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 3 4 1 1 2 3 3 4 1 1 2 3 3 4 1 1 2 3 3 4 1 1 2 3 3 4 1 1 1 2 3 3 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	e people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works f <sup>Or</sup> a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is w write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents. For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen

# relative what It was just what I wanted.

ve c	an use what to mean 'the thing(s) which/that' or 'anything that'.
	e you got <b>what</b> you need for your journey? (= ' the things that you need') prry about <b>what</b> happened. 'Can I have something to eat?' 'Take <b>what</b> you like.'
Ve u	ise <b>what</b> with a <b>singular</b> verb.
Vha	t I bought was mostly very cheap. (NOT <del>What I bought were</del> )
C	hange the words <i>in italics</i> to <i>what</i> .
	The things that she said weren't true. What she said wasn't true.
1	The things that he did made everybody angry.
2	Take anything that you want.
3	Soap – that's the thing that I forgot to pack!
4	She gave me a watch. It was just <i>the thing that</i> I wanted.
5	That child does <i>anything that</i> he likes.
6	The things that I read in the paper make me unhappy.
7	Don't tell me <i>things that</i> I know already.
8	<i>The thing that</i> I like best in life is doing nothing.
-	

#### We use that, not what, after anything, something, nothing, everything, all and the only thing.

You can take **anything that** you want. (NOT ... <del>anything what you want.</del>) The shop had **nothing that** I wanted. **All that** I could do was stand and watch. Money is **the only thing** in the world **that** matters to him.

#### Put in that or what.

- 1 I believe everything ..... she says.
- 2 ..... she did surprised everybody.
- 3 I can't give you ..... you want.
- 4 He said nothing ..... was important.
- 5 I can't eat ..... I like.
- 6 ..... you need is a holiday.

- 7 | can't eat everything ...... | like.
- 8 The only thing ..... I forgot was toothpaste.
- 9 Ask Peter he'll tell you ..... you need to know.
- 10 She said something ..... was very helpful.

# relative pronouns: more practice

U	se of who and which. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using who or which.
	Yesterday I saw a film.* You would like it. Yesterday I saw a film which you would like.
1	l know a man.* He writes film music.
2	The bus* got to London twenty minutes late. I took it.
3	We have friends*. They live in Chicago.
4	The car* isn't very good. I bought it last month.
5	We stayed in a hotel*. It had a beautiful garden.
6	ł didn't like the man*. My sister married him.
7	The people* weren't very interesting. They were at the party.
8	Tim uses long words*. I can't understand them.
9	The computer* crashes every five minutes. I'm using it.
10	The woman* is terribly nice. She works in the flower shop.
1	se of <i>that</i> . Join the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that</i> . The tickets* were very expensive. I got them.
2	These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper.
3	The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons.
4	The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door.
5	I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them.
6	What did you do with the money*? We collected it.
7	People* are called linguists. They study languages.
8	We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house.
9	The oranges* are all bad. You bought them.
	Why did you throw away the soup*? I cooked it.

#### 3 Leaving out who, which or that. Rewrite the words in italics without relative pronouns if it's possible. If not, write 'No change'.

	Where's the book which I was reading? the book I was reading
	The people who live next door are German. No change.
1	The clock that I bought doesn't work.
2	I didn't like <i>the film which I saw</i> last night.
3	Here's the letter that came for you.
4	It was a journey that took twelve hours.
5	He was a man that I really disliked.
6	I had an experience which changed my life.
7	What happened to that dog which you had?
8	I know a woman who speaks eight languages.
9	Do you know anybody who can play the trumpet?
0	Did you see those earrings that I bought for Helen?

#### 4 Grammar in a text. Cross out that if it can be left out.

'How was that hotel that I suggested?' 'That hotel! The rooms that they put us in were like cupboards, the beds that they gave us were much too small, and the extra blankets that we asked for never arrived. The 'full English breakfast' that they served was uneatable, and the 'French champagne' that we ordered at dinner was undrinkable. And that brochure that you showed me was full of lies. The 'view of the sea' that they talked about was a view of the car park, and the gym that they advertised wasn't there. And then, the bill that we got at the end was unbelievable. Never again!'

6 the train on which we travelled .....

7 some people with whom I work .....

9 the pen with which I write .....

10 the small village in which my mother

lives .....

8 the place about which I was telling you .....

#### **5** Position of prepositions. Make these expressions more conversational.

- a boy towhom I talked .........
- 1 the book at which I was looking .....
- 2 the people for whom I work .....
- 3 the hotel in which we stayed .....
- 4 the place to which I drove .....
- 5 those people to whom we were talking

#### **6** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jewellery

#### Read the text and complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Anna, Naomi, Sally, Jane, Jessica and Thalia have all got rich boyfriends. For Christmas, Anna wanted a gold watch, Naomi wanted a diamond brooch, Sally wanted sapphire earrings, Jane wanted a pearl necklace, Jessica wanted a ruby ring and Thalia wanted a silver bracelet. But:

#### Anna got a diamond brooch, so Anna got what Naomi wanted.

- 1 Naomi got a ruby ring, so .....
- 2 Sally got a silver bracelet, so .....
- 3 Jane got a gold watch, so .....
- 4 Jessica got a pearl necklace, so .....
- 5 Thalia got sapphire earrings, so .....



#### 7 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find five simple sentences beginning "Everybody I know likes ...". Write one yourself.

1	Everybody I know likes	4	
2		5	
3		6 (Your sentence)	

pronunciation for grammar

#### **RELATIVE PRONOUNS 261**

### relative pronouns: revision test

#### 1 Which answer is right: A, B or both?

- The people ... play loud music very late. (A) who live downstairs B live downstairs
- ▶ I don't much like the music .... (A) they play (B) that they play
- 1 The girls ... gave me flowers for my birthday. A with whom I work B that I work with
- 2 I don't want a phone ... more intelligent than me. A that is B is
- 3 Where's the paper ...? A that you wrote the address on B that you wrote the address on it
- 4 Ilikepeople ... laugh at themselves. A can B who can
- 5 ... she said made me very angry. A What B That what
- 6 Yesterday everything ... was wrong. There are days like that. A I did B that I did
- 7 'What do you call a thing that ... bottles?' 'A bottle-opener.' A opens B it opens
- 8 There are the keys .... A I was looking for B that I was looking for
- 9 The train ... was very uncomfortable. A in which we travelled B which we travelled in
- 10 There's a shop near here ... open all night. A that stays B which stays
- 11 I've found the shoes .... A that I lost B that I lost them
- 12 Do you know anybody ... Russian? A who speaks B speaks
- 13 She married a man ... on holiday. A she met B that she met
- 14 The woman ... wanted to speak to James. A phoned B who phoned
- 15 Who were those people that you ...? A were talking to B were talking to them

#### 2 Six of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

- Do you know a shop which sells good cheese? Correct
- 1 I didn't understand the language which she was speaking.
- 2 We stayed in a hotel who had a beautiful garden.
- 3 I didn't understand the language she was speaking.
- 4 Is the book you're reading interesting? .....
- 5 I didn't understand the language that she was speaking.
- 6 The woman came to dinner stayed very late.
- 7 A vet is a doctor who works with animals.
- 8 I didn't like the man which my sister married.
- 9 Did I tell you about the film which we saw last night? .....
- 10 Eric said a word which I couldn't understand it.
- 11 I'm spending the day with some people I know.
- 12 People what live in London are called 'Londoners'.
- 13 There's the man I was telling you about.
- 14 The train I came home on was an hour late.
- 15 I don't like people that you can't relax with them.

#### Put in that or what.

- 1 I like everything ..... you cook.
- 2 Nobody rememers everything ...... they do. 7 Peter will tell you ..... you have to do.
- 3 ..... I said shocked everybody.
- 4 The only thing ..... I need is a toothpaste.
- 5 They couldn't give me ..... I asked for.
- 6 I learnt nothing ..... was useful.
- 8 I can't wear ..... I like at work.
- 9 ..... you need is a long holiday.
- 10° Amy said something ..... was interesting.

# **SECTION 20** indirect speech

#### grammar summary

When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech.

Tenses, here-and-now words (like *this, here, today*) and pronouns (like *l, you*) may change in indirect speech. This is because the time, place and speaker may be different.

'I really like it here.' Bill said that he really liked it there.

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say and think. Bill said he really liked it there.

Indirect questions have a different structure from direct questions. 'What is your phone number?' He asked me what my phone number was. 'Do you like cherries?' She asked me if I liked cherries.

We can use **object + infinitive** (with to) after **ask** and **tell**. *I* **asked him to make** some coffee. She **told the children not to make** a noise.

#### PROMISES, PROMISES

a fis fail a fail an an a fail a fail a fail a fail a fail a

'You said I was beautiful.'
'You are more beautiful every day.'
'You said you loved me.'
'And it's true. I love you. Deeply. Passionately.'
'You told me you would love me for ever.'
'And I will. For ever and ever.'
'You said you would never look at another woman.'
'I have never looked at another woman. I shut my eyes when
one comes close.
'You told me you were rich.'
'We have a solid gold bath with diamond taps.'
'You told me you wanted children.'
'We have thirteen children.'
'You said you could cook.'
'I cook you a magnificent five-course dinner every night.'
'You told me you would bring me a cup of tea in bed every morning.'
'You get a cup of tea in bed every morning. With biscuits and
the newspaper.
'You said you could play the saxophone.'
'I am a world-famous saxophonist.'
'You promised that you would take me to Hawaii.'
'We have just come back from three months in Hawaii.'
'You said you would mend the dishwasher.'
'Sorry. I forgot.'
'You see. I can't believe a word you say.'

### tenses and pronouns Bill said he was really happy.





When we tell people **what somebody said or thought**, we often use **indirect speech**. **Tenses** and **pronouns** (*I*, you etc) **change** in indirect speech if the **time** and **speaker change**. For example, **present** tenses become **past**; *I* may become **he** or **she**; my may become **his** or **her**.

SOMEBODY SAID/THOUGHT	INDIRECT SPEECH
'l'm happy.'	Bill said that he was happy. (NOT Bill said that I'm happy.)
'l have a problem.'	Bill said <b>that he was</b> happy. (NOT <del>Bill said that I'm happy.</del> ) I thought that I <mark>had</mark> a problem. (NOT <del>I thought that I have a problem.</del> )
'Shelikes me.'	He knew <b>that</b> she <b>liked him</b> .
'My feet are cold.'	She said her feet were cold.

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say, think.

Bill said he was really happy. I thought it was a great party.

#### Put in the correct pronouns (*I* etc) or possessives (*my* etc).

- 'She likes me.' He knew she liked ......
- 1 'I speak French.' He said ..... spoke French.
- 2 'I'm sorry.' She said ..... was sorry.
- 3 'Kate phoned me.' She said Kate had phoned .....
- 4 'We want our money.' They said ...... wanted ...... money.
- 5 'I'm tired.' He said ..... was tired.
- 6 'I can't help you.' She told me she couldn't help .....
- 7 'We're leaving.' They said ..... were leaving.
- 8 'I've lost my coat.' He said ...... had lost ...... coat.
- 9 'I like my job.' She told me ..... liked ...... job.
- 10 'Where are our tickets?'They asked where ...... tickets were.

Note the difference between say and tell.

Tell must have a personal object: we tell somebody something.

She told me I was late. (NOT She told I was late.)

They told Anna the wrong time. (NOT They told the wrong time to Anna.)

Say doesn't need a personal object: we say something (to somebody).

She said I was late. (NOT <del>She said me I was lat</del>e.) I said nothing to the police. (NOT <del>I said the police nothing.</del>)

#### **2** Circle) the correct answer.

- 1 | said / told the driver I wanted to stop.
- 2 My mother *said / told* there was a letter for me.
- 3 Everybody said / told I looked beautiful.
- 4 Why did you *say / tell* the lessons were expensive?
- 5 Ross said / told the waiter he couldn't pay.
- 6 I didn't say / tell Peter that I was going away.
- 7 Nobody said / told me that the shop was closed.
- 8 Mia said / told that she would wait at the bus stop.

#### **TENSE CHANGES**

When we tell people what somebody said in the past, there is a time difference. (For example, somebody said something on Sunday, and I tell you about it on Monday.) Because of this, tenses usually change as follows:

DIRECT SPEECH ON SUNDAY	TENSE CHANGE	INDIRECT SPEECH ON MONDAY
The children <b>ar</b> e in Ireland. <mark>My TV isn't working.</mark>	AM/ARE/IS -> WAS/WERE	Karen said her children <mark>were</mark> in Ireland. He said his TV <mark>wasn't</mark> working.
l <b>have</b> a meeting at 4.00. Sue <b>has</b> passed her exam.	HAVE/HAS -> HAD	She said she <b>had</b> a meeting at 4.00. Sally told me Sue <b>had</b> passed her exam.
I will probably be late.	WILL -> WOULD	I thought I would probably be late.
You <b>can</b> have three tickets.	CAN -> COULD	The man said I <b>could</b> have three tickets.
It <mark>doesn't</mark> matter, Martin.	DO/DOES -> DID	I told Martin it <b>didn't</b> matter.
The train leaves at 6.00. We all speak English.	SIMPLE PRESENT> SIMPLE PAST	The timetable said the train <b>left</b> at 6.00. She said they all <b>spoke</b> English.
I forgot my keys.	SIMPLE PAST -> PAST PERFECT	He said he had forgotten his keys.

Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech, changing the tenses. Begin He/She/They said ...

SALLY: 'I'm tired.' She said (that) she was tired.
ANNA: 'My sister needs a car.'
DANIEL: 'I have to phone Andrew.'
MARY: 'Nobody wants to help me.'
HELEN: 'The radio doesn't work.'
BEN: 'I will be in Paris in July:
MIKE: 'I like the red sweater.'
DAVID: 'I can't swim.'
ALICE: 'My parents are travelling.'
MARIA: 'The lessons are very good.'
BRAD AND AMY: 'We haven't heard from Joseph.'

# Look at the picture to see what John thought when he was small. Write his thoughts in indirect speech. He thought animals could talk.

	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	2	•		•	•	•	•	9	•	•		•	3	0	0	0	•	•	•	•	•	ė	0	•	0	0	•		•	•	•	•	•	6	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	×	•	•		0	0	•		è	•
		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•			•		•	,					e	•	•	•	•	•		•					•	•		•	• •		•	•	•	•	• •		•	•	•	•	•	• •						
•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	ł	•	•	÷	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	3		•	•	•	1	1		ŝ		•	•	•	•	÷	•	0	ŝ	2		•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•					•	ł	•	•						•	•	•
		×		×	•	•	•	2		•		•	e,	•	,	ì	•			•	•	•		3					,	ŝ	ġ,	6		-		•	•			6					•	•				2		•						•	•	•	•						•	



**5** What did you think when you were small? Write three or more sentences.

1	
2	
4	
5	

# indirect questions She asked him what his name was.

Indire	ect questions have	e a different word order from direct quest	ions, and no question marks: XXX
DIREC	T QUESTION:	Monica said, 'Where is John?'	I said, 'When can you come?'
INDIR	ECT QUESTION:	Monica asked where John was.	l asked when she could come.
		(NOT Monica asked where was John?)	
We do	on't use do in ind	irect questions.	
DIREC	T QUESTION:	'What do you want?'	'Where does Andrew live?'
INDIR	ECT QUESTION:	She asked me what I wanted.	lasked him where Andrew lived.
		(NOT She asked me what did I want.)	
1			
	-	topped a driver in London and asked	him some questions.
		ons in indirect speech.	
			e was
2	'Where do you w	vork?'	
		-	
	,		
With i	indirect <b>yes/no</b> qu	uestions we use <b>if</b> or <b>whether</b> . They mean t	he same.
DIREC	T QUESTION:	Do you know Tim?	Are you French?
	T QUESTION:		Are you French? She asked <mark>if/whether I was</mark> French.
	ECT QUESTION:	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French.
INDIRI	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or whether.
INDIRI	ECT QUESTION: Te policewomat 'Are you British?'	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the she asked him if he was British.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI	ECT QUESTION: Te policewomar 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the solution of the sol	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2	ECT QUESTION: Te policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the sheasked him if he was British. She asked him whether Iriving licence?'	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it v	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the sheasked him if he was British. She asked him whether Iriving licence?'	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always c	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. <b>A asked some more questions. Write t</b> She asked him if he was British. She asked him whether Iriving licence?' with you?' drive with the door open?'	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4	ECT QUESTION: Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it v 'Do you always c	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the sheasked him if he was British. She asked him whether Iriving licence?' with you?' drive with the door open?'	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4	ECT QUESTION: Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it v 'Do you always c	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the sheasked him if he was British. She asked him whether Iriving licence?' with you?' drive with the door open?'	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always co 'Are you listening	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always control 'Are you listening these are some of	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th •	ECT QUESTION: Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always c 'Are you listening tese are some q 'How old are you	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the she asked him if he was British. She asked him whether She asked him whether Iriving licence?' with you?' drive with the door open?' g to me?' questions from a job interview. Write for the she was a sked him how old he was a sked him h	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 1	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always of 'Are you listening tese are some of 'How old are you 'Are you married	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the sheaked him if he was British. She asked him whether She asked him whether Iriving licence?' with you?' drive with the door open?' g to me?' g to me?' questions from a job interview. Write for the was a start of the was a start o	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 2 3 4 5 1 1 2 3 4 5 1 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 1 1 1 2 1 2 1 1 1 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ECT QUESTION: Are you British? 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have a d 'Do you always of 'Are you always of 'Are you listening 'How old are you 'Are you married 'Do you have chi	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. n asked some more questions. Write the sheasked him if he was British. She asked him whether	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 2 3 1 2 3 3 1 2 3 4 5 3 1 2 3 4 5 3 1 2 3 4 5 3 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 5 1 2 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	ECT QUESTION: The policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening these are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married 'Do you have chi 'Where have you	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 2 3 1 2 3 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 1 2 3 1 3 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 3 4 1 2 3 3 1 2 3 1 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 3 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ECT QUESTION: Are you British? 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you always d 'How old are you 'Are you married 'Do you have chi 'Where have you 'Why do you war	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 <b>3</b> Th 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 5 <b>1</b> 2 3 4 5 <b>1</b> 2 3 4 5 <b>1</b> 2 3 4 5 <b>1</b> 2 3 4 5 <b>1</b> 5 <b>1</b> 5 <b>1</b> 5 <b>1</b> 1 2 3 4 5 <b>1</b> 1 2 3 4 <b>1</b> 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> 1 5 <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b>	ECT QUESTION: Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening How old are you 'Are you married 'Do you have chi 'Where have you 'Why do you war	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 4 5 5 5 1 2 3 4 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	ECT QUESTION: De policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always of 'Are you listening tese are some of 'How old are you 'Are you married 'Do you have chi 'Where have you 'Why do you war 'Can you speak a	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 4 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	ECT QUESTION: Are you British? 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it v 'Do you always d 'Are you always d 'Are you always d 'How old are you 'Are you married 'Do you have chi 'Where have you 'Where have you 'Why do you war	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIRI 2 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 Th 1 2 3 4 5 3 4 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	ECT QUESTION: Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a d 'Do you have a d 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening Are you listening 'Are you married 'Do you have chi 'Where have you 'Why do you war 'Can you speak a 'What exams hav	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French. hem in indirect speech with if or whether.

evel 2

### present reporting verbs She says she comes from London.

#### After present verbs (for example she says, I think) we don't change the tenses.

DIRECT QUESTION: 'Well, yes, I come from London.' 'Funny – you have a Scottish accent.' INDIRECT QUESTION: She says she comes from London, but I think she has a Scottish accent.

#### Complete the indirect speech sentences.

	ʻlʻm Irish.	He says he's Irish.
	'Where is Peter?'	She wants to know where Peter is.
	'Did John phone?'	Idon't know . if John phoned.
1	'We live in Greece.'	They say
2	'l went to Belfast yesterday.'	She says
3	'l've been ill.'	He says
4	'It's going to rain.'	She thinks
5	'l'll ask my sister.'	She says
6	'We're going to be rich.'	They believe
7	'Is lunch ready?'	He wants to know
8	'Where did I put my keys?'	I don't remember
9	'I'm getting a cold.'	I think
10	'This is the right answer.'	I know

We can ask questions politely by saying Do you know ...? or Can you tell me ...? + indirect question. Where does she live? --> Do you know where she lives? Is he at home? --> Can you tell me if he's at home?

#### Rewrite the questions.

	-	
	What does this word mean?	Do you know what this word means?
	Is there a lesson today?	Can you tell me if there's a lesson today?
1	Where can I buy tickets?	Can you
2	How much does it cost?	Do
3	Has John phoned?	Can
4	Must I pay now?	Can
5	Does Maria like steak?	Can
6	Where did I park the car?	Do

#### We can also use indirect questions in answers.

Sorry, I don't know where she lives. I can't remember if he's married.

# Don't give the answers! But write sentences beginning I know, I don't know, I'd like to know, I don't want to know, I don't care or I can't remember.

	Who built the Eiffel Tower?
1	What languages do Irish people speak?
2	What do elephants eat?
	Does the British Museum open on Christmas Day?
	Was King William II a tall man?
	Do birds dream?

# here and now $\rightarrow$ there and then





When we tell people what somebody said, we may have to **change** words like *here, this, today* and *now*. This is because the **place and time have changed** since the words were spoken.

BILL IN IRELAND IN DECEMBER	JOE IN LONDON IN MARCH
l like it here.	Bill said he liked it there / in Ireland.
I'm going fishing this week.	He said he was going fishing that week.
I'm not working today.	He said he wasn't working that day.
What do you want to do now?	He asked what I wanted to do then/next.

#### Match the direct and indirect speech expressions.

DIRECT SPEECH: 'here and now' words			IN	INDIRECT SPEECH: 'there and then' words				
0	here	l.	5 today	A	that day	F	the next day	
1	now		o tonight	B	that night	G	there	
2	this	7	last week	C	that	Н	the week before	
3	tomorrow	8	8 next week	D	the day before	1	then	
4	yesterday			E	the next week			

A friend of yours said these sentences a month ago in another country. Now you are telling somebody what she said.
Complete the contences with the correct 'there and then' words

C	complete the sentences with the correct there and then words.						
	'l'm not happy here.'	She said she wasn't happythere					
1	'I hate this place.'	She said she hated					
2	'I left home last week.'	She said she had left home					
3	'I wrote to my father yesterday.'	She said she had written to her father					
4	'Are you leaving today?'	She asked me if I was leaving					
5	'Where will you be tonight?'	She asked where I would be					
6	'I'll phone you tomorrow.'	She said she would phone me					

Another friend of yours said these sentences two weeks ago in another town. Now you are telling somebody what he said. Write the sentences with the correct tenses and 'there and then' words.

'I'm really happy here' He said he was really happy there.

1	'I love this place.'
	'I saw a great film yesterday.'
	'I'm going to another party tonight.'
4	'Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?'
	'My girlfriend will be here next week.'

# infinitives She told me to get out.

	Lunpher correct					
RECT SPEECH						
lease close the door.'	She asked me to close the door.					
ould you phone Angela?'	l asked John to phone Angela.					
iet out!'	She told me to get out.					
on't worry.'	The doctor always tells her not to wo	prry.				
Write past indirect speech	1 sentences.					
MARK Peter, could you cl	ose the window? ( <i>ask</i> )					
Mark asked Peter to c	lose the window.					
► THE TEACHER: Andrew, do						
The teacher told Andr	ew not to talk so loud.					
1 DAVE: Sandra, please giv	e me your phone number. ( <i>ask</i> )					
		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••				
2 THE BOSS: James, I'd like	you to work late. ( <i>tell</i> )					
•••••						
3 JUDY: Kim, please don't t	ell Karen about Ryan. ( <i>ask</i> )					
4 MR SANDERS: Fred, please don't smoke in my car. (ask)						
5 THE GENERAL: Colonel Walker, take 100 men and cross the river. ( <i>tell</i> )						
6 ANNA: Polly, you mustn't						
		WORK GET A LOT				
	ty. His family gave him	HARD.) OF EXERCISE				
Joe left home for universi	ty. His family gave him					
Joe left home for universi lots of advice. Look at the	ty. His family gave him picture and complete	DON'T GO TO DON'T GO TO DON'T GO TO DON'T GO LATE LATE DON'T FOR TO BRUIST				
Joe left home for universi lots of advice. Look at the the sentences. His mothertold him to	ty. His family gave him picture and complete	DON'T GO				
Joe left home for universilots of advice. Look at the the sentences. <ul> <li>His mothertold him to</li> <li>His grandmothertold him</li> </ul>	ty. His family gave him picture and complete write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth.	PON'T 60 TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO DO TO TO DON'T 60 TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO TO MANY ARTIES DON'T PLAY				
Joe left home for universilots of advice. Look at the the sentences. <ul> <li>His mothertold him to</li> <li>His grandmothertold h</li> </ul>	ty. His family gave him picture and complete	PON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 MANY MANY WRITE EVERY WEEK				
Joe left home for universi lots of advice. Look at the the sentences. His mothertold him to His grandmothertold h 1 His girlfriend told 2 His mother	ty. His family gave him e picture and complete o write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth. every day.	PON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 MANY MARYS WRITE EVERY WITH MONEY DON'T PLAY ARDS FOR MONE				
<ul> <li>Joe left home for universillots of advice. Look at the the sentences.</li> <li>His mothertold him to His grandmothertold h</li> <li>His girlfriend told</li></ul>	ty. His family gave him picture and complete write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth. every day. clean.	PON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 DON'T 60 MANY MANY MANY MANY MANY MANY MANY MANY MANY MANY CHANGE YOUR CHANGE YOUR				
Joe left home for universilots of advice. Look at the the sentences. <ul> <li>His mothertold him to</li> <li>His grandmothertold him.</li> </ul> <li>His girlfriend told</li>	ty. His family gave him picture and complete write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth. every day. clean. hard.	PON'T 60 TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO DON TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO TO BAUSI TO BA				
Joe left home for universi lots of advice. Look at the the sentences. His mothertold him to His grandmothertold him His girlfriend told His mother His father His father His sister His brother	ty. His family gave him picture and complete write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth. every day. clean. hard. parties.	PON'T 60 TO BED LATE PON'T 60 TO BED LATE PON'T 60 TO BED LATE PON'T 60 TO TO BRUS TO BRUS				
Joe left home for universi lots of advice. Look at the the sentences. His mothertold him to His grandmothertold h His girlfriend told His father His father His sister His brother His mother	ty. His family gave him picture and complete write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth. every day. clean. hard. parties. exercise.	PON'T 60 TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO DON TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO TO BAUSI TO BA				
Joe left home for universi lots of advice. Look at the the sentences. His mothertold him to His grandmothertold h His girlfriend told His mother His father His sister His brother His brother His mother His mother His mother His father	ty. His family gave him picture and complete write every week. im not to forget to brush his teeth. every day. clean. hard. parties. exercise. every day.	PON'T 60 TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO DON TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO TO BAUSI TO BA				
Joe left home for universillots of advice. Look at the the sentences. His mother . told him to his grandmother . told him to his grandmother . told him to his girlfriend told	ty. His family gave him picture and complete owrite every week. him not to forget to brush his teeth. every day. clean. hard. parties. exercise. every day. late.	PON'T 60 TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO DON TO BED LATE DON'T 60 TO TO BAUSI TO BA				

10 His grandmother ..... properly.

# We can use infinitives after how, what, when etc. I don't know how to cook fish. She asked me what to write. Tell me when to pay. Write two sentences about yourself.

# indirect speech: more practice

1 Indirect questions. Yesterday morning Peter asked his mother hundreds of questions. Here are some of them. Report them using indirect speech.

> 'Why do cats have tails?' He asked her why cats had tails.

	'Why do cats have tails?' He asked her why cats had tails.
	'Will I get all your money when you die?' He asked her if he would get all her money when she died.
1	'Can I have ice cream for breakfast?'
2	'Why do the stars only come out at night?'
3	'Why does Daddy have to work?'
4	'Where is God?'
5	'Will I be taller than you one day?'
6	'Do you believe in Father Christmas?'
-	
7	'Is Scotland in London?'
8	'When will I be rich?'
9	'Why don't French people speak English?'
-	···· /
10	'How big is the universe?'
10	
<b>2</b> In	finitives. Yesterday morning Peter's mother told him to do hundreds of things.
н	ere are some of them. Report them using "She told him".
	Say 'Please' She told him to say 'Please'
	Don't ask so many questions. She told him not to ask so many questions.
1	Wash your hands before breakfast.
	·
2	Don't eat with your mouth open.
3	Eat everything on your plate.
4	Don't talk with your mouth full.
	,
5	Make your bed.
6	Clean your room.
7	Polish your shoes.
8	Put on a clean shirt.
9	Don't shout at your sister.
10	Don't be late for school.
_	
	'hat to etc. Write sentences beginning John doesn't know.
	'What should I tell Ann?' John doesn't know what to tell Ann.
1	'How do I phone New York?'
2	'Where do I pay?'
3	'When do I start work?'
4	'How do I switch the computer on?'
5	'Where shall I put my coat?'
6	'How much must I pay?'
7	'What should I study?'

#### 4 Grammar in a text. Read the letter and then complete the report.

#### Dear all,

Sorry I haven't written for a few weeks. I've been too busy. I'm having a great time; I'm going to parties every night. I'm doing a bit of work too. We had an exam last week. I hope I'll get good marks.

1 only have one shirt - I've lost the others. Mum, can you buy me six more? And I can't find my raincoat. Is it at home?

My room here isn't very nice – I'll have to look for a better one. And the food here in college isn't much good, so I'm living on hamburgers. I've spent nearly all my money. Dad, can you send some more?

Can you give me Aunt Ellen's address? And I haven't heard from Sarah. Where is she living? And does Jasper want to come and spend two or three days down here with me?

That's all for now. Love to everybody.

Joe

In his letter Joe . said
It was because he 1 too busy. He 2 his family that he
3 some work too. He said he
5 an exam 6 week
7 get good marks.
Joe 8one shirt, because he
10 the others. He asked his mother 11 him six more.
And he asked 12 at home.
His room 14 have to look
for a better one. And because of the bad college food he 16on hamburgers.
He said he 17 nearly all his money, and asked his father 18
him some more. Joe also asked his family 19him his Aunt Ellen's address.
And he 20 from Sarah, and asked
22 she 23
At the end of the letter, Joe asked 24 to go
and spend a few days with him.

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences beginning "We don't know what/where/when/how" + infinitive. Write some of them. (Note that why + infinitive is very unusual.)

1	
2	
3	
4	

### indirect speech: revision test

#### 1 Put in said or told.

- 1 The newspaper ..... it would snow at the weekend.
- 2 Everybody ..... me I would pass the exam, but I didn't.
- 3 1 ..... the driver I knew the way.
- 4 My father ..... he was feeling tired because of working at weekends.
- 5 Everybody ..... Emma looked ill, but she was fine.
- 6 Luke ..... the doctor he had a lot of trouble sleeping.
- 7 1..... my mother I wasn't coming home before Saturday.
- 8 Nobody ..... me that the school was closed.
- 9 Rachel ..... that she would be back by one o'clock.
- 10 You never ..... me that you loved me.

#### Correct (✓) or not (×)?

- I knew that I will see her again. .....
- Andrew told me he hated his brother's wife. .....
- 1 Leo phoned me on Sunday and said he went to a great party yesterday. .....
- 2 I said that I was sorry, but that I'm really tired. .....
- 3 I knew I would forget her name in a few days. .....
- 4 You told me I like the new car. .....
- 5 Jack said he had to phone Karl that evening. .....
- 6 Lucy said that nobody likes her. .....
- 7 I thought the TV didn't work, but I was wrong. .....
- 8 Maggie said she would see me soon, but I never saw her again. .....
- 9 I saw Carola in January and she told me I was unhappy just now. .....
- 10 Shakespeare told his wife that you don't understand my work. .....

#### Nine of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

- Do you remember what time the play starts? ...Correct
- John asked how did | feel. how I felt
- 1 lasked what the time was.
- 2 I didn't know if I was late.
- 3 A man asked me where was the post office.
- 4 Do you know when is arriving Jane? .....
- 5 I didn't know whether I was late.
- 6 Do you know where all those people work?
- 7 Can you say me what the time is? .....
- 8 The policeman asked me where I am going.
- 9 The children wanted to know was I English.
- 10 lasked him what he wanted? .....
- 11 I don't know what does this word mean.
- 12 Nobody understood what Sophie wants.
- 13 I'd like to know what you are thinking.
- 14 Please tell me what you want.
- 15 I don't know why did she say that.

# **SECTION 21** prepositions

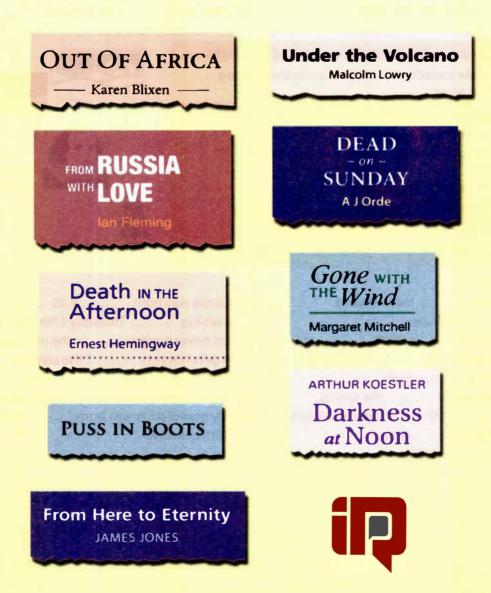
#### grammar summary

above	across	against a	long	at	behind	betw	een by	down	during
for	from in	in front of	into	near	off	on	opposite	out of	over
past	round	through to	unde	er u	ntil/till	up			

Some prepositions are difficult, because they have more than one meaning. (A preposition in one language often has several different translations into another language.)

In this section, we explain and practise the most important prepositions: those that we use to talk about time, place and movement.

- → For since and for, see page 65.
- → For the place of prepositions in questions, see page 111; with relative pronouns, see page 258.
- → For -ing forms after prepositions, see page 132.
- → For verbs followed by prepositions, see page 141.
- → For lists of common expressions with prepositions, see pages 305–306.



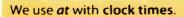
prepositions

PREPOSITIONS 273

# at, in and on (time)

William

Shakespeare 1564–1616



I'll see you at 4.15. The plane leaves at six. Call me at lunchtime.

But we say What time ...?, NOT USUALLY At what time ...?

#### What time is the film?

We use on with days, dates and expressions like Monday morning and Friday afternoon.

I'll be at home on Tuesday.We get up late on Sundays.The meeting's on June 23rd.I'm always sleepy on Monday mornings.I had to work on Christmas Day.

#### Put in at or on.

- 1 What are you doing ..... Saturday?
- 2 Can you wake me ..... 6.30?
- 3 The classes start ..... September 8th.
- 4 I'll be in late ...... Tuesday morning.
- 6 She arrived ..... Easter Monday.





- 7 My job starts ..... April 17th.
- 8 Can we meet ..... lunchtime ...... Tuesday?
- 9 I'll be home ...... 5.00.
- 10 I'll see you ..... Friday evening.
- 11 She always phones ..... midnight.
- 12 I was born ..... March 21st.

#### We say **in the morning**, **in the afternoon**, **in the evening**, but **at night**. She was born at 6.16 **in the morning**. I work best **in the evening**. This street is very quiet **at night**.

We use *in* with weeks, seasons, months, years and centuries.

We're going to Denmark **in the first week** of May. I always get unhappy **in the winter.** My birthday's **in March**. Shakespeare died **in 1616**. There were terrible wars **in the 17th century**.

We say **at Christmas**, **at Easter** and **at the weekend**. (American English **on** the weekend)

What are you doing at the weekend? Did you go away at Christmas?

#### Put in *in, at* or *on*.

- 1 We went to Wales ..... the weekend.
- 2 I go skiing ..... February.
- 3 She finished school ..... 2006.
- 4 My mother comes to stay ...... Christmas.
- 5 I don't like driving ..... night.
- 6 Our garden is beautiful ..... the spring.
- 7 | stop work ...... 5.00 ..... the afternoon.
- 8 I'll finish university ...... June.
- 9 | last saw her ..... 1998.

- 10 Carola was born ...... 8.25 ..... the evening ...... Thursday 17th April 2000.
- 11 I'm never hungry ..... the morning.
- 12 It gets hot here ..... the summer.
- 13 I'm going to Spain ..... Easter.
- 14 The conference is ..... the last week of May.
- 15 My grandfather was born ..... the 19th century.

We don't use prepositions bef	ore common expressions with <i>this, next, last</i> and <i>every</i> .
What are you doing <b>this afterno</b> Theo was here <b>last Tuesday</b> .	<b>bon?</b> Goodbye. See you <b>next week</b> . We go on holiday to the same place <b>every year.</b>
1	

### **S** Today is Wednesday March 16th 2011. Rewrite the sentences using *this, next, last* and *every*.

	Timet her in 2010.
1	I'll see you on March 23rd.
2	It rained non-stop from March 7th to March 13th.
3	Business was bad in February 2011.
4	Shall we go out on March 16th in the evening?
5	We're going to America in April 2011.
6	Ann had a car crash on March 9th.
7	I'm going to change my job in 2012.
8	My holiday is in August 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015 etc.
9	I've spent too much money already in March.
10	The new school will be open in March 2012.

### To say how long it takes to finish something, we use in.

They built our house in three months. Your soup will be ready in ten minutes.

#### My Australian friend Sheila is saving money because she wants to buy a sports car. She is saving \$1 a day, starting tomorrow.

- When will she have \$2 in her savings account? In two days.
- 1 When will she have \$5?
- 2 When will she have \$7? In a .....
- 3 When will she have \$14?
- 4 When will she have \$30? .....
- 5 When will she have \$365? .....
- 6 The car costs \$36,500. When will she have it?

WEWRITE	WE SAY
1999	nineteen ninety-nine
17(th) March 2011	the seventeenth of March, two thousand and eleven
OR March 17(th) 2011	March the seventeenth, two thousand and eleven
OR 17.3.(20)11	
OR 17/3/(20)11	
American English: 3.17.2011	March (the) seventeenth, two thousand (and) eleven

#### Say these dates:

1 <i>21.3.1999</i>	2 14 February 1960	3 July 28 1846	4 6/5/03	5 May 9 1 984	6 17 December 2012
--------------------	--------------------	----------------	----------	---------------	--------------------

#### We use till (informal) or until to say when an action or situation ends. I'll be in London till Thursday. We played football until 5 o'clock. Complete the sentences with until or till and expressions from the box. the age of 14 July lunchtime six o'clock in the morning 🗸 Saturday the end It was a great party. We danced ...until six o'clock in the morning. 1 I'm going to have a sandwich now. I can't wait ..... 2 Granny's coming on Monday for a few days. She's going to stay ..... 3 When I was young, you had to go to school ..... 4 | didn't like the film, so | didn't stay ..... 5 I'm doing a three-month computer course; it goes on ..... We can give the beginning and end of an action or situation with from ... to/until/till. I worked from 8.00 to 6.00 yesterday. We'll be away from July 16 until/till August 4. Make sentences about John's Sunday morning with to, till or until. ▶ read paper 7.30 - 8.00 . He read the paper from 7.30 to 8.00. OR He read the paper from 7.30 until/till 8.00. 1 washed car 8.00 – 9.00 2 talked to woman next door 9 00 – 9 15 ..... 3 played tennis 10.00 – 11.00 ..... 4 talked to friends 11.00 – 11.30 5 went for a walk 11.30 – 12.45 Write two sentences with from ... to/till/until about things you did yesterday. 1 ..... 2 We use by (= 'not later than') to say that something happens at or before a certain moment. UNTIL BY You can keep the car until Sunday. You really must bring it back by 12.00 on Sunday not Of Put in by or until. 1 This book must go back to the library ...... Tuesday. 2 The film goes on ...... 9.30. 3 Can you finish painting the room ...... Friday? 4 If I give you this coat to clean, can you do it ..... tomorrow? 5 I must find some money ..... the end of the week. 6 Can you wait for my answer ..... tonight?

from ... to, until and by

# for, during and while

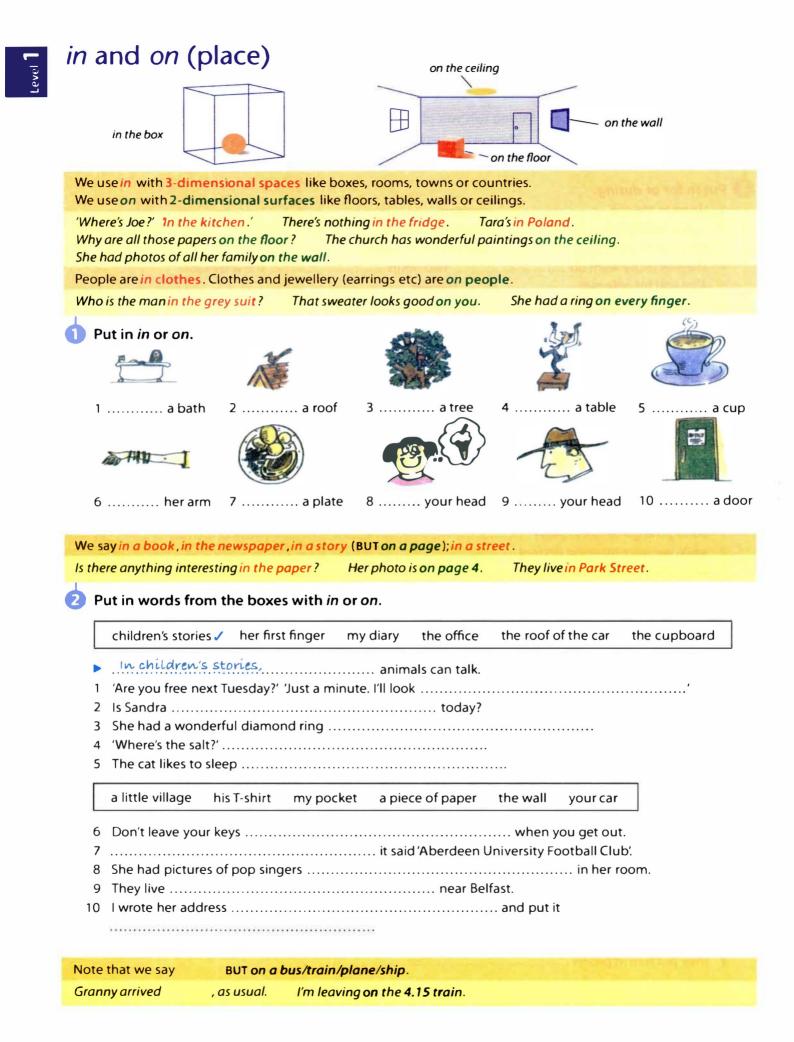
For + period tells you how long. During tells you when. The journey lasted for three days. There was a rainstorm during the night. I slept for 20 minutes during the lesson. Put in for or during. 1 I lived in Mexico ..... six years. 2 I got a headache ..... the examination. 3 We visited Kyoto ..... our holiday in Japan. 4 The electricity went off ...... two hours ...... the afternoon. 5 Alex and his wife met ..... the war. 6 Could I talk to you ......a few minutes? 7 I usually get a lot of phone calls ..... the morning. 8 She and her boyfriend have been together ...... a long time. During is a preposition: we use during + noun. While is a conjunction: we use while + subject + verb (often past progressive - see page 52). They got into the house during the night. They got into the house while I was asleep. He got ill while he was travelling. He got ill during the journey. 2 Change the expressions. during the meal (I/eat) while I was eating while I was travelling (journey) during the journey 1 during the game (*they / play*) ..... 2 while we were listening (lesson) 3 while they were fighting (*war*) 4 during her lesson (she / teach) 5 during his speech (*he / speak*) ..... 6 during the conversation (they / talk) 7 while she was in hospital (*illness*) 8 during the snowstorm (*it / snow*)

## **B** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: useful expressions with for

Look at the expressions in the box, and choose suitable ones to complete the sentences. Different answers are possible.

for a moment for a minute or two for a few minutes for an hour or so (= 'about an hour') for a couple of hours for a long time for ages for years and years for ever for life

- 1 They waited ....., but the bus didn't come.
- 2 | will love you .....
- 3 Could I talk to you .....?
- 4 I played tennis ..... and then went home.
- 5 I went to sleep ..... during the opera.
- 6 She usually stops work at 11 o'clock ...... and has a cup of coffee.
- 7 | often watch TV ..... before | go to bed.
- 8 They put him in prison .....



# at (place)





Operator GW TE LONDON Paddington 1743 1803 Ealing Broadway 1800 1822 Slough Maidenhead Twylord 1820 1838 Reading. dep Tuenurst Pangbourne Goring & Streatley Wallingford a Choisey 1835 153 Didcot Parkway

I'll meet you at the cinema.

The train stops **at** Slough, Reading and Didcot.

We often use at to show where something happens - for example, with meeting places or points on a journey. I'll see you this evening at Sarah's house. You have to change planes at Karachi. I saw Linda waiting at the bus stop. Turn left at the next corner. We often use at with words for things that people do, or the places where they do them. at a football match at breakfast, lunch etc at a restaurant at work at the office at the theatre at the cinema at the station at a party at (the) college/university Put in words from the box with at. a Chinese restaurant breakfast a theatre Birmingham the cinema the crossroads the hotel bar the station the traffic lights 🗸 the party work Paul crashed his car because he didn't stop ... at the traffic lights. 1 Are there any good films ...... this week? 2 Her train was terribly late – I spent hours waiting ..... 3 Will you be ..... at Mike's house on Saturday? 4 We had a really good meal ..... in Park Street last night. 5 I saw my first Shakespeare play ..... in a small town in Ireland. 6 The boss doesn't let us take personal phone calls ..... 7 Helen never says anything ...... because she's still asleep. 8 There isn't a direct train. You change ..... 9 I'll meet you downstairs .....at 6.00. 10 'Where's the car park?' 'Turn right .....

We often use at with the top, the bottom, the side, the beginning and the end. My room's at the top of the house. Begin at the beginning.

### Put in at the top, at the bottom etc.

- 1 Their house is down ..... of the hill.
- 2 I never have any money ..... of the month.
- 3 I stopped for a minute ...... of the stairs to have a rest.
- 4 The best fruit is always ..... of the tree, where you can't get it.
- 5 Maria wasn't there ..... of the lesson; she came in late.

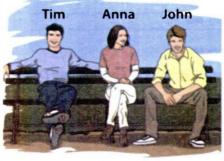
Sometimes *in* and *at* are **both possible**. We prefer *at* when we are thinking about the **activity** – what we do in the place – and *in* when we think about the **place itself**.

We had lunch at the station restaurant. It was very hot in the big dining room.

For expressions with no article like at breakfast, at work, see page 162.

# other prepositions of place

above against behind between by in front of near opposite under







Anna is sitting between Tim and John.

Come and sit **by** me.

We camped by the lake.



Montreal is in eastern Canada, near Ottawa.



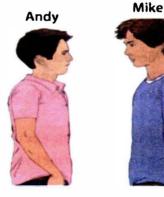
I left my bicycle **against** the shop window.



Joe's car is parked **in front of** our house. There's a bus stop **opposite** our house.



Lucy is **in front of** Beth. Beth is **behind** Lucy.



Andy is opposite Mike.



The dog is hiding **under** the table.



The plane is flying **above** the clouds.

مرجعزبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com

### Choose the correct prepositions.

- 1 There was a big bird flying high up ..... the trees. (*above, against, opposite*)
- 2 They live in a beautiful old house ..... a river. (above, by, under)
- 3 There's a big clock ..... the door of the station. (above, against, between)
- 4 I sat down ...... Marion and looked into her eyes. (above, behind, by)
- 5 You can park your car ..... the house. (against, behind, between)
- 6 I'll meet you at the station ..... the clock. (against, between, under)
- 7 The door wouldn't stay shut, so I put a chair ..... it. (above, against, near)

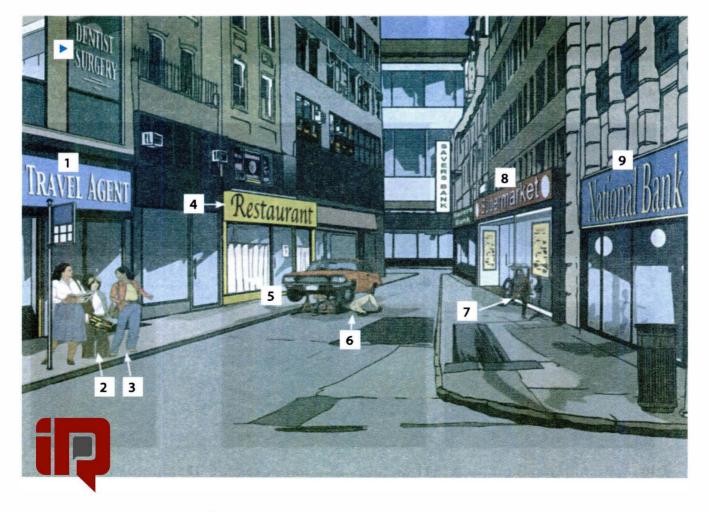
### 2 Put in the correct prepositions.

- 1 She put the money at the bottom of her suitcase, ...... her clothes.
- 2 Our house is ...... a bank and a supermarket, and just ..... the police station.
- 3 Please don't put your bicycle ..... our wall.
- 4 Sorry we're late we were driving ...... a slow bus all the way.
- 5 I work in a small town ..... Birmingham.
- 6 In the theatre I couldn't see anything because there was a very tall man ..... me.
- 7 We usually have lunch in a little café ..... the school, about five minutes' walk away.

### **3** Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.

- (above) near the travel agent
- 1 opposite / in front of the National Bank
- 2 against / between the two women
- 3 above / behind the child
- 4 near / by the travel agent

- 5 in front of / behind the restaurant
- 6 opposite / under the car
- 7 against / opposite the window
- 8 behind / between the banks
- 9 by / opposite the supermarket



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# prepositions of movement

across along down into off over out of past round through under up

## 1 Write the expressions under the correct photos. Use a dictionary if necessary.

across the river along the yellow line down the mountain into the water off the bike over the fence out of the shop past the café round the corner through the gate under the bridge up the steps













3







5 .....



9 .....

6 .....



10 .....



11 .....

8 .....

12 .....



irlanguage



## 282 PREPOSITIONS

### Cross out the words that are wrong.

- across the road / the church
- 1 along the corner / the road
- 2 up the mountain / the table
- 3 down the church / the stairs
- 4 over the corner / the wall
- 5 into the bank / the bridge
- 6 round the corner / the road

- 7 through the door / the railway line
- 8 off the police station / the table
- 9 out of the church / the stairs
- 10 under the bridge / the people
- 11 past the floor / the bank
- 12 across the river / the wall

## Choose the correct prepositions and put them in the correct places.

- 1 Mrs Andrews got ...... the taxi and ran ..... Oxford Street. (along, round, out of, over)
- 2 Alice walked ...... the steps to the river and ..... the bridge. (along, down, through, over)
- 3 He walked slowly ...... the road for a few minutes, then he stopped and went ...... a small door ...... a garden. (*across, along, into, through*)
- 4 Mandy went ...... the stairs and ..... her office, took a letter ..... the table and started to read it. (*into, off, out of, over, up*)
- 5 Go ...... the supermarket, ..... the railway bridge, ..... the first corner, and the police station is on your right. (*along, down, past, round, under*)
- 6 As soon as I got ...... the boat I went straight ..... the town centre to do some shopping. (*into, off, out of, past, through*)
- 7 I got ...... bed, walked ..... the bedroom, and looked ..... the window. It was raining again. (*across, into, out of, out of, under*)
- 8 It takes three hours to walk ...... the mountain, but you can get ..... it in two. (across, down, over, round, up)

We use to for movement, and at or in for position – where somebody/something is (see pages 278–279). I went to the bus stop to meet Helen. I waited at the bus stop for twenty minutes.

We can use from ... with to ...

He took five days to cycle from London to Edinburgh.

We get to a place, but we arrive at a place, or arrive in a big place (NOT arrive to).

It took three hours to get to Cambridge. I was tired when I arrived at the station. We arrived in London very early in the morning.

### 4) Put in from, to, at or in.

- 1 Let's go ..... the country this weekend.
- 2 She spends hours ..... the bathroom.
- 3 Shall we drive ..... Scotland or go by train?
- 4 We flew directly ..... Berlin ..... Tokyo.
- 5 What time do we arrive ..... Paris?
- 6 After six days' walking, they got ..... a river.
- 7 I saw Annie standing ..... the bus stop.
- 8 When we arrived ..... her house she had already left.
- 9 Are there tigers ..... Africa?
- 10 It takes me about half an hour to get ...... work.

### S Write a few sentences about a journey that you have made, using from, to, at and in.

### NOTE: we get into and out of cars BUT on(to) and off buses/trains/planes/ships.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### PREPOSITIONS 283

# prepositions: more practice

Time. (Circle) the correct prepositions.

### 1 He phoned on / in Friday. 2 The party is at / on June 18th. 3 Are you at home *at / on* Christmas? 4 I'll be here during / for two months. 5 We get up late in / on Sunday mornings. 6 | often watch TV in / at night. 7 The film ends on / at 9.45. 8 You can't learn English in / by a month. 2 Expressions without prepositions. Today is Saturday August 13th 2011. Rewrite the expressions in *italics* using this, next, last and every. I finished university in 2010. Last year 1 Joanne had a party on Saturday August 6th. 2 I'm going to buy a new car in 2012. 3 My holiday is in September 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014 etc. 4 I've already bought too many clothes in August. 5 It was really hot from August 1st to August 7th. 6 Shall we go and see a film on August 14th in the evening? 7 I'll be away on Saturday August 20th. 8 My brother was ill *in July 2011*. 9 We're going camping in September 2011. 10 The new station will be ready in August 2012. Movement. Cross out the wrong words. across the river / the bank 6 up the mountain / the floor 1 along the church / the road 7 over the door / the wall 2 down the police station / the mountain 8 past the floor / the church 3 into the church / the table 9 round the corner / the railway line 4 off the corner / the table 10 through the door / the table 5 out of the church / the wall

### 4 Place and movement. Put in suitable prepositions.

- 1 C comes ..... B and D in the alphabet.
- 2 I couldn't see the plane, because it was high ..... the clouds.
- 3 I had to wait a long time at the post office, because the woman ...... me wanted a lot of different things.
- 4 There's a garage on the other side of the street just ...... our house.
- 5 Please don't put bicycles ..... the shop window.
- 6 He turned round and walked away ..... the trees.
- 7 We cycled ...... a little road ..... the river for about five kilometres.
- 8 Ann came ...... the church and walked slowly ..... the square.
- 9 I got ..... the bus and went ..... the bank.
- 10 'Where's the swimming pool?' 'Drive ...... the police station, ..... the railway bridge and ..... the corner, and you'll see it on your left.

- 9 Hannah's birthday is on / in May.
- 10 What are you doing on / at Thursday?
- 11 Bring my bike back until / by Friday.
- 12 I'll work for / until 8.00 this evening.
- 13 I couldn't sleep for / during the night.
- 14 Stay here while / during I go shopping.
- 15 | play tennis at / in the weekend.

### PREPOSITIONS 285

### S Place and movement. Write the opposites.

- on the train off the train 1 into the church 2 off the bus
- 3 down the stairs
- 4 over the bridge
- 5 out of the river

### 6 Dates. Write these dates as you would say them.

- ► 2006 two thousand and six ▶ 17th March the seventeenth of March OB March the seventeenth
- 1 23rd April .....
- 2 1st September
- 3 5th August, 2010 .....
- 4 March 2, 1980
- 5 10.1.02 ..... 6 3/4/08 7 October 4th 8 21st March, 1936 ..... 9 Oct 22, 2006 10 1/1/01 .....

6 in front of the door

7 at the top of the stairs 8 up the mountain .....

9 behind the police station .....

10 at the beginning

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: duration. Put in suitable expressions from the box.

### (Different answers are possible.)

	I feel as if I've known you for ever.	for a couple of hours
1	I need to speak to you	for a few minutes
2	The terrorists were sent to prison	for a long time
3	We haven't seen Peter	for a long time
4	I'm going to rest	for a moment
5	It's been raining	for an hour or so
6	l usually play tennis on Sundays.	
7	We've lived in the same house	for ever
8	Can you help me?	for life
9	She went to sleep on the train just	(
10	I'm going out into the garden	for years and years

### B Grammar in a text. Choose the correct prepositions.

### Dear Louise

I'm glad you can come 1 on / in Friday. You asked how to get to our house. It's very easy. Get 2 in / on a No. 16 bus 3 opposite / along the police station, and get 4 off / out at the fourth stop just 5 above / by the new supermarket. Then walk 6 off / along Boston Street for about 300 metres, turn right 7 at / on the traffic lights, keep straight on 8 along / under the railway bridge, go 9 through / up the hill past the church, 10 round / across the corner by the pub, then 11 down / off the hill and 12 under / across the main road. That takes you into South Park. Walk 13 along / through the park and 14 out of / off the other side, turn left 15 round / in front of the school, and you'll find yourself 16 on / in Green Road. Our house is the fourth on the left, just 17 out of / by the old railway station. You can't miss it.

Love, Judy.

### Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.

"across the river" "along the road" "out of the church" "off the table" "up the mountain" "over the wall" "round the corner"



# prepositions: revision test

### Put in the correct words.

- 1 Let's go to Cardiff ..... Tuesday. (in, at, while, on)
- 2 The bridge ..... the river is closed. (along, over, up, through)
- 3 The next meeting is ..... December 8th. (on, at, in, by)
- 4 What do you usually do ..... the weekend? (on, at, in, by)
- 5 Max fell ..... his bike and broke his leg. (down, on, out of, off)
- 6 I need your answer ..... (in, by, at, until) Friday.
- 7 I'm not free now, but I can talk to you ..... half an hour. (in, for, by, until)
- 8 I slept ..... two hours this afternoon. (in, by, for, during)
- 9 The quickest way to our house is ..... the park. (along, through, in, over)
- 10 Let's go for a walk ..... the sun's shining. (while, during, for, along)

### 2 Put in suitable prepositions. (More than one may be possible.)

- 1 I'm going to put this picture ..... my bedroom wall.
- 2 I'll be away ...... June 1st ..... July 15th.
- 3 Olivia lived in Cairo ..... three years.
- 4 I didn't work very hard ..... my time at university.
- 5 It says ..... the newspaper that there will be snow.
- 6 Does this bus stop ..... the railway station?
- 7 Your father's photo is ..... page 16.
- 8 We're leaving ..... the 10.40 train.
- 9 I always wear this ring ..... my little finger.
- 10 Write your name ..... the top of the page.
- 11 Can you clean this suit ...... 4 o'clock?
- 12 A lot of people travel for a year ..... school and university.
- 13 Pete met his girlfriend ..... a party.
- 14 I'll be ready to go ..... ten minutes.
- 15 I like walking ..... the river.

### 3 All these sentences are wrong. Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ I'll see you <del>at</del> Tuesday. .....
- 1 She talked non-stop during three hours.
- 2 Please let me have all the information until Saturday.
- 3 Anna walked slowly out the room and down the stairs.
- 4 There's a pub on the other side of the road in front of our house.
- 5 Do you think you can swim through this river?
- 6 There's a strange insect in the ceiling.
- 7 It took a long time to drive over the town to the church.
- 8 I'll see you on next Monday.
- 9 Did you stay at home on Christmas?
- 10 We have to get down the bus at the next stop.

# **SECTION 22** spoken grammar

# grammar summary

We often leave words out if the meaning is clear. This is particularly common in spoken English.

It often happens after auxiliary verbs.

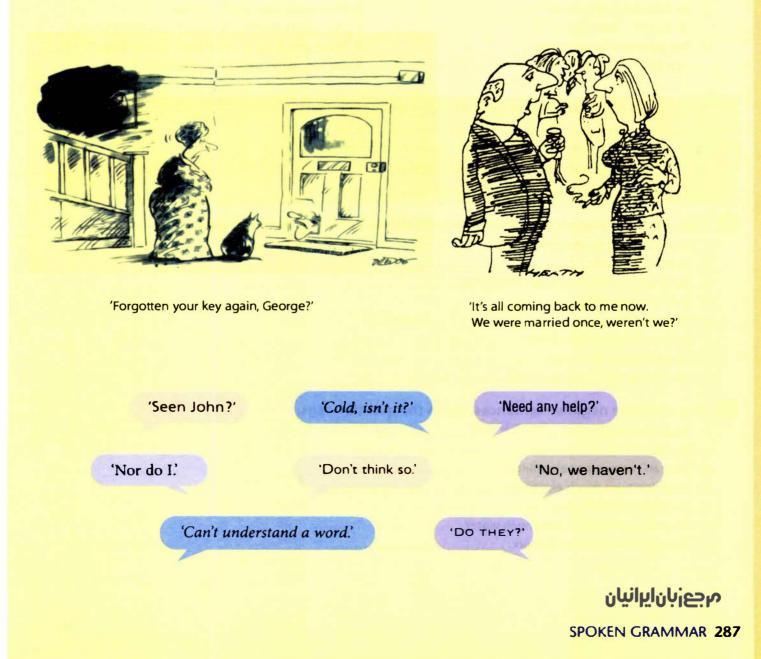
She said she would phone, but she **didn't**. (= '... she didn't phone.') I'll finish the work as soon as I **can**. (= '... as soon as I can finish the work.')

There are several common kinds of **short spoken sentence** made with **subject + auxiliary verb**:

- question tags: You're from Scotland, aren't you?
- short answers: 'Did you see Patrick?' 'No, I didn't.'
- reply questions: "I've got a headache." "Have you? I am sorry."
- so do I, nor can I etc: 'I was really cold on that bus.' 'So was I.'

We also often **leave out infinitives** (and other words) **after to**. *I've never seen the Taj Mahal, but I'd like to*. (='… I'd like to see the Taj Mahal.')

And we may leave out small words (pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginning of sentences. Don't know. (= 'I don't know.') Train's late. (= 'The train's late.') Been waiting long? (= 'Have you been waiting long?')



# question tags This music isn't very good, is it?

Question tags are short questions that can follow sentences, especially in spoken English. We make question tags with auxiliary verb (*have, can* etc) or *be* + pronoun (*l, you* etc). We use question tags to ask if something is true, or to ask people to agree with us.

You haven't got my keys, **have you?** Louise will be here tomorrow, **won't she?** This music isn't very good, **is it?** That child can run fast, **can't he?** 

Question tags are usually negative (=) after affirmative (+) sentences, and not negative after negative sentences. We don't put question tags after questions.

It is warm, isn't it? It isn't cold, is it? (BUT NOT Is it cold, isn't it?)

**Negative** tags are usually **contracted** (see page 301) – for example *isn't it?* (NOT USUALLY *is it not?*) The negative tag for *I am* is *aren't I?* (see page 301)

I'm late, aren't l?



### Question tag or nothing (–)? Circle the correct form.

- I'm late , am I? //, aren't I? / ?
- You can't swim, can you?/, can't you?/-?
- Has Anna phoned , has she? / , hasn't she? (-?)
- 1 You'll be here tomorrow , will you?/, won't you?/-?
- 2 The postman hasn't come , has he?/, hasn't he?/-?

- 3 Are you ready, are you?/, aren't you?/-?
- 4 It's dark in here, is it?/, isn't it?/-?
- 5 He can't speak Greek , can he?/, can't he?/-?
- 6 The train's late , is it? /, isn't it? / -?
- 7 The food wasn't bad, was it?/, wasn't it?/-?
- 8 Have you done it , have you / , haven't you?/-?
- 9 I'm too early, *amn't I? / , aren't I?/ ?*

### If the sentence has an **auxiliary verb** or **be**, we use this in the question tag.

You **would** like coffee, **wouldn't** you? I'**m** not talking too fast, **am** *l*?

Sally doesn't eat meat, does she? You aren't angry with me, are you?

If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the tag.

They went to Spain, didn't they? The lesson starts at 6.00, doesn't it?

### 2 Here are some sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags.

- You're playing football tomorrow, <u>aren't you?</u>
- 1 That's the answer, .....
- 2 We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, .....
- 3 She's a lovely baby, .....
- 4 You'll be OK, ....., Roger?
- 5 Your brother can tell us that, .....
- 6 Isabel likes brown bread, .....
- 7 This house gets hot in summer, .....

### Here are some negative sentences. Put in the question tags.

- They weren't at home, ...were they?
- 1 But he's not at school now, .....
- 2 You can't remember anything, .....
- 3 They don't use much electricity, .....
- 4 She doesn't look happy, .....
- 5 Those flowers don't need much water, .....
- 6 That kid hasn't done any work, .....

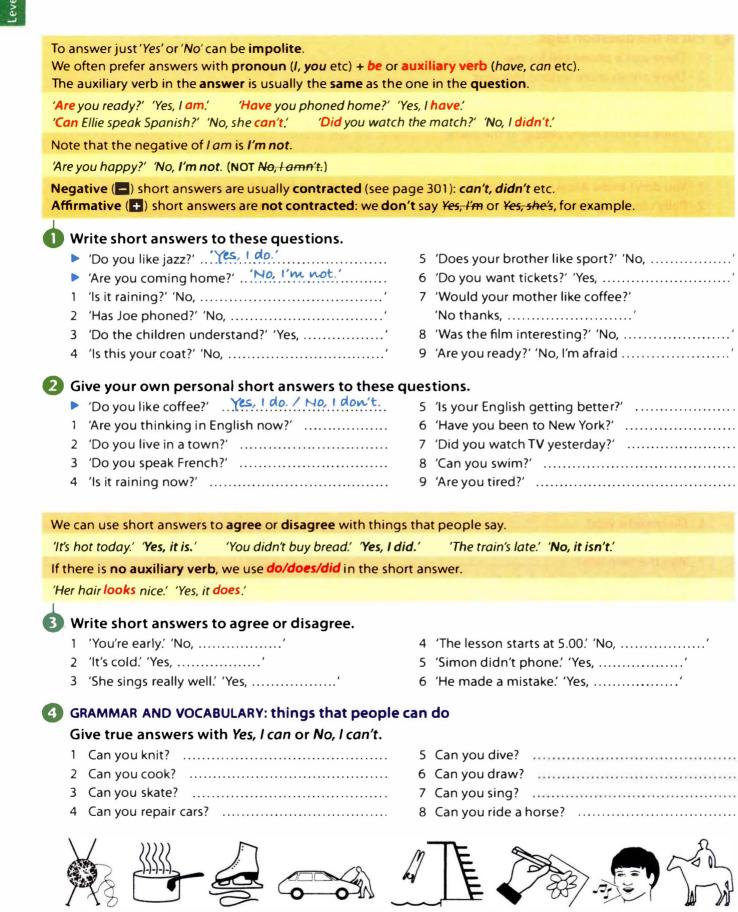
Ve can use <b>there</b> as a <b>subject</b> in question tags.	
here's a letter for me, isn't there? There weren't an	y problems, were there?
Put in the question tags.	
1 There was a phone call for me,	
2 There are six more lessons this year,	
3 There's a meeting this afternoon,	
4 There hasn't been any snow this year,	
5 There weren't many people at the party,	
1 You don't know Alicia,	
2 Polly's looking well,	
3 It's really cold today,	
4 You can't hear what she's saying,	
5 You'd like a drink,	
6 They don't listen,	
7 Carola's been away,	(isn't she?, wasn't she?, hasn't she?)
8 I'm at the right address,	(am I?, aren't I?, amn't I?)
9 There's a problem,	(isn't there?, isn't it?, is it?)
10 You like chocolate,	(like you, aren't you?, don't you?)
<ol> <li>Have they lived in France? They've</li> <li>Did they all go home early?</li> <li>Did it rain all last week?</li> </ol>	íth's. don't you?
8 Did Sarah forget your birthday?	
9 Was there a letter for me?	
10 Am I in time for lunch?	
f a tag asks <b>a real question</b> , we say it with a <b>rising</b> int	tonation: the music of the voice goes UP
f a tag just asks for <b>agreement</b> , we use a <b>falling</b> intor	-
Ne're meeting in Oxford, and the ? Nice day, isn's	
Try to pronounce these tags.	
1 The lesson begins at twelve, doesn't it?	4 It's cold, isn't it?
2 Your sister's gone to America, hasn't she?	5 You're from Scotland, aren't you?

6 She looks good in red, doesn't she?

3 Bill's a good singer, isn, te?

Level Z

# short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.





repair cars

draw

dive

sing

ride a horse

cook

skate

knit

# reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really?

In conversation, we often ask short questions (auxiliary verb + pronoun) to show interest.

'I've just had a letter from Eric.' 'Have you?' 'Yes. He says he's coming back ...'

These '**reply questions**' are not really questions: they mean 'Oh, yes? That's interesting.' Some more examples:

'John's getting married.' 'Is he really? Who to?'

'Anna and Peter had a lovely time in Greece.' 'Did they?' 'Yes. They went ...'

We answer negative sentences with negative reply questions.

'I can't see very well with these glasses.' 'Can't you? Maybe you should get new ones.'

### Choose the correct reply questions.

- Your mother hasn't phoned.' 'Has she? (Hasn't she?) wonder why not.'
- 1 'I've just got married.' 'Have you? / Haven't you? Congratulations.'
- 2 'William had an accident last week' 'Has he? / Did he? Is he OK?'
- 3 'There's a strange bird on the roof.' 'Is it? / Is there? Let me look.'
- 4 'I can't understand this.' 'Can you? / Can't you? Let me help you.'
- 5 'This coffee doesn't taste very nice.' 'Doesn't it? / Does it? I'm sorry.'
- 6 'Your sister's in trouble with the police.' 'Is she? / Isn't she? Oh, dear. Not again!'
- 7 'The children want computers for Christmas.' 'Do they? / Don't they? They think I'm made of money.'
- 8 'The students don't like your lessons.' 'Don't they? / Aren't they? Well, I don't like them either.'

### 2 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in reply questions.

- 0 'Oliver didn't eat much.'
- 1 'I don't like this bread at all.'
- 2 'The Smiths are in America.'
- 3 'My French is getting very bad.'
- 4 'Ryan's taken the car.'
- 5 'I can't understand these papers.'

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: showing our feelings

### Complete the sentences with reply questions and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Different answers are possible.

	Congratulations! Good luck! I am sorry. I don't believe it. ✓ Say 'hello' to him/her for me.
	That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity!
	'The Swiss have declared war on America.' 'Have they? I don't believe it.'
1	'I've just passed my exams.'
2	'I'm seeing Katie next week.'
3	'My job interview is tomorrow.'
4	'Some trees can live for thousands of years.'
5	'Lewis didn't get into university.'
6	'My computer has crashed again.'
7	'l don't feel well.'
8	'Andy and Paula are getting married.'
9	'I haven't got enough money to buy food.'



# revision of spoken question and answer structures

QUESTION TAGS	SHORT ANSWERS	REPLY QUESTIONS
It is, isn't it?	'Are you?' ' <b>No, I'm not.'</b>	'l'm' <b>'Are you?'</b>
1 am, aren't !?	'Has she?' 'Yes, she has.'	'He's' 'Has he?'
She has, hasn't she?	'Do they?' 'Yes, they do.'	'They like' 'Do they?'
They like, don't they?	'Are we?' 'No, we aren't.'	'We're' 'Are we?'
We aren't, are we?	'He wasn't' 'No, he wasn't.'	'She wasn't' 'Wasn't she?'
He didn't, did he?	'She didn't' <b>'Yes, she did.</b> '	'He didn't' 'Didn't he?'

### Circle the best expression.

- Jemima can't sing at all, can she? she can't.
- 1 'I'm worried about Peter.' 'You are?'/ 'Are you?' / 'Aren't you?'
- 2 'Joe didn't phone yesterday.' / 'Joe phoned yesterday.' 'Didn't he?'
- 3 'I'm feeling ill.' / 'I'm not feeling well.' 'Are you?'
- 4 'Does John need help?'/ 'John needs help.' 'Does he?'
- 5 Do you remember David, / You don't remember David, do you?
- 6 'I've got a headache.' 'You haven't.' / 'You have.' / 'Have you?'
- 7 They can stay with us, they can't?/can't they?/can they?

# 2 Read the conversation, and put in question tags (QT), short answers (SA) or

1 In these

## reply questions (RQ).

QT	Hello, Carol. Lovely day, 🕨 Lisk titt
SA	Yes, it is How are you?'
	'Well, I've got a problem.'
RQ	→ Have you? What's the matter?'
QT	'You remember my brother's boy Theo, 1'
SA; QT	'2
SA	'No, 4 He went to Canada. Anyway, he's coming back to England.'
RQ	's That's nice.'
	'Well, yes, but he wants to stay with me.'
RQ	'Oh, 6 Is that the problem?'
SA	'7l'm not very happy about it.'
RQ; QT	'8' Why? You like Theo, 9
SA	'10 very much.'
QT	'And you've got a lot of room in that big house, 11
SA	'12But would you like to have a young man living in your house all the time?
	'No, I suppose not.'
	'Well, I don't know what to do. I'm really very worried.'
RQ	'13 Would you like some advice?'
SA	'14'
	'Tell him the truth. Say you like him a lot, but you don't want people in your house.'
QT	'I can't say that, 15
SA	'16 He'll understand. I'm sure of it.'
RQ	'17 I don't know. Anyway, I'll think about it. Thanks.'

# leaving out words Don't know if she has.

We often use just an **auxiliary verb instead of repeating a longer expression**, if the meaning is clear. This happens in question tags, short answers and reply questions (see pages 288–291), and in other sentences too.

'Get up!' 'I am.' (= 'I am getting up.') Come round tomorrow evening, if you can. I haven't seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)

We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.

David said he knew the address, but he didn't really.

### Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said it wasn't raining, but it is raining.
- 1 He thinks I don't understand, but I do understand.
- 2 'You'd better eat something.' 'I have eaten something.'
- 3 Alice said she would lend me her car, but I don't think she will lend me her car.
- 4 Eric was sure he would pass his exam. I hope he has passed his exam.
- 5 'Will you write to me every day?' 'Of course I will write to you every day.'
- 6 I can't help you today, but I can help you tomorrow.

We often use to instead of a longer expression, if the meaning is clear.

'Would you like to stay with us next weekend?' 'I'd love to.' (= 'I'd love to stay with you.') I don't play tennis, but I used to. 'Are you going to Scotland this summer?' 'We hope to.'

### Complete the sentences, using the words in the box with to.

I'd like It's starting I'm trying 🗸 I used she didn't want Sorry, I forgot They hope

- 'Can't you go faster?' I'm trying to.
- 1 'Are Cathy and Dave getting married this year?'
- 2 I asked her to dance, but .....
- 3 I've never learnt to ski, but .....
- 4 I don't speak German very well now, but .....
- 5 'Did you remember to phone Liz?'
- 6 'Is it raining?'

In conversation, people may leave out 'small words' (for example pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginnings of sentences.

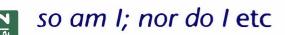
Must go now.	Can't help you, sorry.	Don't know.	Car's not going well.	
Seen Billy? (= 'Ha	ve you seen Billy?')	Nobody here. (= '1	There's nobody here.')	

### Write the complete sentences.

	Couldn't understand what he wanted from me.
	Doesn't know what she's doing.
3	Bus is late again.
4	Speak French?
5	Haven't seen them.
6	Don't think so.

➔ For sentences where we leave out that, see pages 257 and 264.

# irlanguage



To say that A is/does the same as B, we can use so + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc) + subject (note the word order). 'I'm hungry.' So am I.' (NOT 'So I am-) Sue's stopped her lessons, and so has George. If there is no auxiliary verb to repeat, we use do/does/did. 'My brother works in the theatre.' So does my cousin.' Complete the sentences, using so. 'My job's boring! (+ mine) ... 'So is mine.' 'My room gets very cold at night' ( mine) ... 'So does mine.' 1 'Anna is very interested in history' (+ Alice) 2 'My grandfather plays golf all day.' (+ my father) 3 'I can swim under water.' (+ 1) 4 'Peter wants a bicycle for Christmas' (F Carla) 5 'Joe has just got married'. (+ Edward) In negative sentences we use neither or nor + auxiliary verb + subject. 'I'm not working today.' Neither am I.' 'Mary can't drive,' Nor can Pat,' Bill doesn't like the boss, and neither does Jan. 2 Complete the sentences, using *neither/nor*. Max didn't play very well, and (= the others) .... nor did the others. OR neither did the others 1 The soup wasn't very good, and ( the meat) 2 'Rob hasn't phoned yet'. ( Gemma) 3 'This dictionary doesn't show pronunciation.' ( this one) 4 'l can't cook'. ( I ) ..... 5 His parents won't help him, and ( his friends) We can use short sentences (subject + auxiliary verb) to say that A is not the same as B. 'I'm not going to school today.' 1 am.' Some people don't like modern art, but I do. 'I like this music.' 'I don't.' The food was cheap, but the drinks weren't. Complete the sentences with expressions from the box, to say that things are not the same. her second one her sister my father 🗸 my car our dog the back door the green ones 🗸 the train 'My father works too hard' ...'My father doesn't.' 'The red apples aren't very sweet. 'The green ones are.' 1 'My car doesn't use a lot of petrol.' 2 'Mary has passed all her exams.' 'Yes, but ..... 3 Most dogs can swim, but ..... 4 'The bus takes a long time to get to London.' 5 The front door wasn't open, but ..... 6 'Her first book didn't sell very well.'

### 4 Look at the table and write sentences.

	LIKES DANCING	HAS BEEN TO AMERICA	PLAYS TENNIS	CAN SKI	IS TALL	LAUGHS A LOT
ERIC	1	×	1	1	×	1
JULIE	1	1	×	×	×	1
PAUL	×	×	×	1	×	×
DAN	1	1	1	1	1	1
DENISE	×	1	×	×	1	×
RACHEL	1	1	×	×	1	1

evei 2

(Eric, Dan, dancing) Eric likes dancing, and so does Dan.

(Julie, Rachel, ski) Julie can't ski, and nor can Rachel.
(Julie, Denise, laugh) Julie laughs a lot, but Denise doesn't.
(Eric, Julie, America) Eric hasn't been to America, but Julie has.
(Eric, Dan, tennis)
(Julie, Denise, tall)
(Denise, Paul, laugh)
(Dan, Rachel, ski)
(Julie, Denise, America)
(Eric, Paul, tall)
(Julie, Dan, tennis)
(Paul, Rachel, dancing)

S Here are some facts about Mike and Katy. Are you the same as them, or different? Write your answers, using So am I, Neither/Nor do I, I have, I can't etc.

	Katy has got blue eyes. So have I. OR I haven't.
	Mike doesn't like fish. I do. OR Nor do I.
1	Katy is interested in politics.
2	Mike has been to Texas.
3	Katy can sing.
4	Mike likes old music.
5	Katy speaks French.
6	Katy isn't very tall.
7	Mike hasn't got much hair.
8	Katy can't drink milk.
9	Mike doesn't like hot weather.
10	Mike doesn't understand computers.



We can also use **too** or **not either** to say that **A is/does the same as B**. 'I'm hungry.' 'I am **too**.' Lucy hasn't written, and Carol has**n't either**. In informal conversation we often say **Me too** instead of **So do I, I do too** etc. 'I've got a headache.' '**Me too**.' (NOT '<del>I also.'</del>)

# spoken grammar: more practice

### 1 Short answers. Complete the conversations.

- Do you like swimming? ... Yes, I do.'
- 1 'Was Emma at home when you went to see her?' 'No, ......'
- 2 'Does Tom play a musical instrument?' 'Yes, ......'
- 4 'The plane arrives at 6.45, I think'. 'No, ......'
- 5 'Can you work next Saturday?' 'Yes, .....'
- 6 'Have you written to Felicia?' 'No, ......'
- 7 'John wants to be a doctor.' 'No, ......'
- 8 'Did Carol phone this morning?' 'Yes, ......'
- 9 'Will the children be in this evening?' 'No, ......'
- 10 'Do you understand what I'm saying?' 'Yes, .....'

# Reply questions. Complete the conversations with reply questions and expressions from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

	Congratulations! Good luck!   am sorry. / I am sorry. I don't believe it!
	Say 'hello' to him for me. That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise.
	What a nuisance! What a pity!
	'I didn't get that job that I wanted' 'Didn't you? I am sorry.'
1	'I'm seeing James on Tuesday.'
2	'I've got excellent results in my exams.'
3	'Scotland has declared its independence.'
4	'I've got an important interview tomorrow.'
5	'Light takes four years to travel here from the nearest star.'
6	'Anna and Peter are getting divorced.'
7	'My car has been stolen.'
8	'Ifeelill.'
	'Tim has decided to become a ballet dancer.'
9	
-	'I can't come to your party.'
10	'I can't come to your party.'
10 3 5	'I can't come to your party.'
10 3 5	'I can't come to your party.' o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc. Arthur has gone home, and (+ Jane)
10 3 5	'I can't come to your party.' o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc. Arthur has gone home, and ( Jane) <sup>So</sup> has Jane. Oliver can't run very well and ( Susan)
10 3 S	'I can't come to your party.' o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc. Arthur has gone home, and (I Jane)so has Jane Oliver can't run very well and (I Susan)neither can Susan Dogs don't eat tomatoes, and (I cats)
10 3 S • 1	'I can't come to your party.' o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc. Arthur has gone home, and ( Jane)
10 3 S 1 1 2	'I can't come to your party.' o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc. Arthur has gone home, and ( Jane)
10 3 5 1 1 2 3	'I can't come to your party.'         o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.         Arthur has gone home, and (  Jane)
10 3 50 1 1 2 3 4	'I can't come to your party.'         o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.         Arthur has gone home, and (  Jane)
10 3 5 1 1 2 3 4 5	'I can't come to your party.'         o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.         Arthur has gone home, and (➡ Jane)
10 3 S 1 1 2 3 4 5 6	'I can't come to your party.'         o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.         Arthur has gone home, and (  Jane)
10 3 5 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	'I can't come to your party.'         o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.         Arthur has gone home, and (■ Jane)       So has Jane.         Oliver can't run very well and (■ Susan)       Neither can Susan.         Dogs don't eat tomatoes, and (■ cats)       The 3.45 train hasn't arrived yet, and (■ the 3.15)         'I wasn't happy at school.'(■ I)       Ken didn't come to the lesson, and (■ Sally)         Roger likes travelling, and (■ his brother)       The meat is cold, and (■ the potatoes)         Natasha doesn't speak Russian, and (■ her brother)       Natasha doesn't speak Russian, and (■ her brother)

ΞĒ.

### 4 Leaving out words. Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said you weren't crying, but you were crying.
- 1 She says I don't love her, but I do love her.
- 2 'You should phone Aunt Lucy.' 'I have phoned Aunt Lucy.'
- 3 Henry thought that he would get rich fast, but I don't think he will get rich fast.
- 4 'Help me.' 'I'm trying to help you.'
- 5 'Will you forget me?' 'Of course I won't forget you.'
- 6 Jasper can sing, but I can't sing.
- 7 Andrew has asked me to go out with him, but I don't want to go out with him.
- 8 She's finished breakfast, but I haven't finished breakfast.
- 9 'You broke that window.' 'No, I didn't break that window.'
- 10 I haven't been to America yet, but I hope to go to America soon.

### S Leaving out words. Write the complete sentences.

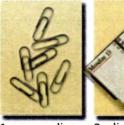
	Been shopping? Have you been shopping?
	Car won't start. The car won't start.
	Don't know why.
	Seen my mother today?
3	Don't think so.
4	Sorry, can't come in here.
	Want some help?
6	Know what I think?
7	Can't understand a word.
8	House is cold.
9	Raining again.
10	Lost my keys.

# **G** GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things from the office. What would you ask if you were not sure of the names of the things in the pictures?

3 .....













stapler

1 paper clips 2 diary

3 hole-punch 4 addre

3 hole-punch 4 address book 5 rulers

6 calculators

# Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.

"and so is" "and so are" "and so has" "and so have" "and so does" "and so do" "and neither is" "and neither are" "and neither has" "and neither have" "and neither does" "and neither do"



•••••	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••	••••••	 	•••••
		•••••				 	
		••••••				 	





# spoken grammar: revision test

	orrect (🗸) or not (X)?			
	Daniela looks like you, looksn't she?	6	Is today the 31st, is it?	
	You're Scottish, aren't you?		Peter and Annie are getting married, aren't	
1	We didn't give you our address, did we?		they?	
2		8	Maggie wasn't here yesterday, was she?	
3	There's a problem, isn't it?		I'm playing tomorrow, amn't I?	
4	Jane doesn't smoke, doesn't she?		You haven't seen Pat anywhere, did you?	
5		10	ioù naven escent ar anywhere, ala you	
2	four be at nome tonight, won't you.			
	ut in the question tags.			
	lt's a nice day, isn't it?	8	Dinner's ready,	
1	You can play the piano,	9	It's not raining,	
2	Lily will be here tomorrow,	10	You won't be late,	
3	You haven't got the keys,	11	Philip and Rachel have got married,	
4	Stephen likes fishing,	12	The papers haven't arrived,	
5	There wasn't much rain in the night,	13	l'm late,	
6	Petra went back home,	14	All the trains stop at Oxford,	
7	George doesn't play golf,	15	That letter didn't arrive,	
	hange these questions into affirmative (🖪) or i	-	· · ·	
	Do you live in Dublin? + You live in Dublin,			
	Do you know my friend Adrian?			
1	Have they gone home?  They haven't			
2				
3	3 Would you like some more coffee? +			
4	Was Mike away yesterday? 🛨			
5				
6				
7	Will there be room for everybody? +			
8	Does your father eat meat?			
9	Do these books belong to the library?			
10	Are you tired? +	•••••		
	omplete the conversations with short answers.			
	'Do you play baseball?' Yes, I do.'			
	'Was the exam difficult?' 'No,			
2	'Would your little boy like to watch TV?' 'No, thanks,			
3	'The lesson starts at 10.00.' 'No,			
4	'Did the post come this morning?' 'Yes,			
5	'Will it rain today?' 'No,			
2				
	omplete the conversations with reply question			
	'I've just passed my exam.' 'Have you?		-	
3	'Joe and Suzy moved to London in March.' '		I didn't know.'	
2	'I won't be here next week.' '		. Then come and see us the week after.	
3	'I need some help.' ' I'll	see	what I can do.'	
4	'The dog has brought a dead rat into the house.' ' it out, please?'		Well, could you throw	
5	'You didn't lock the door last night.' '			
_				

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# appendix 1 common irregular verbs

(These are the most common irregular verbs. For a complete list, see a good dictionary.)

INFINITIVE	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been	let	let	let
become	became	become	lie	lay	lain
begin	began	begun	lose	lost	lost
break	broke	broken	make	made	made
bring	brought	brought	mean	meant	meant
build	built	built	meet	met	met
buy	bought	bought	рау	paid	paid
catch	caught	caught	put	put	put
choose	chose	chosen	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
come	came	come	ride	rode	ridden
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	show	showed	shown
drive	drove	driven	shut	shut	shut
eat	ate	eaten	sing	sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	sleep	slept	slept
fight	fought	fought	speak	spoke	spoken
find	found	found	spell	spelt	spelt
fly	flew	flown	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	stand	stood	stood
get	got	got	steal	stole	stolen
give	gave	given	swim	swam	swum
go	went	gone/been	take	took	taken
have	had	had	teach	taught	taught
hear	heard	heard	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
keep	kept	kept	understand	understood	understood
know	knew	known	wake	woke	woken
lead	led	led	wear	wore	worn
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	win	won	won
leave	left	left	write	wrote	written
lend	lent	lent			

# appendix 2 active and passive verb forms

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE: TENSE OF BE + PAST PARTICIPLE		
INFINITIVE	(to) watch	(to) write	(to) be watched	(to) be written	
-/NG FORM	watching	writing	being watched	being written	
SIMPLE PRESENT	l watch	l write	lam watched	lt is written	
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	l am watching	lam writing	I am being watched	It is being written	
SIMPLE PAST	l watched	l wrote	I was watched	lt was written	
PAST PROGRESSIVE	I was watching	I was writing	I was being watched	It was being written	
PRESENT PERFECT	I have watched	I have written	Ihave been watched	It has been written	
PAST PERFECT	I had watched	I had written	I had been watched	It had been written	
WILL FUTURE	I will watch	l will write	I will be watched	It will be written	
GOING TO FUTURE	l am going to watch	l am going to write	l am going to be watched	It is going to be written	
MODAL VERBS	l can watch	l can write	I can be watched	It can be written	
	I must watch	I must write	I must be watched	It must be written	
	I should watch	I should write	I should be watched	It should be written	
	etc	etc	etc	etc	

→ For the use of the different tenses, see Sections 2–5.

- → For the use of passives, see Section 7.
- → For the spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.
- → For the spelling of third-person present forms (writes, watches, sits, goes etc), see page 16.

# appendix 3 capital letters (A, B, C etc)

We use CAPITAL LETTERS to begin the names of **people, places, nationalities, languages, days, months** and **holidays**.

Abraham Lincoln New York American Arabic Thursday September Christmas

We also use CAPITAL LETTERS for the most important words in the titles of **books**, **films** etc. *War and Peace Gone with the Wind* 

And we use a CAPITAL LETTER for the **first word in a sentence**, and for the pronoun *I*. Yesterday I went for a long bike ride.

مرجعزبان ايرانيان www.irLanguage.com

# appendix 4 contractions

Contractions like *he's*, *is n't* show the pronunciation of *informal speech*.

They are common and correct in **informal writing** (for example, friendly letters), but are unusual in formal writing.

AFFIRMATIVE (+) CONTRACTIONS: PRONOUN + 'M, 'RE, 'S, 'VE, 'D, 'LL	NEGATIVE ( ) CONTRACTION BE, HAVE OR OTHER AUXILIAR	
I am → I'm	are not -> aren't	shall not → shan't
we are → we're	is not -> isn't	would not → wouldn't
she is → she's	have not -> have n't	should not → shouldn't
he has → he's	has not -> has n't	cannot → can't
I have → I've	had not -> hadn't	could not → couldn't
you had → you'd	do not -> doesn't	might not → mightn't
you would → you'd	did not -> didn't	must not → mustn't
they will → they'll	will not -> won't	need not → needn't

- With be, two negative forms are common: you'renot / you aren't, she's not / she is n't, etc. With have, had, will and would, the forms with n't are more common: we usually say I have n't, I had n't etc, NOT I've not, I'd not etc.
- There is no contraction amn't, BUT am not -> aren't in questions. I'm late, aren't l? (BUT I'm not late, NOT laren't late.)
- The contraction 's (= is or has) can be written after pronouns, nouns, question words, here and there. It 's late. Your mother 's gone home. Mary 's got a headache. How 's Joe these days? Here 's your money. There 's the telephone.
- We don't use affirmative (+) contractions at the ends of sentences. You're early.' 'Yes, we are.' (NOT Yes, we're.) I think she's gone home.' 'Yes, I think she has.' (NOT ... + think she's.)
- Negative (=) contractions are possible at the ends of sentences.
   'It's raining.' 'No, it is n't.'
- Don't confuse it's (= it is/has) with its (possessive see page 188).
   The cat isn't hungry. It's only eaten half of its food.
- Don't confuse who's (= who is/has) with whose.
   Who's the woman in the green coat?
   Whose car is that?
- In very informal speech, *going to, want to* and *got to* are often pronounced like *gonna, wanna* and *gotta*. They are sometimes written like this, especially in American English.



# irlanguage

# appendix 5 punctuation

This section summarises the most important rules of punctuation.

#### the basic sentence

We don't put commas (,,,) between the basic parts of a sentence (**subject** and **verb**, **verb** and **object** etc). *My brother has found a really good job*. (NOT *My brother has found a really good job*. OR *My brother has found - a really good job*.

### before the basic sentence

If we put long adverbial expressions (saying when, where etc) before the basic sentence, we often use a comma (,). Compare: Last year he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh. Between January 2010 and March 2011, he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.

### after the basic sentence

We don't usually use commas when adverbial expressions come after the basic sentence. He followed a business studies course in Edinburgh between January 2010 and March 2011.

### inside the basic sentence

When adverbial expressions come **between** parts of the basic sentence, we usually put commas before and after them.

She has, in the six months since she started her music studies, made remarkable progress.

### noun phrases

We don't usually separate a noun from the adjectives or other expressions that go with it. those very nice people (NOT those very nice, people) those very nice people in the flat downstairs (NOT those very nice people, in the flat downstairs) those very nice people who invited us to their party (NOT those very nice people, who invited us to their party)

### sentences with conjunctions

We often put **commas** in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. (See page 219.) Compare: Everything will be different when Mr Harris leaves. Everything will be very different after April next year, when Mr Harris leaves. We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction. When Mr Harris leaves, everything will be different.

### indirect speech

We **don't put commas** after verbs of saying, thinking etc in **indirect speech**. Jamie **says that** he has a problem. (NOT <del>Jamie says, that</del> ...) I don't **know what** I was going to tell the police. (NOT <del>I don't know, what</del> ...) We **don't put question marks** (?) in **indirect questions**. I **asked why** he was late. (NOT <del>I asked why he was late?</del>)

### a useful rule: no comma before that

We **don't put commas** before *that* (conjunction or relative pronoun). *I* know that she married a man that worked for her father.

### between separate sentences

Between separate sentences (with no conjunction), we use a full stop (.) or a semi-colon (;), but **not a comma**. Compare.

Robert phoned, and he asked to speak to the manager. (comma and conjunction) Robert phoned. He asked to speak to the manager. OR Robert phoned; he asked to speak to the manager. BUT NOT Robert phoned, he asked to speak to the manager.

### lists

We use commas to separate the different things in a list (but not before *and*). She gave presents to her brothers, her sister, her sister's husband, her secretary **and** all of her colleagues.

### abbreviations (short forms of words)

We use full stops after some abbreviations, like *e.g.* (meaning 'for example'). *Mr* and *Mrs* have full stops in American English, but not usually in British English. Some British cities have beautiful cathedrals, *e.g.* Salisbury. Everybody liked **Mr** Carter.

quotation marks ('...' or "...")

Quotation marks are used to show direct speech (somebody's actual words). His father said, 'Do what you want.' (NOT <Do what you want>OR – Do want your want.)

### figures

We use commas after thousands and millions, and full stops in decimal fractions.  $\in$  5,500,000 (= 'five million, five hundred thousand euros')  $\notin$  5.5m (= 'five and a half million euros')

### apostrophes (')

For apostrophes in contractions (e.g. *isn't*), see Appendix 4. For apostrophes in possessives (e.g. *John's*), see page 201.

# appendix 6 word order

This section summarises the most important rules of word order that you can find in other parts of the book.

### sentences

The basic word order of English sentences is **SUBJECT – VERB – OBJECT**. *I play the piano*. (**NOT** *I the piano play*.)

### questions

In questions we usually put an auxiliary verb before the subject. *Did you see the news last night?* (NOT *Saw you the news ...?*) *Can you swim?* For more details, see Section 8, pages 103–111. This does not usually happen with **indirect questions**. *She asked me where I lived*. (NOT *She asked me where did Hive*.) For more details, see page 266.

### adjectives

Adjectives usually go before, not after, nouns. an interesting film (NOT a film interesting) Adjectives can go after be, seem and similar verbs. I think she is tired. For more details, see Section 15, pages 209–211.

### adverbs

Different adverbs can go in different places in a sentence. **Yesterday** I got up at 6.00. I've **just** seen a rabbit. You're driving very **slowly**. They do **not** usually go **between the verb and the object**. I **bought a bike yesterday**. (NOT <del>I bought yesterday a bike.)</del> She speaks **Spanish very well**. (NOT <del>She speaks very well Spanish.</del>) For more details, see Section 15, pages 212–215.

### prepositions

Prepositions often go at the ends of questions, especially in spoken English.
Who did you go with? What did you do that for?
For more details, see Section 8, page 111.
Prepositions can also go at the ends of relative clauses, especially in spoken English.
There's the man that I told you about. The train that I usually travel on wasn't running.
For more details, see Section 19, page 258.

### phrasal verbs

The objects of **phrasal verbs** (but not prepositional verbs) can often go **between the two parts of the verb**. *I turned the light out*. (OR *I turned out the light*.) **Pronoun objects** always go between the two parts of a phrasal verb. *I turned it out*. (NOT *I turned out it*.) For more details, see Section 10, pages 142–143.

### ago

Ago follows an expression of time. We arrived two hours ago. (NOT ... ago two hours)

### enough

**Enough** usually goes **before nouns** but **after adjectives and adverbs**. Have you got **enough soup**? (NOT ... <u>soup enough</u>?) Is the soup **hot enough**? (NOT ... <u>enough hot</u>?) I didn't get up **early enough**.

# appendix 7 expressions with prepositions

## prepositions after verbs, adjectives and nouns

We use prepositions (*at*, *in* etc) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns. This is a list of the most common examples.

afraid of She's afraid of dogs.

agree with I don't agree with you.

angry about something We're all angry about the new working hours.

angry with somebody Mary's very angry with you.

arrive at/in a place I usually arrive at school at 8.30. What time do we arrive in London?

ask for If you want anything, just ask for it.

bad at I'm bad at games.

believe in (= 'believe that something is real') Do you believe in ghosts?

**belong to** This book **belongs to** me.

**depend on** We may arrive late this evening. It **depends on** the traffic.

**different from/to** You're **different from** (OR **to**) your sister.

**difficulty in doing something** *I have a lot of difficulty in understanding her.* 

discuss something with somebody We discussed our plans with the manager.

divide into I divided the cake into four parts.

dream about something or somebody; dream of doing something I often dream about horses. When I was young, I dreamt of becoming a pilot.

dressed in She was dressed completely in black.

**example of** Can you show me an **example of** your work? **explain something to somebody** *Can you explain this word to me?* 

get into/out of a car; get on(to)/off a bus, train, plane, ship I picked up my case and got into the taxi. She got off the bus at the wrong stop.

get to a place How do you get to Southport from here?

good at He's good at tennis.

happen to What's happened to Alice? She's an hour late.

**the idea of doing something** *We had the idea of starting a small business.* 

interested in Are you interested in animals?

kind to They have always been very kind to me.

**laugh at** Please don't **laugh at** my French pronunciation.

listen to I like to listen to music while I'm working.

**look after children etc** Can you **look after** the children for half an hour?

look at Look at that wonderful old car!

look for (= 'try to find')
'What are you looking for?' 'My keys.'

married to He's married to Jane Gordon, the novelist.

**nice to** You weren't very **nice to** my mother.

pay somebody for something; pay a bill Have you paid John for the tickets? I forgot to pay the electricity bill.

pleased with We are very pleased with his work. **polite to** It's best to be **polite to** policemen.

**reason for** What was the **reason for** his change of plans?

smile at In this job you have to smile at people all day.

talk about Were you talking about me?

thank somebody for Thank you for waiting.

**think about/of** *I think about you all the time. We're thinking of going to America.* 

translate into/from I've got to translate this letter from French into German. typical of
She went out without saying 'Thank you'. That's just
typical of her.

wait for I waited for her for half an hour, and then went home.

write to We write to each other every week. (BUT We phone each other ... – no preposition)

wrong with What's wrong with the car?

→ For more about prepositions, see Section 21.

→ For more about prepositions with verbs, see page 141.

## common expressions beginning with prepositions

at the theatre at the cinema at a party at the top at the bottom at the side in the end (= 'finally', 'after a long time') at the beginning at the end of something by car/bus/train etc (BUT on foot) a book **by** Dickens an opera by Mozart for example in a raincoat/dress/hat in the rain/snow in the world in the sky in a picture in the middle in a loud/quiet voice write in pen/pencil in my opinion in time (='not late') on time (= 'at just the right time; not late or early')

on the phone on the radio on TV on page 22

- For expressions without articles like in hospital, at university, see page 162.

# appendix 8 word problems

This section tells you about some words that are difficult to use correctly. We explain some other word problems in other sections of the book: see the Index.

- after We don't usually say and after, X happened. We prefer afterwards or after that. We had a pizza, and afterwards / after that we went skating. (NOT ... and after, we went ...)
- *ago Ago* goes after a time expression. Compare *ago* with *for* and *since* (see page 65). It's August 1st. I came here three months ago. I've lived here for three months, since May.
- another is one word.

Would you like another glass? (NOT ... an other glass.)

as and like (similarity) To say that things are similar, we normally use like. But before subject + verb, we prefer as in a formal style.

Your sister looks like you. Pronounce it like I do (informal) / as I do (formal).

- as, not like (jobs) To talk about the jobs that people or things do, use as, not like. He's working as a waiter. (NOT He's working like a waiter.) I used my shoe as a hammer.
- *born* We say that somebody *is/was born* (passive). I was born in London. Thousands of deaf children are born every year.
- do and make Common expressions with do and make:

do work, a job, shopping, washing, ironing, business; do something, nothing, anything, everything make a suggestion, a decision, a phone call, a noise, a journey, a mistake, money, a bed, a fire, love

### *do* + ... *ing* Common expressions:

do the shopping; do some (a lot of / a bit of) walking, swimming, reading, climbing, sailing, skiing

*else* We use *else* to mean *other* after *something, anything, somebody, nobody* etc. *Something else* to *drink? Nobody else* cooks like you.

ever is used mostly in questions, or with present perfect + superlative. Do you ever play golf? Have you ever been to Ireland? This is the best film I've ever seen. She says he's the nicest boy she's ever met.

### explain is not used with two objects (see page 144).

Can you explain this word to me? (NOT Con you explain me this word?)

forget see remember.

hear and listen to We can hear something without trying. When we listen to something, we want to hear it. Suddenly I heard a noise in the garden.
Are you listening to me? (NOT ... listening me?)

### We often use *can* with *hear*.

I could hear Mary and John talking in the kitchen.

*home* We **leave out** to before home. Well, goodnight, I'm going home. (BUT Is anybody at home?)

# hope We often use so and not after hope. 'Is David coming tomorrow?' 'I hope so.' 'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope not.'

- *If and when* We use *if* for things that **may happen**, and *when* for things that **will happen**. *If I live to be 100... If it rains today ... When I die ... When it gets dark ...*
- *just* has several meanings: 1) *right now*2) *a short time ago* (with present perfect, see page 64)3) *exactly*4) *really*5) *only* 
  - 1) I'll phone you later. We're just having lunch.
     2) Aunt Daphne has just arrived.
     3) It's just four o'clock.
     4) I just love your dress.
     5) 'Put those chocolates down!' 'I was just looking at them, Mum.'

*let* and *make*. If I let you do something, I say that you can do it. If I make you do it, I say that you must. After *let* and *make*, we use object + infinitive without *to*.

Her parents let her go to the party. But they made her come home at midnight.

remember and forget + infinitive (with to) look towards the future: things that one has to do. remember and forget + ing form look back to the past: things that one has done. I must remember to buy bread. She always forgets to close the door. I remember seeing the Queen when I was six. I'll never forget meeting you.
same We normally use the with same; and we say the same as (NOT the same like). We had the same idea. (NOT a same idea OR same idea) Her shoes are the same as mine.
<pre>see and hear + object + infinitive (without to)/ing If you see/hear somebody do something, you see/hear a complete action. If you see/hear somebody doing something, they are in the middle of doing it. I saw her go into John's house. I heard her play Beethoven's violin concerto on the radio. I looked up and saw Leo talking to Zoe. I walked past Anna's room and heard her crying.</pre>
see, look and watch We can see something without trying. When we look at something, we want to see it. I saw Bill in the supermarket yesterday. Look at that bird! (NOT Look that bird!)
We often use <i>can</i> with <i>see.</i> On the left of the photo you <i>can see</i> my grandmother.
We <b>watch</b> things that <b>move, change</b> or <b>happen</b> . We <b>watch</b> TV most evenings. Did you <b>watch</b> the football match? The police are <b>watching</b> him to see where he goes.
so and such We use so + adjective without a noun, and such when there is a noun. so kind so big such kind people such a big mistake such a fool
still, yet and already We use still to say that something is continuing; yet to ask if it has happened (or to say it hasn't); already to say it has happened earlier than we expected. Granny's still on the phone. 'Has the postman come yet?' 'No, not yet.' I've already spent the week's money, and it's only Tuesday.
than, as and that Use than after comparatives (see page 223); as in the structure as as (see page 228); that after say, think etc and as a relative pronoun (see page 256). She's taller than me. It's as cold as ice. The boss says that you're right. Who's the woman that just came in?
<i>think</i> We often use <i>so</i> after <i>think</i> . Don't use an <i>infinitive</i> after <i>think</i> . 'Are you coming to the party?' 'I think so.' 'Is it raining?' 'I don't think so.' I'm thinking of going to America. (NOT <del>I'm thinking to go</del> )
<i>try</i> After <i>try</i> we can use an <b>infinitive</b> (with <i>to</i> ) or an <i>-ing</i> form. We prefer an <b>infinitive</b> when we are talking about <b>trying difficult things</b> .
<b>Try to stop</b> smoking – it's bad for you. 'It's really hot in here.' <b>'Try opening</b> a window.'
very and too Too means 'more than we want'; very doesn't. 'It's very warm today.' 'Yes, a bit too warm for me.' 'Oh, it's OK for me.'
<i>wait</i> We often use <i>wait for</i> with <b>object + infinitive</b> (with <i>to</i> ). I'm waiting for the postman to come.
which? and what? We prefer which when we are choosing between a small number of things, and what when there is a wider choice. 'I'd like a pair of those shoes.' 'Which ones – the blue or the red? And what size?'
whom In a very formal style, we use whom as an object in questions and relative clauses. Whom did they elect? With whom did she go? She hated the man for whom she worked.
In an <b>informal</b> style, <b>who</b> is more normal in questions, and <b>that</b> (or nothing) in relatives. <b>Who</b> did they elect? Who did she go with? She hated the man ( <b>that</b> ) she worked for.
why and because Why asks for a reason. Because gives a reason. 'Why are you late?' 'Because I missed the train.'

**308 APPENDICES** 

# answer key

## page 2

- 1 1 are 2 is 3 are 4 am 5 are 6 is 7 am
- We're all tired. 2 They're here. 3 I'm sorry.
   My name's Peter. 5 You're early.
   The shop's closed. 7 She's at home.
- 3 1 Is Marie from Paris? 2 Are we very late?
  3 Is John in bed? 4 Is the boss here?
  5 Is your car fast? 6 Is Luke here?
  7 Are we all ready? 8 Am I early?
  9 Are they at home? 10 Are you happy?
  11 Is Joe married? 12 Is this your house?
  13 Is that Jane?
- 4 1 What's 2 Where are 3 Who's 4 When are
  5 Why are 6 How's 7 Where's 8 Who are
  9 How are 10 When's

### page 3

- 5 1 she's not ill. / she isn't ill.
  - 2 they're not in London. / they aren't in London.
  - 3 you're not too tall. / you aren't too tall.
  - 4 we're not very late. / we aren't very late.
  - 5 it's not hot. / it isn't hot.
  - 6 I'm not at university.
  - 7 he's not very nice. / he isn't very nice.
  - 8 she's not in her office. / she isn't in her office.
  - 9 it's not mine. / it isn't mine.
  - 10 it's not very fast. / it isn't very fast.
- 6 1 He is thirsty. 2 She is cold. 3 They are hot.4 It is cold.
- 7 1 right. 2 size 3 colour 4 interested
  5 wrong 6 thirsty. 7 hot 8 cold
  9 old 10 hungry.

### page 4

1 1 were; was 2 was; were 3 were 4 was; were 5 was; were 6 were; was 7 was: was 8 were; was

- 2 1 Was the party good?
  - 2 Were the people interesting?
  - 3 Was your father a teacher?
  - 4 Was everybody late?
  - 5 When was your driving test?
  - 6 Where were you on Tuesday?
  - 7 Why were all the windows open?
  - 8 Was John's brother at school with you?
- 3 1 weren't late. 2 wasn't a teacher.
  - 3 wasn't with Anna 4 weren't well
    - 5 weren't in England 6 wasn't good
    - 7 weren't in their hotel 8 wasn't warm

### page 5

- It will be hot in Rio. It will be warm in Paris.
   It will be cold in London. It will be very cold in Moscow.
- 2 1 I won't be sorry.
  - 2 It will be hot.
  - 3 We will be at home.
  - 4 The shops won't be closed.
  - 5 He won't be in Scotland.
  - 6 Lisa won't be at school.
- 3 1 When will your father be in England?
  - 2 Will Ann be at the party with John?
  - 3 Will everybody be here at 8.00?
  - 4 Will the train be late again?
  - 5 When will Joe and Mary be in the office?
  - 6 Will the weather be good tomorrow?
  - 7 Where will you be on Tuesday?

### page 6

- 2 1 Is there a doctor here?
  - 2 Are there any trains to London from this station?
  - 3 Was there a special price for students?
  - 4 Were there any mistakes in my letter?
  - 5 Is there much money in your bank account?
  - 6 How many students are there in your class?
  - 7 Were there many children at the swimming pool?
  - 8 How many people were there at the party?

## page 7

- 1 there will be sun 2 there will be two
   3 there will be ten people 4 there will be (enough) food 5 There will be fish
   6 There will be (a new) hospital 7 There will be trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers
- 2 1 There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
  2 There will not be any trains on Sunday.
  3 There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning.
  4 If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast.
  5 There will not be any breakfast.
  6 There will not be any children at the party.
  7 There will not be a French lesson on Monday evening.
  8 There will not be time to have lunch today.
- 3 1 Will there be trains? 2 Will there be computers? 3 Will there be good food? 4 Will there be different countries? 5 Will there be governments? 6 Will there be a lot of problems?

## page 8

- 1 1 My father 2 we all 3 have 4 has 5 Paul 6 have 7 has 8 Susie and Mick
- 3 1 have a garden. 2 Do they have any children?
  3 Does Peter have a cold? 4 My aunt doesn't have a dog. 5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters? 6 I don't have enough money.
  7 Does Laura have a boyfriend? 8 Why do you have two cars?

## page 9

- She didn't have a computer.
   She had very fair hair.
   She didn't have lots of friends.
   She didn't have many nice clothes.
  - 5 Did she have her own room?
- **3** 1 He will have a job.
  - 2 He won't have a bicycle.
  - 3 He will have a car.
  - 4 Will he have a house?
  - 5 Will he have a girlfriend?
  - 6 He won't have old clothes.
  - 7 He will have a suit.
  - 8 Will he have a guitar?

## page 10

- 1 1 had dinner 2 has coffee
  - 3 have a baby 4 have a shower
  - 5 have toast 6 have a game
- 2 1 do you have lunch 2 She didn't have a good trip. 3 didn't have a shower. 4 Did you have a good flight? 5 'Did you have a good game?'
  6 I don't have coffee

## page 11

- He's got two brothers.
   He hasn't got a car.
   He's got three dogs.
   He's got a dictionary.
   He hasn't got long hair.
   He hasn't got any sisters.
- 3 1 Have they got a big garden? 2 Has Ann got a good job? 3 Has Bill got a big car? 4 Have they got a plane? 5 Have they got any horses?

# page 12

- 1 They weren't ready. 2 We're all here.
   3 I'm not a student. 4 Where's your house?
   5 She won't be late. 6 You've got my keys.
   7 I haven't got much time. 8 Franz doesn't live here.
- 2 1 Tom is late. 2 I will not have time.
  3 Anna is hungry. 4 He does not have a car.
  5 She has got two sisters. 6 She is right.
  7 Emma has got beautiful eyes. 8 There is a letter for you.
- 3 1 Is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing. 2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed. 3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late. 4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big. 5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university. 6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office. 7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee. 8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.
- 4 1 do 2 Does 3 does 4 Do 5 do 6 does 7 do 8 Does
- 5 1 there will be 2 ls there 3 There was 4 are there 5 there weren't
  - 6 Were there 7 There are 8 There won't be
  - 9 Was there 10 Will there be

### page 13

- 7 1 is 2 is 3 are 4 has 5 was 6 were not
  7 did not have 8 was 9 is 10 has 11 has
  12 is 13 is 14 is 15 has 16 does not
  have 17 has 18 is 19 has 20 has
- 8 1 true 2 false 3 true 4 true 5 false 6 true 7 false 8 false 9 false 10 true

## page 14

- 1 1 Where 2 I 3 Are 4 has 5 is 6 am 7 won't 8 am 9 is 10 is 11 have 12 Does 13 Have 14 Will you be 15 I'm not 16 How 17 have 18 will be 19 have 20 are
- 2 1 √, X, √, √ 2 X 3 X 4 √ 5 X 6 X 7 √ 8 X 9 √ 10 X
- 3 1 Is there a taxi outside? 2 Has Chris got a headache? 3 Joe doesn't have a car.
  4 Did Ann have a meeting yesterday?
  5 I didn't have coffee for breakfast.
  - 5 Tulunt nave conee for breaklast.
  - 6 Will there be an English lesson tomorrow?
  - 7 I'm not hungry. 8 Petra hasn't got a new car.
  - 9 Did she have a nice time at the party?
  - 10 Has the house got a big garden?
- 4 1 Is Rosemary from London? 2 Will we be early? 3 Was Sarah at home? 4 Does Karim have / Has Karim got a cold? 5 Is your car fast?
  6 Will the manager be in America? 7 Were Tim and Anna students? 8 What time will you have lunch today? 9 Will you be here tomorrow?
  10 Were those people American?

### page 16

- 1 + -s: cooks, drinks, lives, reads, runs, smokes, stands, starts, writes + -es: fetches, fixes, misses, pushes, touches, watches, wishes
- + -s: enjoys, plays, stays, tries
   -γ > -ιεs: copies, fries, marries, studies
- 3 1 Hive in that house. 2 Kim works in a bank.
  3 Claire plays the violin very badly. 4 Those children come from Scotland. 5 You look very young.

4 1 The boss 2 I 3 Bread 4 Andy
5 Sophy and Ian 6 You 7 Our cat
8 That child 9 All those buses 10 My father

### page 17

- 1 1 play 2 speaks 3 ask 4 goes 5 make 6 forget 7 listen 8 lives 9 watch 10 get
- 2 1 thinks; knows 2 studies 3 tries 4 wear
   5 washes 6 work 7 says 8 sits 9 watches
   10 want

## page 18

- 1 1 You do not speak very good Chinese.
  - 2 Bill / He does not play the guitar very well.
    - 3 We do not agree about holidays.
    - 4 George and Andrew do not live near me.
    - 5 My father / He does not write poetry.
  - 6 Barbara / She does not live in London.
  - 7 Henry / He does not like parties.
- 2 1 doesn't stop at Cardiff. 2 I don't like pop music. 3 He / Peter doesn't remember faces very well. 4 We don't know his wife. 5 She / Alice doesn't teach mathematics. 6 They / The children don't play hockey on Mondays. 7 They / The shops don't open on Sunday afternoons.
- 3 1 Our cat doesn't / does not like fish.
  - 2 Melinda doesn't / does not speak Russian.
  - 3 I don't / do not remember your phone number.
  - 4 Oranges don't / do not grow in Britain.
  - 5 The postman doesn't / does not come on Sundays.
  - 6 We don't / do not play much tennis.

## page 19

4 1 don't like 2 doesn't speak
3 don't remember 4 don't know
5 doesn't want 6 don't want 7 doesn't work
8 don't think

## page 20

1 1 Does 2 Do 3 Do 4 Does 5 Does 6 Do

- 2 1 Does the Oxford bus stop here?
  - 2 Do the teachers know her?
  - 3 Do you play the piano?
  - 4 Does John work in a restaurant?
  - 5 Does this train stop at York?
  - 6 Do we need more eggs?
  - 7 Does Fatima like parties?
  - 8 Does Peter speak Spanish well?
- 3 1 your children 2 the lesson 3 you4 the holiday 5 those women 6 you

## page 21

- 4 1 Where do 2 What does 3 When do4 Why does 5 How many ... does 6 How do
- 5 1 What do you want? 2 What does this word mean? 3 What time does the film start?
  4 How much do those shoes cost? 5 Why does she need money? 6 How does this camera work? 7 Where do you buy your meat?
  8 Who do you want to see?
- 6 1 How do you spell that? 2 What do you do?
  3 What does this word mean? / How do you pronounce this word? 4 What time does the train arrive? 5 How much does it cost / do they cost? 6 Do you know Anna? 7 How do you do? 8 What time does the film start?

## page 22

- 1 does 2 My cats 3 doesn't 4 stops
   5 do English people 6 open 7 your holiday start 8 play 9 That café 10 say
- 2 1 I don't like getting up early.
  - 2 Do you want something to drink?
  - 3 Dan plays football on Saturdays.
  - 4 Do you remember her phone number?
  - 5 That clock doesn't work.
  - 6 She often flies to Paris on business.
  - 7 It doesn't rain much here in summer.
  - 8 Do elephants eat meat?
  - 9 Does he think he can sing?
  - 10 We need a new car.

## page 23

- 1 1 are talking 2 is eating 3 is cooking
  - 4 am not enjoying 5 am reading
  - 6 is not raining 7 are not listening
  - 8 am feeling 9 is not going 10 are learning

- 2 cleaning, coming, dying, enjoying, going, living, making, playing, singing, starting, washing, writing
- 3 getting, feeling, putting, hitting, jumping, raining, robbing, shopping, shouting, sitting, slimming, dreaming, standing, talking, turning, answering, opening, visiting, forgetting

## page 24

- 1 1 The baby's crying again.
  - 2 It's snowing hard.
  - 3 You're looking very beautiful today.
  - 4 Your coffee's getting cold.
  - 5 I'm playing a lot of football this year.
  - 6 We're waiting for a phone call.
  - 7 Chris and Helen are spending a week in France.
- 2 1 She's washing 2 She's brushing
  - 3 She's listening 4 She's drinking
  - 5 She's reading 6 She's brushing
  - 7 She's reading 8 She's opening
  - 9 She's going

# page 25

- He's not / He isn't listening to me. 2 I'm not working today. 3 It's not / It isn't raining now.
   She's not / She isn't wearing a coat. 5 John's students aren't learning very much. 6 We're not / We aren't enjoying this film. 7 You're not / You aren't eating much these days. 8 I'm not expecting to pass the exam. 9 My computer's not / My computer isn't working. 10 I'm not playing much tennis these days.
- 2 1 he's not / he isn't playing well today.
  - 2 they're not / they aren't living in London.
  - 3 it's not / it isn't running well.
  - 4 I'm not enjoying it.
  - 5 the sun's not / the sun isn't shining.
  - 6 I'm not studying at university.
  - 7 she's not / she isn't singing just now.
  - 8 I'm not sleeping well these days.
  - 9 we're not / we aren't having a good time.
  - 10 I'm not crying because of you.
- 3 1 The train's not/ The train isn't moving. 2 The children aren't listening. 3 It's not / It isn't raining. 4 The cat's not / The cat isn't eating.
  5 John's not / John isn't working.

- Are you waiting for somebody? 2 Is your boyfriend enjoying the concert? 3 Are those men taking our car? 4 Are you talking to me?
   Is it snowing? 6 Are we going too fast?
   Is your computer working? 8 Are you reading that newspaper? 9 Is the bus coming?
   Is somebody cooking lunch?
- 2 1 '... what is he writing?' 2 'Why is it stopping?'
  3 'What are they studying?' 4 'What game are they playing?' 5 '... Where are you going?'
  6 'Who is she telephoning?' 7 'What is it/he/she eating?' 8 'Where is she working?' 9 'What are you cooking?' 10 'Where are you living?'
- 3 1 Where are you going now? 2 Why is Anne crying? 3 What/Why is he writing? 4 Who/ Why are you telephoning? 5 Where are they living? 6 Where/Why is your brother studying English? 7 What/Why are you cooking?
  8 Why are those people looking at me? 9 What is the dog eating? 10 What are the children doing?

### page 27

- 1 1 Are you getting up?
  - 2 It's raining again.
  - 3 You aren't / You're not listening.
  - 4 Where are you going?
  - 5 Am I talking too fast?
  - 6 I'm not enjoying this film.
  - 7 Why are those people laughing at me?
  - 8 I'm not cooking this for you.
  - 9 What are you drinking?
  - 10 The baby's eating the newspaper.
- 2 1 Peter's trying to save money.
  - 2 Why are those children crying?
  - 3 Are your friends playing football this afternoon?
  - 4 She's not / She isn't looking very well today.
  - 5 I think she's making a big mistake.
  - 6 You're not / You aren't wearing your usual glasses.
  - 7 I'm starting to learn Spanish.
  - 8 Is the 10.15 train running today?
  - 9 David's not / David isn't living with his parents any more.
  - 10 What are you doing in my room?

3 1 is snowing 2 is looking 3 is wearing
4 is not wearing 5 is walking 6 are looking
7 are trying 8 are stopping 9 is returning
10 is kissing 11 is (he) saying

### page 28

- SIMPLE PRESENT: nearly always, on Fridays, very often, when I'm tired PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: just now, these days, this afternoon, today
- 2 1 eat; is not eating grass.
  - 2 fly; plane is not flying.
    - 3 rains; it is not raining.
    - 4 works; he/John is not working hard
    - 5 plays; she/Ann is not playing tennis
    - 6 speaks; he/John is not speaking English now.
  - 7 drives; he/Bill is not driving a bus now.
  - 8 sells; this shop / it is not selling books now.
  - 9 plays; is not playing the piano now.
  - 10 writes; he/Simon is not writing poetry now.
  - 11 chase; dog is not chasing cats now.

### page 29

- 3 1 is she working 2 Does it rain 3 don't speak
  4 is getting 5 Do you play 6 are you writing
  7 She's coming 8 I'm going 9 boils
  - 10 Is that water boiling 11 Is the bus coming
  - 12 talks; never listens. 13 He writes
  - 14 it's getting 15 do you see your parents
  - 16 He's coming back 17 Does John drive
  - 18 'm waiting for 19 are you looking
  - 20 do you like.

- 1 What does this word mean? 2 Rob doesn't want to see the doctor. 3 She loves me.
  4 Peter seems tired. 5 We don't need a new car.
  6 Do you know that man? 7 I hate this cold weather. 8 Do you like this music? 9 I don't remember her address. 10 Do you understand this letter?
- 2 1 don't understand. 2 prefer 3 like
  4 Do (we) need 5 doesn't matter.
  6 hope 7 don't remember 8 Do (you) believe
  9 don't know 10 Do (you) think 11 see.
  12 do (you) mean 13 love 14 hates

3 1 'I don't understand.' 2 'I see.' 3 'I hope not.'
4 'I think so.' 5 'I don't think so.' 6 'I don't know.' 7 'I know.' 8 'It depends.' 9 'It doesn't matter.' 10 'I don't remember.' 11 'I don't mind.' 12 'I hope so.' 13 'I don't think so.' 14 'I hope not.' 15 'I think so.'

### page 32

- 1 1 What 2 When 3 Where 4 How many 5 What time 6 How much 7 Why 8 How
- 2 1 What language do Brazilians speak? 2 Felix drives fast cars. 3 Annemarie doesn't read newspapers. 4 My two brothers both work in London. 5 Dogs don't eat vegetables. 6 Maria doesn't play the piano. 7 Does Peter work at weekends? 8 My husband cooks very well.
  9 Roger wants to work with animals. 10 Does this bus go to Belfast?
- 4 1 ✓ 2 × 3 × 4 ✓ 5 × 6 × 7 × 8 ✓ 9 ✓ 10 ✓

#### page 33

- 5 1 looks after 2 gets up 3 has 4 goes
  5 likes 6 likes 7 does not like 8 lives
  9 works 10 does not want 11 is not working
  12 is sitting 13 is reading 14 is crying
  15 want 16 do not want 17 does not know
  18 loves 19 is doing 20 do you think
- 6 (possible answers)

Cathy is wearing a black skirt, a red blouse, a green cardigan, black boots and a raincoat. She is not wearing a hat. Sandra is wearing a long green dress, a black coat, black shoes, and a black hat. She is not wearing glasses. David is wearing a blue shirt with a pink tie, a grey suit, a black belt, black shoes and glasses. He is not wearing a coat. (Other answers are possible.)

### page 34

1 catches, costs, does, enjoys, flies, has, hopes, knows, lives, mixes, passes, plays, stands, teaches, thinks, tries, washes, wears, wishes, works

- 2 beginning, crying, dying, enjoying, flying, forgetting, getting, happening, holding, hoping, learning, looking, making, opening, playing, sending, sitting, sleeping, stopping, taking
- 3 1 Do you work in London? 2 I don't like pop music. 3 Where does James live? 4 Do you want some coffee? 5 It rains a lot here.
  / It rains here a lot. 6 I wash my car every week. 7 Luke doesn't speak Spanish. 8 Do all your friends play football? 9 I don't wear a suit to the office. 10 How do you make spaghetti carbonara?
- 1 My sister is travelling in Spain. 2 Alice isn't looking very happy. 3 Why is the baby crying?
  4 Are you waiting for the bus? 5 I'm not playing much tennis these days. 6 Tim's wearing a very nice raincoat. 7 Are you talking about me? 8 You're walking too slowly. 9 What's that child eating? 10 I'm not enjoying this concert.
- 5 1 ✓ 2 × 3 × 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 × 7 ✓ 8 × 9 ✓ 10 ✓ 11 ✓ 12 × 13 ✓ 14 × 15 ×

### page 36

- The woman is going to have breakfast. 2 He is going to read a letter. 3 She is going to play the piano. 4 The cars are going to crash.
   He is going to drink coffee. 6 The ball is going to break the window.
- 2 1 Is Jane going to change her school?2 Where are you going to put that picture?
  - 3 What are you going to buy for Felix's birthday?
  - 4 Is Ethan going to play football tomorrow?
  - 5 When are you going to stop smoking?
  - 6 Is Alice going to go to university?
  - 7 Are you going to phone the police?
  - 8 Is your mother going to come and stay with us?
  - 9 Is she going to buy that coat?
  - 10 What are you going to tell the boss?

- 3 1 I'm going to stay in a nice hotel.
  - 2 I'm going to swim a lot.
  - 3 I'm not going to do any work.
  - 4 I'm going to take photos.
  - 5 I'm not going to read English newspapers.
  - 6 I'm going to learn some Italian.
  - 7 I'm not going to write postcards.
  - 8 I'm not going to visit museums.

- 4 1 How are you going to get to London?
  - 2 When is Monica going to come and see us?
  - 3 It's not going to snow.
  - 4 I'm going to cook fish for lunch.
  - 5 When are you going to see the doctor?
  - 6 Angela is going to marry her secretary.
  - 7 Is John going to call this evening?
  - 8 I'm going to stop playing poker.
  - 9 Everybody is going to watch the football match.
  - 10 Sally is not going to get the job.

- 1 1 I'm not playing baseball tomorrow.
  - 2 I'm not going to Canada next year.
  - 3 We're staying with Paul and Lucy next week.
  - 4 Are you working this evening?
  - 5 What time are your friends arriving?
  - 6 My company is moving to Scotland next year.
  - 7 How is your mother travelling to France?
  - 8 I'm seeing the dentist on Thursday.
  - 9 I'm going to a concert tonight.
  - 10 Gary is not marrying Cathy after all.
- 2 1 No, he's seeing John Parker on Sunday morning.
  - 2 No, he's going to the Birmingham office by train.
  - 3 No, he's having lunch with Stewart on Tuesday.
  - 4 No, he's going to the theatre on Wednesday evening.
  - 5 No, his new secretary is starting on Thursday. OR No, he's going to Berlin on Friday.
  - 6 No, he's going to Phil and Monica's wedding on Saturday.
- 3 1 Where are you going? 2 Why are you going there? 3 How long are you staying? 4 Are you staying in one place? 5 Are you staying with friends? 6 How are you travelling?
  7 Are you taking the dog? 8 Who is going with you? 9 When are you coming back?

#### page 39

 1 The class will begin at 9.30. 2 They'll be home soon. 3 The examination will be difficult.
 4 We'll walk to the party. 5 She will not speak to me. 6 John will answer your questions.
 7 Emily will be ten years old on Sunday.

- 2 1 What time will tomorrow evening's concert start? 2 When will you and the family get back from Paris? 3 Will you be here tomorrow? 4 Will you and your mother be here tomorrow? 5 Where will you be this evening? 6 Will the children have enough money for the journey? 7 How soon will you know the answer?
- 3 1 won't be; will she be 2 won't have; Will you have 3 won't find; will I find 4 won't go; will they go? 5 won't get; will he get? 6 won't be; will it be 7 won't know; will you know

### page 40

- 1 'll wash 2 'll do 3 won't start 4 'll tell
   5 won't stop 6 'll go shopping. 7 'll help
   8 won't open.
- **3** 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 B

### page 41

- 1 1 The next lesson starts at 2.00.
  - 2 This term ends on March 12th.
  - 3 When does the concert finish?
  - 4 We don't have a lesson next Thursday.
  - 5 Does this bus stop at the post office?
  - 6 The play starts at 8.00.
  - 7 What time do you arrive in Rome?
  - 8 The banks close at 3.00 tomorrow.
  - 9 The next train stops at every station.
  - 10 When do the school holidays start?
- 2 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 'm not / won't be; will see 5 will study; stops 6 will drive; find 7 marries; will change 8 Will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) listen 10 will phone; get

- 1 1 He's going to write a letter.
  - 2 She's going to play the violin.
  - 3 They're going to get on a bus.
  - 4 The car's going to crash.
  - 5 He's going to sing.
  - 6 He's going to go skiing.
  - 7 He's going to start running.
  - 8 He's going to go swimming.
  - 9 They're going to have dinner.
  - 10 She's going to drink a glass of water.

- 2 1 She's seeing her bank manager on Monday.
  - 2 She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday.
  - 3 She's seeing her dentist on Wednesday.
  - 4 She's seeing her accountant on Thursday.
  - 5 She's seeing her solicitor on Friday.
- 3 1 'll start 2 will change 3 won't snow 4 'll go to sleep soon. 5 'll tell

- 4 1 I'm going to stop smoking. 2 I'm seeing Andrew tonight. 3 It's not going to rain. 4 Peter's going to marry his boss. 5 Oliver won't pass his exams. 6 You'll like this film. 7 What time does the bus from London arrive? 8 I'm not using the car tomorrow. 9 I'm going to cook steak this evening. 10 How are you going to travel to Ireland? 11 I'll phone you when I get home. 12 Are you working on Saturday? 13 Will you need a room for the night? 14 Are you going to write to your father? 15 We won't have enough money for a good holiday. 16 Where will I find the key? 17 Will you go to university after you leave school? 18 John and Sylvia are staying with us next week. 19 When are you going to have a haircut? 20 Are you going to get up soon?
- 5 1 old house 2 'll come to 3 bridge
  4 'll come to 5 'll see 6 house
  7 'll recognise 8 door 9 apple trees.
  10 'll find 11 key 12 'll have 13 great time.

### page 44

- 1 1 I'll 2 She'll 3 It won't 4 They're going to 5 They'll 6 They won't 7 She's not going to on She isn't going to 8 I'm not going to
- 2 1 × 2 ✓ 3 × 4 × 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ×
- 3 1 The concert is tonight. 2 Will 1 3 will move
  4 are not 5 am going 6 won't 7 l'll phone
  ... I get 8 will give 9 are you 10 will the meeting be

- Is Melanie seeing Martin on Monday? Tessa isn't / Tessa's not seeing Tom on Tuesday.
  - 2 Is Mr Andrews going to study Arabic in Algiers? Mrs Roberts is not going to study Russian in Rome.
  - 3 Will Derek cook duck for Dorothy? Sally won't cook spaghetti for Sam.
  - 4 Is Harry going to take a holiday in Hungary? Steve is not going to study in Siberia.
  - 5 Is Oliver travelling to Oslo in October? Monica is not travelling to Madagascar in May.

### page 46

4

- arrived, changed, cooked, hated, lived, passed, shaved, watched
- 2 stayed, studied, cried, annoyed, carried, hurried, prayed
- 3 shopped, rained, started, robbed, slimmed, jumped, shouted, slipped, fitted, turned, visited, regretted, developed, galloped, opened, answered, referred

### page 47

- 1 1 I forgot my girlfriend's birthday on Monday.
  - 2 That's a really good book. I read it last year.
  - 3 When we were children we always spoke French at home.
  - 4 I didn't like my piano teacher, so I stopped my lessons last week.
  - 5 Where did you learn to speak Spanish so well?
- 3 1 stood 2 heard 3 opened 4 came
  5 did not see 6 said 7 took 8 gave
  9 held 10 did not read 11 said
  12 did not speak 13 wrote 14 ran 15 turned

- 1 1 worked 2 know 3 feel 4 came 5 see 6 write 7 arrive 8 like
- 2 1 We didn't speak Arabic. 2 He / My uncle didn't teach science. 3 He / Bill didn't cook the fish. 4 I didn't take my father (to the mountains). 5 We didn't tell the police everything. 6 I didn't write to my brother.
  7 I didn't like the music. 8 We didn't know her phone number.

3 1 he changed his shirt. 2 she didn't answer the others. 3 he didn't go to her house.
4 I brought some chocolates. 5 she bought a very nice dress. 6 I didn't eat the meat.
7 we didn't keep the letters. 8 they spoke German. 9 he didn't shave at weekends.

### page 49

- 1 bring 2 start 3 saw 4 began 5 break
   6 leave 7 speak 8 keep 9 learnt
   10 forgot 11 come 12 say
- 2 1 did she remember it? 2 did you pay the others? 3 did you like the film? 4 did he play well? 5 did you give them any money?
  6 did she write to her mother? 7 did he learn English? 8 did she get up early enough?
  9 did you shut the front door? 10 did they take the dog? 11 did she feel OK yesterday?
  12 did he forget the address as well?
- 3 1 Where did he go? 2 What did he buy?
  3 Who did she marry? 4 What did she break?
  5 Where did he stay? 6 What did he study?
  7 Where did he study? 8 What did she write?
  9 Who did she hear? 10 What did he understand? 11 What did she forget?
  12 Where did she go (on holiday)?

### page 50

- 1 I learnt a lot of Latin. 2 I didn't remember to buy the milk. 3 I didn't speak to her mother.
   4 'Did he phone this morning?' 5 I took the train. 6 did you go to Malaysia? 7 it didn't stop at Glasgow. 8 'They saw two films.'
   9 'Did you eat my chocolates too?'
   10 I didn't study enough.
- 2 1 Where did they go? 2 Why did they give him it / a bicycle? 3 What did she say? 4 What did they buy? 5 Who did you invite? 6 What did she drop? 7 Who did he beat? 8 Why did he write (to the police)? 9 Who did she ask (to marry her)? 10 When did he live there / in India?
- 3 did you remember

#### page 51

1 were dancing. 2 was cooking supper.
 3 was driving home. 4 was not watching TV.

2 1 What was she writing? 2 Where was he shopping? 3 What was she cooking?
4 Why were they crying? 5 Were they driving to Scotland?

### page 52

- 1 was having 2 watched 3 was watching
  4 worked 5 were studying 6 drove
  7 walked 8 was working 9 studied 10 was talking
- 2 1 we were playing cards. 2 he wasn't talking.
  3 it was snowing. 4 she wasn't walking
  - 5 were you doing 6 were they talking about me?
  - 7 were you driving 8 wasn't expecting
  - 9 was doing 10 weren't running

### page 53

- 3 1 was reading; jumped 2 met; was travelling
  3 broke; was skiing 4 was shopping; stole
  5 phoned; was working 6 stopped; was driving
  7 heard; was having 8 went; was watching
  9 was washing up; broke 10 cut; was working
  11 left; was snowing 12 opened; were talking
  13 rang; was cooking 14 heard; was working
- 1 X 2 J 3 J 4 X 5 X 6 J 7 J 8 X
- 5 1 were singing. 2 were waiting 3 opened
  4 drove 5 turned 6 started 7 turned
  8 was passing 9 ran 10 pulled

- 1 1 What did all those people want?
  - 2 Did all your brothers send you birthday cards?
    - 3 The baby ate some toothpaste this morning.
  - 4 The teacher didn't answer my question.
  - 5 I lost my keys again yesterday.
  - 6 Did anybody phone while I was out?
  - 7 The Prime Minister told us that things were getting better.
  - 8 My friends and I did not believe the Prime Minister.
  - 9 Richard didn't give me a birthday present.
  - 10 What time did you get up today?
- 2 1 we were watching TV. 2 he wasn't reading (it). 3 were they speaking English? 4 what were the children doing? 5 I wasn't expecting her. 6 I don't know what I was doing 7 it was snowing again. 8 the trains were not running.
  9 How fast were you driving 10 he was standing

- 3 1 went; was raining. 2 read
  3 Did (you) watch 4 walked; were talking
  5 was swimming 6 looked; was talking; was listening. 7 rang; was having 8 was lying
  9 did (you) go 10 met; was travelling
- 4 1 looked 2 was raining 3 washed
  4 got dressed 5 gave 6 made 7 didn't eat
  8 went 9 waited 10 didn't arrive
  11 walked 12 was walking 13 arrived
  14 was working 15 was talking
  16 came in 17 told 18 didn't make
  19 sat down 20 started
- 5 1 Mozart composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.
  - 2 Leonardo da Vinci painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
  - 3 Shah Jehan built the Taj Mahal.
  - 4 Alfred Nobel invented dynamite.
  - 5 Sergei Eisenstein directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.
  - 6 Gustave Eiffel built the Eiffel Tower.
  - 7 Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay first climbed Mount Everest.
  - 8 Marie Curie discovered radium.
  - 9 John Lennon and Paul McCartney wrote the song 'Help'.
  - 10 The novelist Jane Austen wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'.

### page 56

- became, began, broke, brought, bought, changed, cried, developed, felt, went, hoped, left, liked, paid, started, stayed, stopped, watched, wrote, worked
- 2 1 stopped 2 visited 3 making 4 feel
   5 spoke 6 tell 7 like 8 see 9 phoned;
   was going 10 played
- 3 1 worked 2 was working; met
  3 lost; was shopping 4 listened to
  5 was cleaning; stopped 6 burnt; was cooking
  7 was reading; came 8 lived
  - 9 was studying; got 10 caught; was running
- 4 1 drove 2 I studied 3 were you crying
  4 beginning; went 5 paid; left
  - 6 shopping; stole 7 rang 8 opened
  - 9 did you get up 10 I lost; was walking

### page 58

2 1 She has forgotten my address. 2 I have made a mistake. 3 You have not shut the door.
4 Alan has worked very hard. 5 I have not heard from Mary. 6 John has not learnt anything. 7 I have broken a cup. 8 We have bought a new car. 9 The rain has stopped.
10 I have not seen a newspaper today.

### page 59

- 3 1 Have we paid? 2 Has Tim phoned?
  3 Have you heard the news? 4 Have the dogs come back? 5 What has Barbara told the police?
  6 Why have Andy and Sarah brought the children? 7 What have you said to Mike?
  8 Why has everybody stopped talking? 9 Have you seen Martin anywhere? 10 Who has taken my coat? 11 What has happened? 12 Where has my brother gone? 13 Why has Peter closed the window? 14 Has Judith passed her exam?
  15 Has the postman come?
- 4 Have you seen a lady without me? No, sorry, I haven't seen your ball. OR No, I haven't seen your ball, sorry.

#### page 60

- 1
   1
   PROBABLY NOT
   2
   YES
   3
   DON'T KNOW
   4
   YES

   5
   DON'T KNOW
   6
   YES
   7
   NO
   8
   DON'T KNOW
   9
   DON'T KNOW
   10
   NO
- 2 1 never travelled 2 studied 3 has lost
  4 met 5 've bought 6 left 7 've told
  8 've made 9 've forgotten 10 built

- 3 1 has sent 2 have bought 3 have cut
  4 has stopped 5 has given 6 have sold
  7 have eaten 8 have found 9 have passed
  10 have broken
- 1 ... because she has lost her keys. 2 ... 'Yes, his girlfriend has left him.' 3 ... 'Sorry. I know him, but I have forgotten his name.' 4 ... 'No, I've seen it.' 5 ... 'I think she's gone to Ireland.'
  6 ... 'Sorry, I've lent it to Maria.' 7 Luis has found a new job. He's working in a bank now.
  8 ... 'We can't. It's closed.' 9 ... 'Yes, she's changed her hair-style.'

5 1 gone 2 been 3 been 4 gone 5 been 6 gone

#### page 62

- 1 1 a few days ago, last week, then, yesterday, when, in 1990
- 2 1 × 2 × 3 ✓ 4 × 5 × 6 × 7 ✓ 8 × 9 ✓ 10 × 11 × 12 ✓ 13 × 14 × 15 ✓ 16 ×
- 3 1 Have you ever written a poem?
  - 2 I have never climbed a mountain.
  - 3 Has Charles spoken to you today?
  - 4 Clara hasn't told me her new address.
  - 5 Have you ever lost your memory?
  - 6 We haven't played football this year.
  - 7 Alex has never written to me.
  - 8 Have you seen Henry this week?
  - 9 My father has never driven a car.
  - 10 Has the cat had anything to eat today?
  - 11 Have you finished those letters?
  - 12 I haven't paid for the lessons this month.
  - 13 Sally has had a baby.
  - 14 Lucy hasn't phoned today.
  - 15 Has Corinne come back from India?
  - 16 It has stopped raining.
  - 17 Has the postman come this morning?
  - 18 We have eaten everything in the house.

#### page 63

- 4 1 Joe has changed his job twice this year.
  - 2 How often has she asked you for money?
  - 3 I have often tried to stop smoking.
  - 4 Tom has phoned me six times this week.
  - 5 My father has met the Prime Minister twice.
  - 6 The police have questioned Annie more than once.
  - 7 I have only played rugby once in my life.
  - 8 My brother has often helped me in my work.
  - 9 Nobody has ever understood her.
  - 10 I have never wanted to go to the moon.
- 5 1 Have you ever been 2 have never read
  3 has won 4 won 5 never went 6 this year
  7 stayed 8 yesterday 9 have never seen
  10 did John phone

#### page 64

- 1 have already paid. 2 has already left.
   3 has already got up. 4 have already cooked chicken. 5 has already finished.
- **2** 1 Has my sister phoned yet?
  - 2 the postman hasn't come yet.
  - 3 Bill hasn't found a job yet.
  - 4 Have you finished that book yet?
  - 5 I haven't started work yet.
  - 6 Have you had supper yet?
- 3 1 I have just looked at the floor.
  - 2 I have just thought about my home.
  - 3 I have just moved my feet.
  - 4 I have just put my hand on my head.
- She has already written three letters.
  - 2 She has just telephoned her mother.
  - 3 She has already cleaned the kitchen.
  - 4 She hasn't read the newspaper yet.
  - 5 She has just made some toast.
  - 6 She hasn't listened to the radio yet.

### page 65

- 1 1 for 2 since 3 since 4 for 5 since 6 since 7 for 8 for 9 since 10 since 11 for 12 since
- 4 1 How long have you known Mike?
  - 2 How long have you been a student?
  - 3 How long has your brother been a doctor?
  - 4 How long has Andrew had that dog?
  - 5 How long have David and Elizabeth been together?

- 1 1 Mary has been painting the house for four days.
  - 2 We have been driving for four hours.
  - 3 Anna has been working at Smiths since January.
  - 4 Joseph has been building boats for 20 years.
  - 5 We've been waiting for the bus since 8.30.
  - 6 Prices have been going up since last year.
  - 7 We've been camping since July 20th.
  - 8 My father has been teaching for 40 years.
  - 9 It's been snowing for 12 hours.
  - 10 The team has/have been training together for three months.

- 3 1 ✓ 2 × 3 ✓ 4 × 5 ✓ 6 × 7 × 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ✓
- 4 1 She has been playing the piano. 2 He has been playing football. 3 She has been teaching.
  4 He has been writing letters. 5 She has been swimming.

#### page 68

- 1 had worked 2 had not rained. 3 had happened? 4 had seen 5 had not got 6 had they been? 7 had paid 8 had not done
- 2 1 understood; had got 2 didn't play; had hurt
   3 had looked; started 4 had never travelled; went
   5 arrived; had already closed 6 didn't have; had paid

#### page 69

- 3 1 got; had eaten 2 met; had been
  3 started; remembered; had not closed
  4 found; had not opened 5 had already told; bought
- 4 1 When George had eaten all the chocolate biscuits, he started eating the lemon ones.
  - 2 When I had turned off the lights in the office, I locked the door and left.
  - 3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper when she had read it.
  - 4 Mark had a long hot shower when he had done his exercises.
  - 5 When Barry had phoned his mother with the good news, he went to bed.

### page 70

- 1 1 Have all those people gone home?
  - 2 Peter hasn't told us everything.
  - 3 Has the postman been?
  - 4 Has Pat spoken to Robert?
  - 5 Tim and Angela haven't bought a house.
  - 6 Has Emma's boyfriend forgotten her birthday?
  - 7 Has Monica been working in London all this week?
  - 8 I haven't phoned Joseph.
  - 9 Have Robert and Sally moved to Ireland?
  - 10 We haven't been working all day.

- 2 1 YES 2 WE DON'T KNOW 3 YES 4 WE DON'T KNOW 5 WE DON'T KNOW 6 YES 7 NO 8 YES
  - 9 WE DON'T KNOW 10 YES
- 3 1 Why has everybody already gone home?
  - 2 How long has Anna been learning Chinese?
  - 3 Why did George close the door?
  - 4 Where have Sue and Jeanne gone on holiday?
  - 5 When did the President visit Russia?
  - 6 How long has Jan's father been travelling in Wales?
  - 7 What has happened?
  - 8 How long has Joe been working in Spain?
  - 9 Where did Mary study medicine?
  - 10 Who has taken my/your bicycle?

#### page 71

- 4 1 saw; knew; had met 2 did not have; had bought 3 had already started; arrived.
  4 broke; had forgotten 5 met
  6 forgot; had said. 7 had gone
  8 had finished; went 9 found; had bought
  10 closed; had left
- 5 1 had 2 spent 3 lost 4 did not pass
  5 happened 6 has been 7 has changed
  8 have bought 9 has opened
  10 have passed
- 6 1 swept 2 made 3 polished 4 washed
  5 ironed 6 washed up 7 put 8 tidied
  9 did 10 Have you swept 11 Have you made
  12 Have you polished 13 Have you washed
  14 ironed 15 Have you washed up
  16 put 17 Have you tidied 18 haven't done

- 1 broken, brought, come, drunk, eaten, forgotten, given, left, made, stood, stayed, stopped, taken, thought, tried
- 2 1 began 2 broken 3 come 4 knew
  5 drunk 6 ate 7 fell 8 forgotten
  9 given 10 taken
- 3 1 We've known; for 2 I've been working
  3 has gone; did she leave? 4 has already lost;
  lost 5 Have you ever driven 6 has never had
  7 Have you seen 8 started; eight weeks ago
  9 I've been; for 10 have you known

- 4 1 did (Mike) lose 2 has been eating
  - 3 has just had 4 has been snowing
  - 5 studied 6 have just passed
  - 7 have you known 8 Have (you ever) written
  - 9 lost 10 have not started

- 1 1 to be 2 be 3 pass 4 to get 5 be 6 to speak
- 2 1 likes 2 may 3 must 4 works 5 should 6 seems 7 might 8 wants
- 3 1 Can he ski? 2 Can he play poker?
  3 She mustn't sing. 4 He may not go this week.
  5 She can't visit us on Sunday.

#### page 75

- 1 must write 2 must hurry 3 must stop
   4 must pay 5 must study 6 must speak
   7 must go
- 2 1 ... I must phone her tonight.
  - 2 ... I must go back and get it.
  - 3 ... My mother made it. You must have a piece.
  - 4 ... You must see it. It's a cinema classic.
  - 5 ... I must get up early.
  - 6 ... You must give me your phone number.
  - 7 ... We must go for a walk this weekend.
- 3 1 Must I pay any money? 2 Must I come to this room? 3 Must I write in ink? 4 Must I sit in my usual place? 5 Must I answer every question?
  6 Must I work without a dictionary?
  - 7 Must I stay if I finish early?

### page 76

- 1 has to wear 2 have to read 3 has to like
   4 have to have 5 has to be 6 have to do
   7 has to have 8 has to know 9 have to know
   10 has to practise
- 2 1 ... 'Do we have to finish it today?' 2 ... 'Do I/ we have to stay until the end?' 3 ... 'Do they have to speak Spanish?' 4 ... 'Do I have to tell you now?' 5 ... 'So do I have to babysit?'
  6 ... 'Do I have to pay it all now?' 7 ... 'Does he have to travel a lot?'

### page 77

- You mustn't wash 2 You mustn't play
   You mustn't let 4 You mustn't smoke
   You mustn't play 6 You mustn't make
- 2 1 You don't have to make breakfast for me; I'll just have coffee. 2 You don't have to make lunch for me; I'll have lunch in the canteen. 3 You don't have to drive me to the station; I can walk.
  4 You don't have to give me your newspaper; I'll buy The Times at the station. 5 You don't have to post those letters; Cathy's going to the post office. 6 You don't have to speak French; everybody here understands English.
- 3 1 mustn't 2 don't have to 3 mustn't
  4 don't have to 5 don't have to 6 mustn't
  7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 don't have to
  10 mustn't 11 mustn't 12 don't have to

### page 78

- He didn't have to learn Russian. 2 He had to learn maths. 3 He didn't have to learn music.
   He had to play football. 5 He didn't have to write poems. 6 He had to write stories.
- 2 1 Did Adam have to pay for his lessons? 2 Did Tina have to take an exam last year? 3 Did Joe and Sue have to wait a long time for a train?
  4 Did you have to show your passport at the airport? 5 Did the children have to walk home?
  6 Did Peter have to cook supper?
- 3 1 'Il have to get 2 won't have to go
  3 Will (you) have to learn 4 'Il have to play
  5 'Il have to ask 6 won't have to work
  7 Will (she) have to get 8 'Il have to tell

### page 79

- 1 should keep 2 should learn
   3 shouldn't believe 4 should eat
   5 shouldn't smoke 6 should tell 7 shouldn't
   play 8 shouldn't read 9 shouldn't drive
   10 should(n't) (always) say
- 2 1 'What time should I arrive?' 2 Who should I phone 3 'What should I wear?' 4 'Where should I sit?' 5 Where should I put
  6 What time should I wake

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

3 1 must 2 should/must 3 should 4 must 5 must 6 must 7 should

#### page 80

- He can't play tennis, but he can play baseball.
   He can play the piano, but he can't play the violin.
  - 3 He can't remember names, but he can remember faces.
  - 4 He can eat oranges, but he can't eat cherries.
- 2 1 Can he cook? 2 Can she speak Spanish?
  3 How much can they pay? 4 Can you drive a bus? 5 Can you wear red? 6 Can you see the sea? 7 Can you read music? 8 What can he do? 9 Can you eat butter? 10 Can she talk?

### page 81

- 1 1 could name 2 could count 3 could read 4 could not write 5 could tell 6 could remember 7 could not walk
- 3 1 Little Tim will be able to talk soon.2 I will be able to pay you next week.
  - 3 I hope that I will be able to go to America one day.
  - 4 The doctor will be able to see you tomorrow.
  - 5 We will be able to buy a car next year.

#### page 82

- 1 It may not rain. 2 We may buy a car.
   3 Joe may not be at home. 4 Anna may need help. 5 The baby may be hungry. 6 I may not change my job. 7 She may be married.
   8 He may not want to talk to you. 9 You may not be right. 10 I may not be here tomorrow.
- 2 1 ... 'Perhaps. I may not have enough money.'
  - 2 ... 'Not sure. They may stay at home.'
  - 3 ... 'It's early. He may not be out of bed yet.
  - 4 ... 'Yes. I think it may snow.'
  - 5 ... 'We may go round to Sophie's place.'
  - 6 ... 'No. I may decide to study physics.'
  - 7 ... 'I don't know. I may give him a sweater.'

#### page 83

3 1 may not 2 can't 3 may not 4 can't
5 can't 6 may not 7 may not 8 may not
9 can't 10 may not

- 4 1 might find 2 might send 3 might fall4 might make 5 might buy
- 5 1 might not finish 2 might miss
  3 might give 4 might not believe
  5 might not pass 6 might not know
  7 might be 8 might have to 9 might not have 10 might not

#### page 84

- 1 1 Can I have a glass of water (, please)?
  - 2 Can I use your pencil (, please)?
  - 3 Can I have some more coffee (, please)?
  - 4 Can I put my coat here (, please)?
  - 5 Can I have some bread (, please)?
  - 6 Can I look at those photos (, please)?
- 2 1 Could I use your calculator, please?
  - 2 Could I leave early today, please?
  - 3 Could I take your photo, please?
  - 4 Could I borrow your newspaper, please?
  - 5 Could I turn on the TV, please?
  - 6 Could I open a window, please?
- 3 1 The children can play in the garden.
  - 2 Tell the boys that they can eat the cake in the kitchen.
  - 3 If you're cold, you can turn on the heating.
  - 4 If you're bored, you can watch television.
  - 5 Only teachers can park in this car park.

### page 85

- 4 1 You can't smoke here. 2 You can't take photos here. 3 You can't cycle here.
  4 You can't use mobile phones here.
- 1 Can I make a cup of tea for you / make you a cup of tea?
   2 Can I help you?
   3 Can I drive you to the station?
   4 Can I get some aspirins for you / get you some aspirins?
- 6 1 may not talk 2 may not leave 3 may use
  4 may take 5 may leave 6 may use
  7 may do

### page 86

1 1 pass 2 clean 3 tell 4 drive 5 hold 6 babysit 7 lend 8 put 9 speak/drive 10 wait

- 2 1 Can you open the door?
  - 2 Could you give me an envelope?
  - 3 Can you pass me the sugar?
  - 4 Could you watch my children for a minute?
  - 5 Could you tell me the time?
  - 6 Could you possibly change some dollars for me?
  - 7 Can you wait outside?
  - 8 Could you possibly translate this letter for me?
  - 9 Can you come back tomorrow?
  - 10 Could you say it in English?
- 3 'Miss Ellis, could you come in here and pass me my coffee?'

- 1 What shall I buy for Sandra's birthday?
   2 When shall I phone you? 3 Shall I pay now?
   4 Shall I clean the bathroom? 5 How many tickets shall I buy? 6 Where shall I leave the car?
   7 What time shall I come this evening?
   8 Shall I shut the windows? 9 When shall I go shopping? 10 Shall I get your coat?
- 2 1 Shall we go out this evening? 2 Shall we have a game of cards? 3 How shall we travel to London? 4 What shall we do at the weekend?
  5 Where shall we go on holiday? 6 Shall we look for a hotel? 7 What time shall we meet Peter? 8 How much bread shall we buy?
  9 Shall we have a party? 10 When shall we have the next meeting?
- 3 1 Shall | post your letters? 2 Shall | do your shopping? 3 Shall | make your bed? 4 Shall | read to you? 5 Shall | drive you to the station?
  6 Shall | make you a cup of tea? 7 Shall | clean your car? 8 Shall | phone your secretary?
  9 Shall | cut your hair? 10 Shall | bring you an aspirin?

#### page 88

- 1 I'd like a black T-shirt, please. 2 Would you like an aspirin? 3 Would you like the newspaper? 4 I'd like an ice cream, please.
   5 Would you like some more toast?
   6 I'd like a receipt, please.
- 3 1 Would 2 Yes, please. 3 like 4 Would
  5 'd like 6 Yes, I do. 7 would like 8 don't
  9 wouldn't 10 'd like.

### page 89

- 1 1 Most people used to travel on foot or on horses.
  - 2 Most people didn't use to go to school.
  - 3 Most people didn't use to learn to read.
  - 4 Most people used to cook on wood fires.
  - 5 Most people didn't use to live very long.
  - 6 Most people used to work very long hours.
- 2 1 Emily used to study German. Now she studies French. 2 Paul used to live in London. Now he lives in Glasgow. 3 Grace used to read a lot. Now she watches TV. 4 Dan used to be a driver. Now he's a hairdresser. 5 Alice used to drink coffee. Now she drinks tea. 6 Peter used to have lots of girlfriends. Now he's married.
- 3 1 Did you use to have dark hair? 2 Did you use to play football? 3 Where did you use to work?4 Did you use to enjoy your work?
  - 5 Did you use to go to a lot of parties?

- 1 1 Can he swim?
  - 2 Must she go immediately?
  - 3 but he may not go this week.
  - 4 She doesn't have to work on Thursday evening.
  - 5 Can he play hockey?
  - 6 Should she see the secretary today?
  - 7 She couldn't read when she was three.
  - 8 Would he like it now?
  - 9 but we might not take the children.
  - 10 I must not go to sleep.
- 2 1 I will be able to speak French 2 Everybody had to fill in a big form 3 Everybody will have to fill in a big form 4 Will you be able to play the guitar 5 Did you have to wear a tie 6 John couldn't read very well 7 We won't be able to buy a car 8 I had to see the doctor 9 Everybody will be able to say what they think 10 couldn't sing; won't be able to sing

- 3 1 ... You should make her a cup of tea.
  - 2 ... You should take more exercise.
  - 3 ... You should tell her you love her.
  - 4 ... You should give her a saucer of milk.
  - 5 ... You should change your shampoo.
  - 6 ... You shouldn't go to bed so late.
  - 7 ... You shouldn't tell her.
  - 8 ... You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets.
  - 9 ... You should practise your service.
  - 10 ... You should buy a new one.
  - 11 ... You should buy some new clothes.
  - 12 ... You should study grammar.

4 (possible answers)

 Could I have a cup of coffee? 2 May I take a photograph of you? 3 Could you close the door, please, John? 4 Could you possibly help me?
 Can you give me that newspaper, please?
 Could you clean my bicycle, please? 7 Could I possibly borrow some money from you? 8 Can I use your phone? 9 Could you hold this, please?
 Could you wash all my clothes before tomorrow, please?
 (Other answers are possible.)

- 5 1 With a scanner you can make copies.
  - 2 With a freezer you can keep food very cold.
  - 3 With a washing machine you can wash clothes.
  - 4 With a fridge you can keep food cool.
  - 5 With a mobile phone you can make phone calls.
  - 6 With a dishwasher you can wash plates, cups etc.
  - 7 With a camera you can take photos.
- 6 1 She might be a pilot. 2 He might be a businessman. 3 She might be an opera singer.
  4 He might be a politician. 5 She might be a lawyer. 6 He might be a chef. 7 She might be a gardener.

#### page 92

- 1 1 X 2 X 3 X 4 √ 5 √ 6 X 7 √ 8 √ 9 X 10 X
- 2 1 must 2 shouldn't 3 must not 4 should
  5 don't have to 6 have to 7 don't have to
  8 may not 9 can't 10 should

- 3 1 You must phone Martin tonight. 2 Ann might be here this evening. 3 You don't have to wait.
  4 People shouldn't watch TV all the time.
  5 Shall I open a window? 6 People should cooperate. 7 John used to smoke. 8 It may rain. 9 Alan can speak Spanish. 10 Can you help me?
- 4 1 can; can't 2 must 3 must 4 may; can; can't

#### page 94

- 1 1 B 2 E 3 H 4 C 5 F 6 G 7 D
- 2 1 is spoken 2 studied 3 spent 4 was broken 5 are made 6 was written
  7 will be opened 8 was driving; was stopped
  9 was built 10 had

### page 95

- 1 1 is 2 is 3 am 4 Are 5 is 6 is 7 are 8 Are
- 2 1 is written 2 are watched 3 are sold
  4 is known 5 is pronounced 6 is spoken
  7 is played 8 are cleaned
- 3 1 is not spelt; is it spelt? 2 is not seen; is it seen? 3 is not pronounced; is it pronounced?
  4 are not found; are they found? 5 is not paid; is she paid?

### page 96

- 1 1 will be opened 2 will be spoken 3 will be finished 4 will be cleaned 5 will be sent
- 2 1 won't be taken; will they be taken 2 won't be built; will it be built? 3 won't be spoken; will be spoken?

- 1 1 was 2 were 3 were 4 were 5 was 6 was
- 2 1 were taken 2 were left 3 was cleaned 4 were met 5 was told 6 was sent

- 3 1 was not educated; was he educated?
  - 2 were not posted; were they posted?
  - 3 was not cooked; was it cooked?
  - 4 was not made; was it made?
  - 5 was not paid; was it paid?

- 1 it's being cleaned. 2 she's being interviewed
   3 My watch is being repaired. 4 I'm being sent
   5 my hair is being cut. 6 we are being followed
   7 The engine is being repaired. 8 It's being
   rebuilt. 9 he is being watched 10 it is being
   painted.
- 2 1 Bills are being paid. 2 Coffee is being made.
  3 Drinks are being served. 4 Food is being prepared. 5 Baggage is being brought down.
  6 Money is being changed. 7 New guests are being welcomed. 8 Reservations are being taken. 9 Phones are being answered.
  10 Rooms are being cleaned.

### page 99

- 1 has been arrested 2 has been bought
   3 has been killed 4 have been found
   5 has been chosen 6 has been closed.
   7 has been stolen. 8 have been asked
   9 have been lost 10 has been invited
- 2 1 It's never been ridden. 2 It's never been worn. 3 It's never been opened.
  4 It's never been used. 5 It's never been played.

#### page 100

- 1 is made 2 were killed 3 will be done
   4 is spoken 5 was made 6 were examined
   7 is cleaned 8 will be informed 9 will be opened 10 are found
- 2 (possible answers)

Baggage is not being brought down. Bills are not being paid. Coffee is not being made. Drinks are not being served. Food is not being prepared. Money is not being changed. New guests are not being welcomed. Reservations are not being taken. Rooms are not being cleaned. Telephones are not being answered.

#### 3 (possible answers)

Arriving passengers are being met. Boarding passes are being printed. Cars are being parked. Departures are being announced. Passports are being checked. Reservations are being made. Tickets are being sold.

### page 101

- 4 1 are being followed. 2 has been stolen.
  3 is being repaired. 4 have been moved.
  5 have been sent 6 are (you) being interviewed? 7 have/has been arrested
  8 have/has not been arrested; are being watched.
  9 is being rebuilt. 10 has been asked
- 5 1 are covered 2 are spent 3 walk
  4 do not eat 5 are left 6 sleep 7 are made
  8 is not known 9 live 10 are cut down

### page 102

- 1 posted 2 weren't paid 3 speaks
   4 isn't pronounced 5 will be built 6 is being cleaned 7 have been invited 8 is made
   9 is spoken 10 broke
- 2 1 × 2 × 3 × 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 × 7 × 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ✓
- 3 1 has been moved. 2 will be opened
  - 3 has been taken. 4 is being washed.
  - 5 will be told 6 has been stolen.
  - 7 was made 8 is spoken 9 are cleaned
  - 10 have been asked 11 was killed.
  - 12 will be done 13 will (the match) be played
  - 14 have been stolen 15 were sent
  - 16 is made 17 was hit; was broken
  - 18 is being translated 19 has been found
  - 20 will be finished

- 1 1 Are you tired?
  - 2 Is he at home?
  - 3 Must you go now?
  - 4 Can they speak Spanish?
  - 5 Will Derek be here tomorrow?
  - 6 Will Aunt Ruth arrive by train?
  - 7 Has she forgotten her keys?
  - 8 Is your sister playing tennis?
  - 9 Would you like some coffee?
  - 10 Has your secretary gone home?

- 2 1 Do you drink coffee at bedtime?
  - 2 Do you like classical music?
  - 3 Do you know my friend Andrew?
  - 4 Did you go skiing last winter?
  - 5 Do you work in London?
  - 6 Do you live in a flat or a house?
  - 7 Do you watch a lot of TV?
  - 8 Did you remember to buy bread?
  - 9 Did you see Barbara last weekend?
  - 10 Do you play tennis?

- 3 1 Does she speak Arabic?
  - 2 Does she know Mr Peters?
  - 3 Does she work at home?
  - 4 Did she live in Birmingham?
  - 5 Did she go home last week?
  - 6 Does she play the piano?
  - 7 Does she ride horses?
  - 8 Does she like working with children?
  - 9 Did she travel a lot last year?
  - 10 Does she drive to work?

#### 4 1 C 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A 7 A 8 C

- 5 1 Did the police catch the drug dealers?
  - 2 Have Lucy and Felicia come back from holiday?
  - 3 When do English children start school?
  - 4 What is that man doing in the garden? OR What is that man in the garden doing?
  - 5 Are the buses running next week?
  - 6 Has the film started?
  - 7 Has John's letter arrived yet?
  - 8 Is Alicia working today?
  - 9 Does Paul know your girlfriend?
  - 10 Why is Kate crying?

#### page 106

- 1 'Why are you here?' 2 'Where have you been today?' 3 'When are you going to Glasgow?'
   4 'How do you like Scotland?' 5 'How did you come here?' 6 'Why did you come by car?'
   7 'Where do you live?' 8 'When are you leaving?' 9 'When will we see you again?'
- 2 1 How far is 2 How tall is 3 How fast was
  4 How often do you 5 How big is
  6 How long did you 7 How well do you

#### page 107

- 3 1 C What colour 2 D What sort/kind of
   3 B What size 4 F What colour 5 H What sort/kind of 6 E What time 7 G What size
- 4 1 'What's your new girlfriend like?'
  - 2 'What are you new neighbours like?'
  - 3 'What's your new car like?'
  - 4 'What's your new house like?'
  - 5 'What's your new job like?'
  - 6 'What's your new school like?'

#### page 108

- 1 1 plays 2 made 3 did she marry? 4 does this word mean? 5 did you say? 6 told
- 2 1 How many people came to her party?
  - 2 Which train did Peter catch?
  - 3 Which bus goes to the station?
  - 4 How many languages does Douglas speak?
  - 5 What sort of music does Alice like?
  - 6 What sort of music keeps the baby quiet?
- 3 1 Alice. 2 Who loves Ann? Pete. 3 Who does Ann love? Joe. 4 Who loves Alice? Fred.
  5 Who does Joe love? Mary. 6 Who does Pete love? Ann. 7 Who loves Pete? Nobody/No one.

#### page 109

- 5 1 (a) What did Melissa buy? (b) Who bought a coat?
  - 2 (a) What did the bus hit? (b) What hit that tree?
  - 3 (a) Who lost the office keys? (b) What did Rose lose?
  - 4 (a) What does Paul teach? (b) Who teaches Arabic?
  - 5 (a) Who hates computers? (b) What does Mike hate?
- 6 1 Who first reached the North Pole? 2 Who wrote War and Peace? 3 Who built the Great Wall of China? 4 Who painted Sunflowers?

- 1 1 Is your sister Caroline talking to the police?
  - 2 Do all the people here understand Spanish?
  - 3 Did most of the football team play well?
  - 4 Is the man at the table in the corner asleep?

- 2 1 How much does a ticket for Saturday's concert cost? 2 What time does the film about skiing in New Zealand start? 3 What does the second word in the first sentence mean? 4 Why does the man in the flat downstairs want to change his job?
- 3 1 Why are all those people laughing? 2 What is that big black dog eating? 3 Is everybody in your family going to Scotland for Christmas?
  4 What game are those children playing?
  5 Where are Lola and her friends studying?
  6 Are those people over there speaking French?

- 1 1 to 2 from 3 about 4 about 5 in 6 from 7 with 8 for 9 to 10 with 11 to 12 on
- 2 1 'What are you thinking about?' 2 'Who does Alice work for?' 3 'Who/What were you talking about?' 4 'What are you interested in?' 5 'What are you looking at?' 6 'Who did you stay with?' 7 'Who do you work with?' 8 'What did you spend the money on?' 9 'What was the film about?' 10 'Where can I get tickets from?'
- 3 1 What 2 Who 3 What 4 Who 5 Who 6 What 7 to 8 for 9 Where 10 What 11 to 12 for

### page 112

 Milk's not red. / Milk isn't red. 2 The children aren't at home. 3 Max hasn't been to Egypt.
 You mustn't give this letter / it to her mother.
 I won't be in the office tomorrow. 6 I couldn't swim when I was two years old. 7 We weren't in Birmingham yesterday. 8 I'm not English.

### page 113

- **4** 1 Shakespeare didn't live in New York.
  - 2 Phone books don't tell you about words.
  - 3 The earth doesn't go round the moon.
  - 4 Most Algerians don't speak Russian.
  - 5 Cookers don't keep food cold.
  - 6 The Second World War didn't end in 1955.
  - 7 John doesn't know my sister.

6 1 don't 2 wasn't 3 doesn't 4 haven't
5 aren't 6 won't 7 didn't/couldn't
8 didn't/couldn't 9 hasn't 10 'm not

### page 114

- 1 1 not 2 not 3 no 4 not 5 no 6 not 7 not 8 Not 9 no 10 not
- There are no newspapers.
   There's no time.
   There were no letters.
   I saw no light.
   He gave no answer.

## page 115

- Nobody lives in that house. 2 I'll never understand my dog. 3 The children told me nothing. 4 I have no money. 5 I could hardly see the road.
- 2 1 I saw nobody. 2 We had no trouble.
  3 My parents never go out. 4 I looked for the dog, but it was nowhere in the house.
  5 I ate nothing yesterday. 6 It hardly rained for three months. 7 Nobody spoke.
- 3 1 My grandmother never drives fast.
  - 2 Andrew doesn't play the guitar.
  - 3 When she talked, I understood nothing.
  - 4 I don't like Ann's new shoes.
  - 5 Nothing happened this morning.
  - 6 There's nowhere to sit down in the station.
  - 7 I hardly watch TV.
  - 8 Nobody wants to play tennis.

- 1 Who cooked dinner? 2 What did Julia cook?
  3 What hit Joe? 4 Who did the ball hit?
  5 What does Sarah play? 6 Who plays the guitar? 7 How many languages does Beth speak? 8 Who speaks eight languages?
  9 Who ate Mum's breakfast? 10 What did Dad eat?
- 2 1 Who did you go with? 2 Who are you writing to? 3 Who did you buy it for? 4 Who is the letter from? 5 What were you talking about?
  6 What did you carry it in? 7 How much did you sell your car for? 8 What did she hit him with? 9 Who did you send the flowers to?
  10 Where does she come from?

 Why are all those people looking at me?
 Did Anna and Oscar have lunch together yesterday?
 Does that man in the dark coat work for the government?
 Is/Are the football team playing in Scotland next Saturday?
 What are those children doing in the garden?
 What does the first word in this sentence mean?
 Are Tom and his sister staying at your house this week?
 When are Emma's teacher and her class going to Paris?
 What did that strange woman say to you?
 When did/will Mary and Phil get married?

### page 117

3

- 4 1 My father never eats meat. 2 Peter doesn't like jazz. 3 There's nothing to do in this town.
  4 I understood nothing. 5 Sally doesn't play the piano. 6 I hardly go to the cinema.
  7 Nothing happened. 8 Nobody wants to talk to you. 9 I've got no money. 10 I haven't got enough money.
- 6 1 Adult grizzly bears can't climb trees. 3 Tigers don't live in Africa. 4 The first people didn't hunt dinosaurs. 5 Spiders aren't insects.
  6 Cats can't see when there is no light.

### page 118

- 1 live 2 Are all your friends coming ...
   3 Correct. 4 Do you play 5 are you
   6 Correct. 7 Correct. 8 can 1 9 told you
   10 phone 11 don't speak 12 anywhere
   13 not 14 Correct. 15 What are you looking
   at? 16 Correct. 17 anything 18 not
   19 helped 20 not
- 2 1 Who 2 Why 3 Where 4 How old
  5 What colour 6 How tall 7 What sort/kind of
  8 How fast 9 What size 10 What ... like
- 3 1 Kelly/She isn't at work. 2 I haven't forgotten your face. 3 Peter/He doesn't drive taxis.
  4 We didn't go to Portugal. 5 You mustn't use that one. 6 Henry/He doesn't eat meat.
  7 These people / They don't play soccer.
  8 Luke/He didn't break his leg. 9 I won't be at home in the afternoon. 10 Elisabeth/She doesn't read books.

- 4 1 Have she and her sisters been to America?
  - 2 Do she and her sisters like dancing?
  - 3 Can she and her sisters swim?
  - 4 Will she and her sisters be here tomorrow?
  - 5 Did she and her sisters go to the party yesterday?
  - 6 Have she and her sisters ever studied history?
  - 7 Can she and her sisters drive?
  - 8 Did she and her sisters phone last night?
  - 9 Were she and her sisters talking to Philip when you saw them?
  - 10 Will she and her sisters get married soon?

### page 120

- 1 1 2 to 3 4 5 -; to 6 -; to 7 to 8 to
- 2 1 to learn 2 help 3 see 4 buy 5 to hear 6 to go 7 send 8 stop
- 3 1 not to have 2 not to break 3 not to go to sleep 4 not to make 5 not to have 6 not to talk 7 not to wake 8 not to tell 9 not to see 10 not to play

### page 121

- 1 to drive 2 to catch 3 to ask for 4 to wait for 5 to meet 6 to buy 7 to finish 8 to learn 9 to hear 10 to relax.
- 2 1 to clean 2 to buy 3 to get
  4 to open 5 to tell 6 to earn 7 to go
  8 to wish 9 to make 10 to get up
- 3 1 E to cut 2 F to see 3 B to buy 4 C to open 5 D to dry

### page 122

 1 refuse to 2 start to 3 promise to 4 expect to 5 try to 6 decide to 7 want to 8 learn to 9 plan to 10 need to 11 forget to 12 seem to 13 begin to 14 continue to 15 prefer to

### page 123

2 1 needs to 2 agreed to 3 decided to
4 tried to 5 learnt to 6 promised to
7 forgot to 8 refused to 9 want to
10 started to 11 prefers to 12 continued to
13 hopes to 14 seemed to 15 began to

- 1 1 Sarah would like John to cook (tonight).
  - 2 The policeman wants the man to move his car.
  - 3 Helen's mother wants her to wash her face.
  - 4 Bill would like Andy to help him.
  - 5 Roger would like Karen to lend him some money.
  - 6 Jessie wants Peter to be quiet for a minute.
  - 7 David would like Alice to have dinner with him.
  - 8 Mike would like the government to put more money into schools.
  - 9 Lucy wants Bill to stop playing that terrible music.
  - 10 Mary would like Gordon to make the bed for once.
- 2 1 Her boss wants her to work harder.
  - 2 Her little brother wants her to buy him a bicycle.
  - 3 Her dog wants her to take him for a walk.
  - 4 Her boyfriend wants her to go to America with him.
  - 5 Her friend Martha wants her to lend her a blue dress.
  - 6 Her guitar teacher wants her to buy a better guitar.
  - 7 Her mother wants her to spend every weekend at home.
  - 8 Her sister wants her to go to Russia with her.
  - 9 The people downstairs want her to stop playing loud music at night.
  - 10 Her father wants her to study economics.

### page 125

- 3 1 I didn't tell Alan to go home. 2 I asked Fred to be quiet. 3 Do you expect her to phone?
  4 I helped Joe to carry the books. 5 The policewoman told me to show her my driving licence. 6 Ann helped me to finish the work.
  7 I asked the shop assistant to help me.
  8 I need you to stay with me. 9 I expect her to pass her exam. 10 I need some people to help with the party.
- 4 1 His father wanted him to get rich.

2 His sister Isabel wanted him to be good at sport.
3 His brother Andy wanted him to go to university.
4 His sister Nicole didn't want him to go to university.
5 His brother Henry wanted him to be a racing driver.
6 His grandmother wanted him to be a doctor.
7 His friend Anthony wanted him to have an easy life.
8 His maths teacher wanted him to study maths.
9 His literature teacher wanted him to study literature.
10 His music teacher didn't want him to study music.

### page 126

- 1 1 It wasn't necessary to phone John.
  - 2 It's impossible to understand that woman.
  - 3 It's nice to stay in bed late on Sundays.
  - 4 It's sometimes difficult to say 'No'.
  - 5 It was easy to make our children happy.
  - 6 It's sometimes dangerous to tell the truth.
  - 7 It's expensive to eat out in restaurants.
  - 8 It's almost impossible to learn a foreign language perfectly.
  - 9 It's nice to travel.
  - 10 It was good to visit my parents.
- 2 1 It was nice to have 2 It was interesting to see 3 it was a bit hard to understand
  4 It was very easy to make 5 It was expensive to eat 6 it was dangerous to swim 7 it was impossible to be

### page 127

- 4 (our answers)
  - 1 It's important to practise grammar.
  - 2 It's important not to translate everything.
  - 3 It's important to read a lot.
  - 4 It's important to read things that interest you.
  - 5 It's not important to have perfect pronunciation.
  - 6 It's important to have good enough pronunciation.
  - 7 It's important not to make too many mistakes.
  - 8 It's not necessary to speak without mistakes.
  - 9 It's important to practise listening to English.
  - 10 It's important to know 3,000 5,000 words.
  - 11 It's not necessary to know 50,000 words.
  - 12 It's important to have a good English-English dictionary.
  - 13 It's important to have a good bilingual dictionary.

- 1 to meet 2 to see 3 sorry 4 afraid
  5 to have 6 to find 7 surprised 8 pleased
  9 to leave 10 happy
- 2 1 Eleanor's silly to listen to Mark. 2 Elizabeth was wrong to take the train without a ticket.
  3 I was stupid to sit on my glasses. 4 I was wrong to wash a white shirt with a red one.
  5 You're silly to believe Luke. 6 You're right to eat a good breakfast. 7 You were crazy to lend money to Chris. 8 I was stupid to think the new Prime Minister was a good man. 9 Rebecca was wrong to tell Peter she loved him. 10 I was right to stay in bed until lunchtime.

- 1 is old enough to work 2 isn't old enough to leave 3 isn't old enough to leave 4 is old enough to leave 5 isn't old enough to 6 is old enough to change 7 is old enough to drive
- 2 1 He's not tall enough to play basketball.
  2 She's not old enough to vote. 3 I'm not strong enough to open this bottle. 4 My French is good enough to read a newspaper. 5 He isn't old enough to go out by himself. 6 He's intelligent enough to do well at university.
- 3 1 Helen's too ill to work. 2 My grandfather's too old to travel. 3 I'm too bored to listen any longer. 4 Cara's too hot to play tennis.
  5 I'm too hungry to work. 6 I'm too tired to drive. 7 I was too afraid to move. 8 Molly was too ill last week to go to school. OR ... too ill to go to school last week. 9 Our dog's too fat to run. 10 My mother's too deaf to understand what people say.

#### page 130

- 1 homework to do. 2 letters to post? 3 film to watch 4 dress to wear 5 shopping to do 6 friend to see
- 2 1 anything to wear. 2 somewhere to work.
  3 nothing to do 4 nobody/no one to teach.
  5 something to finish. 6 nowhere to go.
  7 somebody/someone to love. 8 anywhere to stay 9 somebody/someone/anybody/anyone to help 10 something to carry.

#### page 131

- Skiing; reading. 2 Flying; going by train.
   Eating; washing. 4 Speaking; writing on Writing; speaking. 5 Understanding; listening.
   Shopping; shaving. 7 Working; resting.
   Smoking; driving.
- 4 2 NO CAMPING 3 NO SMOKING 4 NO CYCLING 5 NO FISHING

#### page 132

1 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 B 5 I 6 J 7 G 8 H 9 F 2 1 hearing 2 smoking 3 going 4 watching
5 washing 6 closing 7 working 8 getting
9 skiing 10 asking.

#### page 133

- 3 1 Bob is quite good at running, but not very good at cycling. 2 Sue is not very good at drawing, but very good at running. 3 Mark is quite good at swimming, and very good at running. 4 Bob is bad at swimming, but quite good at singing. 5 Jane is very good at running, and quite good at cycling. 6 Mark is not very good at singing, but quite good at drawing.
  7 Jane is not very good at drawing, but quite good at singing. 8 Sue is quite good at singing, and very good at singing, and very good at swimming.
- 5 1 Ellie stayed awake by drinking lots of coffee.
  2 Paul drank three glasses of water without stopping. 3 Charles woke us up by turning the TV on. 4 You can find out the meaning of a word by using a dictionary. 5 Mike paid for his new house without borrowing any money. 6 Helen lost her driving licence by driving too fast, too often. 7 Carl did all his homework without asking for any help. 8 Teresa cooks all her food without using any salt.

#### page 134

- 1 1 taking 2 eating 3 shopping 4 driving 5 stopping 6 working
- They've just finished playing tennis. 2 All that week, it kept raining. 3 It's just stopped snowing. 4 He's given up smoking. 5 He can't help thinking of/about Annie. 6 They're going shopping. 7 She's practising writing.

#### page 135

3 1 washing 2 watching 3 working
4 playing 5 wearing 6 studying
7 watching 8 shopping 9 cooking; eating

- 1 I was surprised to find a cat in my bed. 2 She was wrong to leave her job. 3 I've got no money to buy a car. 4 I was crazy to give Peter money. 5 We were glad to say goodbye to Aunt Emma. 6 I was sorry not to have time to phone you. 7 I was too tired to work. 8 Here are some letters to post. 9 I've got no time to wash the dishes. 10 I need something to drink.
- 2 1 D to learn 2 E to watch 3 F to stop
  4 B to make 5 C to keep 6 H to pay
  7 G to cut 8 J to impress 9 K to catch
  10 I to look for

#### page 137

- 4 1 sorry to say 2 unhappy to think 3 happy not to have 4 pleased to find 5 surprised to find 6 happy to be 7 pleased to see
- 5 1 They want me to buy a yacht. 2 They want me to buy a bike. 3 They want me to buy a motorboat. 4 They want me to buy a plane.
  5 They want me to buy a motorbike.

#### **page 138**

- 1 to work 2 to see 3 smoking. 4 driving
   5 to buy 6 to talk 7 sending 8 talking.
   9 to come 10 speaking.
- 2 1 Correct. 2 not to have 3 to learn
  4 Correct. 5 by taking 6 smoking
  7 Correct. 8 to go 9 Correct. 10 Correct.
  11 you to pay 12 Correct. 13 to get
  14 eating 15 changing 16 Correct.
  17 to see 18 Correct. 19 not to forget
  20 Correct.
- 3 1 Anna wants Beth to look after the children.2 Joe wants Jack to lend him money.
  - 2 De Wants Jack to lend him money.
  - 3 Peter's mother wants him to clean his room.
  - 4 Sam wants Joe to go shopping.
  - 5 Tom would like Sarah to pass the newspaper.
  - 6 Mike's parents would like him to study medicine.
  - 7 The boss would like Emma to answer the phone.
  - 8 Mary doesn't want Jack to look at her like that.9 Harry doesn't want Jim to say anything to the police.
  - 10 Maria's mother doesn't want her to fall in love with a pop singer.

#### page 140

- 1 get (some) money 2 got into 3 got (a long) letter 4 Get out 5 get wet. 6 get cold.
   7 get off 8 get (really) hungry 9 get(ting) tired 10 gets dark
- 2 1 got burnt. 2 getting divorced. 3 got broken 4 get undressed 5 gets lost.
  6 get stolen. 7 get dressed 8 get changed.
  9 get invited 10 got married

### page 141

- 1 1 A laugh 2 C wait 3 B ask 4 E belony 5 J listen 6 H Look 7 G think 8 F talks 9 I happened
- 2 1 believe in; belong to; happen to; laugh at; listen to; look at; talk about; think about; wait for
- **3** 1 for 2 at 3 to 4 after 5 for 6 for 7 about 8 to 9 for 10 about 11 into 12 on 13 to 14 in 15 on 16 - 17 in 18 out of 19 at 20 off

### page 142

- 1 1 wake/get 2 go 3 round. 4 on. 5 back 6 up! 7 lie 8 Go
- 2 1 up 2 down 3 back

#### page 143

- 3 1 on 2 on 3 down 4 off 5 down 6 back 7 up 8 look 9 pick 10 give 11 let 12 fill 13 take 14 Break
- 4 1 Could you turn the TV down? Could you turn it down? 2 You can throw the potatoes away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take your glasses off? Why don't you take them off?
  4 Please put that knife down. Please put it down.
  - 5 Shall I fill your glass up? Shall I fill it up?
  - 6 I'll switch the heating on. I'll switch it on.

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *I'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *I am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

- 1 1 I lent my bicycle to Joe yesterday.
  - 2 I often read Lucy stories.
  - 3 Carol teaches maths to small children.
  - 4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
  - 5 Amanda often gives flowers to her mother.
  - 6 Could you buy me a newspaper?
  - 7 I found my parents a hotel room.
  - 8 Pass Mr Andrews this paper.
  - 9 Luke has written Joy a letter.
  - 10 I want to get Peter a good watch.
- Sally gave Fred a book. 2 Fred gave Annie flowers. 3 Annie gave Luke a picture.
   Luke gave Mary a sweater. 5 Mary gave Joe a camera.
- 3 1 find 2 Give; give 3 buy

#### page 145

- 1 has his tyres checked 2 has his oil changed
   3 has his car repaired 4 has his shoes cleaned
   5 has his gardening done 6 has his letters typed
  - 5 has his gardening done o has his letters typed
- 2 1 She should have it repaired. 2 He should have them cleaned. 3 They should have it repaired. 4 He should have it cut. 5 They should have it serviced. 6 She should have them checked. 7 He should have it repaired.
  8 He should have it checked.

#### page 146

- 1 1 B 2 D 3 C
- 2 1 Turn 2 go 3 Turn 4 take 5 turn
- 3 1 Hurry up! 2 Be careful. 3 Help!
  4 Have a good holiday. 5 Sleep well.
  6 Don't forget 7 Wait for me! 8 Have some more 9 Follow me 10 Don't worry.
  11 Come in; sit down; make yourself at home.

### page 147

- 1 1 Let's not go for a walk. 2 Let's play tennis.
  - 3 Let's play cards. 4 Let's go swimming.
  - 5 Let's not go swimming. 6 Let's go skiing.
  - 7 Let's watch TV. 8 Let's go to France/Paris.

2 1 Athens. 2 to Copenhagen. 3 go to Vienna.
4 'Let's go to Prague.' 5 'Let's go to Warsaw.'
6 'Let's go to Moscow.' 7 'Let's go to Marrakesh.'
8 'Let's go to Istanbul.' 9 'Let's go to Bangkok.'
10 'Let's go to Beijing.' 11 'Let's go to Mexico City.' 12 'Let's go to Rio.'

#### **page 148**

- 1 1 up 2 round 3 fill 4 turn 5 on 6 Put 7 up 8 back. 9 Go 10 wake/get
- 2 1 Could you wash the cups up? Could you wash them up? 2 You can throw those papers away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take off your coat? Why don't you take it off?
  4 You need to fill this form in. You need to fill it in.
  5 Please bring back my bicycle. Please bring it back. 6 Let me fill your glass up. Let me fill it up.
  7 Please put that gun down. Please put it down.
  8 I'll switch on the TV. I'll switch it on.
  9 Can you cut the onions up? Can you cut them up? 10 Pick up your coat. Pick it up.
- 3 1 Alice sent €500 to her sister. 2 Sarah bought the children ice creams. 3 Let's send a postcard to Granny. 4 Ruth showed the others the photo. 5 I gave the secretary some flowers. 6 Can you find me John's address? 7 I found Aunt Patsy a hotel. 8 Take Mrs Lewis these papers.
  9 I've given all the information to George.
  10 I want to buy my sister a nice present.

### page 149

- 4 1 Come 2 worry. 3 Have 4 out! 5 Make 6 Help 7 Sleep 8 Follow 9 Have 10 forget
- 5 1 Pick 2 Hold 3 Put 4 Let 5 fetch
  6 continue 7 throw 8 Get 9 Open
  10 Get 11 Kneel 12 blow 13 Drink
  14 remove 15 Telephone 16 Find

- 1 1 A, B, D 2 E 3 A, D 4 A, C 5 C 6 A 7 B, C 8 C, D 9 A, C 10 A, B, C, D
- 2 1 to 2 at 3 for 4 about 5 for 6 for
  7 after 8 9 for 10 on 11 to 12 in
  13 to 14 at 15 to 16 17 to 18 -; on
  19 about 20 from

- 1 1 a 2 an 3 a 4 a 5 an 6 a 7 an 8 a
- 2 1 an old friend 2 a big apple 3 an unhappy child 4 an early train 5 a rich uncle
  6 an easy job 7 a hard exercise
  8 a European language 9 a small book
- 4 1 an envelope 2 A calculator 3 a torch. 4 a hammer. 5 A knife 6 An alarm clock

#### page 153

- 1 1 children PC; flower SC; love U; meat U; mountains PC; music U; nose SC; oil U; photos PC; piano SC; river SC; snow U; songs PC; table SC; windows PC
- **2** 1 2 an 3 -; 4 5 6 a 7 -8 an 9 a 10 -; -
- 3 1 cotton or wool 2 metal, plastic and glass (and perhaps leather) 3 brick, wood, metal and glass (and perhaps stone) 4 cotton or silk or wool 5 wood or metal or glass or plastic (or perhaps stone)
- 4 1 a 2 one 3 a 4 one 5 a 6 one

#### page 154

- 1 1 the 2 the 3 an 4 a; a 5 the 6 a; the 7 the 8 the 9 The 10 a 11 the 12 the; the
- 2 1 Fa 2 D the 3 B the 4 C the 5 A a

#### page 155

- **3** 1 a 2 a 3 An 4 The 5 the 6 The 7 the 8 a 9 the 10 the 11 the
- 4 1 This is a mouse. It's the smallest animal in the group. 2 This is a monkey. It's the most intelligent animal in the group. 3 This is an eagle. It's the fastest bird in the group. 4 This is a parrot. It's the only blue and yellow bird in the group. 5 This is a pigeon. It's the smallest bird in the group. 6 This is a spider. It's the only creature with eight legs in the group. 7 This is an ant. It's the only creature with six legs in the group. 8 This is a snake. It's the only creature with no legs in the group. 9 This is a frog. It's the only green creature in the group.

### page 156

- 1 He's a cook.
   2 He's a builder.
   3 She's a driver.
   4 He's a teacher.
   5 She's a photographer.
   6 She's a dentist.
   7 He's a hairdresser.
   8 She's a musician.
   9 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 1 A bag is a container. 2 A hammer is a tool.
  3 A piano is an instrument. 4 A bus is a vehicle.
  5 A screwdriver is a tool. 6 A guitar is an instrument. 7 A box is a container.
  8 A hotel is a building.

### page 157

- 1 a long neck.
   2 big ears.
   3 a loud voice.
   4 a big beard.
   5 dark hair.
- **2** A 1 a 2 3 a 4 -B 1 a 2 a 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 a 7 a

#### page 158

- 2 1 Books 2 the books 3 English people
  4 The flowers 5 Life 6 the words
  7 The food 8 Water 9 the windows
- 3 1 drivers 2 money 3 understand; understand 4 think 5 think 6 things; things

#### page 160

- Spanish; Peru. 2 Uncle Eric; Lake Superior.
   Oxford Street; London. 4 Napoleon
   Kilimanjaro; Africa. 6 France; Switzerland or Switzerland; France.
- 2 1 Himalayas 2 Denmark 3 Japanese
   4 People's Republic of China 5 Trafalgar Square
   6 Mediterranean 7 Ireland 8 United
   Kingdom 9 USA

### page 161

- **3** 1 the 2 the 3 the 4 5 the 6 the 7 8 -
- **4** 1 2 3 the 4 the 5 6 the 7 -8 the 9 the 10 - 11 - 12 the 13 -14 - 15 the 16 - 17 - 18 the 19 the 20 the

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

- 1 lunch; Tuesday. 2 Easter. 3 next 4 winter.
   5 Saturdays. 6 September 7 August 23<sup>rd</sup>.
   8 1616. 9 Christmas. 10 last
- 2 1 bed 2 university 3 church 4 hospital
  5 work; car 6 prison 7 foot 8 home
  9 holiday. 10 school.

#### page 163

- 3 1 G a radio 2 C a garden 3 F a blanket
  4 D a hundred 5 E a million 6 A an
  American passport 7 J a tourist guide
  8 H a stupid idea 9 I a job
- 4 1 Patrick and I work in the same office.
  - 2 We're going to the theatre tonight.
  - 3 My room is at the top of the house.
  - 4 Would you like to live in the country?
  - 5 We usually go to the mountains at Christmas.
  - 6 Joe always sits at the back of the class.
  - 7 Suzie's office is on the right.
  - 8 I would like to live near the sea.
  - 9 Why are you driving in the middle of the road?
  - 10 Please sign your name at the bottom of this paper.

#### page 164

- **1** 1 a 2 the; the 3 an 4 the 5 6 -7 The 8 - 9 - 10 a 11 - 12 the 13 -; - 14 - 15 the 16 the 17 - 18 -19 - 20 -; -
- 2 1 × 2 × 3 × 4 ✓ 5 × 6 × 7 ✓ 8 × 9 ✓ 10 ×
- 3 COUNTABLE: diamond; holiday; price; photo; shop UNCOUNTABLE: coffee; hair; snow; information; music

#### page 165

4 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 a 5 a 6 the 7 the 8 the 9 a 10 - 11 a 12 a 13 the 14 the 15 the 16 a 17 The 18 the 19 the 20 the 21 a 22 the 23 the 24 The 25 the

#### page 166

- 1 1 an 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 an 7 a 8 an 9 a 10 an
- **2** 1 2 a 3 -; 4 5 -; 6 a 7 -8 a 9 a 10 -; -
- **3** 1 2 3 4 the 5 6 the; the 7 - 8 an 9 the 10 the 11 - 12 -13 the 14 a; the 15 - 16 - 17 a 18 -; - 19 -; - 20 a
- 4 1 to Professor Anderson 2 Correct.
  3 the Czech Republic 4 Correct. 5 Correct.
  6 Correct. 7 I'll see you next Tuesday.
  8 a passport 9 a doctor 10 Correct.

#### **page 168**

- 1 1 these 2 This 3 These 4 These 5 this
- 2 1 those 2 those 3 that 4 Those 5 that
  3 (possible answers) This plate is blue. That plate is white. These glasses are green. Those glasses are red. These spoons are black. That spoon is silver. This saucer is blue. Those saucers are white. This bowl is green. That bowl is red.

(Other answers are possible.)

#### page 169

- 4 1 I'm enjoying 2 will be 3 Those 4 was
  5 that 6 this 7 this 8 was 9 that
  10 this
- 5 1 that 2 that 3 This 4 those 5 this
  6 these 7 This 8 That 9 this 10 those
  11 this 12 that 13 these 14 those
  15 that 16 these 17 this 18 those
  19 this 20 those

- 1 1 any 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 any 6 some 7 any 8 any 9 any
- 2 1 any more to drink. 2 any foreign languages.
   3 any games 4 any sleep 5 any English newspapers

3 1 Could I have some coffee? 2 Would you like some bread? 3 Would you like some rice?
4 Could I have some tomatoes? 5 Would you like some more potatoes? 6 Could I have some more milk?

#### page 171

- 4 1 E 2 D 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 F
- 5 1 buy any. 2 some tomorrow. 3 some (in front of) you. 4 want any. 5 any good 6 put some
- 6 1 wasn't 2 didn't do 3 didn't have4 didn't ask 5 didn't find

#### page 172

- 1 Nothing. 2 anywhere. 3 someone
   4 anything 5 everywhere. 6 No one/Nobody
   7 Nowhere 8 something. 9 Everyone/
   Everybody 10 anybody 11 Everything
   12 somewhere
- 2 1 anybody/anyone 2 nowhere
  3 anything. 4 Nobody/No one 5 nothing.
  6 everything
- 3 1 knows 2 happens 3 is 4 ls 5 Has 6 agrees
- 4 1 X 2 √ 3 √ 4 X 5 X 6 X 7 √ 8 X 9 X 10 X

#### page 173

- 1 1 much 2 much 3 many 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 many 8 many 9 much 10 many 11 many 12 much 13 many 14 much 15 much
- 2 1 How many symphonies did Beethoven write?
  - 2 How many cents are there in a dollar?
  - 3 How many kilometres are there in a mile?
  - 4 How many states are there in the USA?
  - 5 How much blood is there in a person's body?
  - 6 How much air do we breathe every minute?
  - 7 How many points do you get for a try in rugby union?
  - 8 How much food does an elephant eat every day?

#### page 174

- 1 1 have 2 are 3 has 4 a lot 5 work 6 A lot 7 need 8 is
- 2 1 plenty of food 2 plenty of time
  3 plenty of patience 4 plenty of warm clothes
  5 plenty of eggs 6 plenty of water
  7 plenty of ideas

#### page 175

- 1 1 a little 2 a few 3 a few 4 a little 5 a few 6 a little 7 a few 8 a little 9 a little 10 a few
- 2 1 a little 2 little 3 few 4 a few 5 a few 6 few 7 few 8 A little
- 3 1 There was only a little room on the bus. or There wasn't much room on the bus.
  - 2 Only a few people learn foreign languages perfectly. OR Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly.
  - 3 She only has a few friends. or She doesn't have many friends.
  - 4 We only get a little rain here in summer. OR We don't get much rain here in summer.
  - 5 This car only uses a little petrol. OR This car doesn't use much petrol.
  - 6 There are only a few flowers in the garden. OR There aren't many flowers in the garden.
  - 7 Our town only gets a few tourists. or Our town doesn't get many tourists.
  - 8 We only have a little time to catch the train. OR We don't have much time to catch the train.

- 1 not enough food 2 not enough strings
   3 not enough seats 4 not enough water
- 2 1 enough time 2 enough girls. 3 enough chairs. 4 enough work. 5 enough money 6 enough salt
- 3 1 not loud enough 2 not comfortable enough
  3 not bright enough 4 not easy enough
  5 not clear enough 6 not fresh enough
  7 not deep enough

4 1 warm enough 2 early enough 3 enough beds 4 often enough 5 quiet enough 6 enough children 7 enough milk 8 enough help 9 sweet enough 10 young enough

### page 177

- 1 too old 2 too much trouble 3 too many problems 4 too much money 5 too ill
   6 too much work 7 too hot 8 too many students 9 too many cars 10 too difficult
- 2 1 too low 2 too short 3 too light
  4 too soft 5 not wide enough 6 not cheap
  enough 7 not wet enough 8 not thin enough
- **3** (possible answers)

1 too many (pairs of) socks 2 enough (pairs of) boots 3 too many pocket torches 4 not enough (tubes of) suncream 5 too many waterproof jackets 6 too many pairs of sunglasses 7 too much bread 8 too much cheese 9 not enough water 10 not enough oranges 11 not enough chocolate 12 enough soap 13 too many toothbrushes (Other answers are possible.)

#### page 178

- The films all start at 7 o'clock. 2 All our secretaries speak Arabic. 3 All the children went home. 4 These coats all cost the same.
   Languages all have grammar. 6 All the people voted for the Radical Conservatives.
   My friends all live in London. 8 All these houses need repairs. 9 Those shops all belong to the same family. 10 All children need love.
- 2 1 The offices all close at weekends. 2 The lessons will all start on Tuesday. 3 Those children can all swim. 4 Our windows are all dirty. 5 Sorry, the tickets have all gone.
  6 We all went to New York for Christmas.
  7 The shops will all be open tomorrow.
  8 We all stopped for lunch at 12.30.
  9 These watches are all too expensive.
  - 10 The lights have all gone out.

### page 179

- Every animal breathes air. 2 She's read every book in the library. 3 I paid every bill. 4 Every computer is working today. 5 Every language has verbs. 6 Every London train stops at Reading. 7 I've written to every customer.
   Every glass is dirty. 9 Every child can be difficult. 10 Every road was closed.
- 2 1 No. 2 Yes... to every letter. 3 No. 4 No.
   5 No. 6 Yes. Every house ...

### page 180

- 1 Both 2 both 3 either; both 4 Both; neither
   5 either 6 both 7 Either 8 either; both
   9 Either 10 Both; neither 11 both 12 either
- 2 1 both sides 2 Both (her) parents
  3 both directions. 4 Both teams
  5 both knees 6 both (my) earrings
  7 both ends 8 both (of his) socks.
  - 9 eyes 10 both sexes.

### page 181

- 1 not much of the milk 2 any of my friends
   3 enough of that meat 4 some of the big
   plates 5 a few of her ideas 6 most of these
   mistakes 7 too many of the students
   8 more of those potatoes 9 not much of my
   money 10 not enough of his work
- **2** 1 2 of 3 of 4 of 5 6 7 -8 of 9 of 10 - 11 -; - 12 of
- 3 1 Most 2 most of the 3 Most of the
  4 Most 5 Most 6 most of the 7 Most
  8 most 9 most of the 10 most

- 1 this 2 that 3 those 4 This 5 these
   6 anything 7 any 8 some 9 Nothing.
   10 without
- 2 1 every 2 each/either 3 everything. 4 all
  5 every 6 neither 7 either 8 both
  9 everybody 10 all

- **3** 1 a little 2 few 3 a few 4 a few 5 little 6 lots of 7 many 8 think 9 too 10 big enough
- 4 1 Most of 2 Most 3 A few of 4 any
  5 some of 6 most of; all of 7 enough
  8 too many 9 A lot. 10 many of

- 5 1 f 2 b 3 j 4 c 5 i 6 d 7 g 8 h 9 e 10 a
- 6 half of us; most of the rest; few; a lot; most of us; half; some of us; how many; a lot; all of us

#### **page 184**

- He spoke fast, but I understood everything.
   I'm hungry, but there isn't anything / there's nothing to eat.
  - 3 She has a lot of / plenty of money.
  - 4 A lot of us were at the party last night.
  - 5 Most people think I'm right.
  - 6 He was carrying a heavy bag in each hand.
  - 7 Everything is very difficult.
  - 8 I like every kind / all kinds of music.
  - 9 I think you're driving too fast.
  - 10 If everybody is ready, we can go.
- 2 1 this 2 That 3 those 4 that 5 This
   6 somebody 7 I need 8 some 9 anything
   10 anywhere
- 3 1 all 2 Is 3 Both 4 each 5 every
  6 a little 7 little 8 a little 9 a few
  10 A little. 11 lots of 12 many
  13 too many 14 much 15 is 16 each
  17 everything 18 every 19 neither
  20 something

#### page 186

- 1 1 her 2 us 3 him 4 they 5 her 6 them 7 her; she
- 2 1 He 2 them 3 him 4 They 5 him 6 She
- **3** 1 They 2 It 3 It 4 them 5 it 6 it 7 them. 8 they

#### page 187

- 5 1 He has moved to London. 2 They are on that chair. 3 I like them. 4 She is going to study medicine. 5 No, it is difficult. 6 I put it in the garage. 7 I/We play tennis. 8 It is beautiful.
- 6 1 It's warm. 2 It's windy. 3 It's snowing.
  4 It's hot. 5 It's raining. 6 It's sunny.
  7 It's cloudy. 8 It's cold.

#### page 188

1 1 her 2 his 3 Whose 4 its 5 my 6 their 7 his 8 her 9 your 10 his 11 its 12 her

### page 189

- 2 1 James sold his bike to Carlos.
  - 2 Carlos sold his dog to Sara.
  - 3 Sara sold her house to Pat and Sam.
  - 4 Pat and Sam sold their motorbike to Harry.
  - 5 Harry sold his piano to Alice.
  - 6 Alice sold her coat to Michael.
  - 7 Michael sold his camera to Helen.
  - 8 Helen sold her guitar to Marilyn.
  - 9 Marilyn sold her hair dryer to Tom.
  - 10 Tom sold his dictionary to Amy.
- 3 1 their son Joe 2 their daughter Emma
  3 their camper van. 4 her brother Frank
  5 her sister Lucy 6 his sister Louise
  - 7 his brother Simon 8 their friend Pete

- 1 theirs. 2 looks better than yours.
   3 Yours looks terrible. 4 That dog looks like ours. 5 That car's not hers. 6 This coat isn't mine. 7 My cooking is better than his.
   8 Is this bike yours?
- 2 1 The towel is not theirs. 2 The razor is his.
  3 The red toothbrush is his. 4 The green toothbrush is hers. 5 The toothpaste is theirs.
  6 The make-up is hers. 7 The soap is hers.
  8 The green washcloth is hers. 9 The hair dryer is hers. 10 The dressing-gown is his. 11 The shampoo is theirs.

- 1 1 him 2 herself 3 themselves 4 yourselves 5 him
- 2 1 myself 2 'Himself.' 3 yourself. 4 ourselves 5 herself 6 yourselves 7 themselves.
- 3 1 yourself 2 themselves. 3 myself.4 ourselves 5 herself.
- 4 1 each other 2 themselves. 3 each other4 yourselves 5 each other

#### page 192

- 1 Column 2: us, NOT <del>OUT</del> Column 3: her, not <del>hers</del> Column 4: mine, NOT <del>mines</del> Column 5: themselves, NOT <del>theirselves</del>
- 2 1 his wife 2 mine 3 ours 4 its 5 'l like it.'
  6 It's five miles 7 It's Tuesday. 8 'lt's over there.'
  9 They were 10 it was wonderful 11 them 12 'lt was me.'
  13 That's her 14 It is cold 15 I have 16 her leg 17 It is 18 Is that my coat?
  19 Whose 20 'lt's me.'
- 3 1 her. 2 herself. 3 each other.

#### page 193

- 4 1 myself. 2 each other 3 himself 4 me; myself. 5 each other 6 themselves 7 you; yourself. 8 yourselves. 9 each other.
  10 yourselves
- 5 1 myself 2 yourself 3 himself 4 myself 5 ourselves 6 yourself
- 6 1 his 2 each other 3 they 4 her 5 she
  6 they 7 They 8 it's 9 Hers 10 their
  11 his 12 she's 13 him 14 her 15 herself.
  16 them 17 they're 18 each other 19 I
  20 they

### page 194

#### 1

1	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	-	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

- 2 1 I like it 2 It's 20 miles 3 It's Friday.
  4 his sister 5 theirs 6 their children
  7 Whose 8 each other 9 enjoyed myself
  10 teaching myself 11 Where's my bike?
  12 It is 13 his arm 14 I have 15 made
  myself comfortable
- 3 1 him; me. 2 her; herself. 3 each other
  4 ourselves. 5 myself. 6 each other.
  7 yourself; you 8 me; yourself. 9 me.
  10 her 11 me; me; myself 12 her 13 his
  14 myself; they 15 her

#### page 196

- + -s: cats, chairs, gardens, hotels, planes, ships, tables, times, trees + -εs: boxes, brushes, churches, classes, dresses, gases, glasses, watches, wishes
- 2 1 +-s: guys, holidays, keys, ways + -ɛs: copies, countries. families, parties
- 3 1 children 2 students 3 want 4 cities
  5 wives 6 do 7 teeth 8 watches
  9 babies 10 matches 11 guys 12 work
  13 people

- 1 class ✓ club ✓ Communist Party ✓ company ✓ crowd ✓ idea ✗ lunch ✗ question ✗ room ✗ school ✓ train ✗
- 2 1 D say 2 A want 3 B play 4 C haven't 5 G have 6 F are
- 3 1 dark glasses. 2 shorts. 3 scissors
  4 black trousers 5 silk pyjamas. 6 tights

- 1 love, meat, music, oil, salt, snow, sugar, wool
- 2 some bread; a cheque; some baggage; a fridge; some furniture; a handbag; a holiday; some knowledge; some luck; a newspaper; a problem; a station; some travel; some work
- 3 1 baggage 2 travel. 3 spaghetti 4 news5 advice 6 furniture 7 work 8 hair
- 4 1 a job 2 a journey 3 a piece of advice 4 a piece of information 5 a piece of news

#### page 199

- 5 1 a glass 2 glass 3 chocolate 4 a chocolate
  5 paper 6 a paper 7 an iron 8 iron
  9 a chicken 10 chicken
- 6 1 bottle 2 jug 3 box 4 cup 5 mug 6 jar 7 can 8 bag 9 glass 10 packet

#### page 200

1 this one. 2 a new one. 3 another one.
 4 last one 5 small one. 6 blue ones.

#### page 201

- 1 1 Alice and John's house. 2 artists' ideas 3 my dog's ears 4 those dogs' ears 5 those men's faces 6 his girlfriend's piano 7 their grandchild's birthday 8 their grandchildren's school 9 ladies' hats 10 my aunt and uncle's shop 11 Patrick's books 12 a photographer's job 13 our postman's cat 14 postmen's uniforms 15 Joyce's pen 16 the thief's bag 17 the thieves' car 18 that woman's brother 19 most women's desks 20 your mum and dad's bedroom
- 2 1 That big building is a girls' school. 2 Is this your mother's office? 3 May I speak to the boss's secretary? 4 What's Jane and Peter's address? 5 This is a picture of my grandparents' wedding. 6 Do you know John's new girlfriend?
  7 She writes for a women's magazine.

8 Is that Robert's car?9 Let me have Ruth and Jack's phone number.10 What's your wife's job?

- 3 1 My sister's secretary's office.
  - 2 Jane's children's bicycles.
  - 3 Rob's family's holiday flat.
  - 4 Olivia's boyfriend's cat.
  - 5 The Prime Minister's wife's problem.
  - 6 Luke's uncle's farm.
  - 7 Mr Patterson's doctor's car.
  - 8 The President's niece's business.
  - 9 Charlotte's boss's wife.
  - 10 The Director's husband's friend's mother's cousin.

#### page 202

- 1 Ann's house 2 the doctors' house
   3 Oliver and Carla's book 4 the teacher's car
   5 the girls' money 6 Susan's money
- The builder's car is parked in front of Anna's house.
   Do you know the tall woman's address?
   The children's bedtime is eight o'clock.
   Alice and Pat's brothers are all in the army.
- 3 1 What's your brother's name? What's the name of that book? 2 Is there anything in the children's pockets? Is there anything in the pockets of that coat? 3 You can see the church from Emma's window. You can see the church from the window of the living room. 4 Why are John's arms so dirty? Why are the arms of your chair so dirty?

#### page 203

- 4 1 a year's course 2 a week's holiday 3 a day's journey 4 an hour's drive 5 a minute's wait
- 5 1 The handbag is probably Aunt Matilda's.
  - 2 The gun is probably Texas Joe's.
  - 3 The crown is probably Queen Lobelia's.
  - 4 The big shoes are probably Oleg's.
  - 5 The document case is probably Mr Brown's.

- business address, email address, home address
   aspirin bottle, milk bottle, perfume bottle
  - 3 jazz singer, opera singer, pop singer
  - 4 garden wall, prison wall (or kitchen wall)
  - 5 army uniform, police uniform, prison uniform
  - 6 garden chair, kitchen chair

- 2 1 F office building 2 D dog food 3 A computer engineer 4 B language school 5 E baby clothes 6 G knife drawer
- 3 1 a metal box 2 chocolate cakes 3 a plastic fork 4 vegetable soup 5 a leather jacket
  6 cotton shirts 7 a paper plate 8 tomato salad 9 a stone wall

- 4 1 an office manager 2 a coffee maker
  3 a coffee drinker 4 an animal lover 5 floor
  cleaner 6 a tennis player 7 a letter opener
  8 a cigar smoker 9 a mountain climber
- 5 1 telephone book 2 teacher's book
  3 Elizabeth's journey 4 train journey 5 aunt's home 6 holiday home 7 brother's interview
  8 job interview

### page 206

- 1 1 some 2 some 3 some 4 some 5 a 6 some 7 some 8 a 9 a 10 some
- 2 (possible answers) trousers, jeans, tights, shorts, pants, pyjamas, glasses, scissors
- 3 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 × 5 × 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ✓
- 4 1 That's Peter's house 2 children's 3 boys'
  4 father's 5 boss's secretary or secretary's boss
  6 Jane and Peter's 7 parents' 8 teacher's
  9 John's 10 men's
- 5 1 a shoe shop 2 orange juice 3 a leather jacket 4 a train driver 5 a coffee table 6 a window cleaner 7 news readers
  8 a computer magazine 9 a street market 10 a gold watch

### page 207

6 1 bus driver 2 a mountain climber 3 a tennis player 4 a maths teacher 5 a dog trainer
6 a glass blower 7 a road cleaner 8 a butterfly collector 9 a computer programmer
10 a bird watcher 7 1 clothes shops 2 family business 3 Joe's wife 4 sons' 5 daughter's 6 plastic tables and chairs 7 have 8 Joe's 9 bus drivers 10 chocolate cake

### page 208

- 1 foxes, journeys, matches, books, tables, feet, people, knives, mice, dogs, days, families, women, leaves, men, children, cars, wives, babies
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 ideas 4 ducks 5 X 6 journeys 7 X 8 governments 9 classes 10 X
- 3 1 tennis player 2 are 3 an hour's sleep
  4 women's 5 countries 6 A large one
  7 information 8 are 9 flower shop
  10 phone book
- 4 1 milk chocolate 2 lives 3 book shops 4 were the people or was the person 5 sister's son 6 the blue ones 7 l'd like one 8 a football player 9 journeys 10 street market 11 my brother's 12 an animal doctor 13 Anna's mother 14 silver earrings 15 orange juice 16 cities 17 door of the house 18 There's Peter's house. 19 Do you have Emma's address? 20 a big job

### page 210

- 1 a beautiful little girl 2 in a red coat
   3 was walking through a dark forest 4 with a big bag 5 of wonderful red apples 6 to see her old grandmother 7 Under a tall green tree 8 she saw a big bad wolf 9 with long white teeth
- 2 1 'Good morning, little girl,' said 2 the big bad wolf. 3 'Where are you going 4 with that heavy bag 5 on this fine day?' 6 'l'm going to see my old grandmother,' 7 said the little girl.
  8 'She lives in a small house 9 near the new supermarket.'
- 3 1 friendly 2 little 3 stupid. 4 big

#### page 211

4 1 beautiful and intelligent 2 cold, hungry and tired

- 5 1 'That car looks expensive.' 2 'Jane seems happy.' 3 'I feel ill and tired.' 4 It gets dark very early here in winter.
  5 My parents are getting old.
- 6 1 'The train is late.' 2 'He looks Australian.'
  3 'Your hair looks beautiful.' 4 My memory is getting very bad.' 5 I want to become rich and famous.

- 1 slow 2 interestingly 3 beautifully 4 easy
   5 perfect 6 badly 7 happy 8 angry
   9 strong 10 quietly
- 2 1 finally 2 sincerely 3 loudly 4 thirstily
  5 probably 6 usually 7 nicely
  8 wonderfully 9 coldly 10 unhappily
  11 comfortably

### page 213

- 1 I read the letter carefully/slowly/yesterday.
   2 I bought a computer yesterday.
  - 3 Write your name carefully/clearly.
  - 4 You must see the doctor tomorrow.
  - 5 He speaks four languages correctly/perfectly.
  - 6 You didn't write the address clearly/correctly.
  - 7 I don't like skiing much/slowly.
  - 8 Please speak clearly and slowly.
- 3 1 extremely/terribly 2 completely
  - 3 beautifully/very well 4 extremely/terribly
  - 5 beautifully/very well 6 nearly
  - 7 badly/terribly 8 extremely/terribly

### page 214

 Jake always eats fish. He even eats fish for breakfast. 2 Ann often plays tennis, but she only plays in the evenings. 3 Edward usually puts tomato sauce on everything. He probably puts it on ice cream. 4 I sometimes forget names. I never forget faces. 5 Jane hardly ever gets angry, and she never shouts at people.
 I always get to the station on time, and the train is always late. 7 I will definitely phone you tomorrow, and I will probably write next week.
 I usually drink tea. I sometimes drink coffee.
 Your sister is certainly a good singer. She is also a very interesting person. 10 My mother is still asleep. I think she is probably ill. 2 1 Do you often play cards? 2 Have you ever been to Tibet? 3 Are you always happy?
4 Does the boss ever take a holiday? 5 Do you usually eat in restaurants? 6 Is Barbara still ill?

### page 215

3 (possible answers)

Eva never plays football. Tom plays football three times a week. Eva plays tennis once a week. Tom hardly ever plays tennis. Eva often goes skiing. Tom never goes skiing. Eva goes to the theatre every week. Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year. Eva goes to the cinema three or four times a year. Tom goes to the cinema twice a month. Eva never goes to concerts. Tom goes to concerts every week. (Other answers are possible.)

4 go climbing 1 go swimming 8 go sailing 4 go wind-surfing 12 go skiing 10 go skating 11 go fishing 3 go shopping 7 go to the opera 9 go to the theatre 2 go to concerts 5

## page 216

- 1 1 boring 2 bored 3 interested 4 interesting
- 2 1 annoying 2 frightened; frightening
   3 exciting; excited 4 surprising; surprised

### page 217

- 1 1 well. 2 early 3 hard 4 weekly 5 hardly
- 2 1 Daily 2 lately 3 fast 4 hardly 5 early 6 well 7 late 8 weekly 9 hard 10 lately
- 3 1 X 2 V 3 X 4 X 5 V

- He was driving a fast red car.
   She speaks perfect Chinese.
   She speaks Chinese perfectly.
   I lost my keys yesterday.
   I've got a very important meeting tomorrow.
   Anna read Peter's letter slowly.
   Tim plays the piano brilliantly.
   Lucy is terribly unhappy.
  - 9 They make very good ice cream here.
  - 10 She's been happily unmarried for 15 years.

- 2 1 terrible 2 slowly 3 hard 4 friendly
  5 badly 6 unhappy 7 extremely; late
  8 carefully 9 late 10 completely
  11 beautiful 12 hard 13 unclearly
  14 perfect 15 well
- 4 careful; extremely

- 5 1 interesting films 2 a good cheap restaurant
  3 and good-looking 4 interested
  5 I very much like or I like ... very much.
  6 'The poor girl/woman!' or 'Poor Emma!'
  7 terribly 8 my glasses yesterday. 9 happily
  10 have often thought 11 difficult
  12 in a friendly way/voice 13 Arabic very well.
  14 beautiful 15 fast 16 carefully 17 perfect
  18 is always 19 usually speak 20 hard
- 6 1 fast 2 daily 3 hard 4 late 5 hardly 6 friendly 7 silly 8 lonely.
- 7 1 a light/coffee 2 water 3 holidays
  4 hair, skin 5 a light 6 a bed, water
  7 hair, skin 8 milk 9 apples 10 children

#### page 220

- 1 1 really, completely, possibly, happily, nicely, easily, beautifully, probably, usually, incredibly, unhappily, rightly, sincerely, hungrily, carefully, perfectly, warmly, angrily, comprehensibly, slowly
- 2 1 I saw a good film yesterday. 2 Andy can definitely help you. 3 You speak Russian very well. 4 She never smiles. 5 Alice had some really interesting ideas. 6 They sell very good clothes here. 7 I have never been to Norway.
  8 Karl plays the violin very badly. 9 I have already paid. 10 He was wearing a new blue suit. 11 We often see Annie and Seb. 12 Emma read the report slowly. 13 Judy and Simon are always late. 14 You are probably right. 15 I hardly ever go to the cinema.
- 3 1 X 2 X 3 √ 4 √ 5 X 6 √ 7 X 8 √ 9 X 10 X 11 √ 12 √ 13 X 14 X 15 X

4 1 and stupid-looking 2 are usually 3 bored
4 will never 5 always listen 6 'The poor girl/ woman!'or 'Poor Jenny!' 7 have often been
8 terribly 9 slowly 10 is already
11 You never tell me 12 beautiful 13 has probably 14 fast 15 slowly

#### page 222

- 1 greener, greenest 2 safer, safest 3 richer, richest 4 smaller, smallest 5 stranger, strangest 6 finer, finest 7 higher, highest 8 wider, widest 9 nearer, nearest 10 whiter, whitest
- 2 1 bigger, biggest 2 hotter, hottest
  3 newer, newest 4 wetter, wettest
  5 slimmer, slimmest
- 3 1 lazier, laziest 2 hungrier, hungriest
  3 sleepier, sleepiest 4 angrier, angriest
  5 dirtier, dirtiest
- 4 1 more careful, most careful 2 more beautiful, most beautiful 3 more intelligent, most intelligent 4 more dangerous, most dangerous 5 more important, most important 6 more boring, most boring 7 more interested, most interested
- 5 1 farther/further 2 better 3 worse.

#### page 223

- 1 the nicest 2 the best 3 more expensive
   4 more dangerous 5 the most dangerous
   6 bigger 7 the fastest 8 most
- 2 1 shorter 2 the most intelligent 3 quieter
  4 the coldest 5 louder 6 the biggest
  7 more intelligent 8 the most boring

#### page 224

 1 Dogs are friendlier than cats. 2 Dogs are more intelligent than cats. 3 Train travel is cheaper than air travel. 4 Air travel is faster than train travel. 5 The Sahara is hotter than the Himalayas. 6 The Himalayas are colder than the Sahara. 7 English is easier than Chinese.
 8 Chinese is more difficult than
 9 English. 9 Canada is bigger than Ireland.
 10 Ireland is smaller than Canada. 2 1 The Amazon is longer than all the other rivers in South America. 2 Blue whales are heavier than all the other whales. 3 Mont Blanc is higher than all the other mountains in the Alps. 4 Cheetahs are faster than all the other big cats. 5 The Atacama desert is drier than all the other deserts. 6 Redwoods are taller than all the other trees.

### page 225

- 3 1 is more careful than him. / is more careful than he is. 2 hungrier than me. / hungrier than I am.
  3 shorter than you. / shorter than you are.
  4 are more excited than us. / are more excited than we are. 5 is more beautiful than her. / is more beautiful than she is.
- 4 1 Mark is a bit / a little taller than Simon.
  2 Simon is a bit / a little older than Mark. 3 Mark is a bit / a little younger than Simon. 4 Mark is a lot / much richer than Simon. 5 Mark's car is a lot / much faster than Simon's car. 6 Simon's car is a lot / much slower than Mark's car. 7 Mark's car is a bit / a little more comfortable than Simon's car. 8 Simon's car is a lot / much quieter than Mark's car. 9 Mark's car is a lot / much noisier than Simon's car.

### page 226

- 1 1 F n 2 E q 3 A r 4 C m 5 B p 6 J s 7 G u 8 I t 9 H v
- 1 In the 1970s, the Beatles were the richest musicians in the world.
  2 Eric says that Eleanor is the best singer in the group.
  3 When I was a child, my father was the tallest man in our town.
  4 In this country, February is the coldest month of the year.
  5 Who is the oldest of your three aunts?
  6 Helen is very intelligent, but she is the quietest person in my class.
  7 Which is the best of these three bikes?
  8 Which is the biggest city in Argentina?

### page 227

- 1 1 Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.
  - 2 Liam works more carefully than John.
    - 3 Simon goes swimming more often than Karen.
  - 4 My car runs more quietly than my sister's car.
  - 5 Annie talks more slowly than Rob.
  - 6 Olivia thinks more clearly than most people.
  - 7 Jack dresses more expensively than me.
  - 8 I live more cheaply than my friends.
- 2 1 earlier. 2 later. 3 more. 4 nearer 5 less. 6 faster. 7 higher. 8 longer.

## page 228

- Picture A is Jenny. Picture B is Cassie.
   Cassie is not as slim as Jenny. 2 Cassie is not as tall as Jenny. 3 Jenny's skirt is not as long as Cassie's. 4 Cassie's bag is not as big as Jenny's.
   Jenny's coat is not as heavy as Cassie's.
   Cassie's glass is not as big as Jenny's.
- 2 1 The other doctor isn't as nice as you. The other doctor isn't as nice as you are. 2 His boss isn't as interesting as him. His boss isn't as interesting as he is. 3 My mother isn't as slim as me. My mother isn't as slim as I am. 4 The Browns aren't as careful as us. The Browns aren't as careful as we are.

### page 229

4 1 Eric has twice as many cousins as Tony.
2 Ben eats three times as many sandwiches as Jo. 3 Helen has nearly as many computer games as Adrian. 4 Chris drinks twice as much coffee as Liz. 5 Mike has just as many books as David. 6 Rebecca doesn't have nearly as much free time as Fred.

- 1 1 as; as 2 most; in 3 than 4 the; in 5 better; best 6 more 7 as; as 8 than 9 more; am. 10 than; less
- 2 1 in the world 2 than 3 most 4 more slowly 5 most 6 than me 7 as cold as ice 8 than his wife 9 higher 10 worst 11 most intelligent 12 happier 13 in 14 of 15 the best

3 1 B is faster than C. 2 A is not as fast as B.
3 C is not as fast as B. 4 B is the fastest.
5 C is more expensive than A. 6 A is not as expensive as B. 7 B is the most expensive.
8 B is not as big as C. 9 C is bigger than A.
10 C is the biggest.

#### page 231

- 1 more than a year and less than a century
  - 2 more than a week and less than a year
  - 3 more than a day and less than a month
  - 4 more than a minute and less than a day
  - 5 more than an hour and less than a week
  - 6 more than a month and less than a decade
- 5 1 John 2 Tom 3 Hannah
- 6 than

### page 232

- 1 1 more interesting, most interesting 2 thinner, thinnest 3 cheaper, cheapest 4 easier, easiest 5 worse, worst 6 more beautiful, most beautiful 7 lazier, laziest 8 farther/further, farthest/furthest 9 better, best 10 older, oldest 11 fatter, fattest 12 happier, happiest 13 later, latest 14 hotter, hottest 15 slower, slowest 16 bigger, biggest 17 more expensive, most expensive 18 dirtier, dirtiest 19 more important, most important 20 stronger, strongest
- 2 1 as; as 2 than 3 that 4 than 5 than 6 as 7 that 8 than 9 as 10 than
- 3 1 than; more 2 am. 3 earlier; earliest
  4 more 5 the; in 6 As; as 7 most; in
  8 as; as 9 than 10 worse; worst.
- 4 1 in 2 worst 3 most 4 than 5 more quickly 6 as hard as stones 7 bigger 8 most beautiful 9 of 10 the worst

### page 234

1 so 2 although 3 but 4 and 5 while
6 because 7 until 8 while 9 or
10 as soon as

2 1 We'll be glad when this job is finished. 2 I'll be very angry if you do that again. 3 I'd like to talk to you before you go home. 4 Sue watched TV until John came home. 5 We'll see you again after we come back from holiday. 6 I like her, although she's a difficult person. 7 Henry didn't like working in a bank, so he changed his job. 8 They think they can do what they like because they're rich. 9 I want to stop working before I'm 50. 10 You look beautiful when you're smiling.

### page 235

- 1 1 I put on two sweaters because it was very cold. Because it was very cold, I put on two sweaters.
  - 2 I'm going to work in Australia when I leave school. When I leave school, I'm going to work in Australia.
  - 3 I go and see Felix if I want to talk to somebody. If I want to talk to somebody, I go and see Felix.
  - 4 Ann made coffee while Bill fried some eggs. While Bill fried some eggs, Ann made coffee.
  - 5 I was interested in the conversation, although I didn't understand everything. Although I didn't understand everything, I was interested in the conversation.
  - 6 We went to a restaurant because there was no food in the house. Because there was no food in the house, we went to a restaurant.
  - 7 We'll have a big party when John comes home. When John comes home, we'll have a big party.
  - 8 I stayed with friends while my parents were travelling. While my parents were travelling, I stayed with friends.
  - 9 I go for long walks at the weekend if the weather's fine. If the weather's fine, I go for long walks at the weekend.
  - 10 Come and see us as soon as you arrive in Scotland. As soon as you arrive in Scotland, come and see us.

- 1 1 hear 2 make 3 leaves 4 write 5 get 6 am 7 stops. 8 go 9 arrive 10 finishes.
- 2 1 finds or gets 2 travels 3 will help
  4 starts 5 will tell 6 look after 7 will look
  8 stops 9 come 10 will get

- 1 1 Because the rooms were dirty, I changed my hotel. I changed my hotel because the rooms were dirty. The rooms were dirty, so I changed my hotel.
  - 2 Because the taxi was late, we missed the train. We missed the train because the taxi was late. The taxi was late, so we missed the train.
  - 3 Because I didn't like the film, I walked out of the cinema. I walked out of the cinema because I didn't like the film. I didn't like the film, so I walked out of the cinema.
- 2 1 Although I felt ill, I went on working. I went on working, although I felt ill. I felt ill, but I went on working.
  - 2 Although she was very kind, I didn't like her.
    I didn't like her, although she was very kind.
    She was very kind, but I didn't like her.
  - 3 Although he's a big man, he doesn't eat much.
    He doesn't eat much, although he's a big man.
    He's a big man, but he doesn't eat much.

#### page 238

- My company has offices in London, Tokyo, New York and Cairo. 2 I've invited Paul, Alexandra, Eric, Luke and Janet. 3 I'll be here on Tuesday, Thursday, Friday and Sunday. 4 She's got five cats, two dogs, a horse and a rabbit. 5 He plays golf, rugby, hockey and badminton. 6 She addressed, stamped and posted the letter.
- 2 1 She has painted the kitchen, (the) living room and (the) dining room. 2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt, blue jeans and white trainers. 3 Can you give me a knife, fork and spoon, please? 4 Many people speak English in India, Singapore and South Africa. 5 I've written and posted six letters this morning.

#### page 239

- 1 I think that she's either Scottish or Irish.
   2 I'd like to work with either animals or children.
  - 3 He did well in both mathematics and history.
  - 4 This car is neither fast nor comfortable.
  - 5 She neither looked at me nor said anything.
  - 6 I've got problems both at home and in my job.
  - 7 You can either stay here or go home.
  - 8 I like both (the) theatre and (the) cinema.
  - 9 She speaks neither English nor French.
  - 10 I don't understand either politics or economics.

### page 240

- 1 will have; go 2 will wait; arrives 3 come; will be 4 will be; goes 5 get; will cook
   6 will send; receive 7 will be; are 8 go; will take 9 stops; will go 10 will have; gets up.
- 2 1 Because the teacher was ill, the children had a holiday. The children had a holiday because the teacher was ill.
  - 2 When I was in China, I made a lot of friends. I made a lot of friends when I was in China.
  - 3 Until they built the new road, it was difficult to get to our village. It was difficult to get to our village until they built the new road.
  - 4 Although Jessica wrote three letters, Dylan never answered. Dylan never answered, although Jessica wrote three letters.
  - 5 As soon as the work was finished, I phoned him. I phoned him as soon as the work was finished.
- 3 1 I both swim and play tennis.
  - 2 He either lives or works in Birmingham.
  - 3 My father speaks neither Greek nor French.
  - 4 She likes neither pop music nor jazz.
  - 5 She can have either orange juice or water.
  - 6 I can neither sing nor dance.
  - 7 He's either Scottish or Irish.
  - 8 He's studying both physics and biology.
  - 9 This sofa is neither nice-looking nor comfortable.
  - 10 Anna neither looked at Henry nor spoke to him.

### page 241

- 4 1 so 2 when 3 and 4 although
  5 because 6 and 7 because 8 and
  9 until 10 although 11 before
- 5 1 Karl plays neither the trombone nor the saxophone. 2 Melanie plays both the cello and the drums. 3 Neither Steve nor Karen play(s) the violin. 4 Both Joanna and Charles play the guitar. 5 Karen plays both the piano and the trumpet. 6 Sophie plays neither the guitar nor the trumpet. 7 Both Charles and Steve play the saxophone. 8 Neither Sophie nor Steve play(s) the trumpet.

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

- 1 1 I'm going to do some gardening until it gets dark. 2 I couldn't read because it was too dark. 3 The food wasn't very good, but he ate everything. 4 The lesson finished early, so we went for a walk. 5 After I got his letter, I went round to see him. 6 As soon as Jane gets up, she makes coffee. 7 You can't have any more coffee, because there isn't any. 8 I didn't go to work, because the buses weren't running. 9 The buses weren't running, so I didn't go to work. 10 The phone always rings while I'm having a bath. 11 I can't tell you the decision until I know myself. 12 He didn't work very hard, but he passed all his exams. 13 When the holiday was over, I had to start working very hard. 14 As soon as Andrew saw Zoe, he fell madly in love with her. 15 After I left school. I worked as a taxi driver.
- 1 He plays neither the piano nor the guitar.
  Although the train was late, I got there in time.
  R The train was late, but I got there in time.
  small, cold and dirty 4 I/he/she/we/they went out 5 gets 6 Because it was cold, I put on a coat.
  or walk home 8 a knife and fork
  Although I would like to help you, I don't have time.
  both classical music and jazz.
  I find 12 I'm old

### page 244

1 1 If I can't sleep, I get up and read. I get up and read if I can't sleep. 2 If you take books from my room, please tell me. Please tell me if you take books from my room. 3 If you're hungry, why don't you cook some soup? Why don't you cook some soup? Why don't you cook some soup if you're hungry? 4 If she's been travelling all day, she must be tired. She must be tired if she's been travelling all day. 5 If we catch the first train, we can be in London by 9.00. We can be in London by 9.00 if we catch the first train.

# irlanguage

- 2 1 You can't park here unless you live in this street.
  - 2 Unless you're over 15, you can't see this film.
  - 3 I don't drive fast unless I'm really late.
  - 4 Unless I'm going fishing, I get up late on
    Sundays. 5 We usually go for a walk after
    supper unless there's a good film on TV.
    6 I see my mother at weekends unless I'm
    travelling. 7 Unless it's raining, I play tennis
    most evenings. 8 I can't help you unless you tell
    me the truth.

### page 245

- 1 get 2 will bring 3 will give 4 phones
   5 have 6 stop 7 will be 8 won't laugh
   9 will cook 10 stops
- 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 am not; will see 5 will study; has 6 will drive; can 7 marries; will not have 8 will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) lend
- 3 1 If I lose my job, I won't find another job.2 If I don't find another job, I'll lose my flat.
  - 3 If I lose my flat, I'll move back to my parents' house.
  - 4 If I move back to my parents' house, I'll get very bored.
  - 5 If I get very bored, I'll go swimming every day.
  - 6 If I go swimming every day, I'll look very good.
  - 7 If I look very good, I'll meet interesting people.
  - 8 If I meet interesting people, I'll go to lots of parties.
  - 9 If I go to lots of parties, I'll have a wonderful time.

### page 246

- 1 could; would eat 2 were; would know
   3 knew; would tell 4 asked; would (you) do
   5 could; would (you) do 6 would buy; had
   7 asked; would (you) say 8 would finish; did
   not talk 9 would study; had 10 were; would
   watch
- 2 1 If Jane and Peter were here, we would play cards.

2 If we had enough money, we would buy a new car. 3 If Fred answered letters, I would write to him. 4 If I could find my camera, I would take your photo. 5 If I could understand the words, I would enjoy opera. 6 If Carola didn't talk about herself all the time, I would like her. 7 If I had a dog, I would go for walks.

- 1 1 If I were you, I'd take a holiday. 2 If I were you, I'd join a club. 3 If I were you, I'd fly. 4 If I were you, I'd call the police at once. 5 If I were you, I wouldn't sell it.
- 1 If I were you, I'd start a business. 2 If I were 2 you, I'd put the money in the bank. 3 If I were you, I'd buy a sports car. 4 If I were you, I'd have a big party. 5 If I were you, I'd travel round the world. 6 If I were you, I'd stop work. 7 If I were you, I'd give the money away.

#### page 248

- 1 1 lived 2 could 3 go 4 started 5 gave 6 need 7 gave 8 thought 9 was 10 go
- 2 1 have; 'll 2 had; 'd 3 get; will 4 got; would
  - 5 did; would 6 do; will 7 go; won't
  - 8 went; wouldn't 9 does; won't 10 did; would

### page 249

- 1 1 had been 2 had worked 3 had taken 4 had not played 5 would have studied
  - 6 Would (you) have crashed
  - 7 would not have slept
  - 8 had come: would have had
  - 9 had not broken down; would have been
  - 10 would (you) have studied; had liked
  - 11 would not have got: had not wanted
  - 12 would (you) have helped; had asked
- 1 If I had caught the 8.15 train, I would have sat 2 by a beautiful foreign woman.
  - 2 If I had sat by a beautiful foreign woman, I would have fallen in love and married her.
  - 3 If I had fallen in love and married her, I would have gone to live in her country.
  - 4 If I had gone to live in her country, I would have worked in her father's diamond business.
  - 5 If I had worked in her father's diamond business, I would have become very rich.
  - 6 If I had become very rich, I would have gone into politics.
  - 7 If I had gone into politics, I would have died in a revolution.

مرجع زبان ايرانيان

#### page 250

(possible answers) 1 1 G 2 H 3 J 4 B 6 D 7 F 8 C 5 K 9 E 10 I

(Other answers are possible.)

- 1 bought; would 2 go; 'll 3 lived; would 2 4 went; wouldn't 5 start; won't 6 win; will 7 married; would 8 take; 'll 9 rains; won't 10 did: wouldn't
- 3 1 will 2 looks; it's 3 will; will; will take 4 will 5 won't 6 will

### page 251

- 4 1 had not drunk; would have slept
  - 2 had had; would have gone
  - 3 would have gone; had not met
  - 4 had not been; would have gone
  - 5 would have caught; had run
  - 6 had stopped; would have lived
  - 7 would not have asked; had needed
  - 8 would have been; had stayed
  - 9 would have worn; had known
  - 10 had had; would have gone
- ... the cat wouldn't have eaten her supper. If 5 the cat hadn't eaten her supper, she wouldn't have gone to the shop to buy food. If she hadn't gone to the shop to buy food, she wouldn't have seen an advertisement for a secretary. If she hadn't seen an advertisement for a secretary, she wouldn't have got a new job and met my father.
- 1 If she goes to Egypt, she will have to learn 6 Arabic. 2 If she goes to Brazil, she will have to learn Portuguese. 3 If she goes to Holland, she will have to learn Dutch. 4 If she goes to Kenya, she will have to learn Swahili. 5 If she goes to Greece, she will have to learn Greek. 6 If she goes to Austria, she will have to learn German.

- 1 cleaned 2 knows 3 will come 1 4 would understand 5 leave 6 would not sell 7 did not live 8 will translate 9 ask 10 gets
- 2 1 if I pass 2 Correct. 3 ate 4 will see
  - 5 Correct, 6 Correct, 7 he works
    - 8 Correct. 9 if we are 10 Correct.

- 3 1 had not asked; would not have known
  - 2 had been; would have gone
  - 3 would not have said; had known
  - 4 would have been; had said
  - 5 had not got; would not have met
  - 6 would have died; had not taken
  - 7 had not been; would have gone
  - 8 had done; would have studied
  - 9 would have gone; had had
  - 10 had not helped; would have been

- 1 1 who 2 which 3 which 4 which 5 who 6 which 7 which 8 who 9 who 10 which 11 which 12 who
- 2 1 took 2 live 3 she is 4 lost 5 bought
  6 is parked 7 it cuts 8 writes 9 make
  10 I lent you

### page 255

- 3 1 The man and woman who live in flat 1 play loud music all night. 2 The woman who lives in flat 2 broke her leg skiing. 3 The three men who live in flat 3 play golf all day. 4 The students who live in flat 4 haven't got much money. 5 The doctor who lives in flat 5 has three children. 6 The man who lives in flat 6 drives a Rolls-Royce. 7 The two women who live in flat 7 are hiding from the police.
- 4 1 The bus which goes to Oxford isn't running today. 2 Yesterday I met a man who works with your brother. 3 The child who didn't come to the party was ill. 4 Can you pick up the papers which are lying on the floor? 5 The eggs which I bought yesterday were bad. 6 Here's the book which you asked me to buy for you. 7 I don't like the man who is going out with my sister.

### page 256

 John's got a motorbike that can do 200km an hour.
 Is that the computer that doesn't work?
 Those are the trousers that I use for gardening.
 A man that lives in New York wants to marry my sister.
 The doctors that looked at my leg all said different things.
 The flowers that you gave to Aunt Sarah are beautiful.
 The children that play football with Paul have gone on holiday. 2 1 an insect that doesn't make honey and can bite you 2 a bird that can't fly 3 a bird that eats small animals and birds 4 an animal that flies at night and hears very well 5 a machine that can fly straight up 6 a plane that doesn't have an engine 7 a thing that can fly to the moon

#### page 257

#### 1 10 25 30 40 50 65 70 85

- 2 1 the languages she spoke 2 the sweater I wore 3 a man I helped 4 the weather we have had 5 the car you bought
- 3 1 I'm working for a man I've known for twenty years. 2 They played a lot of music I didn't like.
  3 The campsite we found was very dirty. 4 I'm going on holiday with some people I know. 5 That book you gave to me is very good.
  6 The ring she lost belonged to her grandmother.
  7 I'm driving a car I bought 15 years ago.
  8 The papers you wanted are on the table.

- 1 the girl that I was talking about 2 the people that I work for 3 the house that I live in
  4 the music that you are listening to 5 the bus that I go to work on
- 2 1 the girl I was talking about 2 the people I work for 3 the house I live in 4 the music you are listening to 5 the bus I go to work on
- 3 1 Eric is the man she works for. 2 Monica is the woman she plays tennis with. 3 Karen is the woman she reads to. 4 Emily and Jack are the people she babysits for. 5 Tom is the man she is in love with.
- 1 The man she works for gave her chocolates.
  2 The woman she plays tennis with gave her a clock. 3 The woman she reads to gave her theatre tickets. 4 The people she babysits for gave her a picture. 5 The man she is in love with gave her flowers and earrings.

### page 259

- 1 What he did made everybody angry. 2 Take what you want. 3 Soap - that's what I forgot to pack. 4 She gave me a watch. It was just what I wanted. 5 That child does what he likes. 6 What I read in the paper makes me unhappy. 7 Don't tell me what I know already. 8 What I like best in life is doing nothing.
- **3** 1 that 2 What 3 what 4 that 5 what 6 What 7 that 8 that 9 what 10 that

### page 260

- 1 I know a man who writes film music.
   2 The bus which I took got to London twenty minutes late. 3 We have friends who live in Chicago. 4 The car which I bought last month isn't very good. 5 We stayed in a hotel which had a beautiful garden. 6 I didn't like the man who my sister married. 7 The people who were at the party weren't very interesting. 8 Tim uses long words which I can't understand.
   9 The computer which I'm using crashes every five minutes. 10 The woman who works in the flower shop is terribly nice.
- 2 1 The tickets that I got were terribly expensive. 2 These are the scissors that I use for cutting paper. 3 The woman that gives me tennis lessons is from Brazil. 4 The man that lives next door is always very friendly. 5 I'm spending the day with some people that I know. 6 What did you do with the money that we collected? 7 People that study languages are called linguists. 8 We've got a cat that brings dead rats into the house. 9 The oranges that you bought are all bad. 10 Why did you throw away the soup that I cooked?

### page 261

- 3 1 the clock I bought 2 the film I saw 3 No change. 4 No change. 5 a man I really disliked 6 No change. 7 that dog you had 8 No change. 9 No change. 10 those earrings I bought
- 4 The rooms they put us in; the beds they gave us; the extra blankets we asked for; The 'full English breakfast' they served; the 'French champagne' we ordered; that brochure you showed me; The 'view of the sea' they talked about; the gym they advertised; the bill we got

- 5 1 the book I was looking at 2 the people I work for 3 the hotel we stayed in 4 the place I drove to 5 those people we were talking to 6 the train we travelled on 7 some people I work with 8 the place I was telling you about 9 the pen I write with 10 the small village my mother lives in
- 6 1 Naomi got what Jessica wanted. 2 Sally got what Thalia wanted. 3 Jane got what Anna wanted. 4 Jessica got what Jane wanted.
  5 Thalia got what Sally wanted.

# page 262

- 1 1 A, B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A, B 7 A 8 A, B 9 A, B 10 A, B 11 A 12 A 13 A, B 14 B 15 A
- 2 which had 6 The woman who came 8 the man who 10 which I couldn't understand. 12 People who/that live 15 people that you can't relax with. (The other sentences are all correct)
- 3 1 that 2 that 3 What 4 that 5 what 6 that 7 what 8 what 9 What 10 that

#### page 264

- 1 1 he 2 she 3 her. 4 they; their 5 he 6 me. 7 they 8 he; his 9 she; her 10 their
- 2 1 told 2 said 3 said 4 say 5 told 6 tell 7 told 8 said

#### page 265

- 3 1 She said (that) her sister needed a car.
  - 2 He said (that) he had to phone Andrew.
  - 3 She said (that) nobody wanted to help her.
  - 4 She said (that) the radio didn't work.
  - 5 He said (that) he would be in Paris in July.
  - 6 He said (that) he liked the red sweater.
  - 7 He said (that) he couldn't swim.
  - 8 She said (that) her parents were travelling.
  - 9 She said (that) the lessons were very good.
  - 10 They said (that) they hadn't heard from Joseph.

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

4 He thought (that) cats had nine lives. He thought (that) his father knew everything. He thought (that) spaghetti grew on trees. He thought (that) the teacher lived in the school. He thought (that) he would be rich one day. He thought (that) his mother had always been old.

### page 266

- She asked him where he lived. 2 She asked him where he worked. 3 She asked him where he was going. 4 She asked him where he had been. 5 She asked him what the number of his car was. 6 She asked him why he was driving on the right.
- 2 1 She asked him whether it was his car.
  2 She asked him if/whether he had a driving licence. 3 She asked him if/whether he had it with him. 4 She asked him if/whether he always drove with the door open. 5 She asked him if/ whether he was listening to her.
- **3** 1 They asked him if/whether he was married.
  - 2 They asked him if/whether he had children.

3 They asked him where he had worked before.
4 They asked him why he wanted to change his job.
5 They asked him if/whether he could speak any foreign languages.
6 They asked him what exams he had passed.

# page 267

- 1 they live in Greece. 2 she went to Belfast yesterday. 3 he's been ill. 4 it's going to rain.
   5 she'll ask her sister. 6 they're going to be rich.
   7 if/whether lunch is ready. 8 where I put my keys. 9 I'm getting a cold. 10 this is the right answer.
- 2 1 Can you tell me where I can buy tickets?
  - 2 Do you know how much it costs?
  - 3 Can you tell me if/whether John has phoned?
  - 4 Can you tell me if/whether I must pay now?
  - 5 Can you tell me if/whether Maria likes steak?
  - 6 Do you know where I parked the car?

### page 268

 1 now - then 2 this - that 3 tomorrow - the next day 4 yesterday - the day before
 5 today - that day 6 tonight - that night
 7 last week - the week before 8 next week the next week

- 2 1 that place. 2 the week before. 3 the day before. 4 that day. 5 that night. 6 the next day.
- 3 1 He said he loved that place. 2 He said he'd seen a great film the day before. 3 He said he was going to another party that night. 4 He asked if I wanted to play tennis the next day. 5 He said his girlfriend would be there the next week.

# page 269

- Dave asked Sandra to give him her phone number.
   The boss told James to work late.
   Judy asked Kim not to tell Karen about Ryan.
   Mr Sanders asked Fred not to smoke in his car.
   The general told Colonel Walker to take
   men and cross the river.
   Ann told Polly not to study so hard.
- His girlfriend told him to write to her every day.
   His mother told him to keep his room clean.
   His father told him to work hard.
   His sister told him not to go to too many parties.
   His brother told him to get a lot of exercise.
   His mother told him to change his shirt every day.
   His father told him not to go to had late.
  - 7 His father told him not to go to bed late.
  - 8 His brother told him to be careful with money.9 His sister told him not to play cards for money.
  - 10 His grandmother told him to eat properly.

- 1 He asked her if/whether he could have ice cream for breakfast. 2 He asked her why the stars only came out at night. 3 He asked her why Daddy / his father had to work. 4 He asked her where God was. 5 He asked her whether he would be taller than her one day. 6 He asked her if she believed in Father Christmas. 7 He asked her if/whether Scotland was in London. 8 He asked her when he would be rich. 9 He asked her why French people didn't speak English. 10 He asked her how big the universe was.
- 2 1 She told him to wash his hands before breakfast. 2 She told him not to eat with his mouth open. 3 She told him to eat everything on his plate. 4 She told him not to talk with his mouth full. 5 She told him to make his bed.
  6 She told him to clean his room. 7 She told him to polish his shoes. 8 She told him to put on a clean shirt. 9 She told him not to shout at his sister. 10 She told him not to be late for school.

- 3 1 John doesn't know how to phone New York.
  - 2 John doesn't know where to pay.
  - 3 John doesn't know when to start work.
  - 4 John doesn't know how to switch the computer on.
  - 5 John doesn't know where to put his coat.
  - 6 John doesn't know how much to pay.
  - 7 John doesn't know what to study.

# page 271

4 1 had been 2 told 3 was having 4 was doing 5 had had 6 the (week) before
7 would 8 said 9 had 10 had lost
11 to buy 12 if/whether 13 was 14 was
15 would 16 was living 17 had spent
18 to send 19 to give 20 told 21 hadn't heard 22 where 23 was living. 24 if/whether 25 wanted

### page 272

- 1
   1 said
   2 told
   3 told
   4 said
   5 said

   6 told
   7 told
   8 told
   9 said
   10 told
- 2 1 × 2 × 3 ✓ 4 × 5 ✓ 6 × 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ×
- 3 3 where the post office was. 4 when Jane is arriving? 7 tell me 8 was going 9 if/ whether I was 10 what he wanted. 11 what this word means. 12 wanted. 15 why she said (All the other sentences are correct.)

# page 274

- 1 1 on 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 at; on 6 on 7 on 8 at; on 9 at 10 on 11 at 12 on
- 2 1 at 2 in 3 in 4 at 5 at 6 in 7 at; in 8 in 9 in 10 at; in; on 11 in 12 in 13 at 14 in 15 in

#### page 275

3 1 I'll see you next Wednesday. 2 It rained nonstop last week. 3 Business was bad last month.
4 Shall we go out this evening? 5 We're going to America next month. 6 Ann had a car crash last Wednesday. 7 I'm going to change my job next year. 8 My holiday is in August every year. OR ... every August. 9 I've spent too much money already this month. 10 The new school will be open next March. OR ... in March next year.

- 4 1 In five days. 2 In a week. 3 In two weeks.
  4 In a month. 5 In a year. 6 In a hundred years.
- 5 1 the twenty-first of March / March the twenty-first, nineteen ninety-nine 2 the fourteenth of February / February the fourteenth, nineteen sixty 3 the twenty-eighth of July / July the twenty-eighth, eighteen forty-six 4 the sixth of May / May the sixth, two thousand and three 5 the ninth of May / May the ninth, nineteen eighty-four 6 the seventeenth of December / December the seventeenth, two thousand and twelve

### page 276

- **1** 1 until lunchtime. 2 until Saturday. 3 until the age of 14. 4 until the end. 5 until July.
- 2 1 He washed the car from 8.00 to/till/until 9.00.
  2 He talked to the woman next door from 9.00
  - to/till/until 9.15.
  - 3 He played tennis from 10.00 to/till/until 11.00.
  - 4 He talked to friends from 11.00 to/till/until 11.30.
  - 5 He went for a walk from 11.30 to/till/until 12.45.
- 4 1 by 2 until 3 by 4 by 5 by 6 until

#### page 277

- 1 1 for 2 during 3 during 4 for; during 5 during 6 for 7 during 8 for
- 2 1 while they were playing 2 during the lesson
  3 during the war 4 while she was teaching
  5 while he was speaking 6 while they were
  talking 7 during her illness 8 while it was
  snowing
  - (possible answers)
    1 for an hour or so 2 for ever 3 for a moment
    4 for a couple of hours 5 for a minute or two
    6 for a few minutes 7 for an hour or so
    8 for life (Other answers are possible.)

### page 278

3

1 1 in 2 on 3 in 4 on 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 in 9 on 10 on

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

مجعزبان ايرانيان

ANSWER KEY 351

2 1 in my diary. 2 in the office 3 on her first finger 4 in the cupboard. 5 on the roof of the car. 6 in your car 7 On his T-shirt 8 on the wall 9 in a little village 10 on a piece of paper; in my pocket

### page 279

- 1 at the cinema 2 at the station. 3 at the party 4 at a Chinese restaurant 5 at a theatre 6 at work. 7 at breakfast 8 at Birmingham.
   9 at the hotel bar 10 at the crossroads.
- 2 1 at the bottom 2 at the end 3 at the top4 at the top 5 at the beginning

### page 281

- 1 1 above 2 by 3 above 4 by 5 behind 6 under 7 against
- 2 1 under 2 between; opposite 3 against4 behind 5 near 6 in front of 7 near
- 3 1 opposite 2 between 3 behind 4 near
  5 in front of 6 under 7 against 8 between
  9 by

#### page 282

 1 up the steps 2 through the gate 3 over the fence 4 past the café 5 round the corner 6 out of the shop 7 across the river 8 along the yellow line 9 under the bridge 10 into the water 11 off the bike 12 down the mountain

### page 283

- 2 1 along the road 2 up the mountain 3 down the stairs 4 over the wall 5 into the bank
  6 round the corner 7 through the door
  8 off the table 9 out of the church
  10 under the bridge 11 past the bank
  12 across the river
- 3 1 out of; along 2 down; over 3 along; through; into 4 up; into; off 5 past; under; round 6 off; into 7 out of; across; out of 8 up; down
- 4 1 to 2 in 3 to 4 from; to 5 in 6 to 7 at 8 at 9 in 10 to

#### page 284

- 1 1 on 2 on 3 at 4 for 5 on 6 at 7 at 8 in 9 in 10 on 11 by 12 until 13 during 14 while 15 at
- 2 1 last Saturday 2 next year 3 in September every year OR every September 4 this month 5 last week 6 tomorrow evening 7 next Saturday 8 last month 9 next month 10 next August OR in August next year
- 3 1 along the road 2 down the mountain
  3 into the church 4 off the table 5 out of the church 6 up the mountain 7 over the wall
  8 past the church 9 round the corner
  10 through the door
- 4 1 between 2 above 3 in front of
  4 opposite 5 against 6 through
  7 along; by 8 out of; across 9 off; into
  10 past; under; round

- 5 1 out of the church 2 on the bus 3 up the stairs 4 under the bridge 5 into the river
  6 behind the door 7 at the bottom of the stairs
  8 down the mountain 9 in front of the police station 10 at the end
- 6 1 the twenty-third of April or April the twenty-third 2 the first of September or September the first 3 the fifth of August, two thousand and ten or August the fifth ... 4 the second of March, nineteen eighty or March the second ...
  5 the tenth of January, two thousand and two or January the tenth ... 6 the third of April, two thousand and eight or April the third ...
  7 the fourth of October or October the fourth 8 the twenty-first of March, nineteen thirty-six or March the twenty-first ... 9 the twenty-second of October, two thousand and six or October the twenty-second ... 10 the first of January, two thousand and one or January the first ...
- 7 (possible answers) 1 for a moment. 2 for life. 3 for a long time. 4 for a few minutes. 5 for a long time. 6 for a couple of hours 7 for years and years. 8 for a moment 9 for a few minutes. 10 for an hour or so. (Other answers are possible.)

8 1 on 2 on 3 opposite 4 off 5 by
6 along 7 at 8 under 9 up 10 round
11 down 12 across 13 through 14 out of
15 in front of 16 in 17 by

#### **page 286**

- 1 1 on 2 over 3 on 4 at 5 off 6 by 7 in 8 for 9 through 10 while
- 2 1 on 2 from; until 3 for 4 during 5 in 6 at/in front of/opposite 7 on 8 on 9 on 10 at 11 by/before 12 between 13 at 14 in 15 along/by/near
- 3 1 for three hours 2 by Saturday 3 out of the room 4 opposite our house 5 across this river 6 on the ceiling 7 across the town 8 next Monday 9 at Christmas 10 off the bus

### page 288

- 1 1, won't you? 2, has he? 3 -? 4, isn't it?
  5, can he? 6, isn't it? 7, was it? 8 -?
  9, aren't l?
- 2 1 isn't it? 2 aren't we? 3 isn't she? 4 won't you 5 can't he? 6 doesn't she? 7 doesn't it?
- 3 1 is he? 2 can you? 3 do they? 4 does she? 5 do they? 6 has he/she?

#### page 289

- 4 1 wasn't there? 2 aren't there? 3 isn't there?4 has there? 5 were there?
- 5 1 do you? 2 isn't she? 3 isn't it? 4 can you?
  5 wouldn't you? 6 do they? 7 hasn't she?
  8 aren't l? 9 isn't there? 10 don't you?
- 6 1 They've lived in France, haven't they? 2 They all went home early, didn't they? 3 It rained all last week, didn't it? 4 Her brother writes for the newspapers, doesn't he? 5 I need a visa, don't I?
  6 You'd like a holiday, wouldn't you? 7 The train was late, wasn't it? 8 Sarah forgot your birthday, didn't she? 9 There was a letter for me, wasn't there? 10 I'm in time for lunch, aren't I?

### page 290

- 1 'No, it isn't.' OR 'No, it's not.' 2 'No, he hasn't.'
   3 'Yes, they do.' 4 'No, it isn't.' OR 'No, it's not.'
   5 No, he doesn't.' 6 'Yes, I/we do.' 7 'No, thanks, she wouldn't.' 8 'No, it wasn't.'
   9 'No, I'm afraid I'm not.'
- 3 1 'No, I'm not.' 2 'Yes, it is.' 3 'Yes, she does,'
   4 'No, it doesn't.' 5 'Yes, he did.' 6 'Yes, he did.'

#### page 291

- 1 Have you? 2 Did he? 3 Is there?
  4 Can't you? 5 Doesn't it? 6 Is she?
  7 Do they? 8 Don't they?
- 2 1 C Don't you? 2 B Are they? 3 F ls it? 4 D Has he? 5 E Can't you?

#### 3 (possible answers)

- 1 'Congratulations!' 2 'Say 'hello' to her for me.'
- 3 'Good luck!' 4 'That's interesting.'
- 5 'What a pity!' 6 'What a nuisance!'
- 7 'I am sorry.' 8 'That's a surprise.'
- 9 'That's terrible.' (Other answers are possible.)

### page 292

- Are you? 2 Joe didn't phone yesterday.
   I'm feeling ill. 4 John needs help.
   You don't remember David, 6 Have you?
   can't they?
- 2 1 don't you? 2 Yes, I do. 3 didn't he?
  4 he didn't. 5 Is he? 6 does he? 7 Yes, it is.
  8 Aren't you? 9 don't you? 10 Yes, I do
  11 haven't you? 12 Yes, I have. 13 Are you?
  14 Yes, I would. 15 can I? 16 Yes, you can.
  17 Are you?

- 1 ... but I do. 2 ... I have. 3 ... I don't think she will. 4 ... I hope he has. 5 ... Of course I will. 6 ... I can tomorrow.
- 2 1 'They hope to.' 2 she didn't want to. 3 I'd like to. 4 I used to. 5 'Sorry, I forgot to.'
  6 'It's starting to.'

3 1 I couldn't understand what he wanted from me.
2 She doesn't know what she's doing. 3 The bus is late again. 4 Do you speak French?
5 I haven't seen them. 6 I don't think so.

### page 294

- 1 'So is Alice.' 2 'So does my father.'
   3 'So can I.' 4 'So does Carla.' 5 'So has Edward.'
- 2 1 neither/nor was the meat. 2 'Neither/Nor has Gemma.' 3 'Neither/Nor does this one.'
  4 'Neither/Nor can I.' 5 neither/nor will his friends.
- 3 1 'My car does.' 2 her sister hasn't. 3 our dog can't. 4 'The train doesn't.' 5 the back door was.
  6 'Her second one did.'

### page 295

4 1 Eric plays tennis, and so does Dan. 2 Julie isn't tall, but Denise is. 3 Denise doesn't laugh a lot, and neither/nor does Paul. 4 Dan can ski, but Rachel can't. 5 Julie has been to America, and so has Denise. 6 Eric isn't tall, and neither/ nor is Paul. 7 Julie doesn't play tennis, but Dan does. 8 Paul doesn't like dancing, but Rachel does.

### page 296

- 1 she wasn't. 2 he does. 3 she wouldn't.
   4 it doesn't. 5 I can. 6 I haven't. 7 he doesn't. 8 she did. 9 they won't. 10 I do.
- 2 (possible answers)
  1 'Say 'hello' to him for me.' 2 'Congratulations!'
  3 'I don't believe it!' 4 'Good luck!' 5 'That's interesting.' 6 'That's terrible.' 7 'What a nuisance!' 8 'I am sorry.' 9 'That's a surprise.'
  10 'What a pity.'
- 3 1 nor/neither do cats. 2 nor/neither has the 3.15. 3 'Nor/Neither was I.' 4 nor/neither did Sally. 5 so does his brother. 6 so are the potatoes. 7 nor/neither does her brother.
  8 so were we. 9 'Nor/Neither do her parents.' 10 'So will I.'

# page 297

- 4 1 ... but I do. 2 ... 'I have.' 3 ... but I don't think he will. 4 ... 'I'm trying to.' 5 ... 'Of course I won't.' 6 ... but I can't. 7 ... but I don't want to. 8 ... but I haven't. 9 ... 'No, I didn't.' 10 ... but I hope to.
- 5 1 I don't know why. 2 Have you seen my mother today? 3 I don't think so. 4 Sorry, you can't come in here. 5 Do you want some help?
  6 Do you know what I think? 7 I can't understand a word. 8 The house is cold.
  9 It's raining again. 10 I've lost my keys.
- 6 1 They're paper clips, aren't they? 2 It's a diary, isn't it? 3 It's a hole-punch, isn't it? 4 It's an address book, isn't it? 5 They're rulers, aren't they?
   6 They're calculators, aren't they?

- 1 1 ✓ 2 × 3 × 4 × 5 ✓ 6 × 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ×
- 2 1 can't you? 2 won't she? 3 have you?
  4 doesn't he? 5 was there? 6 didn't she?
  7 does he? 8 isn't it? 9 is it? 10 will you?
  11 haven't they? 12 have they? 13 aren't l?
  14 don't they? 15 did it?
- 3 1 They haven't gone home, have they?2 We need tickets, don't we?
  - 3 You'd like some more coffee, wouldn't you?
  - 4 Mike was away yesterday, wasn't he?
  - 5 Angela didn't tell you her news, did she?
  - 6 Sophie can't play the piano, can she?
  - 7 There will be room for everybody, won't there?
  - 8 Your father doesn't eat meat, does he?
  - 9 These books don't belong to the library, do they?
  - 10 You're tired, aren't you?
- 4 1 it wasn't. 2 he wouldn't. 3 it doesn't.4 it did. 5 it won't.
- 5 1 Have they? 2 Won't you? 3 Do you?4 Has it? 5 Didn't !?

# index

a, an: see articles a bit with comparatives 225 a few and a few of 181 and few. a little and little 175 a little and a little of 181 with comparatives 225 a lot a lot (of) 174, 181 with comparatives 225 able: be able to 81 above 280-281 across 282-283 active and passive 94 active and passive verb forms 300 adjectives 209-211; 216-220 after be, become, etc 211 and adverbs: the difference 212 comparatives and superlatives 221-226 ending in -ly 217 followed by infinitives 128 with enough/too + infinitive 129 words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217 adverb particles (away, back etc) 142-143 adverbs 212-215; 217 and adjectives: the difference 212 comparatives and superlatives 227 of manner 212 other adverbs 213 position 214-215 words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217 advice: uncountable 198 afraid afraid of 305 with be 3 after and afterwards 307 with present tense for future meaning 41, 236

ages with be 3 ago, for and since 307 agree + infinitive 122-123 agree with 305 all all, every and each 179 all, everybody and everything 178 and all of 181 position with noun or verb 178 along 282-283 already already, yet and still 308 position 64, 214-215 with present perfect 64 also: position 214-215 although 234 and but 237 always: position 214-215 and 234, 238 with adjectives 211 angry about/with 305 annoyed and annoying 216 another 307 any and any of 181 and some 170-171 anybody 172 **anyone** 172 anything 172 anything to ... 130 anywhere 172 aren't 1? 288, 301 arrive at/in 141, 283, 305 articles 151-166 a and an 152 a/an and one 153 a/an for jobs, roles etc 156 a/an in descriptions 157 expressions without articles (e.g. in bed, have breakfast, next Monday) 162-163 names 160-161 not used with my etc 163, 189 pronunciation 152 special cases 162-163

against 280-281

*the* and *a/an* 154–155 *the* not used in generalisations 158–159 with countable and uncountable nouns 153

as and like 307 as, than and that 308 iobs and roles 307 not used without article 163 as ... as 228-229 as I am or as me 228 as soon as 234 with present tense for future meaning 41, 236 ask ask for 141, 305 ask somebody to do something 125 at (preposition of place) 279 and in 279 at a party 306 at the bottom/top/side 306 at the cinema/theatre 306 at, to and in 283 at (preposition of time) 274-275 at the beginning 306 at/in the end 306

back: at the back 163 bad at (...ing) 133, 305 baggage: uncountable 198 be 1-5 auxiliary: see progressive, passive be able to 81 be born 97 be careful 146 be in/out/away/back etc 142 contractions 2, 3 there is 6-7 with hungry, thirsty, ages etc 3 because 234 and so 237 and why 308 become + adjective 211

bed: expressions without article 162 been and gone 61 before with present tense for future meaning 41, 236 begin + infinitive 122–123 believe believe in 141, 305 not normally used in progressive 30-31 belong to 141, 305 better, best 222 between 280-281 born: be born 97. 307 borrow: structures 144 **both** 180 and both of 181 both ... and 239 both, either and neither 180 bottom: at the bottom 163 bread: uncountable 198 bring bring back 143 bring somebody something 144 but 234 and although 237 buy somebody something 144 by and until 276 by ... ing 133 by bicycle/bus/car etc 162 by Dickens, Mozart etc 306 by myself/yourself etc 191 in passives 94 preposition of place 280-281

#### can

ability 80-81 can't and may not 83 permission 84-85 requests 86 can't help ... ing 134 capital letters 300 causative have 145 certainly: position 214-215 church: expressions without article 162 cinema: at/to the cinema 163 club: singular or plural verb 197 cold with be 3 collective nouns 197 college: expressions without article 162 colour with be 3

come come back 142 come in 146 company: singular or plural verb 197 comparative and superlative adjectives 221-226 forms 222 superlatives with in or of 226 superlatives with the 155, 223 the difference between comparatives and superlatives 223 using comparatives 224-225 using superlatives 226 comparative and superlative adverbs 227 conditionals: see if congratulations 291 conjunctions 233-242 and 238 because and so, although and but 237 both ... and, (n)either ... (n)or 239 introduction to conjunctions 234 position of conjunctions 235 tenses with time conjunctions 236 continue + infinitive 122–123 contractions 301 cook somebody something 144 could: see can countable and uncountable nouns 153 country: the country 163

daily: adjective and adverb 217 decide + infinitive 122-123 definitely: position 214-215 demonstratives (this, that etc) 168-169 depend on 305 describe: structures 144 determiners 167-184 with of 181 different from/to 305 difficulty in ...ing 305 discuss something with somebody 305 dislike ...ing 135 divide into 305

#### do

and make 307 auxiliary: see questions, negatives, question tags, short answers, reply questions do ... ing 307 don't forget 146 don't worry 146 down 282–283 dream about/of 305 dressed in 305 dropping words in speech 293 during, for and while 277

#### each

and each of 181 each, every and all 179 each other and reflexives 191 early: adjective and adverb 217 either and either of 181 either, neither and both 180 either ... or 239 I'm not either 295 else 307 England: singular or plural verb 197 enjoy enjoy ... ing 134 enjoy myself/yourself etc 191 enough 176, 177 and enough of 181 with adjective and infinitive 129 even: position 214-215 ever 307 position 214-215 tenses 62 every and every one of 181 every, each and all 179 expressions without prepositions 274 everybody 172 and all 178 everyone 172 everything 172 and all 178 everywhere 172 example of 305 excited and exciting 216

#### expect

+ infinitive 122–123 expect somebody to do something 125 explain: structures 144, 305, 307

family: singular or plural verb 197 farther, farthest 222 fast: adjective and adverb 217 feel + adjective 211 fetch somebody something 144 few and few of 181 few, a few, little and a little 175 fill in (a form) 143 fill up 143 find somebody something 144 finish ... ing 134 follow me 146 for and since 65 for, since and ago 307 for, during and while 277 for example 306 forget + infinitive 122-108 + infinitive or ... ing 308 friendly: adjective, not adverb 217 frightened and frightening 216 from ... to movement 283 time 276 front: at the front 163 furniture: uncountable 198 further, furthest 222 future 35-44 future passive 96 going to 36-37 of be 5 of have 9 present progressive 38 simple present 41 will 39-40

#### gerunds: see -ing forms

get: structures 140 + adjective 211 get into, out of, on, off 141, 305 get out 142 get somebody something 144 get to a place 305 get up 142 have got 11

#### give

give back 143 give somebody something 144 aive up ... ing 134, 143 glasses 197 **a**0 go ... ing 134 go away/back/in/out/on 142 *aoina to* 36-37 gonna 301 gone and been 61 good at (...ing) 133, 305 good luck 291 got: have got 11 gotta (= 'got to') 301 grammar and vocabulary adjectives that go with particular nouns 219 adverbs of degree; subjects of study 216 animal behaviour 117 animals, birds and other creatures 155 cities and countries 147 clothes 33 common adjectives 176, 177 common adjectives with somebody etc 183 common expressions with reflexive pronouns 191 common imperative expressions 146 containers 199 dates 275 discovery, invention, creation 55 duration 285 eight useful things 91 games 19 giving directions 43 go with spare-time activities 215 housework 71 interests 159 jewellery 261 jobs 91 kinds of things 156 learning and using a language 127 materials 153, 165 musical instruments 241 names of languages 251 one-word noun + noun structures 205 public notices 131 relations 13 seven useful things 152

showing our feelings 291 some useful questions 107 the bathroom 190 things from the office 297 things that come in twos 180 things that fly 256 things that people can do 290 time 231 towns 174 travelling by air 100 useful time-expressions with for 277 vehicles 137 weather 187 group nouns 197

hair: uncountable 198 happen to 141, 305 hard: adjective and adverb 217 hardly used without not 115 hardly ever: position 214-215 hate + -ing form 135 + infinitive 135 not normally used in progressive 30-31 have 8-11 auxiliary: see perfect don't have to and mustn't 77 have a good journey/holiday 146 have breakfast, a shower, a good flight etc 10 have got 11 have some (more) ... 146 have something done 145 have to 76-78 he 186–187 hear and listen to 307 somebody do/doing something 308 help help yourself 190 help! 146 help somebody to do something 125 her object pronoun 186-187 possessive; her and his 188-189 hers 190 herself 191 him 186-187

himself 191

his 188-189, 190 and her 188 holiday: on holiday 162 home 307 without article 162 hope 307 + infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31hospital: expressions without article 162 how How do you spell/pronounce ...? 107 How long does it take to ...? 107 How long have you been here? and How long are you here for? 107 how many as subject 108-109 how many/much 173 how old/tall/far etc 106 how to ... 269 hundred: a hundred 163 hungry with be 3 hurry up 142, 146 186-187

1 am sorry 291 I don't believe it 291 I don't mind 31 I hope so/not 31 I see (='l understand') 30 idea: the idea of ... ing 305 if 243-252 and when 307 if I go or if I went 248 if I were you 247 in indirect questions 266 position of if-clauses 244 unless 244 unreal past 249 with past tense and would meaning 'not real' or 'not probable' 246 with present tense for future meaning 41, 245, 248 **imperatives** 146 in (preposition of time) 274-275 in/at the end 306 in/on time 306

in (preposition of place) 278–279 in a picture 306 in a raincoat/dress/hat 306 in a ... voice 306 in and at 279 in and on 278 in front of 280-281 in or of after superlatives 226 in pen/pencil 306 in the middle 306 in the rain/snow 306 in the sky 306 in, at and to 283 indirect speech 263-272 here and now words 268 if and whether 266 indirect questions 266 infinitives 269 present reporting verbs 267 pronouns 264-265 say and tell 264 tenses 264-265 infinitives 119-130 after adjectives 128 after nouns (e.g. letters to write) 130 after verbs 122-123 in indirect speech 269 infinitive of purpose 121 it with infinitive subjects 126-127 verb + object + infinitive 124-125 with adjective and enough/too 129 with and without to 120 information: uncountable 198 -ing forms (gerunds) 131–135 after prepositions 132-133 after to 133 as subjects 131 verb + -ing form 134-135 -ing forms (present participles) in progressive (continuous) verb forms: see present progressive, past progressive etc interested and interesting 216 interested in 305 with be 3 into 282-283 irregular comparatives 222 irregular plurals 196 irregular verbs 299

it 186–187 used for countries, animals, times, dates, distance, weather 186–187 it depends 31 it doesn't matter 30 its 188–189 and it's 189, 301

itself 191

*jeans* 197 *just* 307 position 214–215 with present perfect 64

keep on ...ing 134
kind to 305
know: not normally used in
progressive 30-31
knowledge: uncountable 198

last: expressions without prepositions 274 last year etc: no article 162 late: adjective and adverb 217 laugh at 141, 305 learn + infinitive 122–123 leaving out words in speech 293 relative who, which, that 257 left: on the left 163 lend somebody something 144 less than 225 let and make 307 let in 143 let's 147 lie down 142 like (verb) +...ing 135 + infinitive 135 not normally used in progressive 30-31 like and as 307 listen to 141, 305 and hear 307 little and little of 181 little, a little, few and a few 175 lonely: adjective, not adverb 217

#### look

+ adjective 211 look after/at/for 141, 305 look out! 142, 146 look round 142 look up (something in a dictionary etc) 143 look, see and watch 308 lots (of) 174, 181 love + ...ing 135 + infinitive 135

not normally used in progressive 30–31 *lovely*: adjective, not adverb 217 *luck*: uncountable 198 *luggage*: uncountable 198

**made of** 153

make and do 307 and let 307 make somebody something 144 make yourself at home 146 make yourself comfortable 191 many and many of 181 and much 173 too many 177 married to 305 may and might 82-83 may not and can't 83 permission 85 me 186-187 me too 295 mean: not normally used in progressive 30-31 might and may 82-83 million: a million 163 mind ... ing 134 *mine* 190 modal verbs 73-92, and see entries for individual verbs monthly: adjective and adverb 217 more and more of 181 in comparatives 222-225 more than 225 most and most of 181 in superlatives 222-223, 226 mountains: the mountains 163

#### much

and many 173 and much of 181 too much 177 with comparatives 225 must 75, 77 and should 79 mustn't and don't have to 77 my 188–189 myself 191

names with or without the 160-161 near 280-281 need + infinitive 122-123 need somebody to do something 125 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31negatives 112-115; see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses neither and neither of 181 neither ... nor 239 neither can l etc 294 neither, either and both 180 never position 214-215 tenses 62 used without not 115 news: uncountable 198 next expressions without prepositions 274 next Friday etc: no article 162 nice to 305 no (= 'not any') and none (of) 181 and not 114 no ... ing 131 used without not 115 no one 172 nobody 172 used without not 115 none (of) 181 non-progressive verbs 30-31 nor can l etc 294 not and no 114 I hope not 31 not much/many and little/few 175

nothing 172 nothing to ... 130 used without not 115 nouns 195-208 + infinitive (e.g. letters to write) 130 countable and uncountable nouns 198-199 group nouns 197 noun + noun 204-205 one(s) 200 possessives with 's and s' 201-203, 205 singular and plural 196 nowhere 172 used without not 115

#### of

or in after superlatives 226 with determiners 181 off 282-283 offer somebody something 144 often: position 214-215 on (preposition of place) 278 and in 278 on foot 162 on holiday 162 on page 22, 306 on the phone 306 on the radio 306 on TV 306 on (preposition of time) 274-275 on/in time 306 one and a/an 153 one(s) 200 only only a little/few 175 position 214-215 the only 155 opposite 280-281 orchestra: singular or plural verb 197 ought to 79 our 188-189 ours 190 ourselves 191 out of 282-283 over 282-283

pair 197

passives 93-102 future 96 introduction to passives 94 passive and active verb forms 300 present perfect 99 present progressive 98 simple past 97 simple present 95 past 282-283 past continuous: see past progressive past participles (worked, broken, seen etc) in perfect tenses 58, 68 in passives 94 past perfect 68-69 past progressive 51-53 past simple: see simple past past tenses 45-56 of be 4 of have 9 past progressive 51-53 past progressive and simple past 52 - 53simple past 46-50 with if 246-248 pay and pay for 141, 305 people 196 most people or most of the people 181 perfect tenses 57-72 present perfect 58-65 present perfect progressive 66-67 past perfect 68-69 personal pronouns 186-187 phrasal verbs 142-143 pick up 143 place names with or without the 160-161 plan + infinitive 122–123 pleased with 305 plenty (of) 174, 181 plural nouns 196 police: plural verb 197 polite to 306 possessive determiners and pronouns 188-190 mine, yours etc 190 my, your etc 188-189 possessive nouns with 's and s' 201-203, 205 practise ... ing 134

#### prefer

+ infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31prepositions 273-286 +-ing form 132-133 after particular verbs 141 at (place) 279 at, in and on (time) 274-275 by and until 276 common expressions with prepositions 306 for, during and while 277 from ... to (time) 276 in and on (place) 278 in questions 111 in relative clauses 258 movement 282-283 other prepositions of place 280-281 present participles (-ing forms) in progressive (continuous) verb forms: see present progressive, past progressive etc present perfect 58-67 forms 58-59 passive 99 present perfect and present 61, 67 present perfect and simple past compared 60-61 present perfect progressive 66-67 time words 62-63 with already, yet and just 64 with since and for 65 present progressive 23-29 and simple present 28-29 for future 38

#### passive 98 present simple: see simple present

present tenses 15-34 simple present 16-22 present progressive (continuous) 23-27 the two present tenses compared 28-29 non-progressive verbs 30-31 present and present perfect 61, 67 prison: expressions without article 162 probably: position 214-215

#### promise

+ infinitive 122-123 promise somebody something 144 punctuation 301-302 put down 143 put on (clothes) 143 pyjamas 197

question tags 288–289, 292 question words 2, 106-107 as subjects 108-109 questions 102–111 indirect questions 266 prepositions in questions 111 question words 2, 106-107 question-words as subjects 108-109 questions with long subjects 110 yes/no questions 104-105 see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses

radio: on the radio 163 read somebody something 144 reason for 306 reflexives (myself etc) 191 and each other 191 refuse + infinitive 122-123 relative pronouns (who, whom, which, that, what) and relative clauses 253-262 leaving out relative pronouns 257 prepositions in relative clauses 258 that 256, 259 what 259 who and which 254-255 whom 255 remember + infinitive or ...ing 308 not normally used in progressive

30-31 reply questions 291, 292

#### reported speech: see indirect speech right with be 3 right; on the right 163 round 282-283

's and s' possessives 201-203, 205 same 308

say 'hello' to him/her for me 291 say and tell 264 structures 144 school: expressions without article 162 scissors 197 sea: the sea 163 see see, look and watch 308 somebody do/doing something 308 seem + adjective 211 + infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31send somebody something 144 shall 39 shall I/we ...? 87 she 186-187 short answers 290, 292 should 79 and must 79 show somebody something 144 side: at the side 163 silly: adjective, not adverb 217 simple past 46-50 and past progressive 52-53 passive 97 simple present 16-22, 28-31 and present progressive 28-29 for future 41 passive 95 since and for 65 since, for and ago 307 singular and plural nouns 196 sit down 142, 146 sleep well 146 smile at 306 50 234 and because 237 and such 308 I hope/think so 31 so am letc 294 some and any 170-171 and some of 181 somebody 172 someone 172 something 172 something to ... 130 sometimes: position 214-215 somewhere 172 spaghetti: uncountable 198

#### spelling

adverbs in -ly 212 capital letters 300 comparatives and superlatives 222 -ing forms 23 noun plurals 196 regular past participles 58 's and s' in possessives 201 simple past endings 46 simple present endings 16 spend (time) ... ing 134 spoken grammar 287–298 leaving out words 293 question tags 288-289, 292 reply questions 291, 292 short answers 290, 292 so am I, nor can he etc 294-295 stand up 142 start + infinitive 122-123 still position 214-215 still, yet and already 308 stop ... ing 134 such and so 308 suggest: structures 144 superlative: see comparative surprised and surprising 216 switch/turn on/off (lights, electrical appliances) 143

take

take away 143 take care of yourself 191 take off (clothes) 143 take somebody something 144 talk about 141, 306 teach somebody something 144 team: singular or plural verb 197 tell and say 264 tell somebody something 144 tenses: see present, past etc in indirect speech 264-265 with time conjunctions 236 than after comparatives 224 than, as and that 308 than I am or than me 225 thank somebody for something 306 that (relative pronoun) 256, 259 that, as and than 308 that, this etc 168-169 that's a surprise/interesting/ terrible 291

the: see articles with superlatives 223 the country/mountains/sea 163 the same 163 theatre: at/to the theatre 163 their 188-189 theirs 190 them 186-187 themselves 191 there is 6-7 in question tags 289 these 168-9 they 186-187 think (don't) think so 31 not always used in progressive 30-31 structures 308 think about 141 think about/of 306 thirsty with be 3 this 168-9 expressions without prepositions 274 this Monday etc: no article 162 those 168-169 thousand: a thousand 163 through 282-283 throw away 143 till: see until to (preposition) to, at and in 283 to ... ing 133 to with infinitive: see infinitives too + adjective + infinitive 129 and very 308 too, too much/many and not enouah 177 too (= 'also'): lam too, me too 295 top: at the top 163 translate into/from 306 travel: uncountable 198 trousers 197 try + infinitive 122–123 + infinitive or ...ing 308 turn round 142 turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) 143 **TV**: on TV 163 typical of 306

uncountable: see countable under 280–283 understand: not normally used in progressive 30–31 university: expressions without article 162 unless 244 until/till 234, 276 + present with future meaning 41, 236 and by 276 up 282–283 us 186–187 used to 89 usually: position 214–215

verbs with adverb particles (phrasal verbs) 142–143 verbs with infinitives 122–123 love, like, hate 135 with object + infinitive 124–125 verbs with prepositions 141 verbs with two objects 144 very and too 308 very much: position 213 wait: structures 141, 308

wait for me 146 wake up 142 wanna (= 'want to') 301 want + infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30-31 want somebody to do something 124 wash up (cups, plates etc) 143 watch, look and see 308 we 186-187 weekly: adjective and adverb 217 well: position 213 were: if I were you 247 what (question word) and which 308 as subject 108-109 what ... with article 163 what ... like? 107 what a nuisance/pity 291 what time/colour/size/sort of ...? etc 3, 106 what to ... 269 what (relative pronoun) 259 when + present with future meaning 41,236 and if 307

when to ... 269

Where are you from / do you come from? 107 whether 266 which (question word) and what 308 which ...? as subject 108-109 which (relative pronoun) 254-255 while 234 + present with future meaning 41,236 while, for and during 277 who (question word) as subject 108-109 who (relative pronoun) 254-255 whom 308 relative pronoun 255 whose and who's 301 why and because 308 will 39-40 with + article 163 without + article 163 without ... ing 133 won't 39 word order 304 work expressions without article 162 uncountable 198 worse, worst 222 would with if 246-249 would like + infinitive 88 would like somebody to do something 124 write somebody something 144 write to 306 wrong be wrong 3 wrong with 306

#### yet

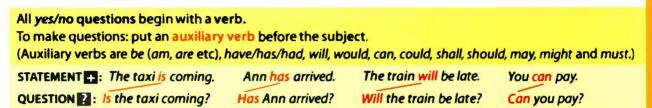
with present perfect 64 yet, still and already 308 you 186–187 your 188–189 yours 190 yourself, yourselves 191

# مجعزبان ايرانيان

Oxford English Grammar Course Learn and practise the grammar you need to speak and write in English.

- Short grammar explanations are easy to remember. Colour makes the grammar clear.
- Clear simple examples show how the grammar works.

# AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?



 Texts, articles, quotations and poems use the grammar.

Asylorer who has travelled extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas. For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences

> b) a cave in southern France. We don't know anything about the artist, and we never will. We only know that somebody saw an oxi, saw that it was beautiful, and recorded its beauty. (When Picase first saw prehistoric cave art, the said "We have learnt nothing") Before the Bronze Age or the fron Age, before the glacies' covered Europe and went away again, before all of recorded history, an unknown person left an inexage for us 1 (saw this creature, and thought it was beautiful? Thank will Stone Age artist.

- Internet exercises and grammar-and-vocabulary work
- Tests in the book and online

### Hundreds of exercises practise the grammar.

#### questions and negatives: more practice Questions with and without do/did. Ask about the words in italics She said something. Julia cooked dinne Julia cooked eggs. The ball hit loe 4 Th 5 Sa S Gr r in a text. Read the poem, and then write one yourself 6 Sa Your poem I'm getting older There isn't time to do everything I can't .... 7 Be 8 Be Do 10 Da I can see I'm not going to I'll never Just you want and see

#### About the authors

Michael Swan and Catherine Walter are experts in English and language teaching. Michael is the author of *Practical English Usage*. Catherine is a Lecturer in Applied Linguistics at Oxford University. Their well-known books include *The Good Grammar Book* and *How English Works* (the basis for *Oxford English Grammar Course Basic* and *Intermediate*).



 Pronunciation for grammar CD-ROM practises rhythm, stress and intonation. Listen, think, repeat and record.
 Online exercises take you from practising grammar to using grammar.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS



www.oup.com/elt

